

HIS IMPERIAL MAJESTY KING GEORGE V



# THE KING AND HIS EMPIRE

Twenty-five years of the Reign of King George V and Queen Mary together with a complete historical and descriptive survey of all the lands and peoples of the British and Indian Empires in the year of their Majesties' Silver Jubilee

BY

CHARLES W. DOMVILLE-FIFE

*Illustrated with 1250 Photographs and Maps*

VOL. I.

LONDON:  
VIRTUE & COMPANY, LTD.,  
19, 20 & 21 THAVIES INN, HOLBORN CIRCUS, E.C.1



# PREFACE

IN this year of 1935 there will be in the hearts and minds of millions of people, the whole world over, two words with but a single meaning, and which constitute both a faith and a pledge—"KING and EMPIRE." One and indivisible, signifying the union under the Crown of all the peoples of the greatest Empire ever known. Consisting of over a quarter of the land surface of the world and of its total number of inhabitants, with countless races and creeds, complex systems of life, diverse manners and customs, and every variety of terrain from Arctic barren to tropic isle. In very truth one may ask in the immortal words of Kipling, "What should they know of England who only England know?"

These were the thoughts from which there came into being this account of the principal events of the twenty-five years' reign of King George V and Queen Mary in fitting relationship with the whole vital story of the building of the Empire from the dawn of written history to the present day, together with a full description of the countries, peoples and life in the sea-divided units of this vast realm.

Such a comprehensive study has been rendered possible of accomplishment by the fact that it is an abbreviation of my previous encyclopedic survey of the British Empire, with the addition of much new material and the subtraction of all that appeared unnecessary in a work intended to present a complete picture of the Reign and of the Empire of Their Majesties at the time of their Silver Jubilee.

CHARLES W. DOMVILLE-FIFE.

London, 1935.



KING GEORGE V

AND

QUEEN MARY

TWENTY-FIVE YEARS OF THEIR MAJESTIES' REIGN



THE CORONATION OF KING GEORGE V AND QUEEN MARY IN WESTMINSTER ABBEY  
ON JUNE 23rd 1911



# KING GEORGE V AND QUEEN MARY

TWENTY-FIVE YEARS OF THEIR MAJESTIES' REIGN

**I**F ever the human attributes of courage and kindness, which embrace so many virtues, should be applied, it is to Their Majesties King George V and Queen Mary. Such is the only just conclusion that can be formed by any thoughtful observer of the first quarter of a century of their reign and times. A remarkable sense of duty might well be added, but history shows clearly that without the possession of natural courage duties accomplished merely by self-discipline lack the vital spark with which their Majesties have so often inspired the peoples of their world-wide Empire.

The Reign of King George V has been so far a period of struggle and crisis without parallel in world history. Never before has a monarch ruled, under such difficult conditions, an Empire stretching from the dawn to the sunset. And ruled it with such a fine courage and an infinite understanding of all its heterogeneous peoples, with their inherent and often widely-differing desires, that in this year of his Silver Jubilee over four hundred million loyal subjects, the wide world over, with gratitude for the past and renewed hope for the future, will pray that *God may bless our King and Queen.*

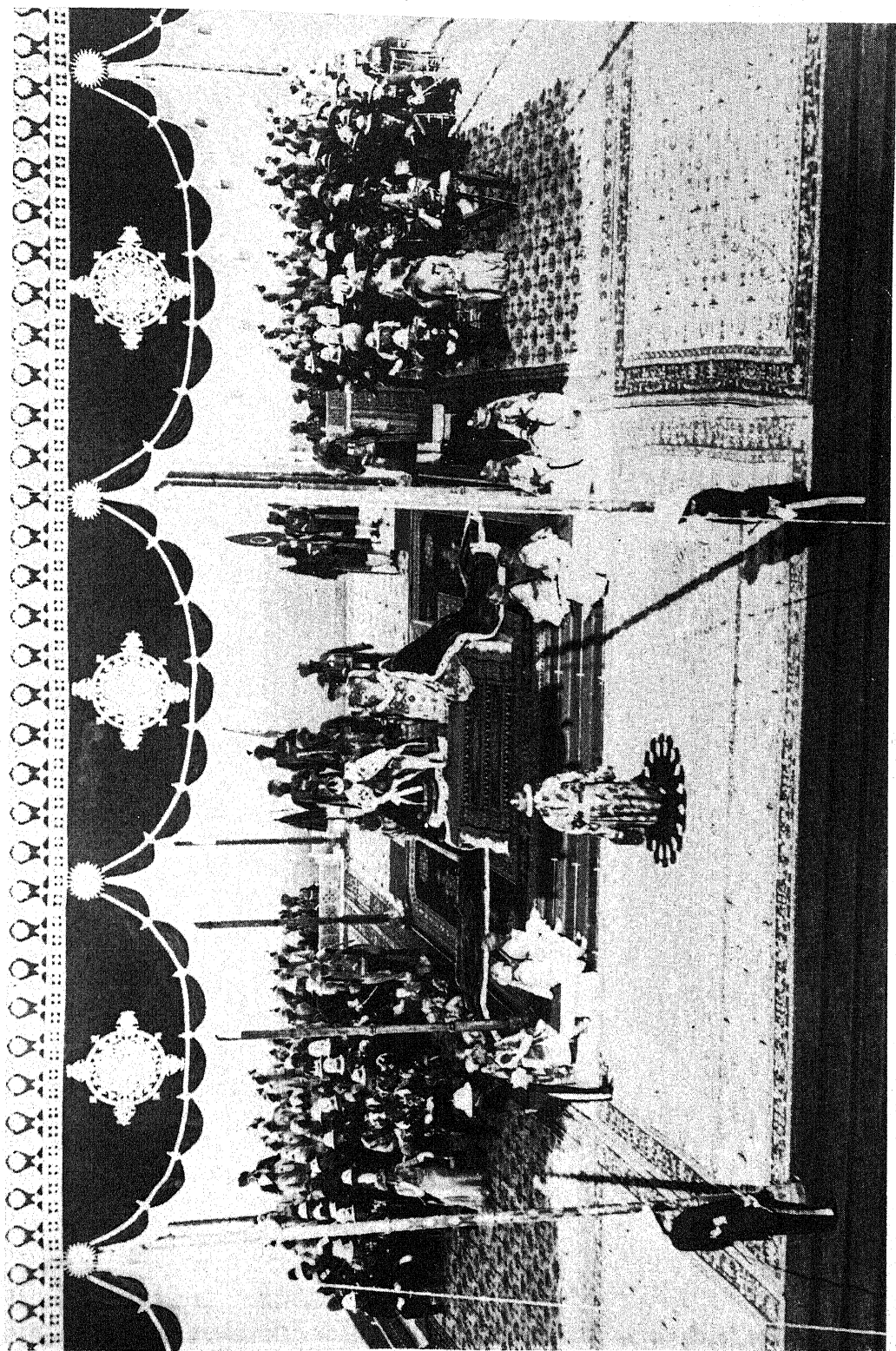
Edward the Seventh died in May, 1910, and George the Fifth ascended the throne "bequeathed him by the 52nd Sovereign of his lineage and title in descent from Saxon Edwards earlier still." A year later, on June 23rd,

King George and Queen Mary were crowned in Westminster Abbey ; and in November of the same year they sailed for India to assume the title of Emperor and of Empress at the great Durbar held in Delhi, the old Moghul Capital, amid the enthusiasm, the loyalty and the splendour which is imperial India.

This was the first occasion on which a British Sovereign had left the United Kingdom to visit his Indian Empire, or any other portion of the oversea Dominions or Colonies. During many previous reigns, however, there had been visits to different European countries ; and there can be no doubt that this departure from what had hitherto been constitutional precedent received the wholehearted support of all the peoples of the Empire. The results became apparent soon afterwards, in the loyalty of the Indian Princes and troops during the Great War.

In the meantime party politics at home had produced a constitutional crisis. There came as a legacy from the reign of King Edward VII the Parliament Bill. In the Spring of 1911 the Prime Minister threatened to ask His Majesty to create an almost unlimited number of new peers in order to secure the passage through the House of Lords of this bitterly contested measure. The sympathy of the public was entirely with the King in the difficulty created for him so early in his reign. Although to this political pressure on the Royal prerogative His Majesty showed clearly that he was no passive instrument in the hands of his Ministers, there appeared every likelihood of an unprecedented attack upon the constitution.

By negotiation and informal conference this political crisis was overcome, only to be succeeded, however, by the old " Home Rule for Ireland " controversy. This became an even greater menace to the internal peace of the Kingdom in the year 1913. Ulster refused to be coerced into joining an all-Ireland federation and under the leadership of Sir Edward Carson threatened open revolt to maintain its individual and close association with the United Kingdom. Working unceasingly for a solution to the difficult problem, the King remarked at a conference of political leaders, " To-day the cry of civil war is on the lips of my subjects." The tension became acute and His Majesty's anxiety for an equitable settlement was known to all. Armed revolution in Northern Ireland, with its inevitable repercussions elsewhere, was finally averted by the outbreak of the Great European War in August, 1914.



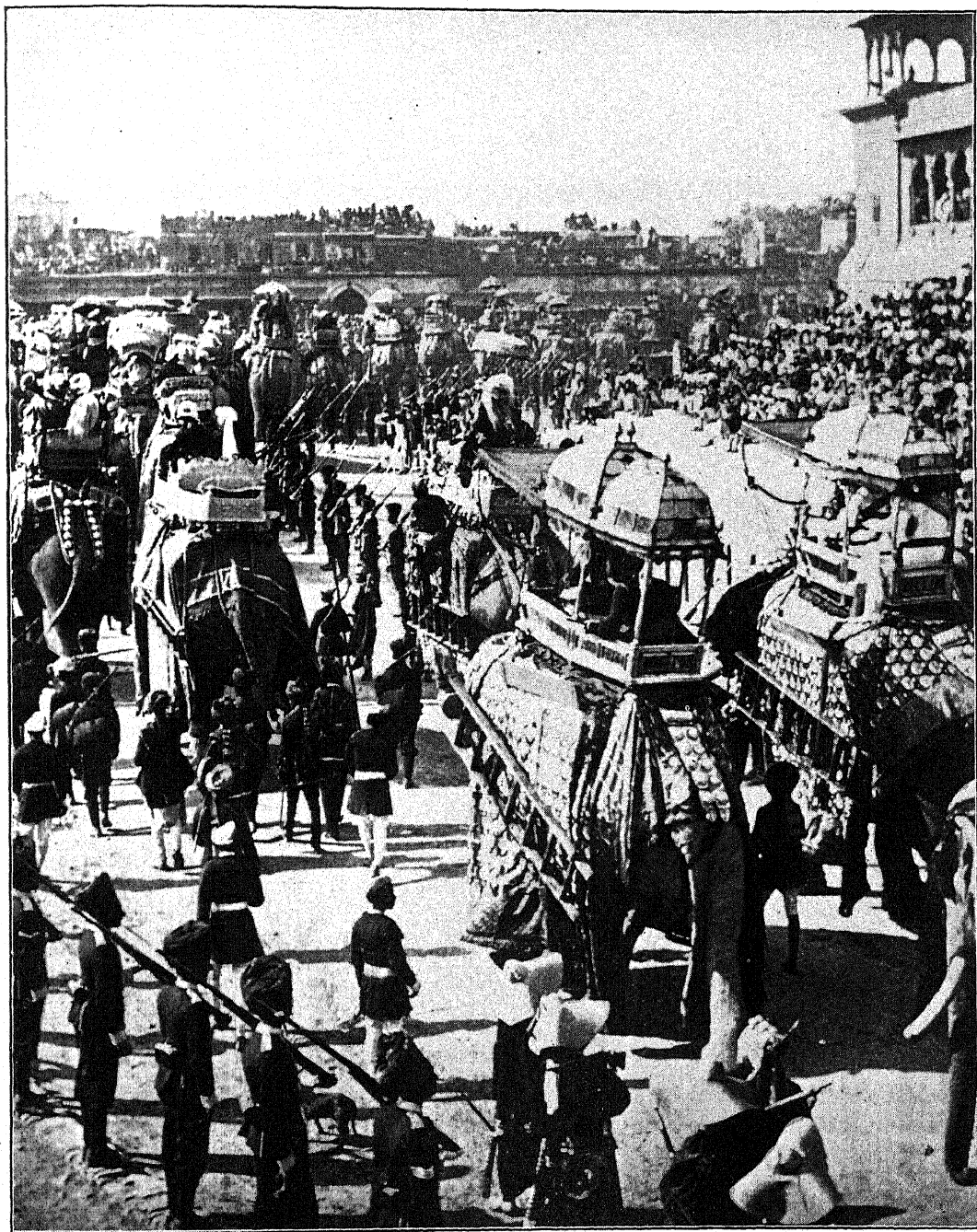
EMPEROR AND EMPRESS OF INDIA  
The Proclamation of Their Imperial Majesties as Emperor and Empress of India at the Delhi Durbar, in December, 1911

During the Irish negotiations Their Majesties attended the wedding in Berlin of the only daughter of the Kaiser. This visit served also to return the one paid to this country by the Emperor William II of Germany for the unveiling of the Monument to Queen Victoria in 1911. This was the last occasion on which the Kaiser visited England. Early in 1914 Paris was formally visited by Their Majesties ; and there can be little doubt that the tension which had been growing steadily more acute between Germany and her neighbours for many years was causing serious apprehension in many of the capitals of Europe.

Seen in the after-light of history the King's visits to India, Germany, France, Ireland, Scotland and Wales during the years immediately preceding the Great War possessed a significance not fully appreciated in those seemingly far away times.

A great upheaval in Europe, shaking civilisation to its foundations, then appeared so remote and impossible that even the warnings of Lord Roberts, Lord Beresford and others, coupled with a plea for compulsory military service and a big navy did not evoke the response which might well have saved the world from the greatest war in all history. "I was one of those who from 1910 to 1914 thought that if our rulers of those days had not been afraid to set out in front of all the world the majesty and power of the British Empire there would have been no war," said Field-Marshal Sir Henry Wilson, Chief of the Imperial General Staff during some of the terrible years that were to follow.

Chief among the events of the earlier years of King George's reign there was the great Durbar in India, held in December, 1911. Although preceded by a similar ceremonial in 1877, when the Earl of Lytton proclaimed Queen Victoria as Empress of India, marking the final stage in the transfer of responsibility (1858) from The Honourable the East India Company to the Crown ; and again in 1903, when the Viceroy, Lord Curzon, announced the accession of King Edward to the Imperial Throne, never before had a Western emperor set foot on Indian soil to receive the homage of his subjects. Never before had so great and gorgeous a reception of India's Princes been held in the historic capital of this ancient Eastern Empire. In the words of His Majesty, it "showed our affection for the loyal Princes and faithful peoples of India and how dear to our hearts is the welfare and happiness of the Indian Empire."



DELHI—THE CAPITAL OF THE INDIAN EMPIRE  
The splendour of India. Durbar procession of Indian Princes on richly adorned elephants

On previous occasions the Viceroys had entered Delhi on elephants, but the Emperor rode on horseback through the gateway of the old Fort. Only Princes of the Blood Royal entered in this way, others being required to pass on foot into this portion of the widespread and historic Imperial Capital of India. The procession made its way slowly through the teeming streets of Delhi, flanked on both sides by the dusty but glittering bazaars.

When J. H. McCarthy wrote of "Durbars that might rival in splendour of colour and jewelled bravery the glories of the Court of Byzantium," he might well have been describing the scenes which for nearly a week transformed the fifteen square miles covered by the old and the new cities of Delhi—each marking an epoch in the history of India—from the somewhat melancholy scene of past glories into a great and living pageant, surpassing in magnificence all that its encompassing walls and magnificent tombs of pink and grey stone had witnessed before.

After passing through the city Their Imperial Majesties proceeded to the Ridge, famous in the days of the Mutiny, and there received an enthusiastic welcome from the assembled representatives of British India. The long road leading up to the Ridge, which overlooks the city, was lined by Gordon Highlanders, the Black Watch and the 13th Hussars. The spectacle as described by an eye-witness "must have surpassed anything seen in the days when the nearby city was the centre of the great Moghul Empire."

This, however, was but a prelude to the great Durbar, held on December 12th. In a state carriage drawn by four horses, with outriders, and beneath the gorgeous umbrella which plays an important part in Indian Ceremony, Their Majesties, wearing their crowns and accompanied by a Sovereign's escort of cavalry, drove to the field of the Durbar. Two amphitheatres had been erected with a small arena between them in which was a canopied dais surmounted by the chairs of the throne. The canopy was of crimson velvet lined with silk and supported by gilded pillars. Flights of marble steps, covered in places with beautiful hand-woven carpets, led up to the throne, which was raised about eighteen feet above the ground level.

In the small central arena were the Princes and chiefs, arrayed in the gorgeous apparel of their respective and historic States. Many wore





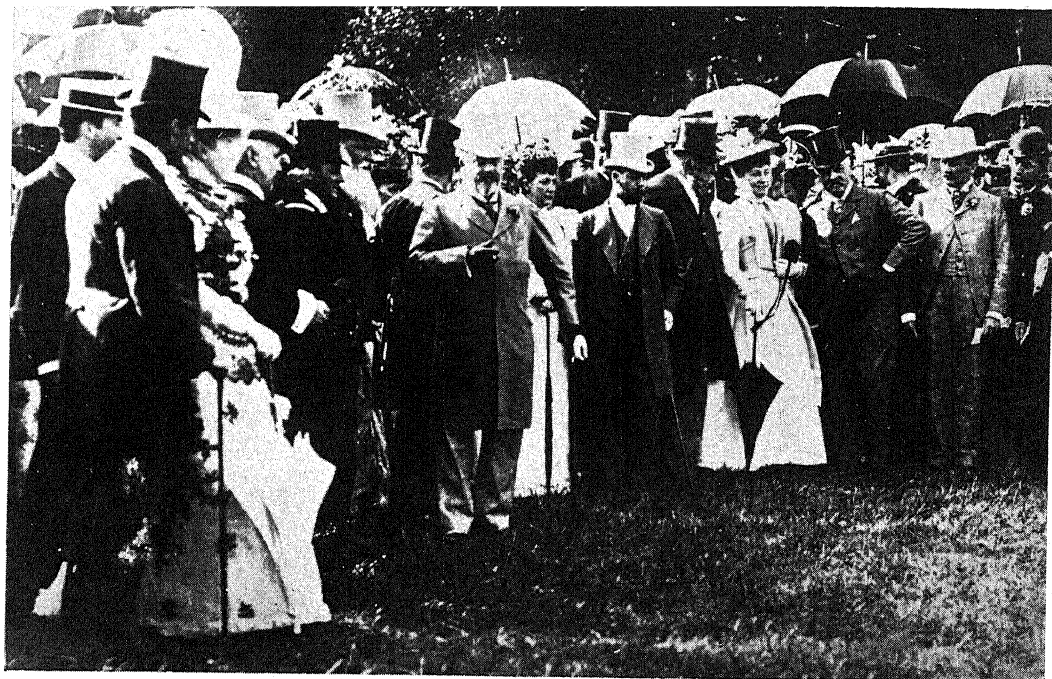
THE KING-EMPEROR TIGER HUNTING IN NEPAL

jewels which are among the finest in the world. These rulers of feudatory India were seated around the steps on both sides of the throne. Facing Their Imperial Majesties, in one of the larger amphitheatres, were the officials of the Supreme Government of India, officers of high rank, and distinguished visitors. In the still larger surrounding amphitheatre were drawn up in serried ranks 20,000 troops representing every branch of the British and Indian Armies. Extending for many square miles beyond were the tens, or hundreds of thousands of India's teeming populace.

Two figures stood out, clear cut in the fierce Indian sunlight, amid the colourful and scintillating multitude presenting the ambitious climax of Eastern splendour. The King-Emperor wore a robe of imperial-purple velvet, mantled and bordered with ermine, over a coat of purple with satin knee breeches and silk stockings. The golden collars of the Orders of the Garter and of the Star of India were around his neck, while on his breast glittered the jewelled Star of the latter decoration. The Imperial Crown was of purple, edged with ermine and surrounded by a band of diamonds, sapphires and rubies.

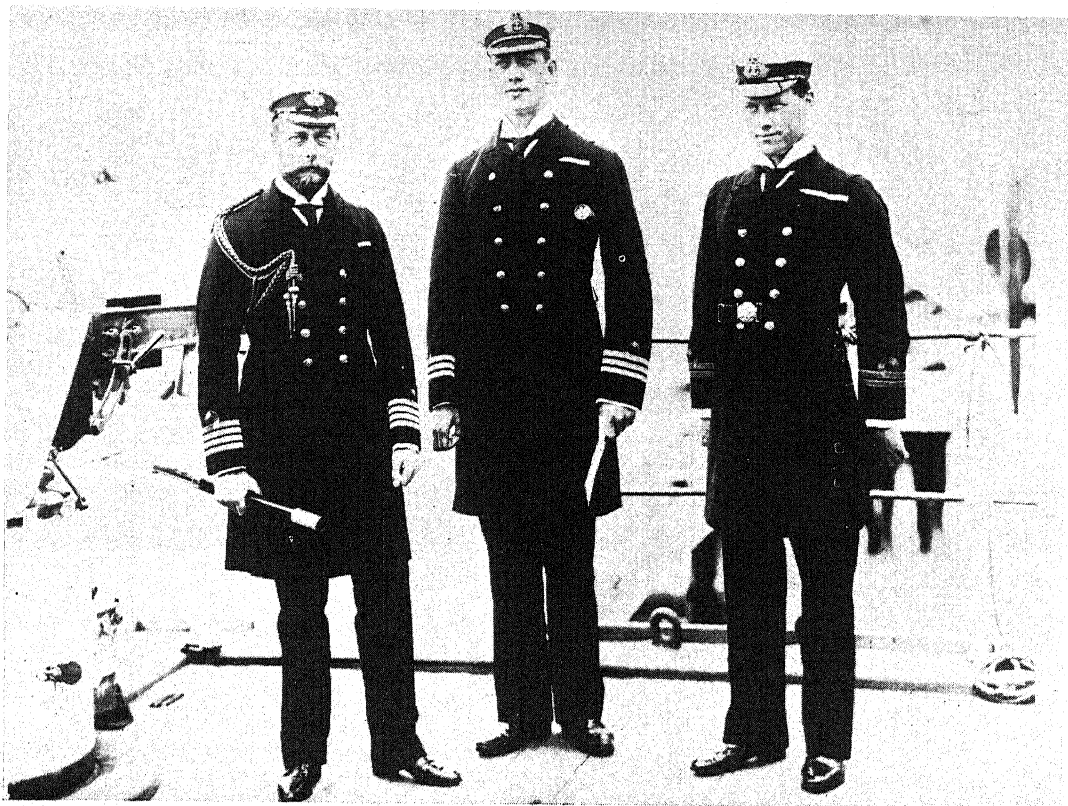
The Queen-Empress was similarly attired in imperial-purple, edged with ermine and bordered with braid of gold. Her dress was of white satin, heavily embroidered with gold roses, thistles and shamrocks, signifying the countries of the United Kingdom, and as a border to them all were the golden lotus flowers of India. Her Imperial Majesty also wore the Orders of the Garter and of the Star of India, the two premier decorations of the British and Indian Empires, and a necklace of diamonds and emeralds.

The opening ceremony was the reading of the proclamation announcing Their Majesties' Coronation by the Herald, who had ridden into the arena, accompanied by the Assistant Herald, followed by twelve British and twelve Indian trumpeters. All were mounted on white chargers and sounded a fanfare as they rode forward. Wheeling to face the twenty thousand troops and the vast sea of faces beyond, the Herald read the proclamation in a loud voice and was followed by the Assistant Herald (a Punjabi) who translated it into Urdu. Then the trumpets blared again, the massed bands of many regiments played the National Anthem, there was a sharp rattle and lines of glistening rifle barrels and glittering bayonets came to the "present," while the whole multitude rose to their feet.



AT SANDOWN PARK RACES, JULY, 1897

The Prince and Princess of Wales, afterwards King Edward VII, and Queen Alexandra, with the Duke and Duchess of York, now Their Majesties King George V and Queen Mary



H.M. THE KING IN 1898 AS DUKE OF YORK AND CAPTAIN OF H.M.S. "CRESCENT"

The roar of 101-guns, the Imperial salute, echoed across the plain of Delhi. They were fired in three divisions, each interval being marked by a *feu de joie* from the troops outside the huge amphitheatre. High above the flashing bayonets there drifted whisps of white smoke and amid the crashes of the guns came the stirring notes of "God Save the King."

The presence in India of His Imperial Majesty caused the title of Viceroy to be held in abeyance, and Lord Hardinge, as Governor-General, after a brief address by the King-Emperor, approached the throne and kissed the Sovereign's hand. The Commander-in-Chief of the Armies in India followed with a salute. Then came the Members of the Viceroy's Council, the Ruling Princes—led by the Nizam of Hyderabad, the Gaekwar of Baroda and the Maharajahs of Mysore and Kashmir—and a long line of princes, rajahs and tribal chiefs from the uttermost confines of this Asiatic Empire.

A dramatic episode of this great Durbar, and one well calculated by historical tradition to appeal to both rajah and ryot, was the sudden announcement by His Imperial Majesty that the seat of the Supreme Government of India would be transferred from Calcutta to the ancient Capital of Delhi *where he stood*. This stirred the whole vast assembly and deafening cheers rolled in waves of sound across princes, troops and people. The Durbar was closed. Still the wild cheering and cries continued. The Emperor and Empress left the throne, and there occurred a scene never before witnessed in the history of British India. Thousands rushed to the throne and, bowing to the "invisible presence," kissed the places where a few minutes before Their Imperial Majesties had faced the rulers and peoples of amazing India.

In the minds of the peoples of the two great Empires the sun had scarcely departed from the mellow and yet regal pageantry of the Coronation in London, with its glittering, bizarre and imagination-stirring counterpart in the Imperial City of India, before Western civilisation was almost shattered by the greatest of world catastrophes. When the Great War and all that it implied is reviewed with the aloofness which can come only slowly, as old news fades into history, it will cause all other happenings in the long story of the world to pale before it.

Looking down the line of Britain's Kings and Queens there seems to have been a destiny which in some indefinable way rendered many of them

particularly capable of guiding the peoples of the Nation and of the Empire during the age in which they lived. At the beginning of the Nineteenth Century William IV succeeded, despite the serious handicap of an education and upbringing that at first ill-fitted him for the throne, in adapting himself so well to the dawn of the new age of democratic kingship that he undoubtedly averted more than one serious constitutional crisis. The manners, customs and conventions of the country were things *in being* when Queen Victoria came to the throne as a young and inexperienced girl. Throughout her long reign it is now well known that she often acted contrary to the wishes of her advisers, and yet during this vital stage in the evolution of the country and its slow awakening to the advantage, and then to the vital necessity for oversea expansion and development, this Queen showed both foresight and ability quite beyond the trend of thought and events during the age in which she lived. Edward VII, the first British King of the Twentieth Century, not only as clearly perceived what the age required both politically and socially but also sensed the danger which the Empire would one day have to face in Europe.



KING GEORGE V IN THE YEAR 1900

Born at Marlborough House, London, on June 3rd in the year 1865, and nearly thirty years old before the death of his brother, the Duke of





KING GEORGE V WHEN PRINCE OF WALES  
At the Opening of Dover Harbour in 1909

Clarence, disclosed to him and to the growing Empire his great but lonely and difficult destiny, King George V had already become a highly proficient Naval Officer. And so with the proud title of "Mistress of the Seas" came also a Sailor-King, who was able to bear the heavy responsibilities thrust upon his shoulders by the greatest event of any reign with the added strength of a professional knowledge of the use of sea power.

Prince George, the second son of King Edward VII, from the age of four to twelve, was placed under the tutorship of John Neale Dalton, curate of Sandringham. In 1877, with his brother, Prince Albert, who was only two years his senior, he became a naval cadet in the *Britannia*. For the next two years the Princes passed through the ordinary routine and curriculum of a training establishment, and in 1879 were appointed to H.M.S.

*Bacchante*. Under the command of Captain Lord Charles Scott they made a voyage to the West Indies, during which they were rated as midshipmen. In 1880 they voyaged in the *Bacchante* round the world.

There is in existence a narrative of the *Bacchante's* cruise compiled from the letters and diaries of the Princes, aged respectively 16-17 and 18-19. They visited South America, Africa, Australia, the Fiji Islands,



Japan, Ceylon, Egypt, Palestine and Greece. The brothers then separated, and Prince George, remaining in the Naval Service, was promoted sub-lieutenant and appointed to H.M.S. *Canada*, then on the North American and West Indies station. A period at the Royal Naval College, Greenwich, and at the gunnery and torpedo schools at Portsmouth, was followed by promotion to the rank of lieutenant in 1885.

Prince George's career in the Navy was following the usual course of training and promotion. In 1886 he was appointed to H.M.S. *Thunderer*, in the Mediterranean, then to the *Dreadnought* and the *Alexandria*. Three years later he joined the flagship of the Channel Squadron, H.M.S. *Northumberland*, and was given command of a torpedo boat in the naval manœuvres of that year. In 1890 he obtained command of the gunboat *Thrush* in North American and West Indian waters. In the following year he was promoted to the rank of Commander and commissioned H.M.S. *Melampus*.

Then came the unforeseen event which changed a Naval-Prince into a Sailor-King. Prince Albert Victor, Duke of Clarence, died in January, 1892, leaving Prince George as eventual heir to the Crown. His duties then prevented him from devoting himself exclusively to the Navy, and his career at sea came to an end, although His Majesty has never lost interest in everything pertaining to the sea and ships. In the Royal Yacht and *Britannia* he maintains that element of personal contact with things maritime which has enabled many informal photographs to be obtained of his life afloat during the comparatively brief periods of leisure which an eventful reign has grudgingly allowed.

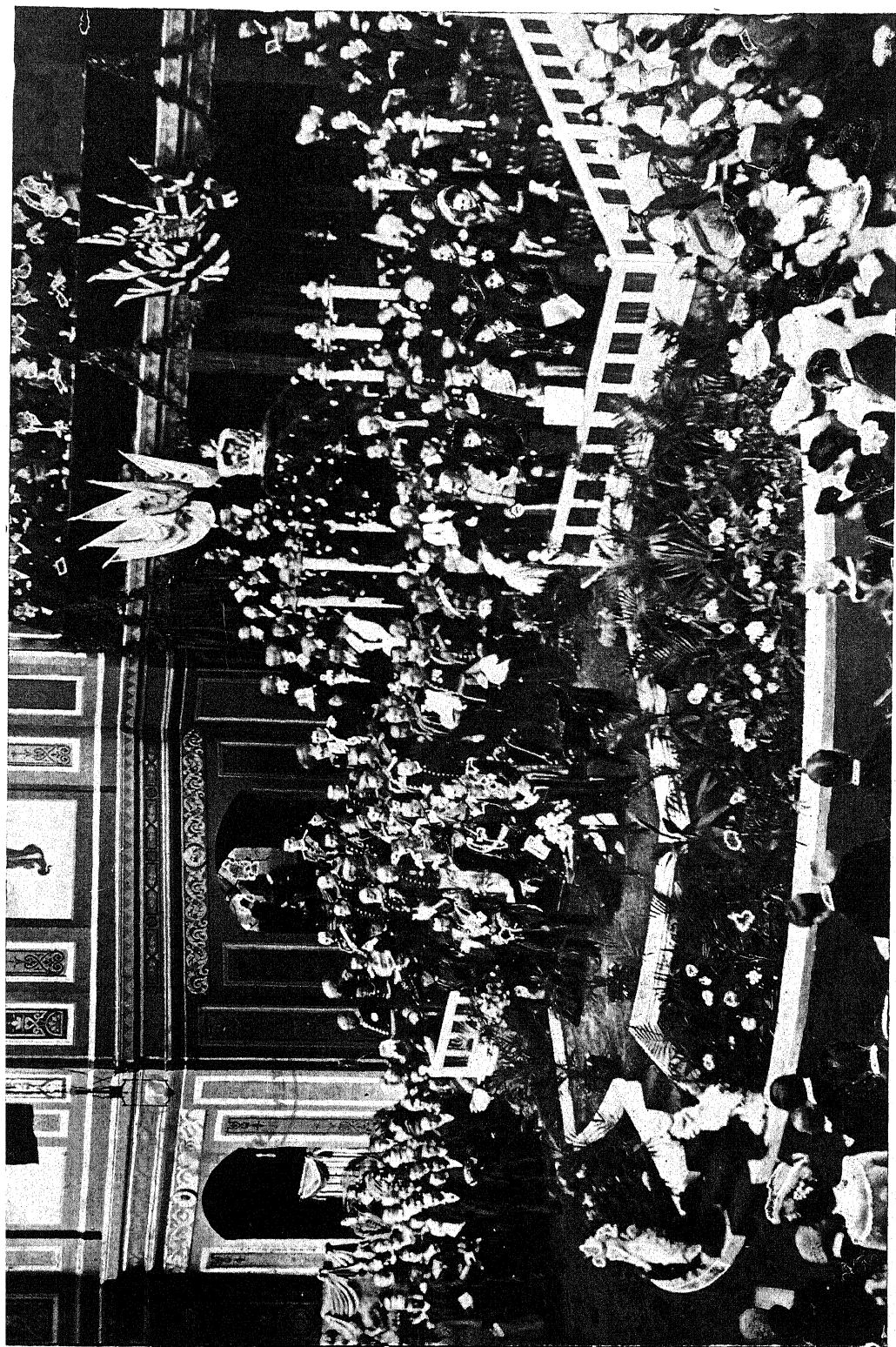
It has been said, and probably with a great deal of truth, that His Majesty is happiest when aboard one of his warships. However this may be, other monarchs, as Sir Theodore Cook once wrote, have been said to rule the waves, but it will never be forgotten that King George V has known what it means to captain a small ship in a North Atlantic gale, and, in consequence, is the first of Britain's Sailor-Kings.

Created Duke of York in 1892 he married in the following year Princess Victoria Mary, daughter of Francis, Duke of Teck, and Princess Mary Adelaide, Duchess of Teck, a daughter of the Duke of Cambridge. Queen Mary was born on the 26th May, 1867, and is therefore two years younger than the King. The marriage was the occasion of great celebrations and

rejoicing all over the Empire, many portions of which it had been arranged that they should visit after the death of Queen Victoria. In 1897 they made a State visit to Ireland and were enthusiastically received. On the accession to the throne of King Edward VII, in 1901, they sailed in the *Ophir*, a passenger liner specially chartered and altered, for Melbourne, Australia, where they opened the first parliament of the Commonwealth. Next they visited New Zealand and South Africa, returning home by way of Canada. During this round the Empire tour many of the smaller Colonies and Dependencies were also visited, and an official account was published in 1902 by Sir Donald Mackenzie Wallace under the title of "The Web of Empire." With the termination of the War in South Africa, Their Royal Highnesses settled down to enjoy the only few years of comparative relaxation from extreme effort and exacting duty which appears to have been possible.

The private life of Royalty is something which no one desires to write about. They are men and women and enjoy or dislike in the same way as all human beings. There is usually far too little privacy allowed a reigning monarch, who, it must be remembered, is in office for life. While it is this sense of entire security and support from the people which enables a King to take a judicial view of everything submitted for his independent judgment it necessitates a life devoted almost entirely to duty.

In November, 1901, the Duke was created Prince of Wales, and succeeded to the Crown on the death of King Edward VII, eight and a half years later. Their Majesties' eldest son, Prince Edward Albert, now Prince of Wales, was born at White Lodge, Richmond, on June 23rd, 1894. He received a very complete training in all three of the fighting services and fought in the Great War. Not only has he become the most popular figure of modern times, but our greatest Ambassador of Empire. The second son of the King and Queen, Prince Albert, now Duke of York, was born at Sandringham on December 14th, 1895, and served in the Air Force during the Great War. He married Lady Elizabeth Bowes-Lyon on April 26th, 1923. The only daughter of Their Majesties, Princess Victoria Mary, was born on April 25th, 1897, and married Viscount Lascelles on February 28th, 1922. As the first Princess of the House of Windsor she has taken a great interest in many spheres of National life, and is enthusiastically received wherever she goes. London accorded her a tumultuous welcome



THE KING AND QUEEN, WHEN PRINCE AND PRINCESS OF WALES, IN 1901, OPENING  
THE FIRST PARLIAMENT OF THE COMMONWEALTH OF AUSTRALIA

when driving through its streets on her wedding day. Prince Henry, now Duke of Gloucester, the third son of Their Majesties, was born on March 31st, 1900, and entered the Army. Like his brothers, he has visited many parts of the Empire. Prince George, now Duke of Kent, the fourth son, was born on December 20th, 1902, and entered the Navy. He married Princess Marina on November 29th, 1934.



It has been the invariable custom of the King to rise about 7.20 a.m. and to be at work in his study by eight. After breakfast—often the occasion for a talk with some official—he returns to his desk by ten o'clock. Except for a brief interval of forty minutes during which he walks in the grounds of Buckingham Palace with a visitor or Equerry, His Majesty is able to take little additional exercise or relaxation during the whole day while in residence in the Capital. The Royal Standard flying over Buckingham Palace denotes to the people of London that the King is among them.

The same routine is followed in the afternoon, and again until the hour for dining. State occasions and other official functions, of course, interfere with the regularity of this arduous life; but much of the King's day is spent examining State documents which he insists on reading in their entirety and not in *precis* form. The brief intervals spent at Windsor, Sandringham, Balmoral, and aboard *Britannia* offer more opportunities for relaxation, but messengers are continually bringing dispatches for His Majesty's attention even during these periods of rest. Since his remarkable recovery from a serious illness in 1928 and 1929 it has been the widely-expressed hope of his subjects that the severity of the daily routine may be eased and the periods of relaxation increased.



In the middle of the Irish crisis there came the first murmurings of a storm over Europe. With a rapidity that seems almost incredible, the murder of the heir to the Austro-Hungarian Throne, at Serajevo, in Bosnia (now a portion of the Kingdom of Jugo-Slavia), on June 28th, 1914, was made the cause of a war that spread across the whole world.

Appreciating fully the situation that was fast developing on the Continent of Europe, the unvarying commonsense of the British public



*Photo, W. & D. Downey, London*

THEIR MAJESTIES KING GEORGE V AND QUEEN MARY IN THEIR  
CORONATION ROBES

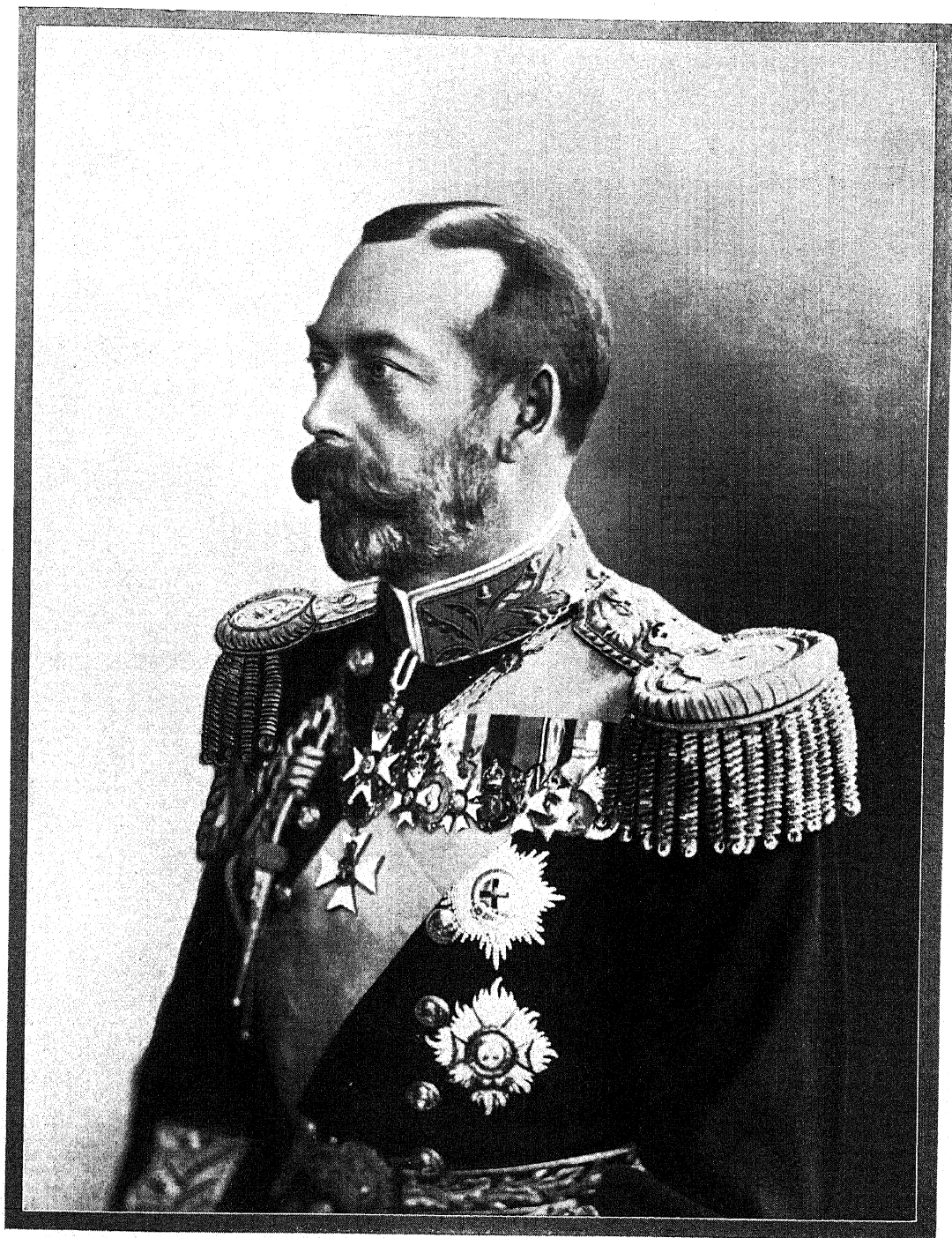




HER MAJESTY QUEEN MARY

*Photo, W. & D. Downey*





HIS MAJESTY KING GEORGE V

*Photo, W. & D. Downey*

and politicians came into active being. Home politics, with the bitterness they had engendered, were resolutely put aside, and all the parties and peoples of the Empire united, first in an effort to delay or limit the extent of the conflagration, and, when this was found to be impossible, to place the Empire in a proper condition to defend its world-wide responsibilities.

Well known to those who followed the course of events that led irresistibly to the participation of the British Empire in the World War were the King's efforts to avert the outbreak of hostilities by the exchange of personal messages with, and appeals to the rulers of all the Great Powers of the world. But the hand of destiny swept across Europe as it had done before with other generations. This time, however, with the increased speed of modern means of communication and mobilisation. Although little understood at the time, it can now be seen that everything which tends to increase the speed at which we live will also increase the swiftness with which the wings of war will gather and hover over the countries of the world. Within fourteen days of the political murder at Serajevo seven declarations of war had been issued and five of the Great Powers of Europe were involved in the struggle. Within eight days of the murder mobilisation of the armed forces of most European countries was in progress and the invasion of Belgium by Germany had already commenced.

Finding that all efforts to avert the outbreak of the greatest war in history were unavailing, the King devoted himself heart and soul to the task of preparing the Empire for the long and terrible struggle. He bade farewell to the gallant British Expeditionary Force, the flower of the Regular Army, which was hurried into action in order to retard the German advance across Belgium and so allow of the completion of French mobilisation. Within fourteen days this "little British Army" had in very truth "gone a long, long way" towards saving a critical situation, but, despite a cleverly executed fighting retreat, it had been almost decimated.

This is no place to attempt a history of the Great War. The Nation came slowly to regard His Majesty more as the supreme leader of his peoples and the one solid rock amid the chaos of all things material which the sudden spectre of war had created. As time went on they saw him less and less as a Monarch and more and more as a Sailor or a Soldier. There grew in the hearts of a bewildered and bereaved people a deeper reverence



CORONATION OF KING GEORGE V AND QUEEN MARY  
The Royal Procession passing along Parliament Street on June 23rd, 1911

for one whom they regarded as the father of the British family that was struggling for existence.

They saw him bidding farewell to his own sons when journeying by one of the daily troop trains to the battle-line in France or to the Fleets waiting in the Northern mists. There came a time when he insisted on visiting the troops at the Front, and there encouraged them with the well-known words : "I cannot share in your trials, but I can assure you of the proud confidence and gratitude of myself and your fellow countrymen." Then in the gloom of Northern seas to the great Fleets there assembled after the Battle of Jutland he came as a Sailor-King and all of us who met him face to face recognised that *he* was bearing the greatest burden of all.

At long, long last came the day of Victory and the great march of the Allied Forces through London. There was a day also when the vast populace of the Capital, voicing the feeling that ran deep through the



PROCESSION OF KNIGHTS OF THE GARTER AT WINDSOR CASTLE  
The King and Queen proceeding to the Chapel on June 14th, 1913





INVESTITURE OF H.R.H. THE PRINCE OF WALES AT CARNARVON CASTLE



THE HIGHLAND GATHERING AT BRAEMAR, SEPTEMBER 4, 1913

Their Majesties, with Prince Henry, Princess Mary and the late Prince John, watching the Highland Games

hearts of all the peoples of the Empire, were able to show their gratitude and loyalty to the one whom destiny had called to the throne but of whom the people desired to make *their King*.

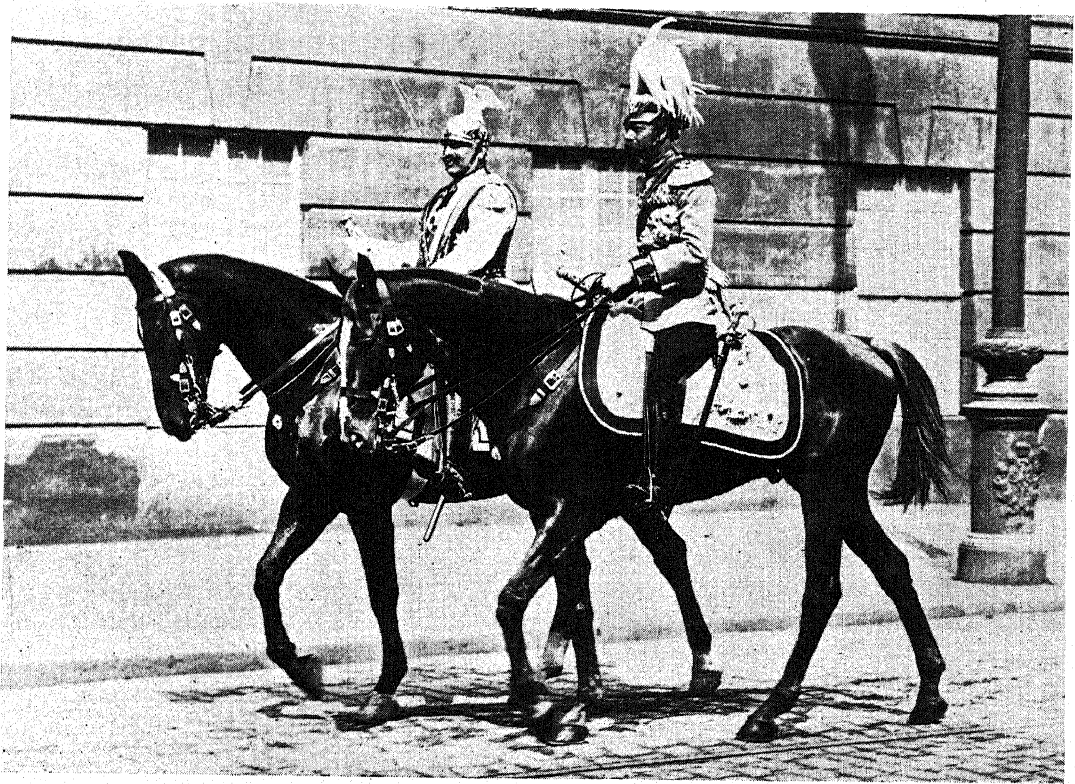
Scarcely had the smoke of battle cleared to show a devastated Europe before there came what can faithfully be described as the most heart-rending period of the King's reign. The fires of rebellion flamed fiercely in Ireland during 1919-20, and those who were regarded as *ourselves* yielded to persuasive tongues and looked down the long valley of years to find grievances sufficient to justify their becoming enemies. Had this process of reasoning spread to the Island of Great Britain there can be little doubt that once again many of its people would have taken the field in defence of the Red or the White Rose.

In these post-war years the public saw their King on many occasions as the leader of his peoples. On November 11th, 1920, he was the chief mourner at the burial of the Unknown Soldier in Westminster Abbey. Then, in more pleasant surroundings, at the Marriage of Princess Mary,

when the vast crowds seemed undecided as to whom they desired to give the most rousing reception. In 1924 His Majesty opened the great Empire Exhibition at Wembley, which has proved in the passage of years to have been the means of increasing and consolidating Empire trade and focussing attention on the most promising field for economic expansion left by the new Nationalism.

At the wedding of the Duke and Duchess of York, His Majesty seemed in happy mood and showed the more genial side of a nature held in check for many years by the unceasing calls of duty and the passing of troublous times. Perhaps the most difficult problem for Royalty to-day is the nice blending of dignity with cordiality, and this Their Majesties seem always to succeed in accomplishing to a degree which makes them both respected and beloved.

Thoughts like this almost inevitably occur when one sees them at the Derby, at Ascot, at the Highland Games, or greeting a famous football



THE KING, WITH THE KAISER, RIDING TO THE GREAT MILITARY REVIEW  
AT POTSDAM, IN 1913

team. But it is when the King is enjoying such favourite country pursuits as grouse-shooting at Balmoral, Braemar, Moy, Sandringham or Windsor that he appears to be the happiest. His favourite sport is shooting ; and stamp-collecting is to him an absorbing hobby. While in India, in 1911, a great shoot was arranged in Nepal, and being a first-class shot His Majesty secured both tigers and bears. Shooting wild beasts from the *howdah* of an elephant is often dangerous and calls for nerves of steel as well as expert marksmanship. On two occasions tigers sprang at the King's elephant, but the *mahout* guided the animal so that the King could shoot effectively, and in both cases his unerring marksmanship triumphed.

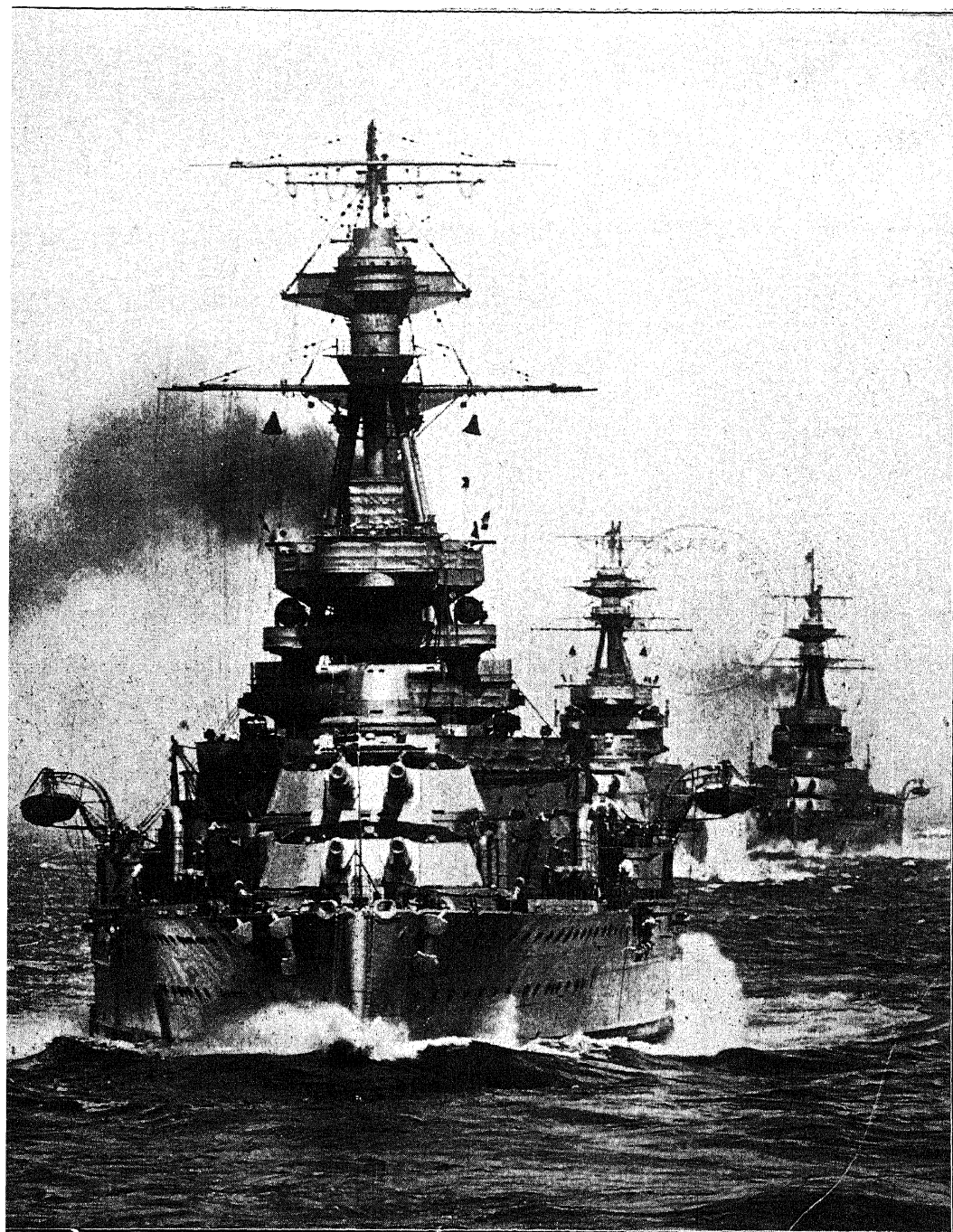


The realm of diplomacy is one that can be only lightly touched upon here, because little becomes known of the part played by any monarch in this form of international political manœuvre until history records it years after those who participated have passed away from earthly cares. There can be no doubt, however, that King George inherited his father's gift, and that his sincerity has caused him to be trusted by foreign nations on many occasions. It is, in fact, a current belief in most courts and chancellories that when His Majesty has exercised his influence it has invariable been for a beneficent purpose. Among his many apt expressions of friendship which have received high tribute in the Press of the countries concerned, there is his famous message to the President of France in 1922 : " The memories of common sorrows and glories must recall for all time the sentiments of faithful comradeship which inspired those who fell side by side in the Great War."

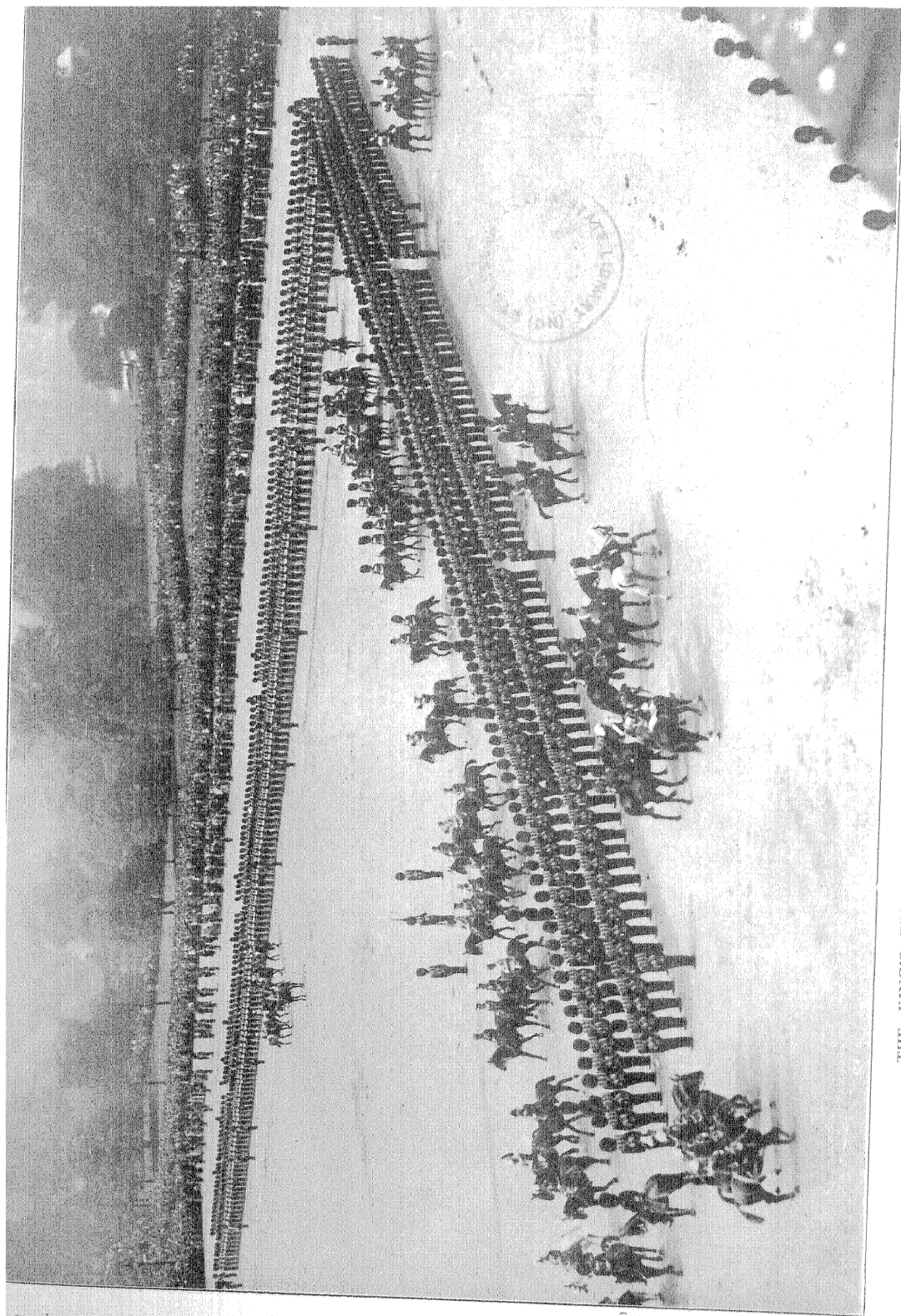
In spite of a slight and happily passing political tension between the two countries at that date, the human basis upon which His Majesty placed the relationship caused *Le Temps* to state : " We are hearing at last the real voice of England."

In Belgium, and in Italy in 1923, the visits of the King and Queen accomplished much towards increasing the friendship between these countries and the British Empire. There is, however, another aspect, even more vital, if that is possible, than the friendship of European nations. It is the King's personal influence on behalf of, and his often expressed desire for the welfare of India and the Dominions and Colonies.



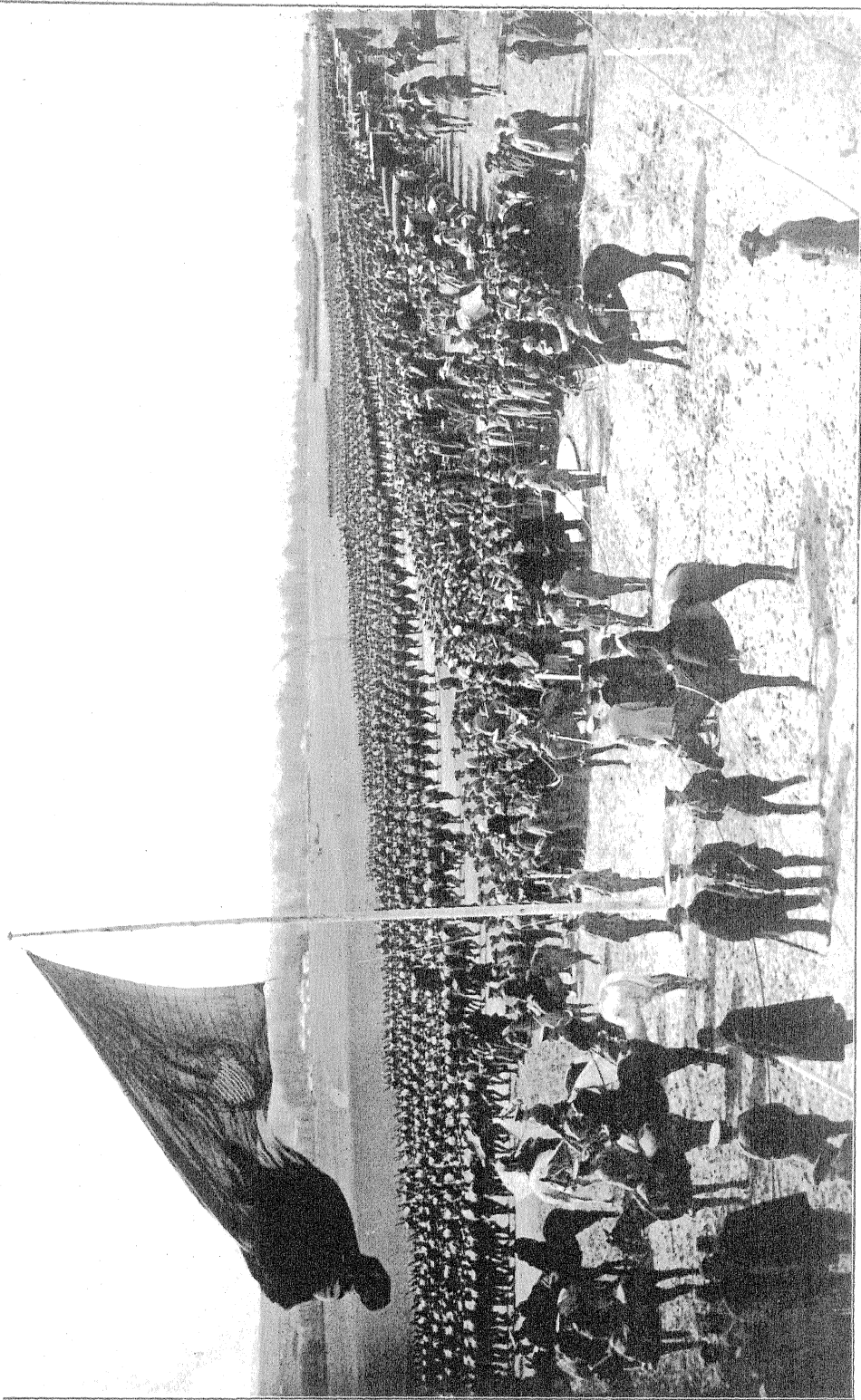


AUGUST, 1914

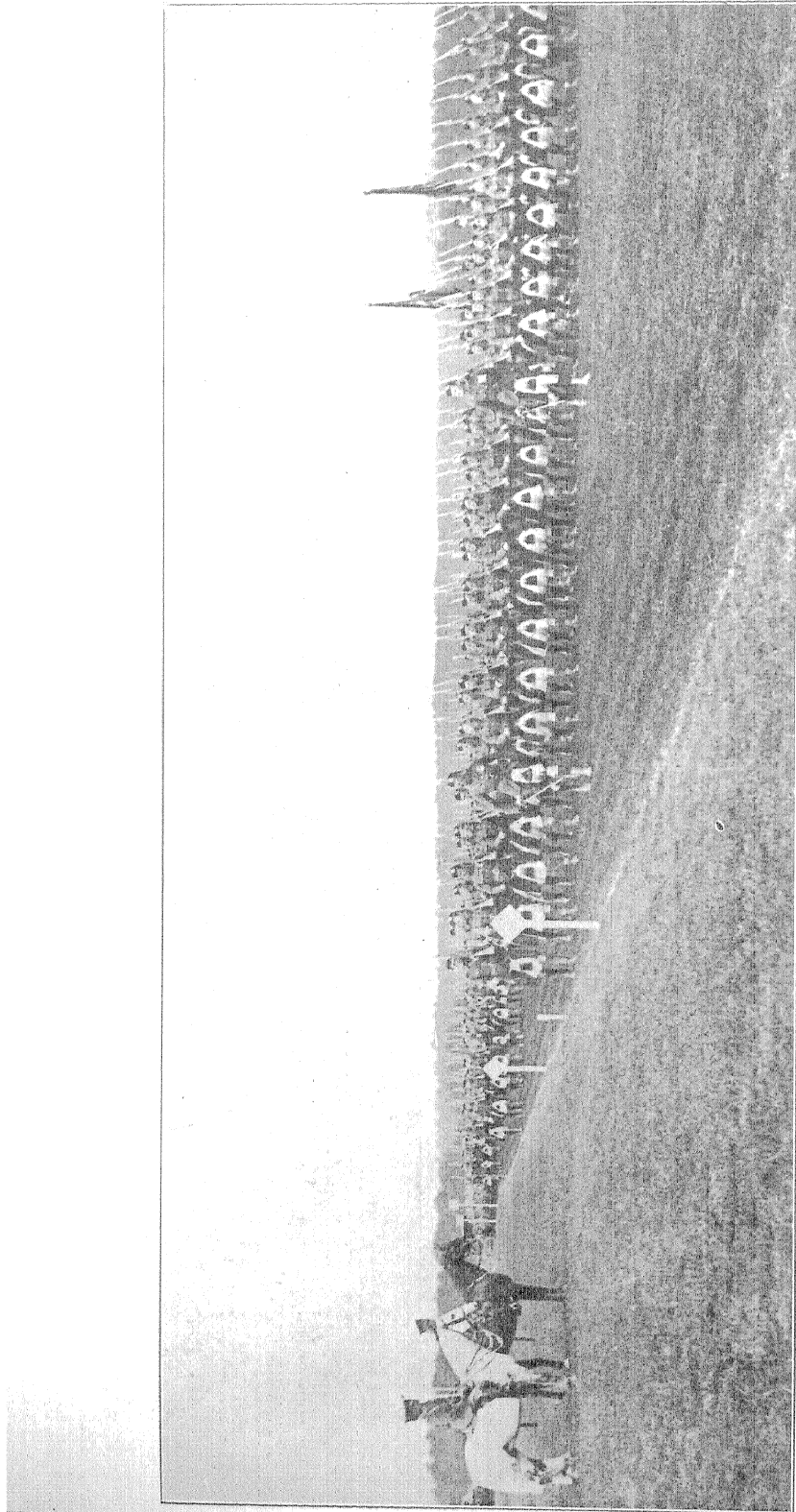


THE KING'S BIRTHDAY, TROOPING THE COLOUR ON THE HORSE GUARDS PARADE  
*The Times*

*Photo. Sharp & General*



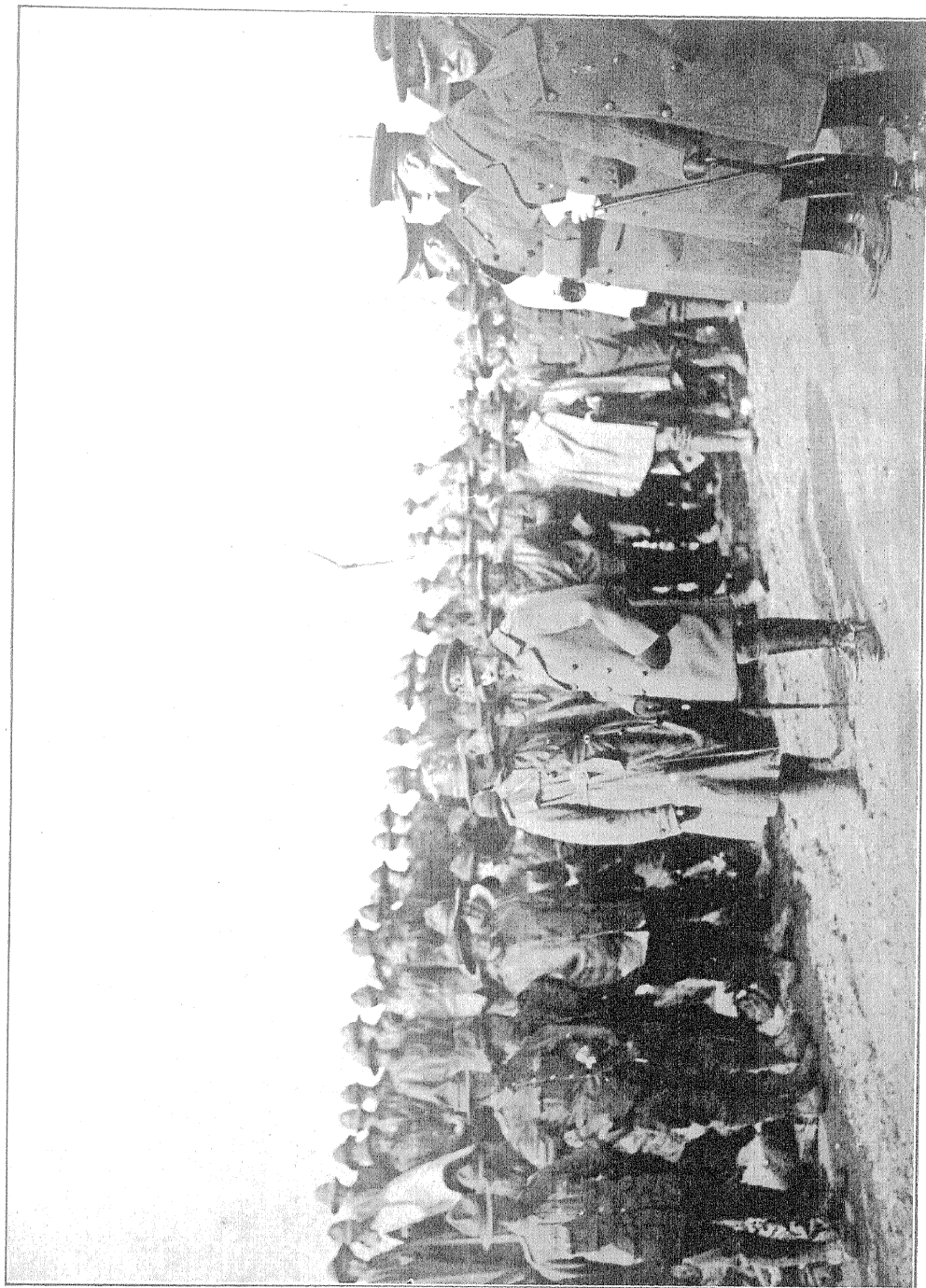
HIS MAJESTY THE KING AT ALDERSHOT



THE ROYAL REVIEW ON LAFFAN'S PLAIN, ALDERSHOT  
H.M. The King taking the salute from a Scottish Regiment

*Photo, Sport and General*





AFTER THE BATTLE

His Majesty the King in the New Zealand Lines during the great German offensive of 1918

*Photo, Imperial War Museum*

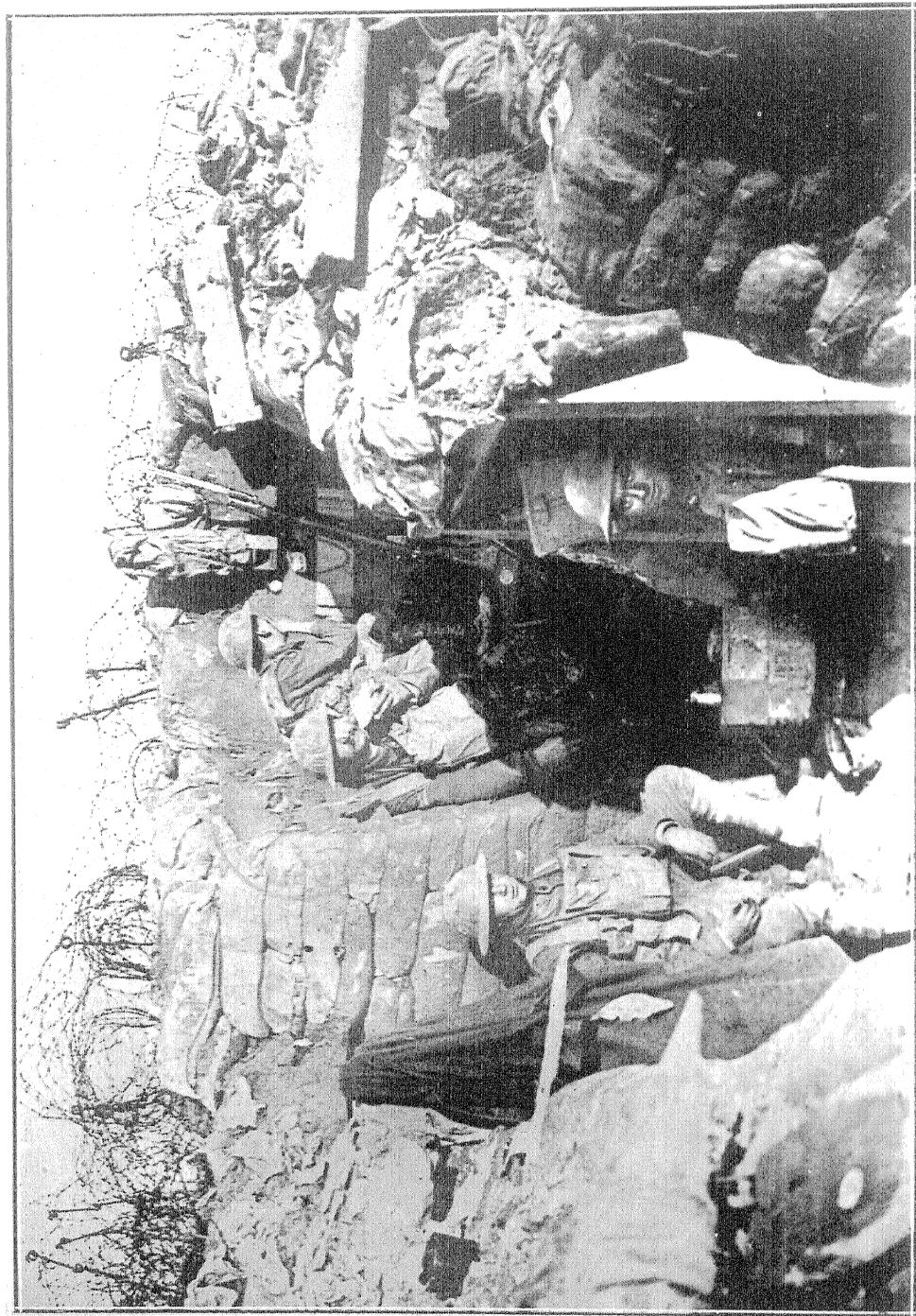


HIS MAJESTY THE KING, WITH ADMIRAL LORD BEATTY  
On board the "Queen Elizabeth," Flagship of the Grand Fleet, at Scapa Flow



HIS MAJESTY THE KING, WITH GENERAL LORD BYNG  
Looking at the Remains of Thiepval Church, June 13th, 1917



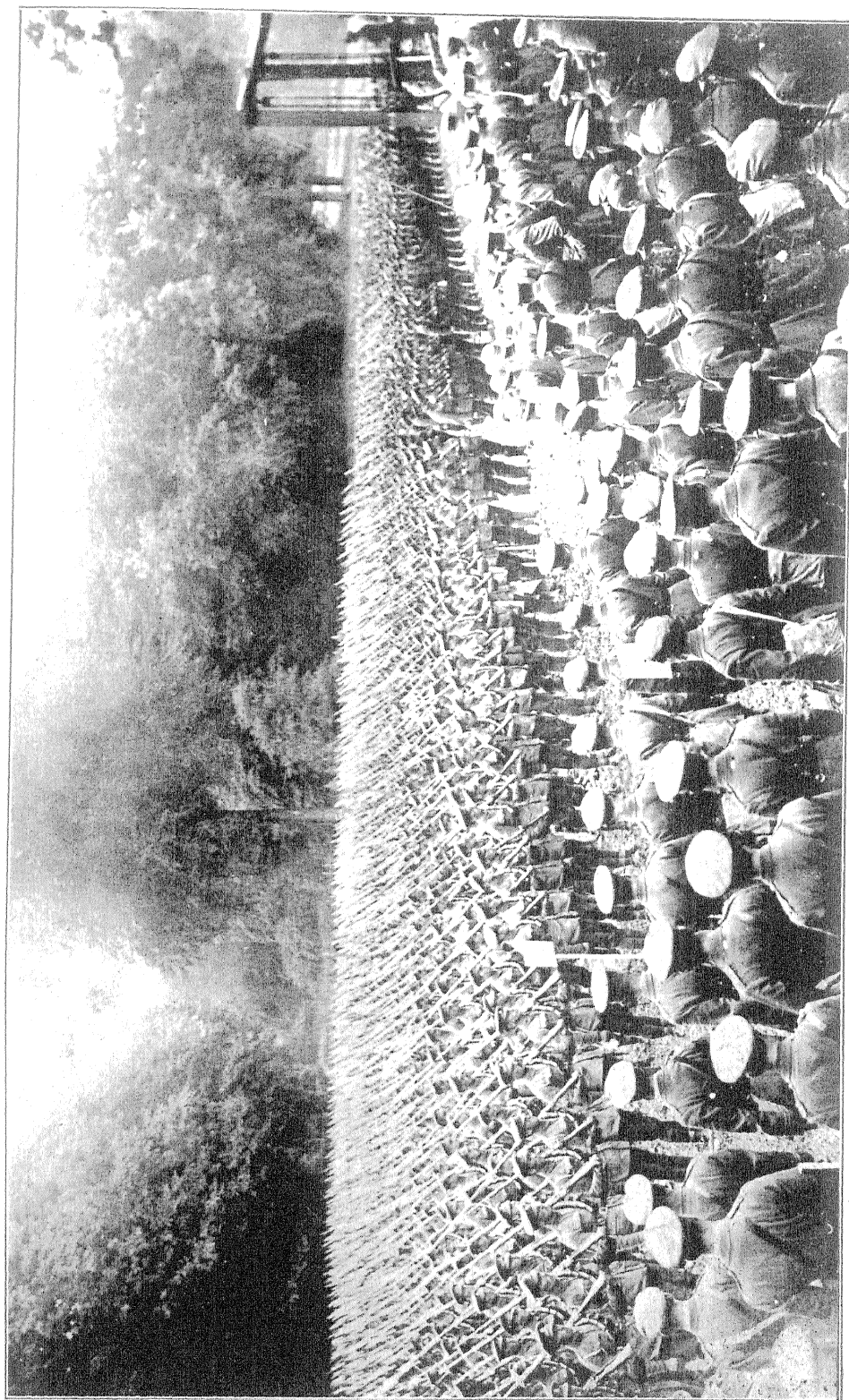


*I.W.M. Photos*

MEN OF THE 14th EAST LANCASHIRE REGIMENT IN A SAPHEAD AT GIVENCHY

*[Copyright Reserved]*

*[Note Camouflaged periscope and shuttered loophole]*



THE PRAYER FOR VICTORY

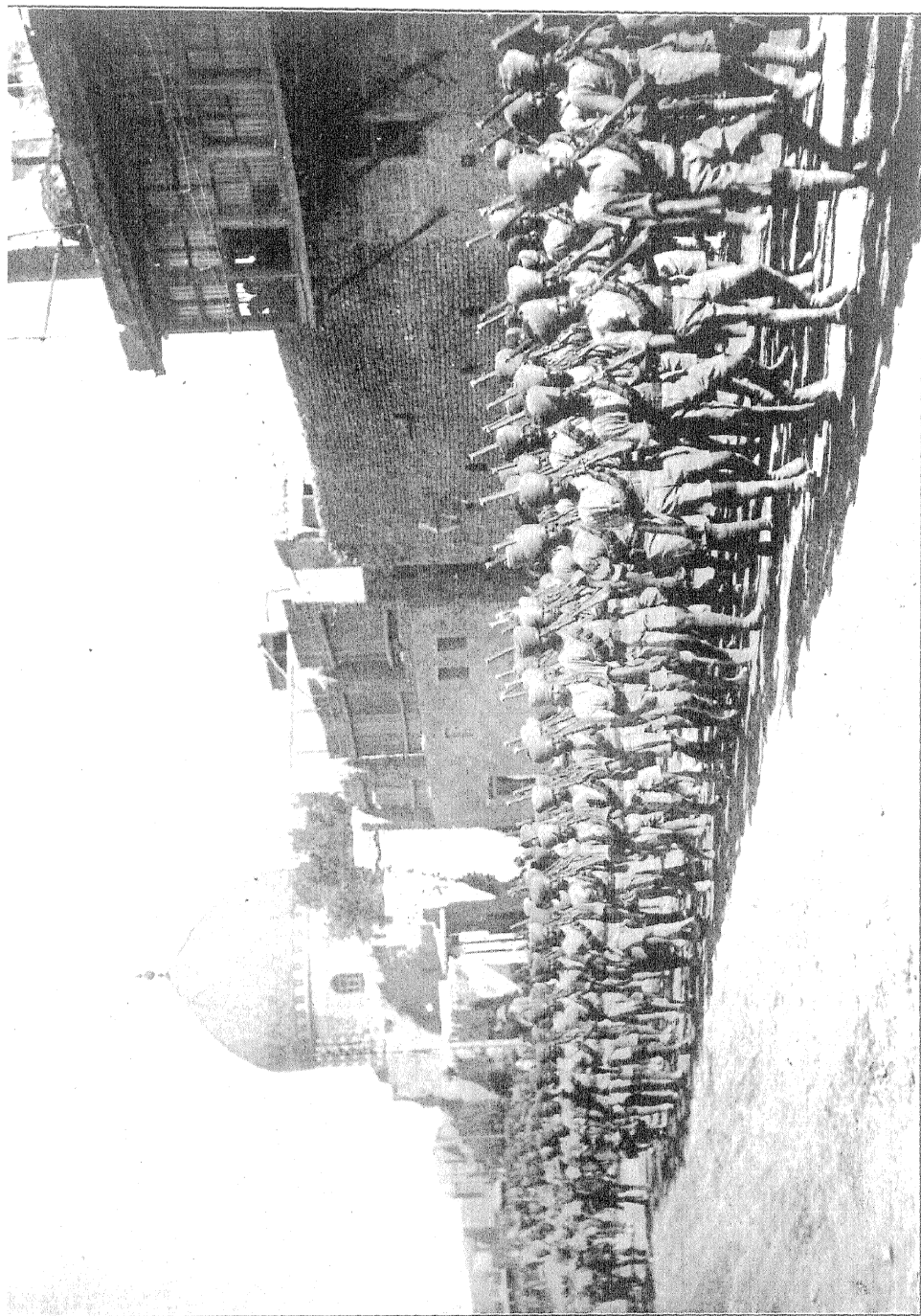
Troops of the First Army at a great field service held at Ranchicourt, on August 5th, 1917—the first day of the fourth year of the Great War

*Photo, Imperial War Museum*



*I.W.M. Photos]*

SQUADRON OF BRITISH BRISTOL FIGHTERS FLYING OVER THE ALPS

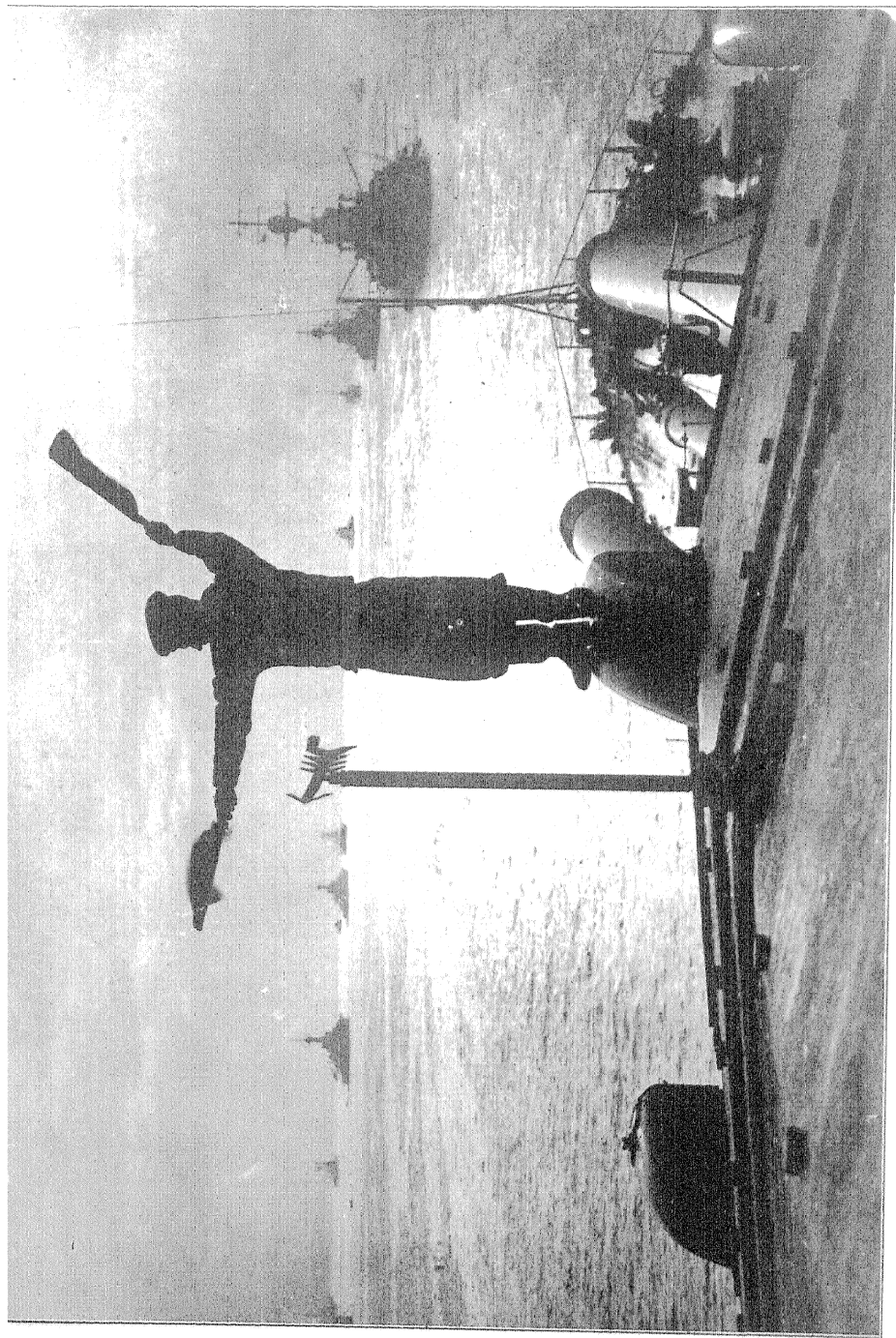


THE CAPTURE OF BAGHDAD

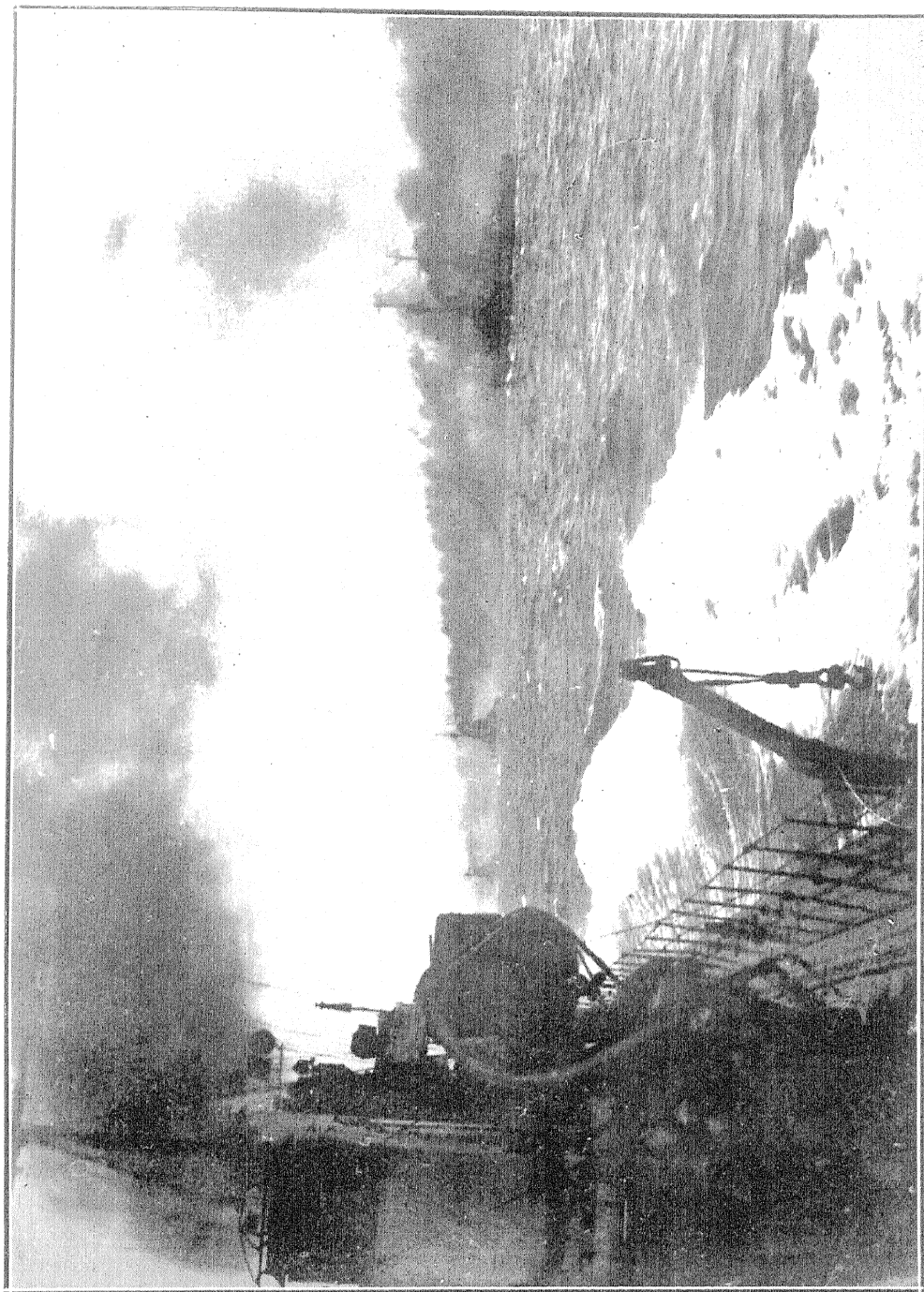
Victorious Indian Troops marching through the capital of Mesopotamia (Iraq)

*Photo, Imperial War Museum*





THE MORNING OF VICTORY. SCAPA FLOW, NOVEMBER 11th, 1918 *Photo, Imperial War Museum*  
The Signal of Victory from the Grand Fleet at Scapa Flow extended along the British Battle Line for 3,000 miles, to Basra in the Persian Gulf

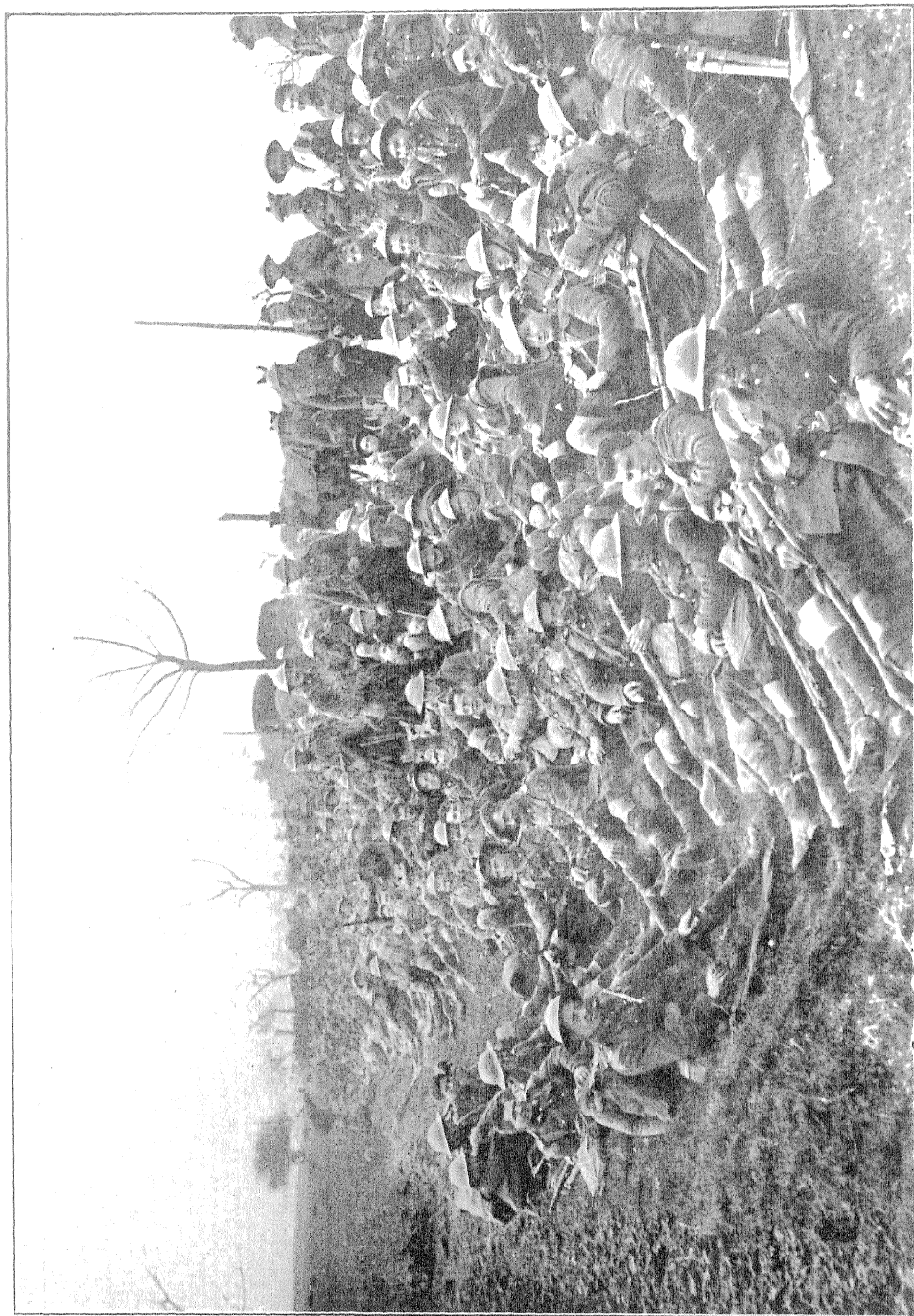


*I.W.M. Photos*

SURRENDER OF THE GERMAN FLEET

On November 21st, 1918, the German Fleet steamed into Scapa Flow to surrender to Admiral Sir David Beatty

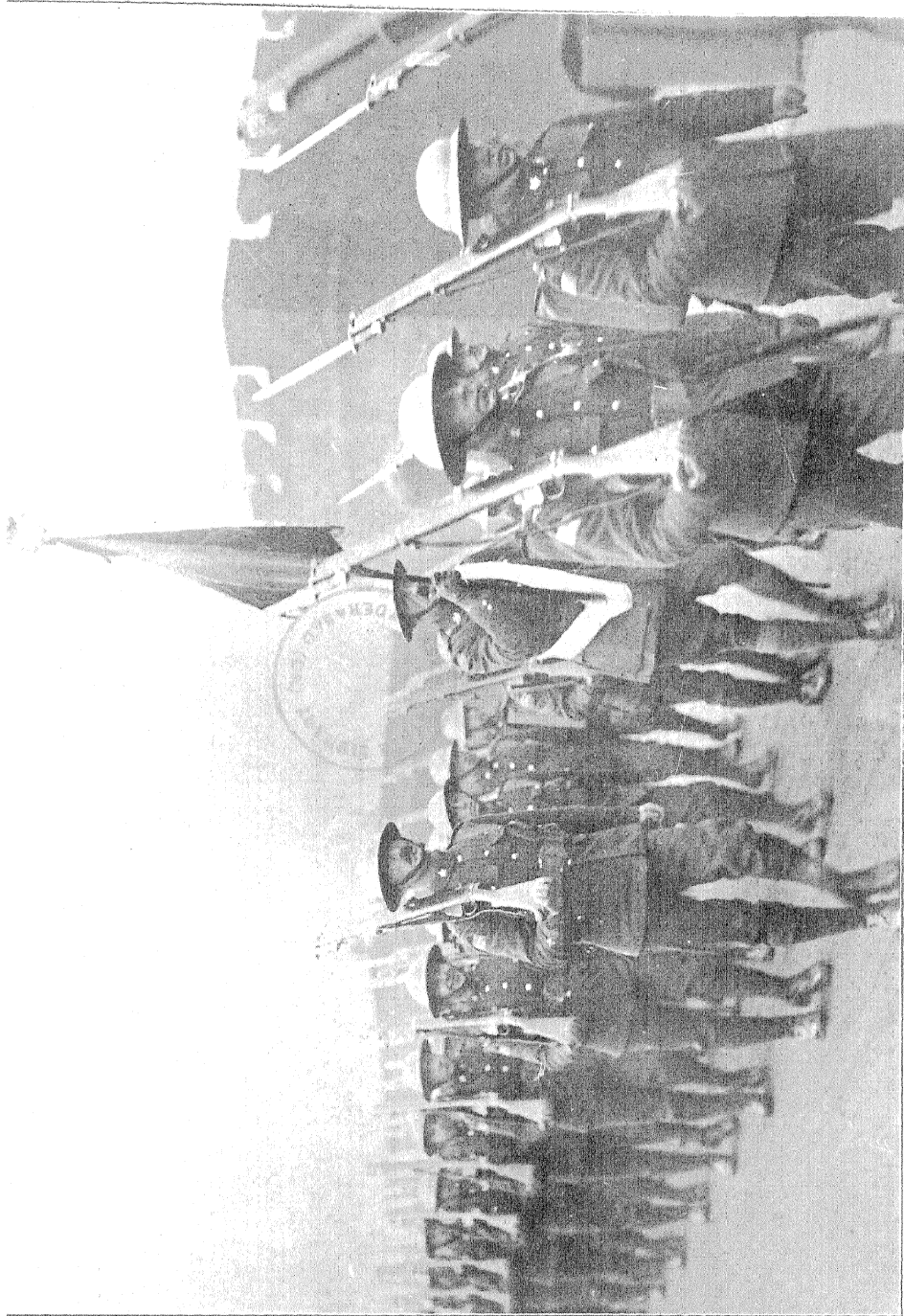
*[Copyright Reserved]*



#### THE TIDE OF VICTORY

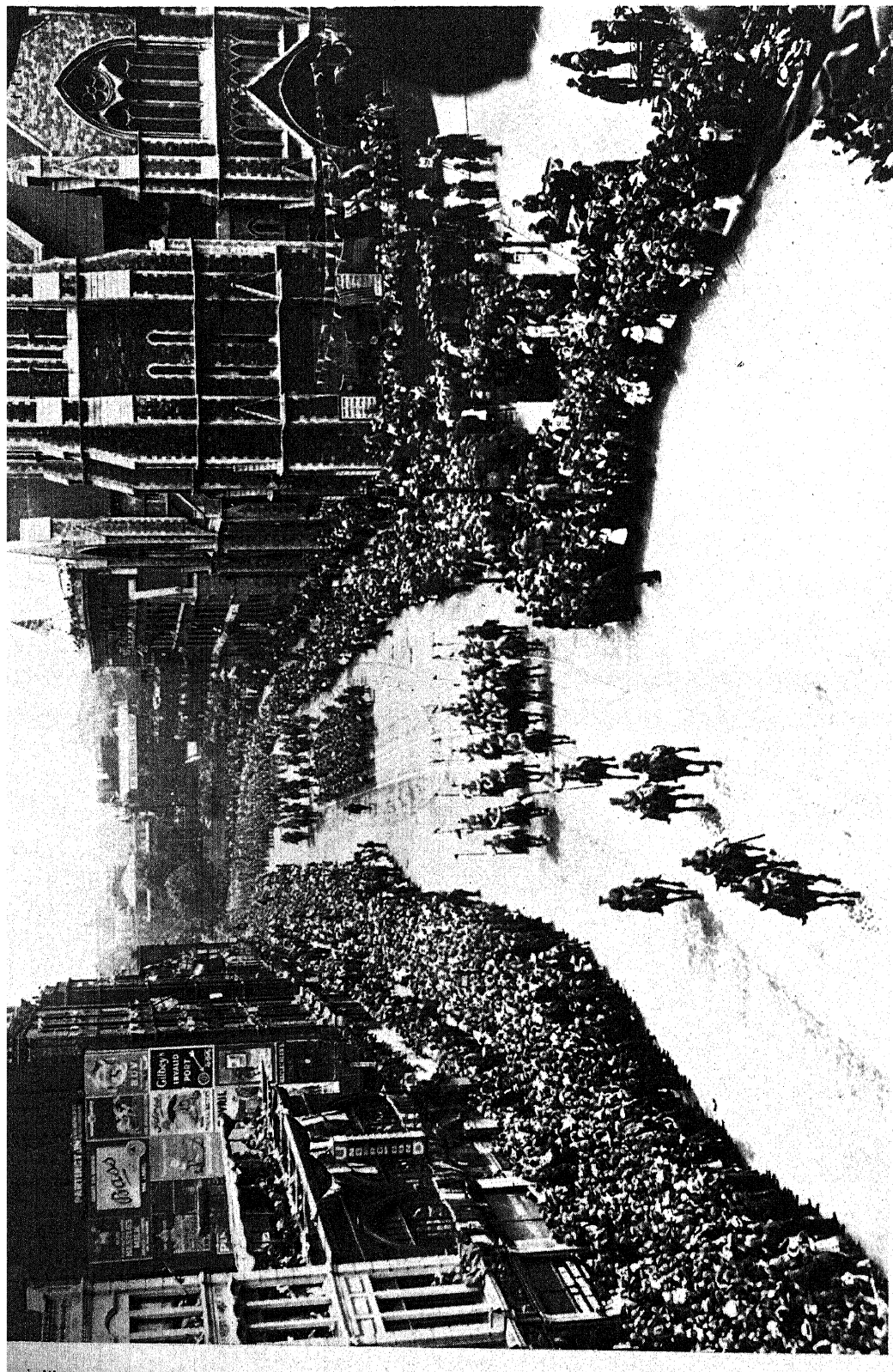
South African Scottish resting by the roadside after the severe fighting which preceded the rout of the German Armies at the close of the year 1918





PRINCESS PAT'S CANADIAN LIGHT INFANTRY ON THEIR WAY TO WESTMINSTER  
ABBEY WITH THE FLAG CARRIED BY THEM THROUGH THE GREAT WAR

*Photo, Sport & General*



THE VICTORY MARCH, THROUGH LONDON, JULY, 1919

In the struggles between the political parties in Great Britain there have been times when either one side or the other have become so engrossed in affairs at home that they have omitted to observe sufficient consideration for the effect of their words and acts in the Empire overseas. With the personal knowledge acquired by His Majesty in past years, and by that great Ambassador of Empire, the Prince of Wales, or, more recently, by other of the Royal Princes, the throne is in constant touch with every portion of the world-wide British Empire ; and the King is able to use his influence to the Imperial good.



Of all the events of King George's reign the most difficult to write about is the serious illness which assailed him in the years 1928-9. Difficult because it seems impossible to convey a true conception of the great anxiety that prevailed among his peoples, combined with the feeling that after risking life and health so many times in the War to perform a duty, and bearing the terrible strain of fourteen years of superhuman effort, his health had given way just at the moment when everyone was hoping that the sunshine was coming back into the lives of a King and Queen, who, perhaps, more than any British Sovereigns of the past, deserved the calm that so often succeeds the tempest.

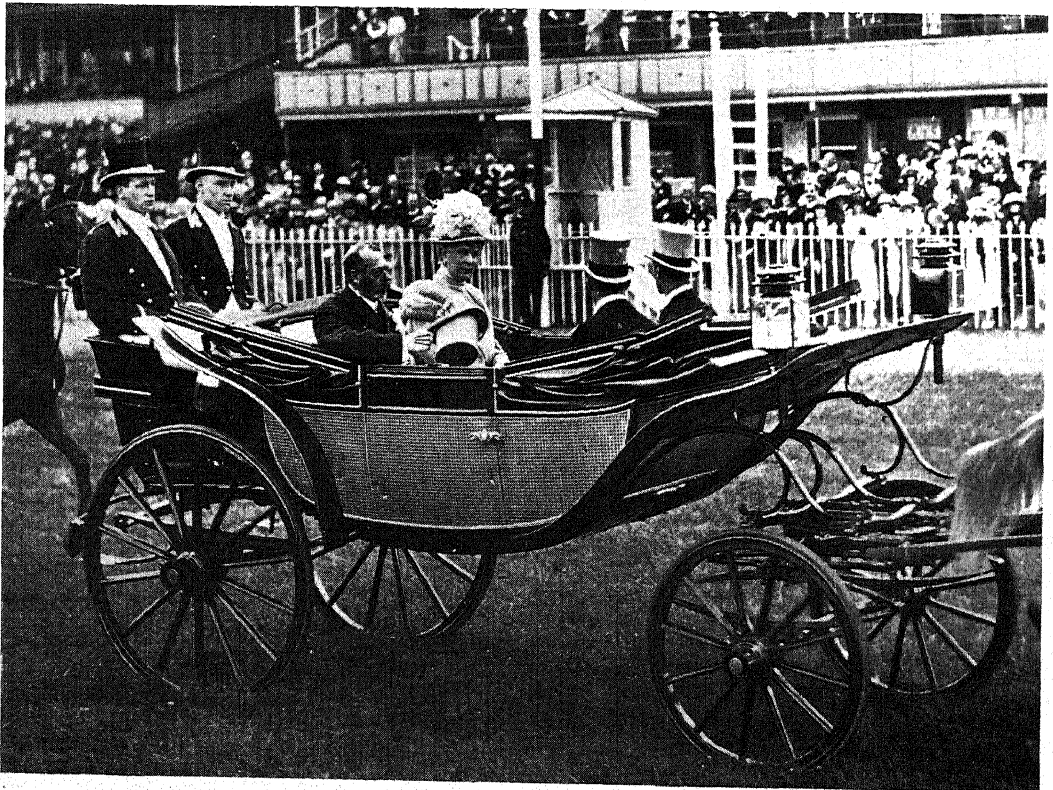
It was at eight o'clock on the evening of Wednesday, November 21st, 1928, that the first bulletin made known to the Nation, and, literally in a flash, to the whole world, that something more than a passing indisposition had occurred to the King. As days and weeks went by and the foremost physicians, surgeons, bacteriologists and others were called into consultation and additional names appeared below the day and night bulletins, the Nation's anxiety was intensified or relieved. The week of greatest strain began on December 7th. By Christmas, however, hopes ran high. Convalescence was naturally slow during the early Spring of 1929. Then came recuperation at Bognor, on the South Coast, and finally the Thanksgiving at Westminster Abbey and throughout the Empire.

There were two spontaneous happenings in connection with the King's recovery. One occurred after their drive back from the Abbey amid the joyous crowds. Their Majesties appeared on the balcony of Buckingham Palace to acknowledge the roar of cheers which came from the assembled citizens of the Capital. The other was the unison of all political

parties, classes, creeds and peoples throughout the Empire in the general thanksgiving for the return of health unto His Majesty. The sure knowledge that millions of people think and feel as *one* loyal subject in times of National anxiety, suffering and joy—in peace as in war—is the best possible augury for the future of the British Empire. The roll of the drums that encircled the world from Westminster Abbey at the time of the Thanksgiving Service thrilled with patriotic joy the hearts of Britons to the uttermost parts of that Empire.



The public spirit of the Prince of Wales has aroused both respect and enthusiasm on so many occasions and in so many parts of the world that there is scarcely a people, certainly not within the British Empire, whose faces do not light up with genuine pleasure whenever his name is mentioned. In November, 1928, His Royal Highness was in the depths of the Central African bush, engaged on one of his Empire tours of inspection, when the news of the King's illness reached him by native runner. At once began a headlong dash for 6,000 miles to his father's bedside. Leaving his camp



ASCOT, 1925. THE KING AND QUEEN DRIVING ALONG THE COURSE



#### HIS MAJESTY THE KING OPENS PARLIAMENT

With time-honoured pageantry, H.M. The King, accompanied by the Queen, drives in State from Buckingham Palace to Westminster

in the interior he reached Dodoma, in Tanganyika Territory, on November 28th. Dar-es-Salaam was left in H.M.S. *Enterprise* on December 2nd and he arrived at Buckingham Palace at 10.30 a.m. on December 11th.

Although the night was particularly cold and wet when the Prince arrived in London, the public spirit which had actuated his dash half across the world in less than a fortnight, without recourse to what he would doubtless have preferred, a fast and comfortable aeroplane, combined with the proof of deep private affection, so touched the feelings of the people of London that he was accorded a truly Royal welcome.

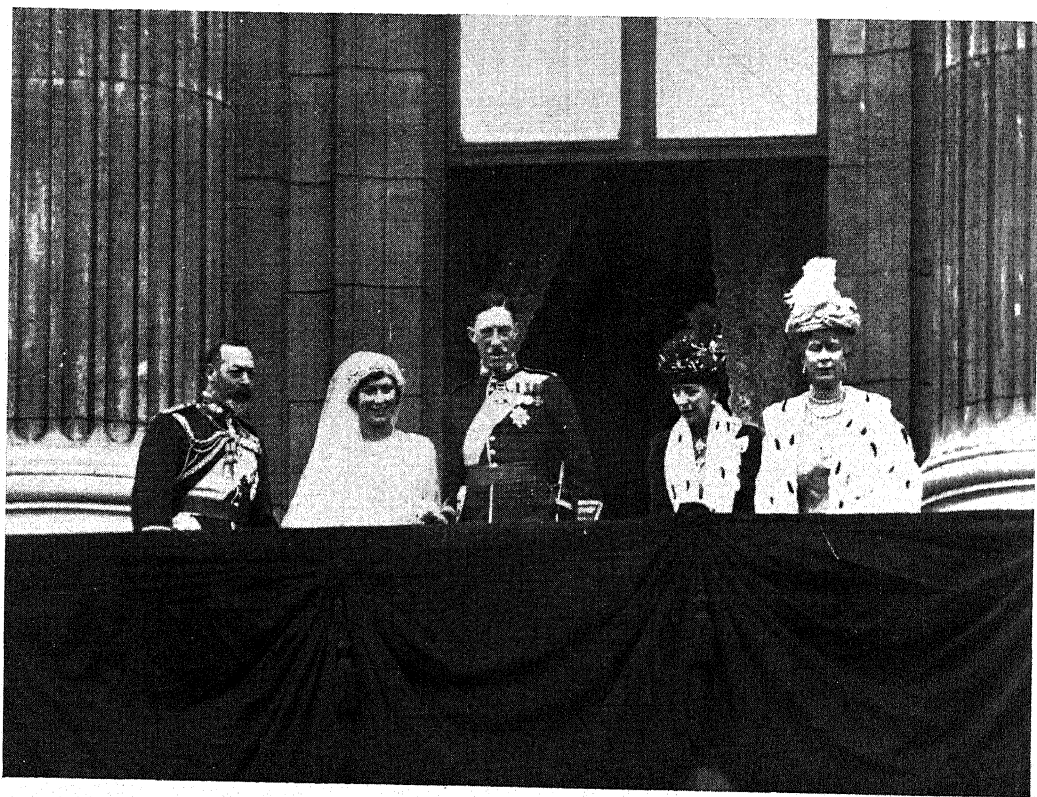
To the great joy of all His Majesty's subjects there has been, since his illness, such a remarkable restoration to complete health that he appears to now enjoy greater physical fitness than for many years. As we have learned since, the accident which occurred to him during a second visit to the battle front, when he was badly crushed and shaken, and was brought home in a hospital ship, greatly weakened his powers of resistance. Although



unknown to the public, he then made only a slow and painful recovery, but nevertheless continued with courage and endurance to carry on his activities of directing and encouraging during one of the darkest periods of the War.



Great changes have come into the lives of everyone since Their Majesties ascended the throne in 1910-11. Although it seems but a short



PRINCESS MARY'S WEDDING DAY  
The Royal Party on the Balcony at Buckingham Palace

time ago to those of us who can well remember the pageantry of this great event, it has been a quarter of a century of unusually rapid progress. Looking back still further to the days when the King and Prince Albert joined their first ship, as naval cadets, in 1879, sail had only recently been exchanged for steam as a means of propulsion at sea, and "ironclads" were still among the capital ships of the Royal Navy. In the Army, the uniforms were all scarlet, blue and dark green, with busbies and helmets. The streets of big cities were lighted by gas. It was a Victorian England,





WEDDING OF THE DUKE AND DUCHESS OF YORK  
The Bridal Coach in Parliament Square, April, 1923



THE KING IN PARIS  
Inspecting the Guard of Honour of French Soldiers when placing a wreath on the Grave of the  
Unknown Warrior in Paris, 1925

in which patience, discipline, convention, self-restraint, deference to age, and the sanctity of family life, were the virtues taught and rigidly enforced, to which these young Princes returned from their cruises to foreign parts.

For the next twenty years the visible change in English life was so slow as to be almost unnoticeable. Oversea expansion and adventure occupied principal place in the politics of this *Golden Age*. Then came the Second Boer War and the death of the Great Queen, when the entire nation went into mourning. The face of England changed more rapidly during the reign of King Edward VII. Electricity became available to every householder in the cities. The motor car and the cinematograph took the places of the victoria, the hansom cab, the provincial theatre, the London music hall, the myriorama and the circus. By 1908 submarines had taken their place among the fleets in being and the aeroplane was recognised as a practical possibility.

Since the accession of King George V and Queen Mary the results of scientific research have the more speedily changed the life of the people



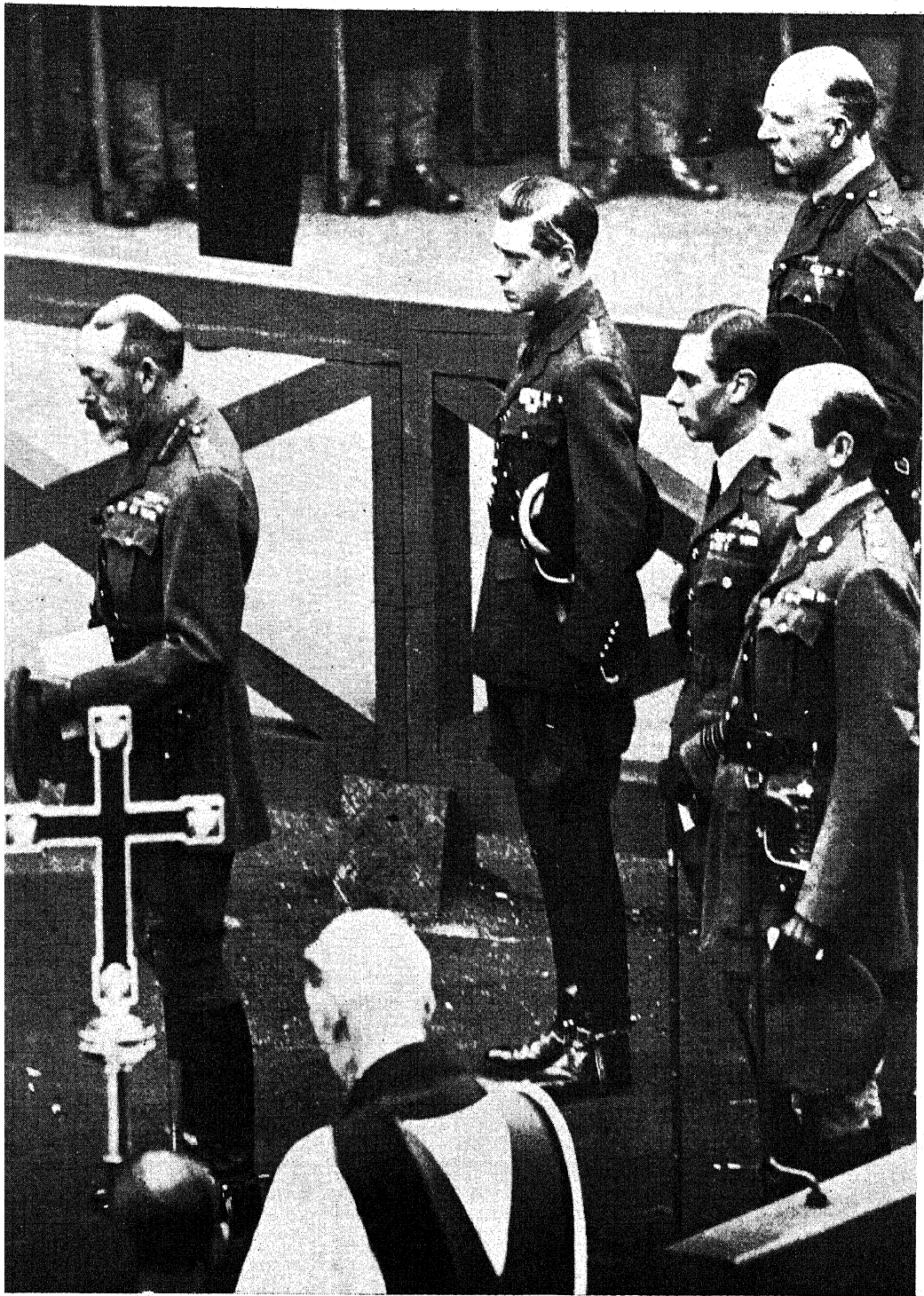
THE RETURN OF THEIR MAJESTIES TO LONDON, APRIL 29th, 1929, AFTER THE KING'S ILLNESS

of Britain, and of every other country. With the impetus given by the struggle of the Nations during the Great War science altered the trend of human thought in a single decade. Money became more plentiful both during and immediately after the Great War. For a time wealth strayed into the hands of those with insufficient brains to employ it either wisely for themselves or to the advantage of the nation as a whole. From an expensive war-machine the aeroplane came within the reach, first of the sportsman, then of the travelling public and post office and now of all who desire to fly. This evolution of a single invention would normally have occupied a century, instead it came within a quarter of that time. And so with the cheapening of motor car production, which has contributed more than anything else to the noticeable cleavage which has occurred in the life of those born in the Victorian age and living to-day.

Wireless broadcasting and television, all have come to change our habits during the present reign. Life at sea has been rendered far less hazardous. Space has almost succumbed to the combined onslaught of the aeroplane and the wireless wave. Australia is as close to England to-day in the all-important matter of time as Scotland was a hundred years ago. One can sit at home in England and talk to a friend in Canada, India, Australia, New Zealand and elsewhere with no more effort than the lifting of a telephone instrument. A week-end in Central Africa is well within the scope of possibilities for the near future. All these things and many more—so many and so far-reaching that the brain reels when contemplating the changes that will be made by their coming—have been sprung upon us so suddenly that it is a well-known fact that scientific encyclopedias cannot be printed and published before they become out-of-date.

The result is speed. To catch up with modern invention, so that the machine shall not be the master of man, we think more rapidly, have less time for ponderous speech, work more rapidly and play more rapidly. Yet progress has remained stationary in many things, and *there* only chaos will be found. The problem of the present is one of adjustment rather than to increase or decrease the pace of evolution. It must not be imagined that all has been gain without loss. There were many things that our fathers enjoyed that we know not, and greatest of them all was true leisure after the thrill of personal adventure.





ARMISTICE DAY IN LONDON

The King, The Prince of Wales, The Duke of York, and Prince Arthur of Connaught during the Two Minutes' Silence at the Cenotaph

When eighty years of age the Right Hon. Augustine Birrell, K.C., of "*Obiter Dicta*" fame, wrote the following. "The real question is are the inhabitants of Great Britain getting better or worse? . . . Are the sources of national manhood being dried up? Are we all quickly becoming either idle rich or lazy poor? Are deeds of daring and self-sacrifice likely to dwindle away and disappear? These are questions not to be answered dogmatically, for there is nothing in the history of the last sixty years to make us face the future with trembling knees, but neither is there any room for self-assurance. 'Some nations wax, others wane, and in a brief space of time the races of living men are changed, and like runners hand on the lamp of life'."



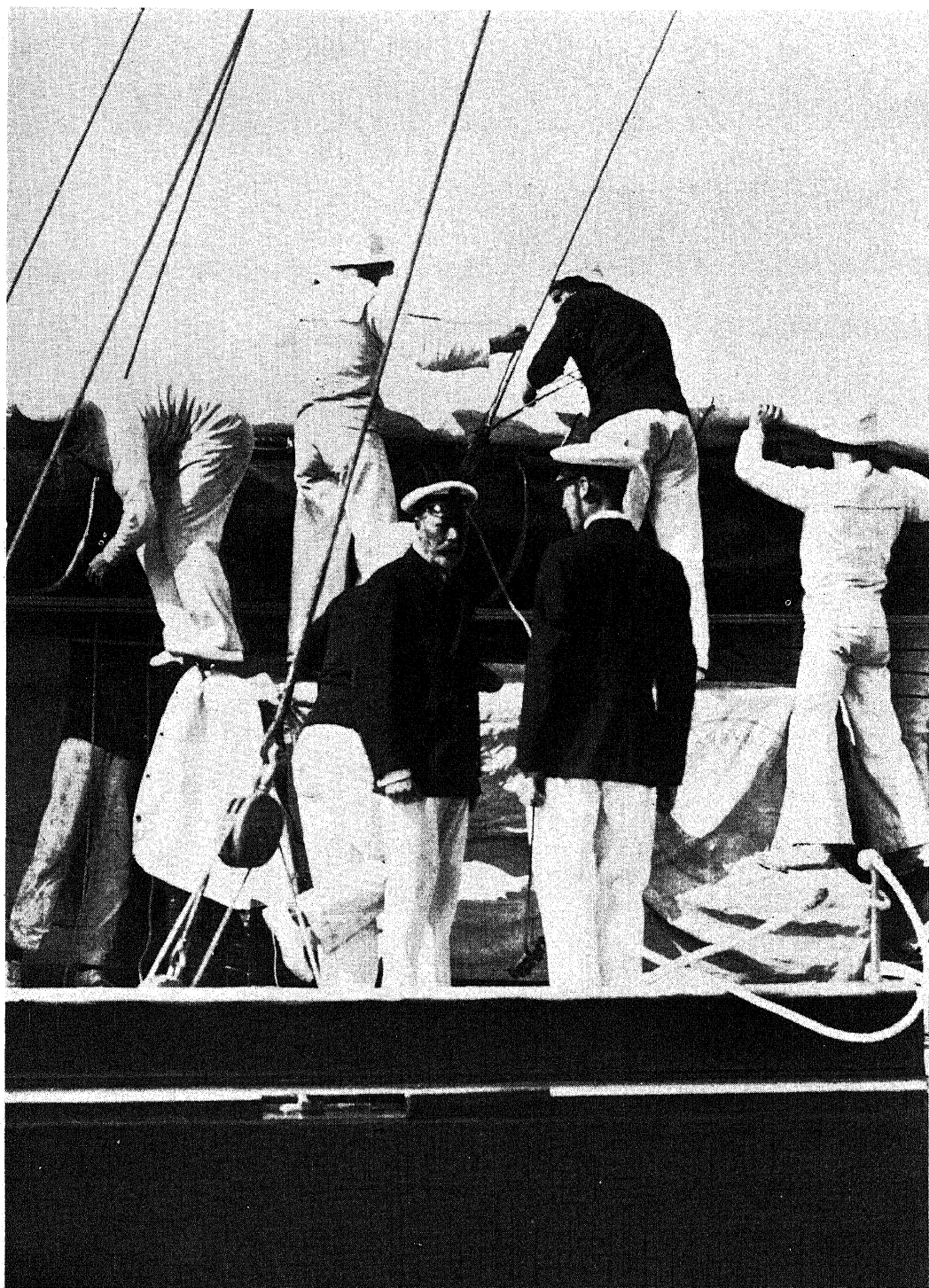
And what of the British Empire overseas during the past twenty-five years?

That it has grown in area and importance is well known. That its markets now absorb nearly half the exports of manufactured goods produced by the Motherland is not so clearly understood. That a change has come over the people of Great Britain is made clear by the vast quantities of raw materials now purchased from the Dominions and Colonies that were imported from foreign countries previous to the "Buy British" campaign. That the visits of Their Majesties in the past and of the Royal Princes in more recent years to almost every part of the far-flung Empire has strengthened the bonds, so that in the unstable world of to-day there has come to all the peoples within the Imperial fold the greater security of closer unity.

In the Great War all these Dominions and Colonies poured out their blood and treasure in the common cause. Their greatest Statesmen have taken part in all the Councils and Conferences of the Empire.

Each Dominion and Colony has signified its hope for closer trade relations than ever before. The Ottawa Agreement was stated to be only the beginning of mutual helpfulness. Dominions are trading with Colonies, as is the case with Canada and the West Indies, and so the web of Empire is being woven. The world to-day is no longer an open market. The French Empire, next in size and importance to that of Britain, assembled its counsellors and signed an agreement akin to that of Ottawa. Every foreign nation has become an almost self-contained unit. The Empire





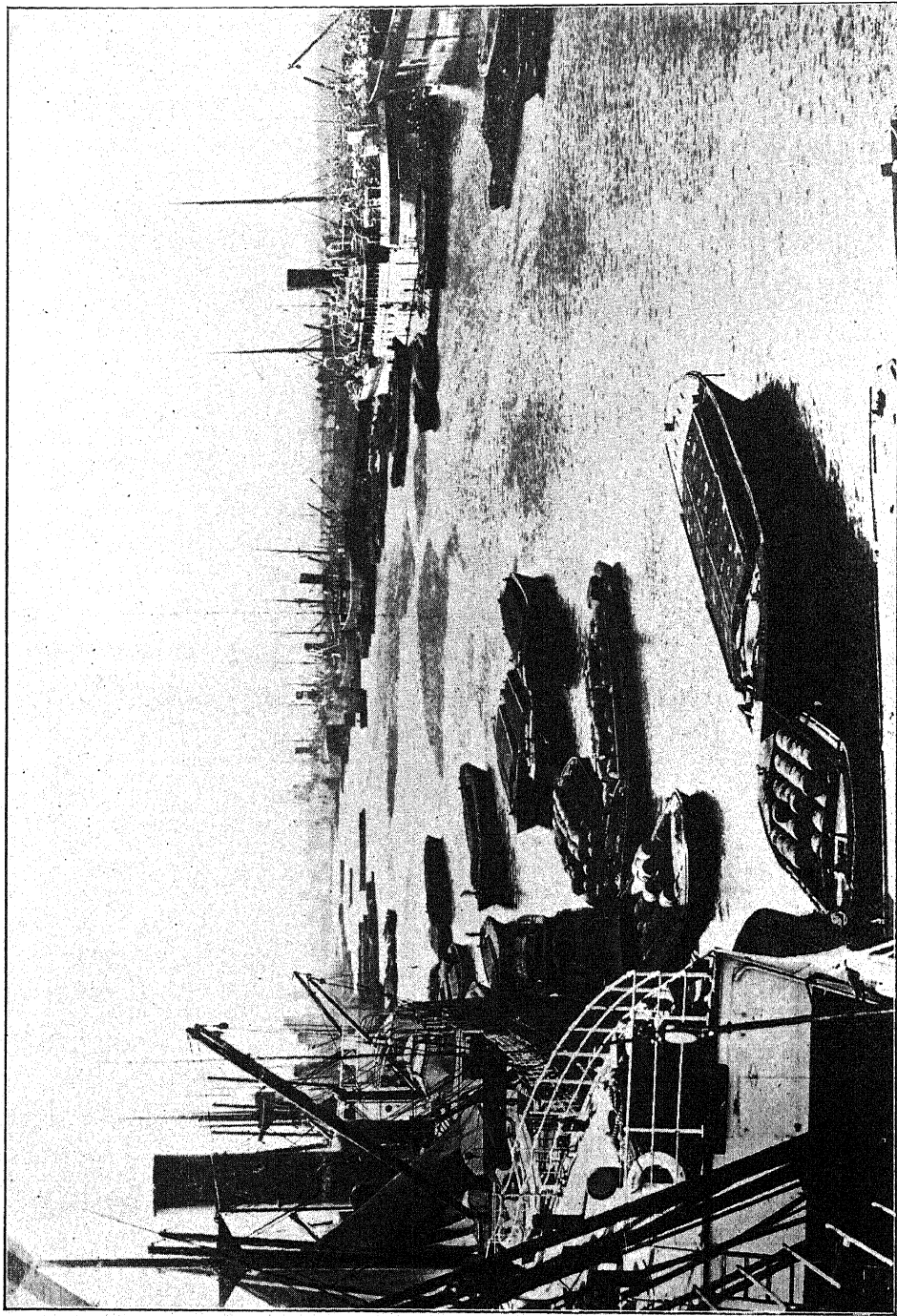
HIS MAJESTY THE KING ABOARD "BRITANNIA" AT COWES



WEDDING OF THE DUKE AND DUCHESS OF KENT, NOVEMBER 29th, 1934  
The Royal couple returning from Westminster Abbey

with the greatest area, population, comparative development and potential resources, must learn *to know itself* and to *realise* that it forms a quarter of the entire land surface of the world, has within its frontiers a quarter of the total population, and possesses far more than a quarter of the total wealth. Is it therefore too much to expect that on the occasion of the Silver Jubilee of King George V and Queen Mary, which will be celebrated with enthusiasm simultaneously all over the vast Empire, that its peoples will at last awaken to the possibilities which lie waiting at their feet. Let us hope that Their Majesties live to see another and even greater Jubilee with their Empire mightier still.

THE  
UNITED KINGDOM



*Photo by kind permission of the Port of London Authority*

**THE PORT OF LONDON**  
General View of the Royal Albert Dock

The total water area of the docks and basins forming the Port of London is 641½ acres, with 28 miles of quays. Tugs, tenders, railways, motor lorries, and a fleet of 10,000 barges are included in the vast transport system for the despatch of goods

# LONDON

## THE IMPERIAL CAPITAL

LONDON is the largest city that has ever existed. Although there remain no reliable records of the great cities of the ancient world, such as Thebes, Babylon, or Memphis, it has never been seriously urged that they rivalled London in actual size. However much they may have surpassed her in monumental endurance, or in grandeur of architecture, they did not even approach the huge bulk of the Empire's great metropolis. Few people—even among those living in London—have an adequate idea of its tremendous size. Let us first consider the ADMINISTRATIVE COUNTY OF LONDON. This is really only a part of the whole, for it excludes many large districts, but it serves to furnish us with a defined area as to which certain statistics are published. The area is approximately 74,850 acres, or 117 square miles. It contains 2,234 miles of streets, and 682,591 houses, in which 5,000,000 people are sheltered and work out their destiny. It has 329 railway stations. THE METROPOLITAN POLICE DISTRICT comprises an area of 446,626 statute acres, or about 699 square miles, with a population of about 8,000,000. The Police Force protecting this enormous city numbers about 35 superintendents, 664 inspectors, 3,000 sergeants, and over 16,000 constables, exclusive of the detective staffs; with a mounted brigade 300 strong. When extra police are needed, as during the Great European War, 300,000 to 400,000 special constables are enrolled,

and there is a Metropolitan Special Constabulary Reserve numbering, in all, about 24,000 men. THE LONDON FIRE BRIGADE alone consists of 2,260 officers and men, 62 land fire stations, 3 river stations, with about 270 engines, escapes and fire-floats. THE METROPOLITAN WATER BOARD supplies 260 million gallons of water a day to districts having an area of 561 square miles with a population varying between seven and eight millions. THE COUNTY OF LONDON is administered by the London County Council, comprising 144 members. The gross debt incurred by this body (London) is about £62,000,000, with a Sinking Fund of £31,900,000 (approximate figures). The annual expenditure is about £28,000,000. THE METROPOLITAN MAIN DRAINAGE SYSTEM extends over an area of about 149 square miles, and there are nearly 370 miles of main sewers. The capital outlay on the drainage of London up to 1930 was approximately £17,000,000. THE STREET TRAMWAY SYSTEM extends over 170 miles. The capital outlay for this transit system was (1930) £17,000,000, and the debt outstanding between eight and nine millions sterling. The number of passengers carried averages between 400,000,000 to 500,000,000 per annum. THE ELEMENTARY EDUCATIONAL SYSTEM provides for the education of over 740,000 children, at a cost of about £4,500,000. The efficiency of the organisations protecting the public health may be best gathered from the average statistics of the birth and death rates





AERIAL VIEW OF THE CITY OF LONDON

This, the East-Central District of the Great Metropolis, is the Financial Centre of the whole Empire

(1) Royal Exchange

(2) Insurance Centre

(3) Bank of England

(4) Mansion House

(5) Stock Exchange

(6) Brokers' Offices

(7) Banking Quarters

(8) Shipping Centre

(9) General Merchants

Photo, Central Aerialphoto Co.

of a few of the principal cities of the world, compared with those of London :—

City.	Births.	Deaths.
LONDON - - -	24.2	14.0
Dublin - - -	28.6	20.9
Edinburgh - - -	20.9	15.3
Berlin (pre-war) - - -	21.6	15.1
Brussels - - -	16.8	13.9
Buenos Aires - - -	35.5	15.7
New York - - -	26.9	16.2
Paris - - -	17.7	17.4
Rome - - -	22.7	19.3
Petrograd (pre-war) - - -	27.8	24.6
Vienna (pre-war) - - -	22.1	16.8

The statistics of London are far too large to convey a clear idea of the composition and extent of this immense city, but they may be more readily appreciated by comparing them with those of the city or town in which the reader lives, or knows best. Or try another test; the magnificent view over London which is obtained from Greenwich Park is well known. Beyond the winding of the river spreads the great city completely filling the horizon from right to left, and far away St. Paul's Cathedral is silhouetted upon the sky line. Between it and the place of observation is a huge mass of buildings stretching away north and south as far as the eye can reach. It is almost impossible to imagine a city of such enormous magnitude, and yet St. Paul's, which appears to mark the furthest boundary, is really in the centre of the city, and beyond it stretches another city as vast as that which fills the picture before one. Imagination tires in the effort to grasp the immensity of London, the giant organism of bricks and mortar, which grows and still grows, devouring field and hedgerow—filling the valleys, covering the hills, and planting many a teeming centre of metropolitan life where stood the quiet country hamlet. But it is no youthful giant, nor was it always a giant; and there were days when it lay a tiny infant weak and helpless, unable to protect itself against the fierce enemies which threatened it on every side.

### BIRTH OF THE WORLD'S GREATEST CITY.

To find the infant city we must go back more than 2,000 years. Before the great

Caesar set foot on British soil, our wild forefathers had built their piled dwellings and mud and wattle huts on a patch of rising ground which offered them the best available protection against their wilder neighbours. Near the spot where stands the Cathedral of St. Paul, we should have found the poor cradle of the babe that was one day to rule an empire greater than that of Rome itself. On this hill, rising about sixty feet above the sea-level, the Britons established their Lake-fort or Lyndyn, in a spot admirably adapted for defence. To the east and west it was protected by the ravines of the Walbrook and the Fleet, behind it the treacherous marshes of Finsbury guarded against attack from the rude tribes inhabiting the dense forest which covered the high lands of Middlesex. In front, the broad lagoon of the Thames estuary, with steep clay banks, served at once as a highway for their primitive commerce, and as a defence against the secret approach of enemies.

The men who lived here were Britons, a race whose descendants are still with us in the Highlands of Scotland and Wales. Nothing certain is known as to the age of the little town; tradition speaks of its having been founded by Brutus, the Trojan, and ruled by King Lud and King Belin, whose names survive in Ludgate and Billingsgate—but in any case it had probably existed for a very considerable time, as on the arrival of the Romans they found it a flourishing trade centre exchanging commerce with the merchants of Gaul. The little town extended by the edge of the river along the half-mile from the Walbrook to the Fleet, and back to Moorfields, a dreary fen seamed only with a few rough cattle tracks. Such was London town when the Romans colonised Britain in 43 A.D.

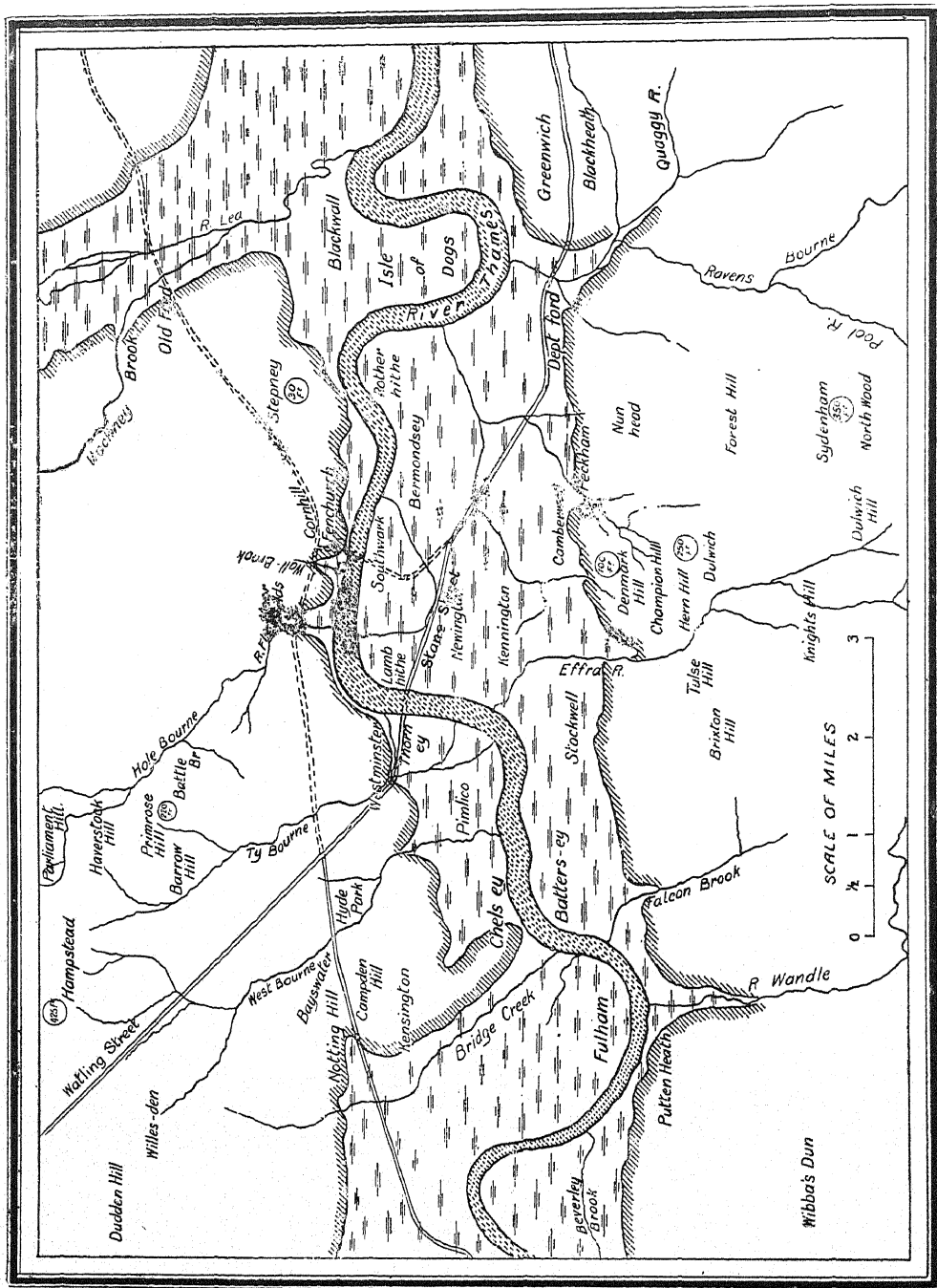
Mr. J. George Head, the well-known historian of London, gives the following account of the early history of the now Imperial city.\*

### ROMAN LONDON.

They fortified the hill on the east side of the Walbrook, erecting a walled citadel where now lie the busy marts of Lombard Street and Leadenhall. Before the high civilisation and luxurious refinement of Imperial Rome, the primitive habitations of

\* "Giant London," by J. G. Head, Surveyors' Inst. Trans.

# SITE ON WHICH LONDON IS BUILT



the natives began to disappear, and in their place rose the more imposing buildings of their conquerors. The highlands on both sides of the Walbrook were occupied by wealthy inhabitants, and the excavator's pick has revealed traces of their villas in the mosaic pavements, bathing places, ornaments of metal and pottery, and other evidences of luxurious occupation.

The name of Lyndyn was first Latinised into *Lundinium*, and afterwards changed to *Augusta* in honour of the Roman Emperor. The Roman Cohorts garrisoned the citadel ; but even the prestige of Rome did not serve to keep back the incursions of the wild and warlike tribes that occupied the hinterland. Time after time did they break in, only to be thrown back with much slaughter on both sides, until in 61 A.D. Boadicea and her British hosts compelled the Roman general Suetonius to vacate the town, and all the inhabitants, who were unable to escape, were put to the sword.

### A WALLED CITY.

Finding the safety of the town so endangered by repeated incursions, the Romans were at last compelled to extend the fortifications round the whole town, and about 350 A.D. they built a great wall enclosing some 380 acres of land. The wall was over three miles in length and followed a course which can still be easily traced. Beginning on the east of the Tower, it ran along the river front to the edge of the Fleet Estuary at Blackfriars. Here it turned northwards to Newgate, skirted Christ's Hospital, then eastwards across Aldersgate Street, northwards to Cripplegate, eastwards along the present London Wall to Bishopsgate, then in a south-easterly direction along Houndsditch, which was a wide ditch skirting the wall, and so back to the Tower. Portions of the wall were rebuilt from time to time, but the Saxon wall stood on the same foundations as the Roman wall, and it remained the boundary of the city for close on 1,000 years.

It should be specially observed that, immediately outside the wall, was a second boundary enclosing the *Pomoerium*, a large belt of land upon which no buildings were allowed. This *Pomoerium* was a feature in the construction of Roman cities ; it was marked off by stone pillars and consecrated with religious ceremonies. The wall was

pierced by various openings or gates, two communicating with the river, Billingsgate and Dowgate, and others spanning the great roads which issued from the city—the Watling Street, the Ermyrn Street and Vicinal Way. The first-named, the Watling Street, was the great North-western Road, leading to Chester, and was practically coincident with our Edgware Road. From the Marble Arch it originally ran down Park Lane and across to Westminster, where there was a shallow ford over the river. On the other side it met a stone causeway over the marshes, the name of which remains in Stangate or Stonepaved Street, near Westminster Bridge.

### THE FIRST BRIDGE.

When the first London Bridge was built, Watling Street appears to have been diverted and to have passed through the city along the present street of the same name, and on the other side of the Thames the traveller found another paved way, commemorated in the present Stony Street, Borough. No date can be assigned to the building of the bridge, but, judging from the dates on the coins found in the river bed at this spot, it was constructed quite early in the Roman occupation. From the northern end of the bridge started the Ermyrn Street (or Poor Men's Street), which led away to York, and at the point where it joined the Watling Street, a "chepe" or market was formed, where now stands Eastcheap. Another road led to the eastern counties, and was called the Vicinal Way, now the White-chapel Road.

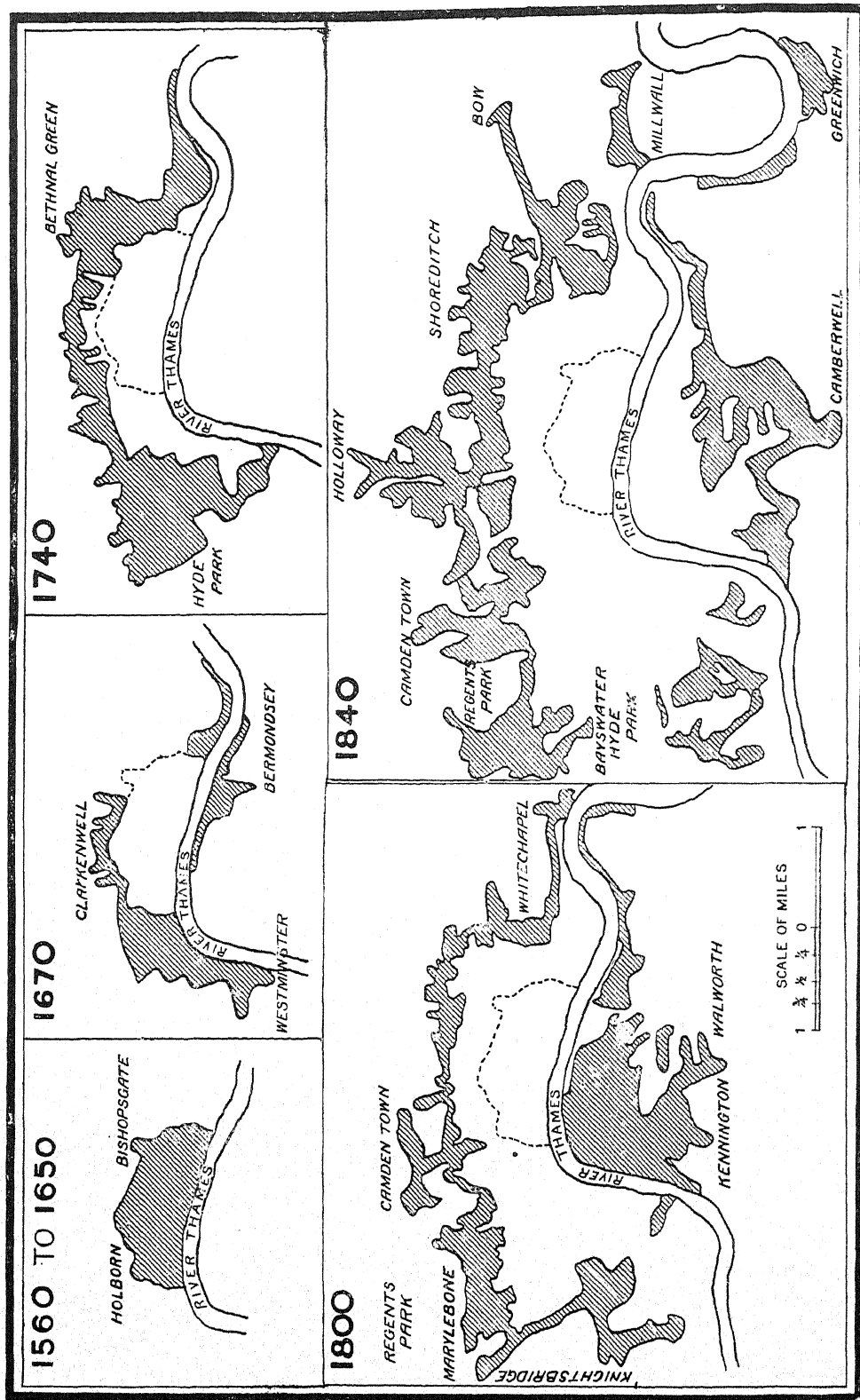
Under the powerful sway of Rome peace reigned, trade flourished, and British exports were carried throughout the Continent of Europe. Wealthy Britons resided in the city ; dignified by the citizenship of Rome, they imitated the dress and manners of their conquerors, and buildings of considerable pretensions rendered the city not unworthy of its imperial name of *Augusta*.

### AUGUSTA.

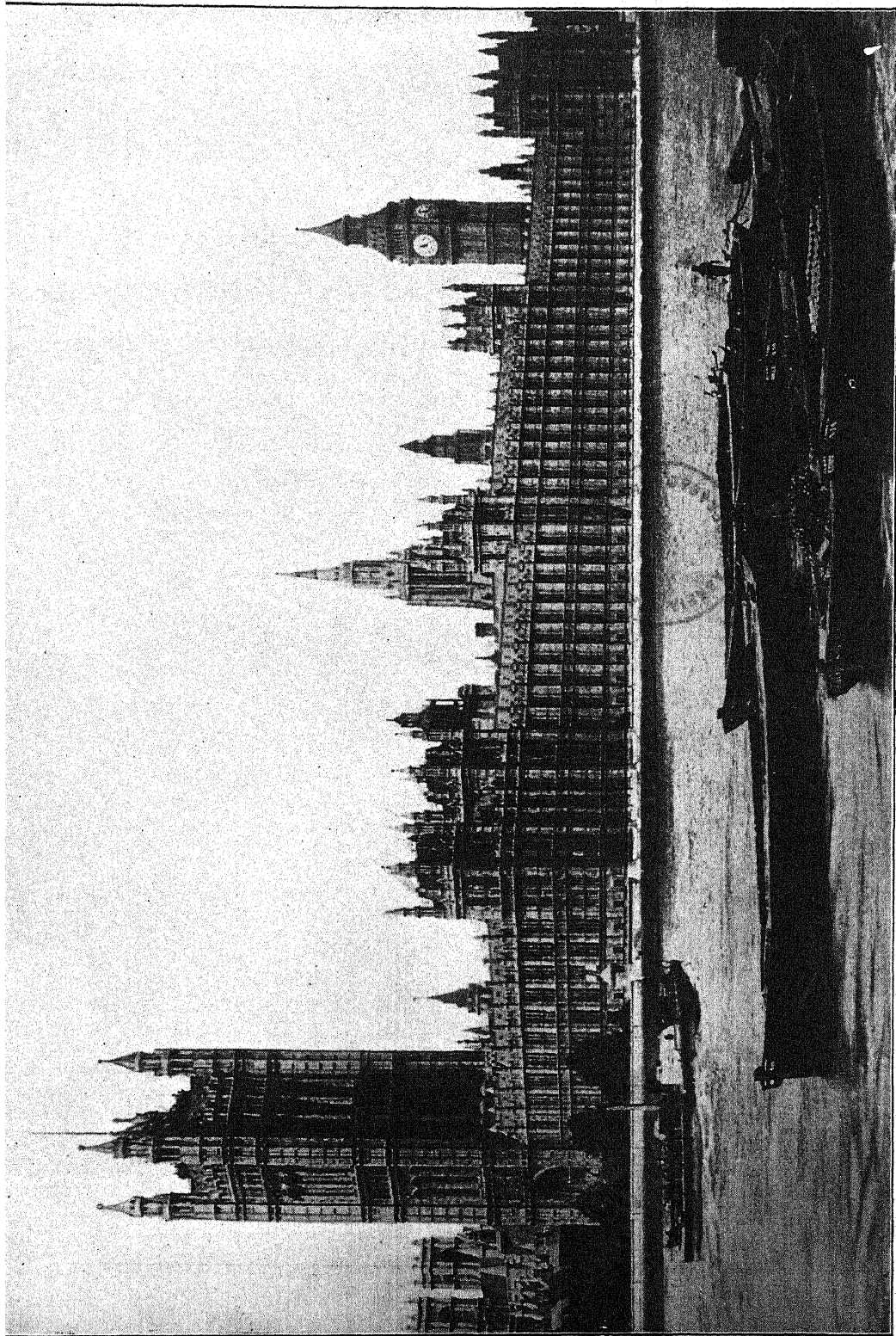
At the end of the Roman occupation, which lasted some 400 years, London consisted of a flourishing town within the wall, built on the Roman plan with straight thoroughfares dividing the area into rectangular blocks or "*insulae*," a fortified

# MAP SHOWING THE GROWTH OF LONDON From 1560 to 1840

Shaded portions show areas built over from date given on previous map

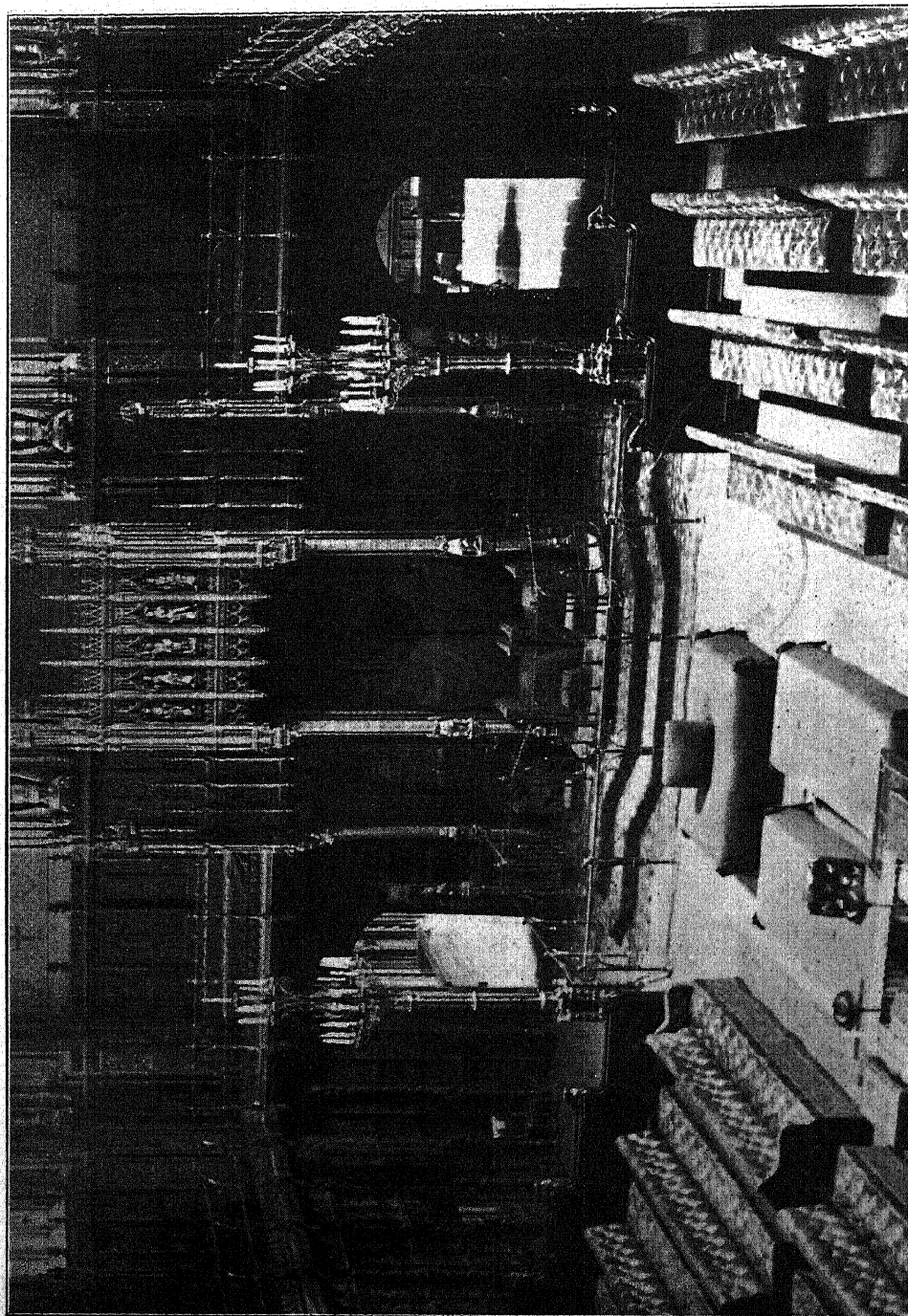






HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT, WESTMINSTER—"THE MOTHER OF PARLIAMENTS"

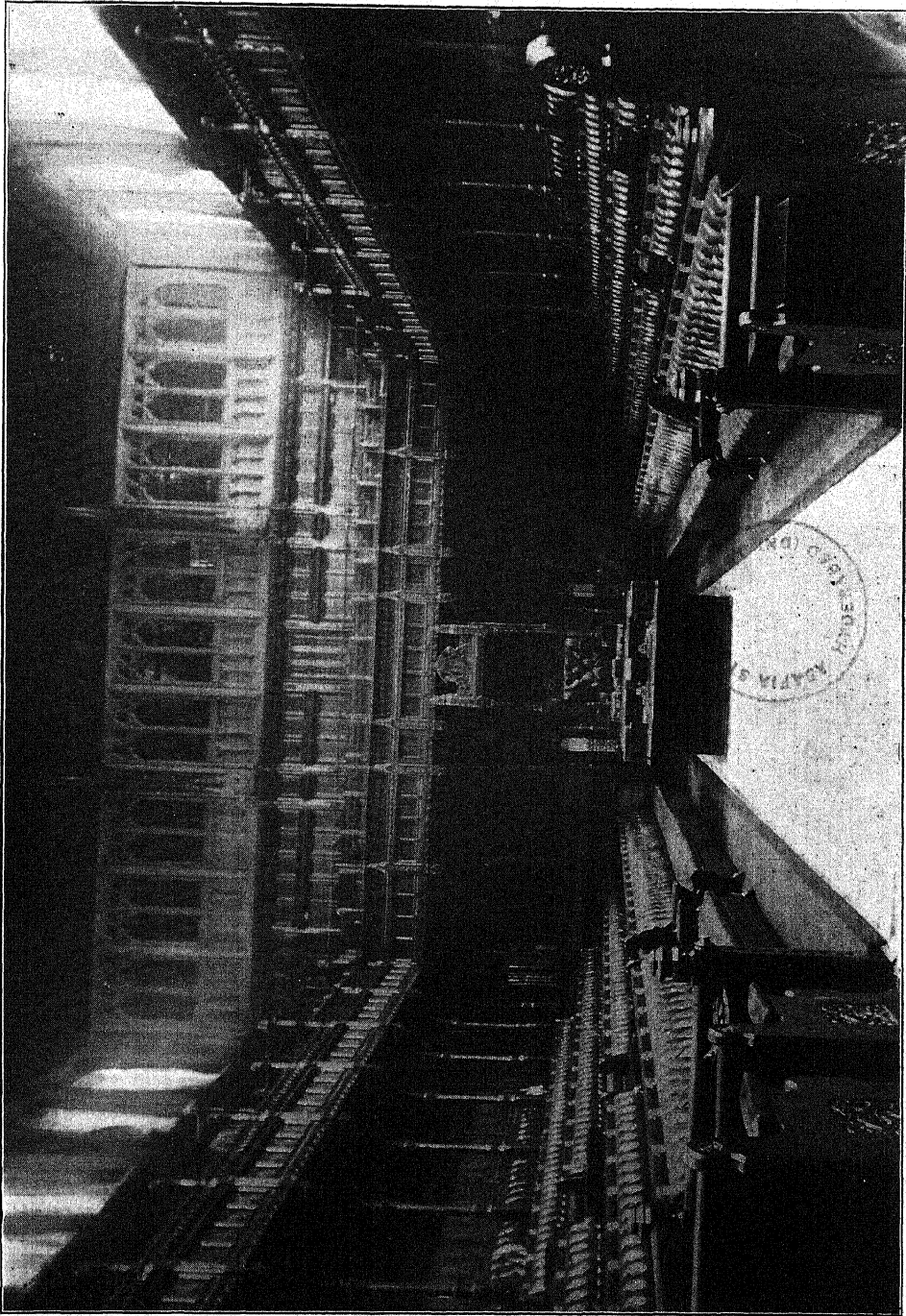
*Photo, Central News*



*Photo, Underwood*

#### THE HOUSE OF LORDS

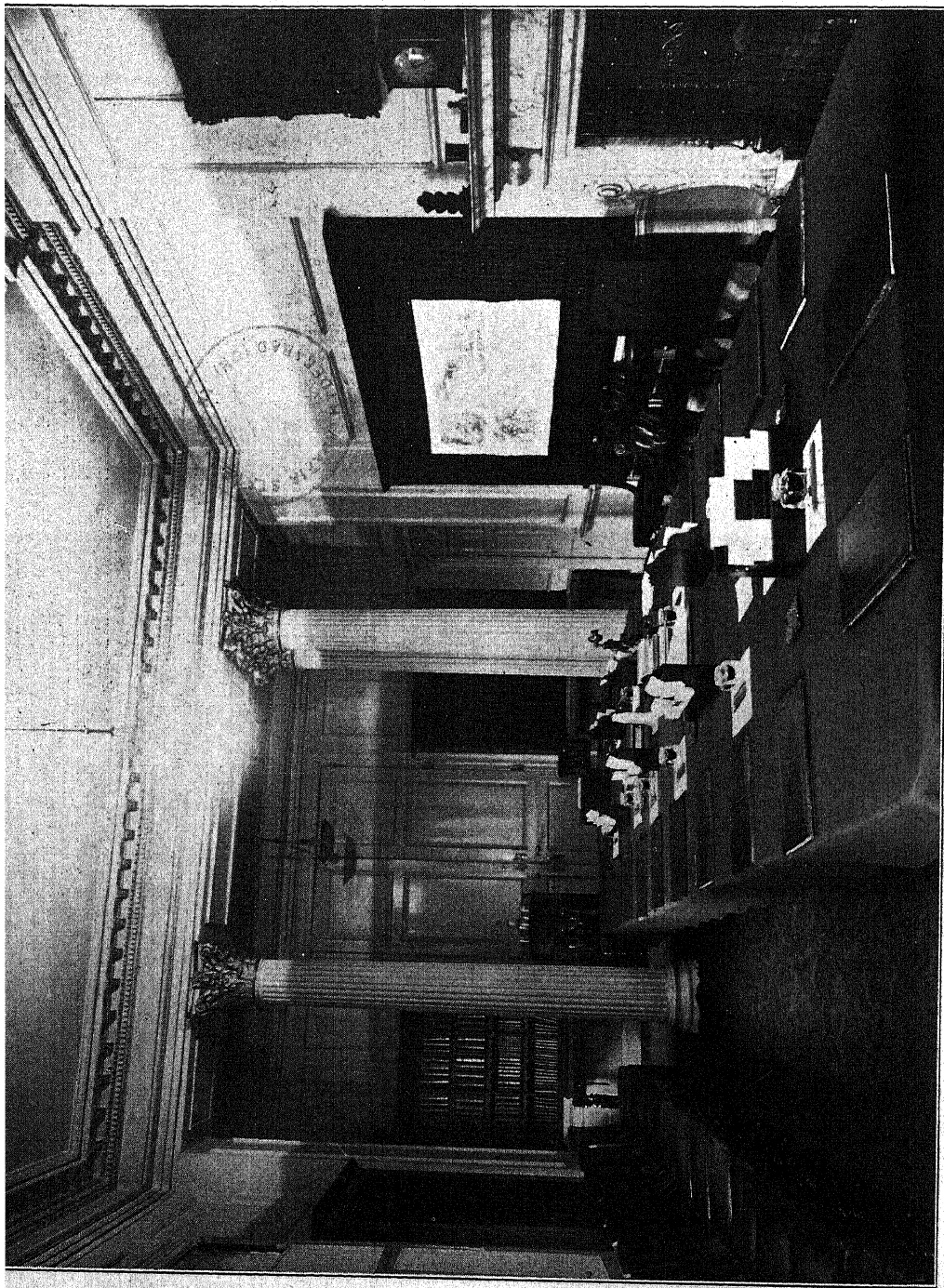
The Throne Chairs can be seen on the dais in the centre of the picture



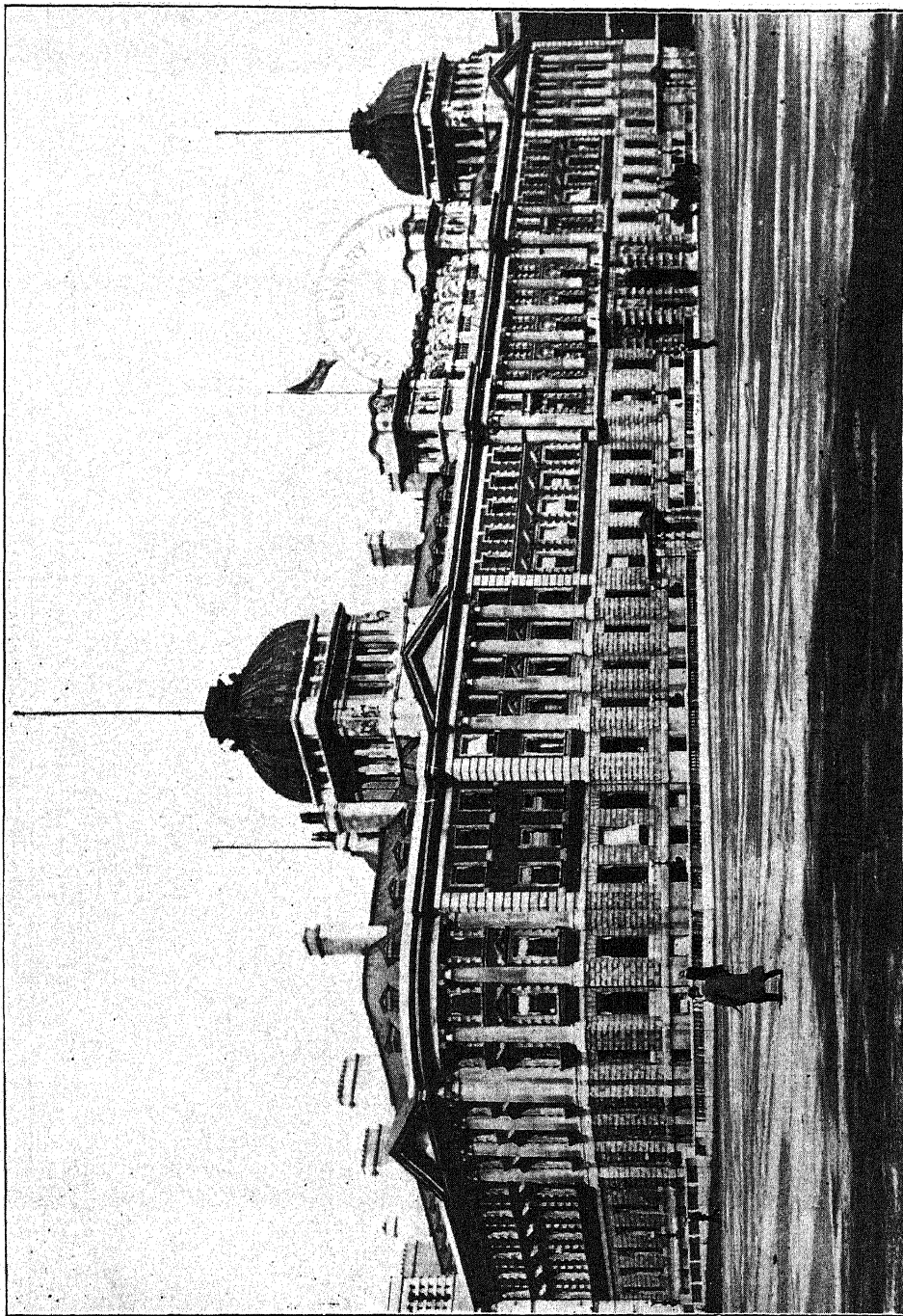
*Photo, Sport and General*

INTERIOR, HOUSE OF COMMONS  
The Speaker's Chair can be seen in the centre of the picture





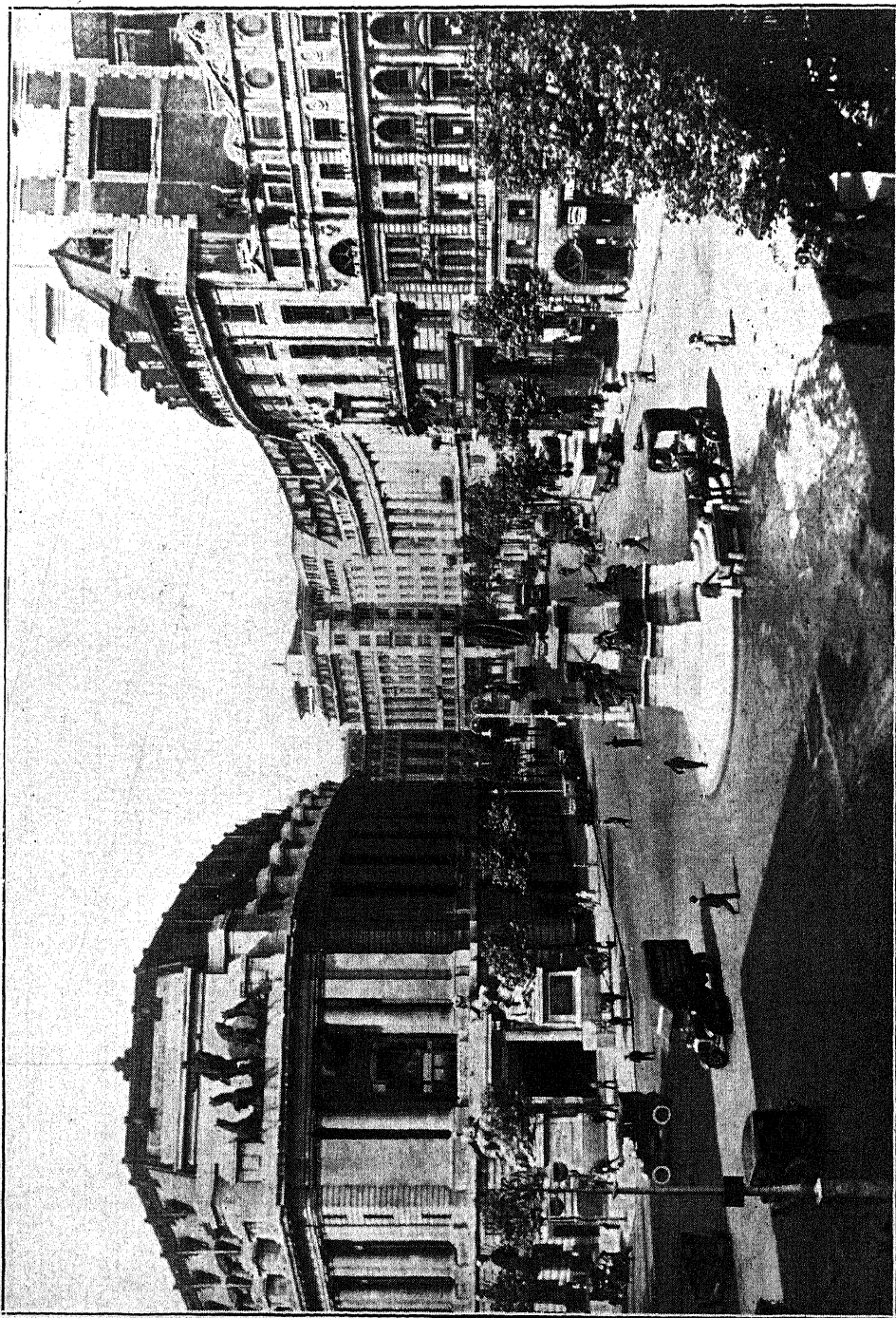
THE FAMOUS CABINET ROOM AT 10 DOWNING STREET, WESTMINSTER, LONDON  
The meeting place of British Ministers  
*Photo, Central News*



**THE ADMIRALTY, LONDON**  
The administrative headquarters of the Royal Navy

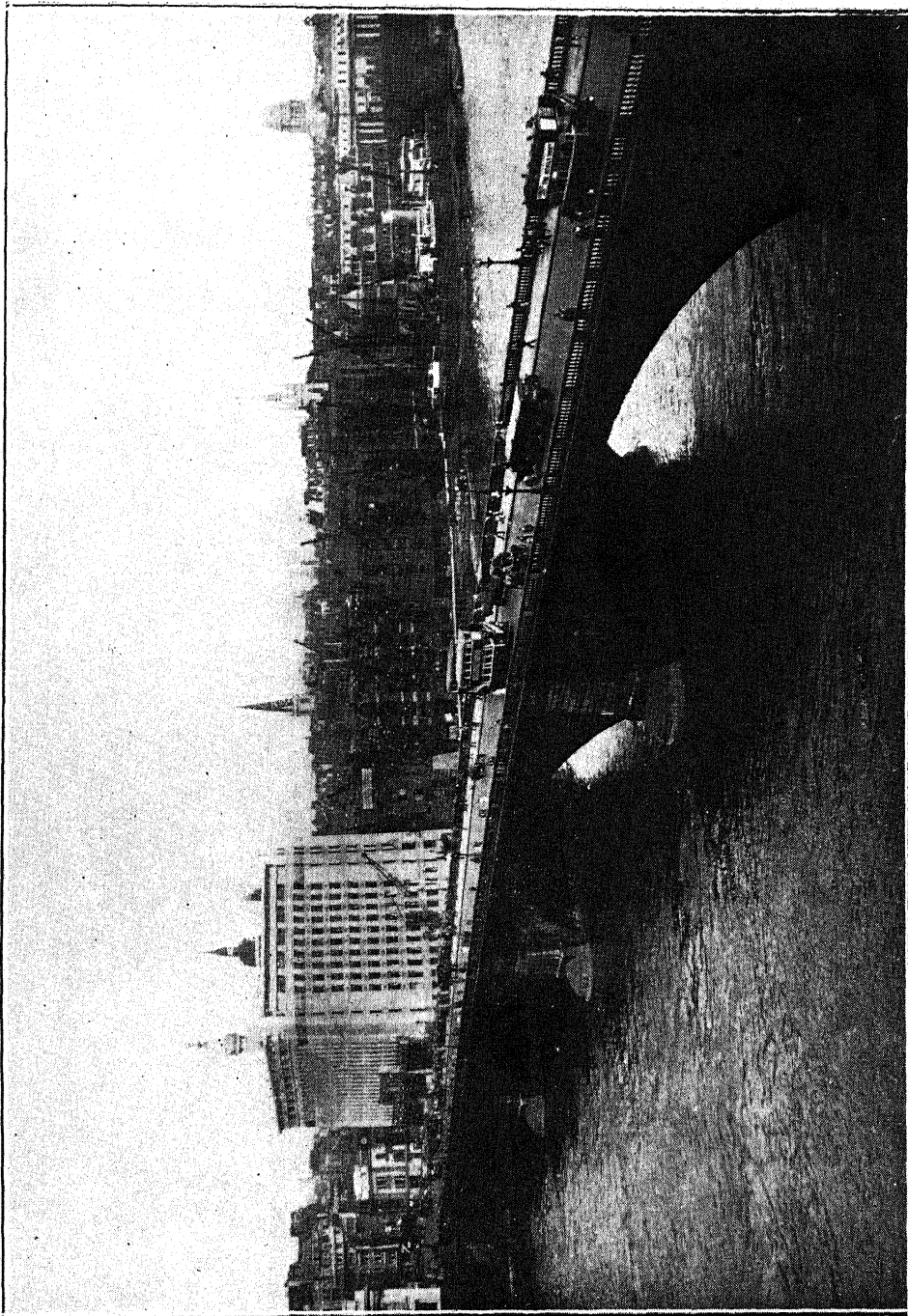
*Photo, Underwood*





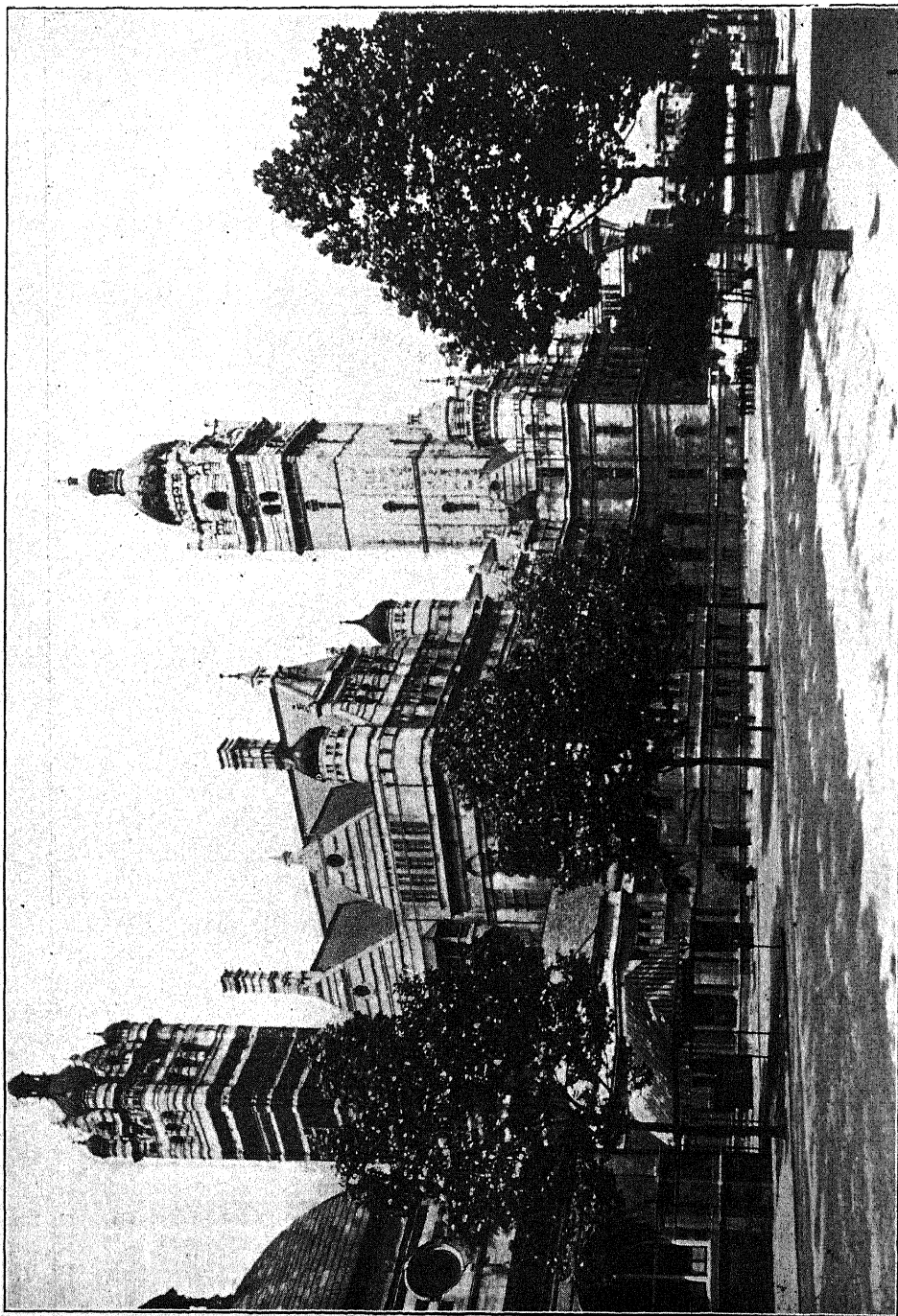
LONDON—ALDWYCH (AUSTRALIA HOUSE ON LEFT)

*Photo, Will F. Taylor*



LONDON BRIDGE, SHOWING ADELAIDE HOUSE

*Photo, Will F. Taylor*



THE IMPERIAL INSTITUTE, SOUTH KENSINGTON, LONDON

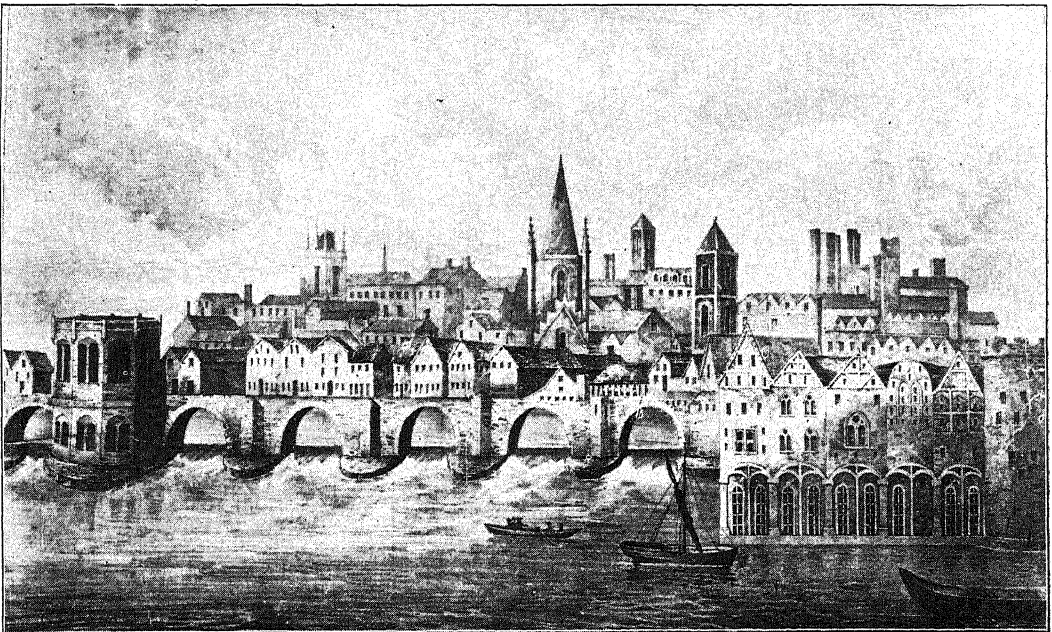
citadel reaching from Cornhill to Mincing Lane and enclosing the public buildings ; and another fort at Southwark and a bridge connecting the two ; villas lining the banks of the Walbrook and at other favoured situations, many of them having large gardens and grounds ; large numbers of buildings of an inferior class ; three harbours at Billingsgate, Dowgate, and at the mouth of the Fleet, with the merchants' houses clustering round ; four great roads piercing the walls and leading into the surrounding country ; outside the walls the open land or Pomoerium, and the ring of suburbs beyond. The population is variously estimated at from 35,000 to 70,000 persons.

So much we see by the dim light of history, aided by the taper of the antiquary, but even that dim light is shortly to be quenched, and black darkness to reign for 200 years. The last glimpse we obtain of Augusta as the clouds descend upon her is in 410 A.D., when the Roman legions were withdrawn to prop the falling greatness of Rome itself, and the darkness does not lift till 604 A.D., when we find the Saxons in occupation of London. Once only do we get a peep into the obscurity and see the Britons defeated in

Crayford in 457 and driven back across London Bridge by the advancing Saxons. All the rest is dark, and the curse of Jerusalem seems to have fallen on the doomed city—"that not one stone shall be left upon another." The desolation was so complete that we have no record of any single Roman building having survived, except the wall, and that was in a ruinous condition.

## TWO HUNDRED YEARS OF DARKNESS.

The Roman buildings were noted for their substantial construction, and it might at least have been expected that some arch, such as that which remains at Lincoln, or the ruin of some large building, would have remained and been mentioned in contemporary history, but no such reference is made, and the Anglo-Saxon chronicle which records the conquest of Bath, Gloucester, Chester, and many other places, does not even notice the occupation of London. It is significant that the very lines of the Roman streets seem to have been effaced. Thoroughfares now exist which, except for the rebuilding of the houses, are the same as the Saxon and



A View of the East Side of London Bridge, with the Chapel of St. Thomas, in the Reign of King Henry VII circa 1500, from an illumination in a Manuscript in the British Museum, Royal MSS. 16 Eli. XV



Norman thoroughfares, and even retain their old names, and this in spite of repeated alterations and frequent fires; but the streets of Saxon London were entirely different from the plan upon which Roman cities were built. The pavements of such villas as have been discovered appear to have faced different streets from those which now exist, and we have not even a name left of Roman or British origin, with the doubtful exceptions of Billingsgate, Ludgate and Dowgate, and even in these cases the termination "gate" is Saxon. It seems as if nothing short of demolition and rebuilding could explain so complete an effacement of ancient streets and thoroughfares.

These considerations, taken in conjunction with the utter absence of historical reference, have led Loftie, Besant, and other historians of London to the conclusion that on the arrival of the Saxons at Augusta, they found it waste and desolate, and that they entered the city with none to oppose. It remains to explain, if possible, the means by which the city could have reached so forlorn a condition, and the explanation seems to lie in the physical surroundings of the city. With the river in front, with marshes on three sides, and with forests beyond on the north, London had no adjacent farmland from which to draw her supplies; all had to be brought in day by day from the outlying districts. If the approaches were closed, the food supplies would cease at once. When, therefore, the Roman troops withdrew, it was incumbent upon the Britons to raise a native force sufficient to keep open the highways and to protect the adjacent lands. Without doubt they did their utmost to maintain their position. The bravery and tenacity of the Britons is shown in the exceeding slowness of the Saxon conquest. The historian Green tells how throughout the land "every inch of ground seems to have been fought for. Field by field, town by town, forest by forest, the land was won, and as each bit of ground was torn away from its defenders the beaten men drew back from it to fight stubbornly for the next." But the end came at last. We hear of the Thames being controlled by the Jutes in Thanet; the Vicinal Way was closed by the East Saxons and Angles who had overrun the eastern counties. On the north the

Picts pressed the city in ever-increasing numbers, and the Saxons on the west prevented the approach of supplies down the Thames, so the place was gradually isolated; trade declined and food was scarce, foes harried the failing city, and after many a stubborn resistance, the hapless Britons made their way along the Watling Street—their only remaining outlet—and found a refuge in the hills of Wales. The few remaining inhabitants, bereft of government, protection and means of wealth, reverted to barbarism, and in the long lapse of years cottage and temple alike rotted to shapeless ruin.

On the other hand, a modern historian of London, Sir G. Laurence Gomme, does not agree with this view. From the persistence until later years of certain political and municipal conditions and customs which he identifies as Roman in origin, he argues that after the Roman retirement the city was at no time abandoned, but that the British occupation was continuous under native rule, reinforced at times by an ecclesiastical government. The lack of reference in contemporary history he explains by the suggestion that London was never conquered by the Saxons, but that their occupation of it was brought about by gradual settlement, resulting in the Saxon element at length being so strong in numbers as to become predominant.

### SAXON LONDON.

However this may be, in 604 we find the Saxons in possession; they had rebuilt the city, but if the Britons had forgotten how to defend the walls, the Saxons had not learnt their use, and centuries elapsed before the wall was restored by Alfred in 886. The city was held by the Essex Kings under the overlordship of Kent, till in Alfred's time it became the capital of England. Later it was held by the Danes under Canute, and after their expulsion, again by the Saxons until the Norman Conquest.

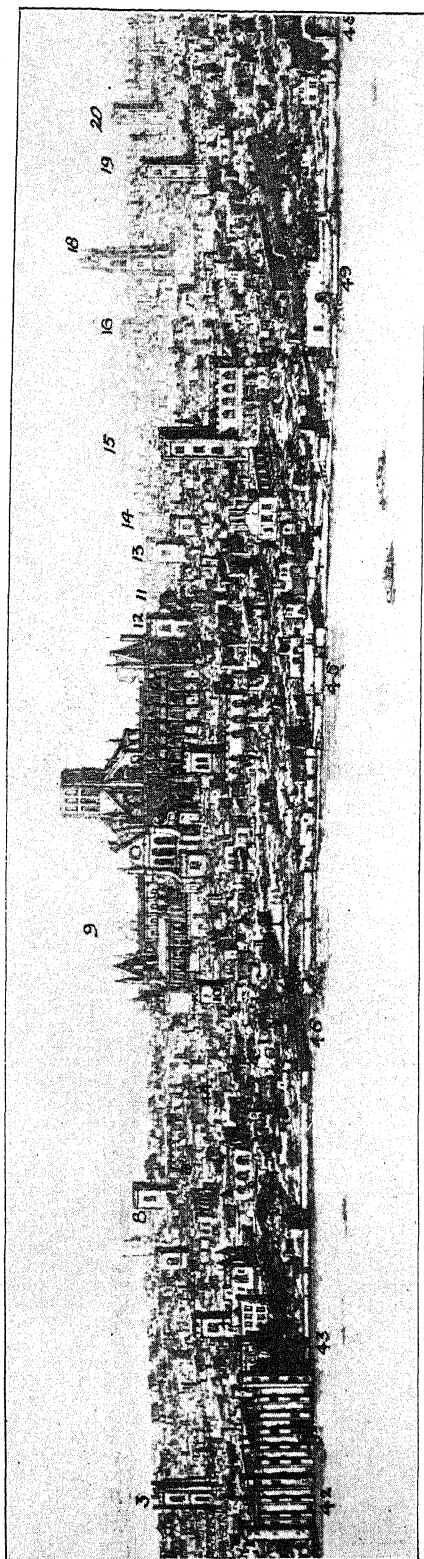
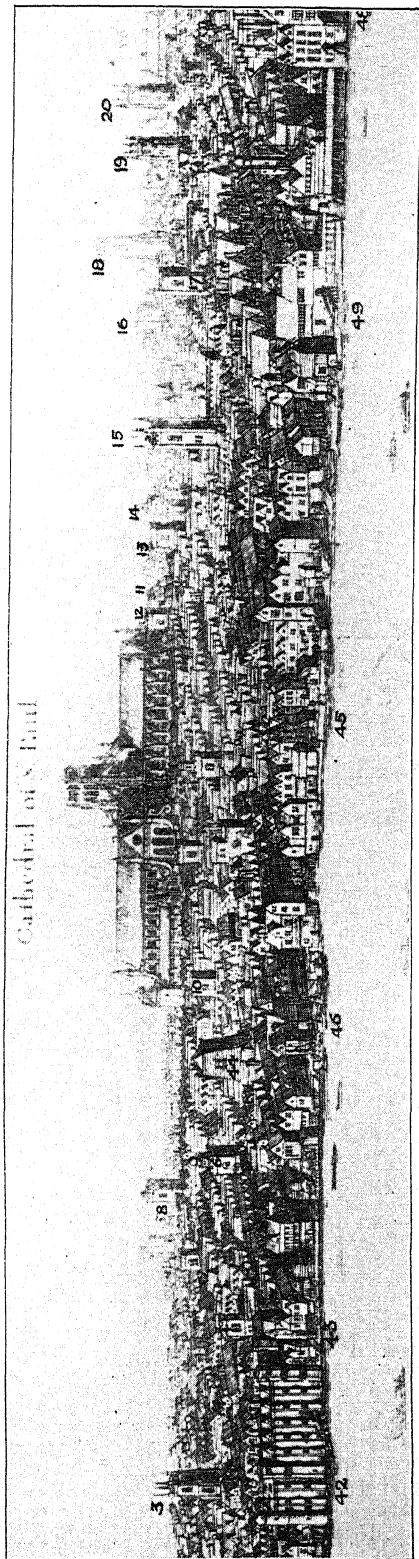
With the advent of the Saxon occurred a significant change in the environment of London. The Roman was a man of the town, the Saxon a man of the fields. The Romans concentrated within and around the walls of the city, keeping a large surrounding area free from anything in the shape



# LONDON BEFORE AND AFTER THE GREAT FIRE

(From Old Prints)

E. 40.

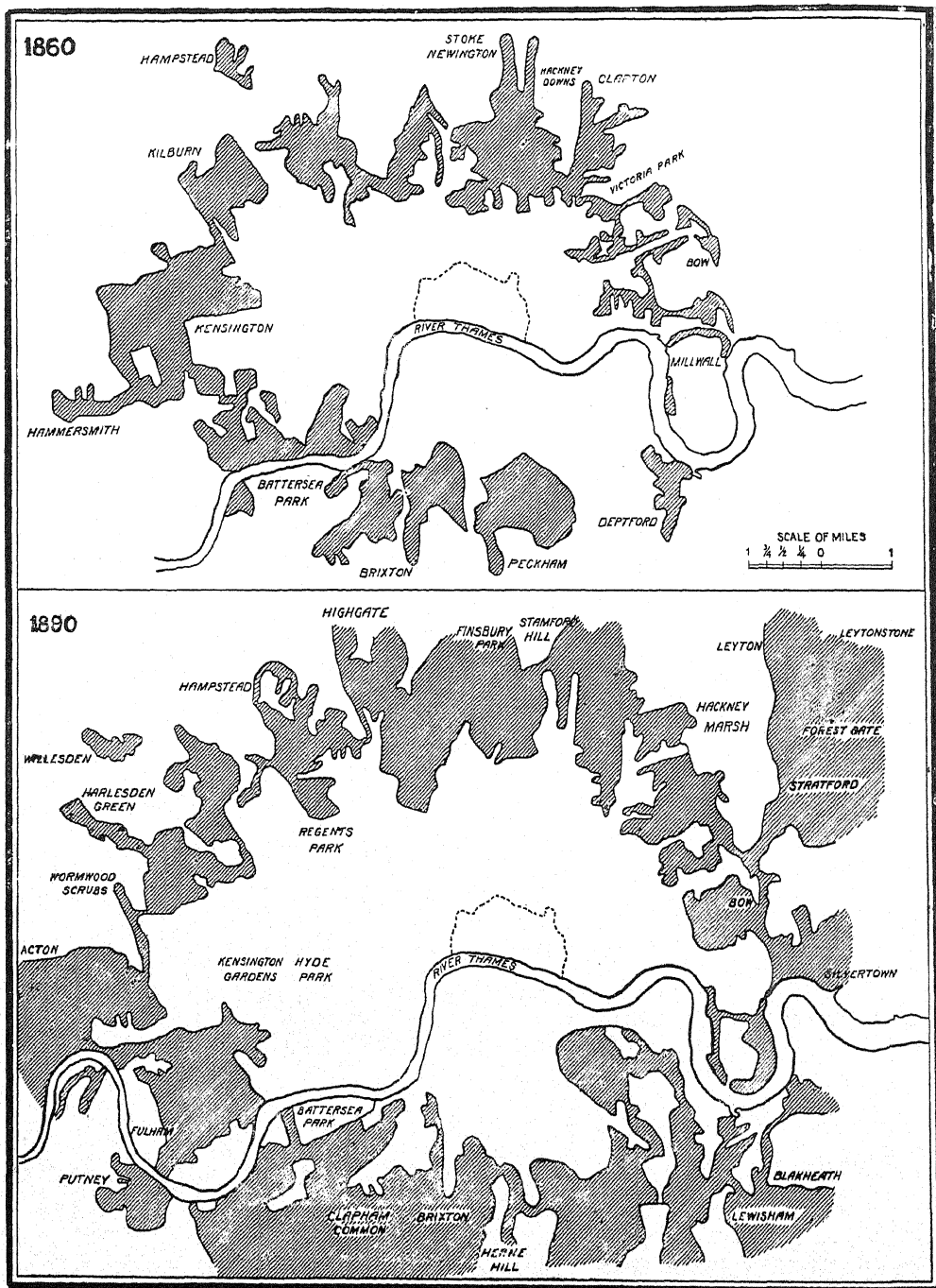


- 1 Temple Church 2 S. Dunstan's West 3 S. Bride's 4 S. Benot 5 S. Andrew in Wardrop 6 S. Peter's in Tham Street 7 S. Martin's by Ludgate 8 S. Andrew in Holborne  
9 S. Pulcher's 10. S. Nicholas 11 Christ Church 12 S. Augustine's 13 S. Foster 14 S. John Zachary 15 S. Martin's in Tnames Street 16 S. Mary Alderman  
17 S. Thomas Apostles 18 Bow Church 20 S. Lawrence 21 S. Mary, Butolf Lane 22 Alhallowes y' great 23 S. Steven's, Colman Street 24 S. Margaret  
25 S. Mary Walnoth 26 S. Lorence Poultry 27 S. Steven's in Walbroke 28 S. Christopher 29 S. Bartholomew 30 S. Edmund's 31 S. Michael, Cornhill  
32 Alhallowes 33 S. Peter's in Cornhill

# MAP SHOWING THE GROWTH OF LONDON

## From 1868 to 1900

Shaded portions show areas built over from date given on previous map



of a town. The Saxons settled in village communities within easy reach of each other. The Romans dwelt within the walls, and left the cultivation of the soil, which supplied their needs, to their slaves and inferiors. The Saxon family settled down on the plot of land or manor assigned to them and tilled the ground for their sustenance. Hence arose the villages dotted over the area of the present London County, the "tons," the "hams," the "ings," which survive in such familiar names as Islington, Paddington, Clapham, Fulham, Charing and Wapping. Every village became in itself a nucleus and centre of population, in later years swelling out to join hands with the metropolis as it advanced towards them.

### ORIGIN OF NAMES.

And now within the city the familiar nomenclature of the streets emerges, and we have Eastcheap and Cheapside; Poultry, Fish Street, Bread Street, Milk Street, Wood Street, Ironmonger Lane, Honey Lane and Cornhill, Guildhall and Basinghall; and the Danes gave us St. Botolph, St. Olaves, and Tooley Street corrupted from St. Olaf's Street.

All the gates, except Moorgate, were built, and the names remain to this day. Wherever we find the termination "ea" or "ey," we know that an island existed in the shallows of the river—Battersea, Peter's Island; Chelsea, Chesil, or Shingle Island; Thorney or Thorn Island. The landing places for the boats were called hythes—Rotherhithe, or the rower's hythe or landing place—Lambeth or Loamhithe, the muddy landing place.

The topography of London itself under the Saxons was roughly the same as that of Roman London, *i.e.*, it was restricted mainly to the enclosure of the wall; but the life of the city was pulsating strongly, and from its heart, the "Folk Moot" outside St. Martin's-le-Grand, it made itself felt throughout the land. Churches were dotted over the whole area, and London was the religious as well as the political centre of the country. Commerce poured into her markets from all directions, and her population began to overflow her borders.

In the later years of the Saxon Kingdom, Westminster Church arose on Thorney Isle, under Edward the Confessor, and round it grew the city which still has its own corporate existence.

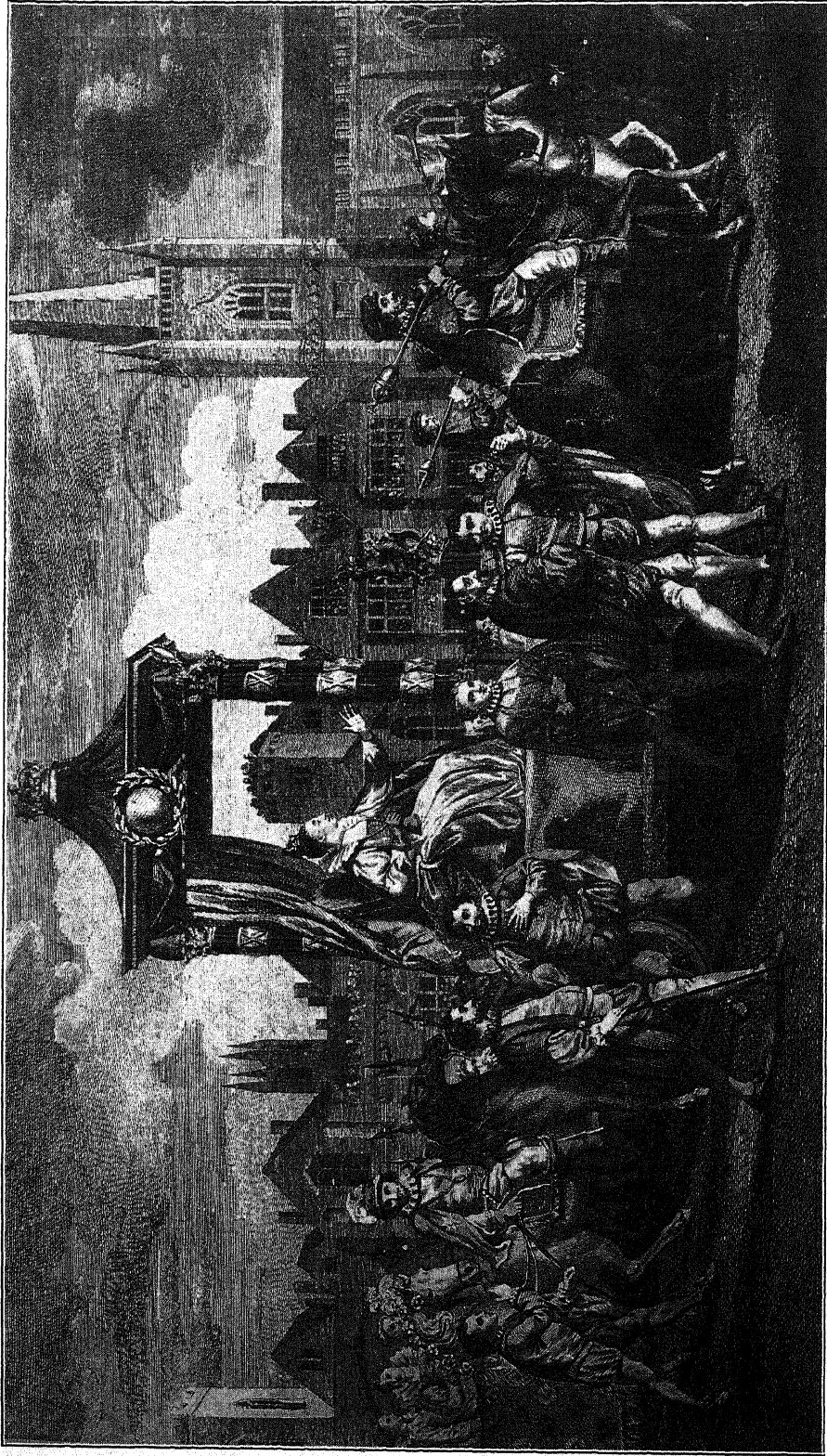
A settlement of the Danes remained on the site of the present Aldwych, which was named in memory of their occupation. Southward, the city gradually advanced from a small fort at the Bridge Gate to a flourishing settlement, and then began that expansion which has gone on almost without cessation until the present day.

### NORMAN LONDON.

Under the Normans and Plantagenets the extension of London was considerable. William the Conqueror entered the city in 1066; he found it wealthy and powerful, and throughout the whole period it was frequently strong enough to turn the scale between rival candidates for the throne. The Conqueror was glad enough to obtain possession without a siege, and with the double object of strengthening its defences against foes without, and of dominating his subjects within, he pulled down the south-east corner of the wall and built the Tower fortress. The work was completed by William Rufus, under whom the adjacent city of Westminster was fast rising into importance. In 1011, 1077, and again in 1136, disastrous fires occurred which destroyed large numbers of buildings, and the town had to be practically rebuilt; and in the place of the comparatively poor buildings of the Saxons rose the majestic and stately structures of the Normans.

### PLANTAGENET LONDON.

Up to 1174 the materials from which we have to construct the topography of London are meagre, but in that year we have an account of *Plantagenet London* by William FitzStephen, friend of Thomas à Becket. He tells us of the Tower, of Montfitchett's Tower, at Blackfriars, and of Baynard's Castle; he speaks of the walls with their seven gates, through one of which, Aldgate, led the way to the eastern counties. The wall had been removed on the river side, and populous suburbs reached as far as Westminster, with "citizens' gardens and orchards intersected by numerous brooks, springs, and watercourses, turning water-mills with "pleasant noise." He puts the population at 63,000, and he draws a bright picture of their life of prosperity and



W. A. Mansell & Co.

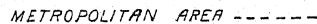
This print represents Queen Elizabeth going in solemn procession on Sunday, Nov. 24, 1588, on a chariot throne, decorated as above, from Somerset House to St. Paul's Church, to return thanks to God for the defeat of the Spanish Armada. The Earl of Essex, her Master of the Horse, follows the chariot, leading her horse of state; after whom proceed Ladies of Honour and high rank. The Queen, delighted with the joyful acclamations of her people, extends her hand, and blesses them. She was attended by her Privy Council and Prime Nobility, Judges, etc., all on horseback; her Guards and domestic servants marching on foot.

LONDON IN THE DAYS OF QUEEN ELIZABETH

From an old print

# LONDON

0. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.





happiness. He quaintly says it is a "good city indeed when it has a good master, and the only pests are the immoderate drinking of fools and the frequency of fires."

One outstanding feature of Plantagenet London was the large number and extent of the ecclesiastical buildings; these, with their grounds, covered nearly one-fourth of the entire area of the city. There were, according to FitzStephen, 126 churches and thirteen conventual establishments. The latter were chiefly outside the walls, and embraced considerable areas of land. There were the Carthusians, whose name Chartreuse was corrupted into Charterhouse; the Augustine or Austin Friars, Black Friars, White Friars, Grey Friars, Crutched Friars, the Minoresses, or Nuns of the Minories, and the Knights Templars, whose purlieus in the Temple have been adopted by the legal profession. The original poverty and asceticism of these religious houses contrasted strangely with their luxury and extraordinary wealth in later days, and the corruption, in which they were sunk, furnished Tudor Harry with an excuse for destroying these institutions and appropriating their revenues. The first Tudor found London a city of beauty, thick with the spires and towers of the noble Gothic churches and priories; the second Tudor reduced it to ruins. He allowed the beautiful buildings to be needlessly destroyed in order to rid himself of the dominion of the Pope.

### TUDOR LONDON.

But the nation was now entering upon a new epoch; the new learning had freed the minds of the people from the old shackles. The discovery of lands beyond the sea, of fabulous wealth and unlimited opportunity, fired the imagination and stimulated enterprise; new ideas filled their minds, commerce poured into their ports, and the standard of living was everywhere raised. The wealthy built themselves stately dwellings, and Tudor London expanded its limits in all directions. We have now for the first time reliable maps, and from the views of London by Van de Wyngärde, Visscher and Hollar, and the plan of London by Ralph Agas, we may see exactly what London was like under Elizabeth and her successors. Wyngärde's Panorama, produced about 1545,

is a sketch taken from some lofty perch on the southern side. It gives us a wonderfully living presentment of London under Good Queen Bess.

### IN THE DAYS OF ELIZABETH.

We see first the splendid Gothic building of Old St. Paul's, with its graceful spire, so soon, alas! to fall; and the picturesque London Bridge with its fantastic piles of buildings. We see the city clustering densely along the north bank of the Thames, thickly sown with the spires and towers of its hundred churches, and the broad river, with its "Thousand masts of Thames," has its argosies, whose decks are trod by fearless explorers, and whose holds are laden with costly merchandise. The Queen's swans breast the stream at Westminster—the Queen's barge plies to and from Whitehall. To monarch and courtier, rich and poor alike, the Thames is the principal avenue of traffic to and from their daily avocations, while from Westminster to Stangate Stairs runs the Horseferry, upon the site of the old Roman ford.

From the Temple to Westminster there stretches an unbroken line of noblemen's palaces, surrounded by spacious gardens, and flanked by the river. Going westward, we begin with Dorset House, then Sussex House, Arundel House, Somerset House, the Savoy, Worcester House, Salisbury House, Durham House, Suffolk House—afterwards Northumberland House—and then Whitehall. The present Somerset House marks the site of the ducal palace of the same name, and until the construction of Victoria Embankment it preserved its steps leading down to the river.

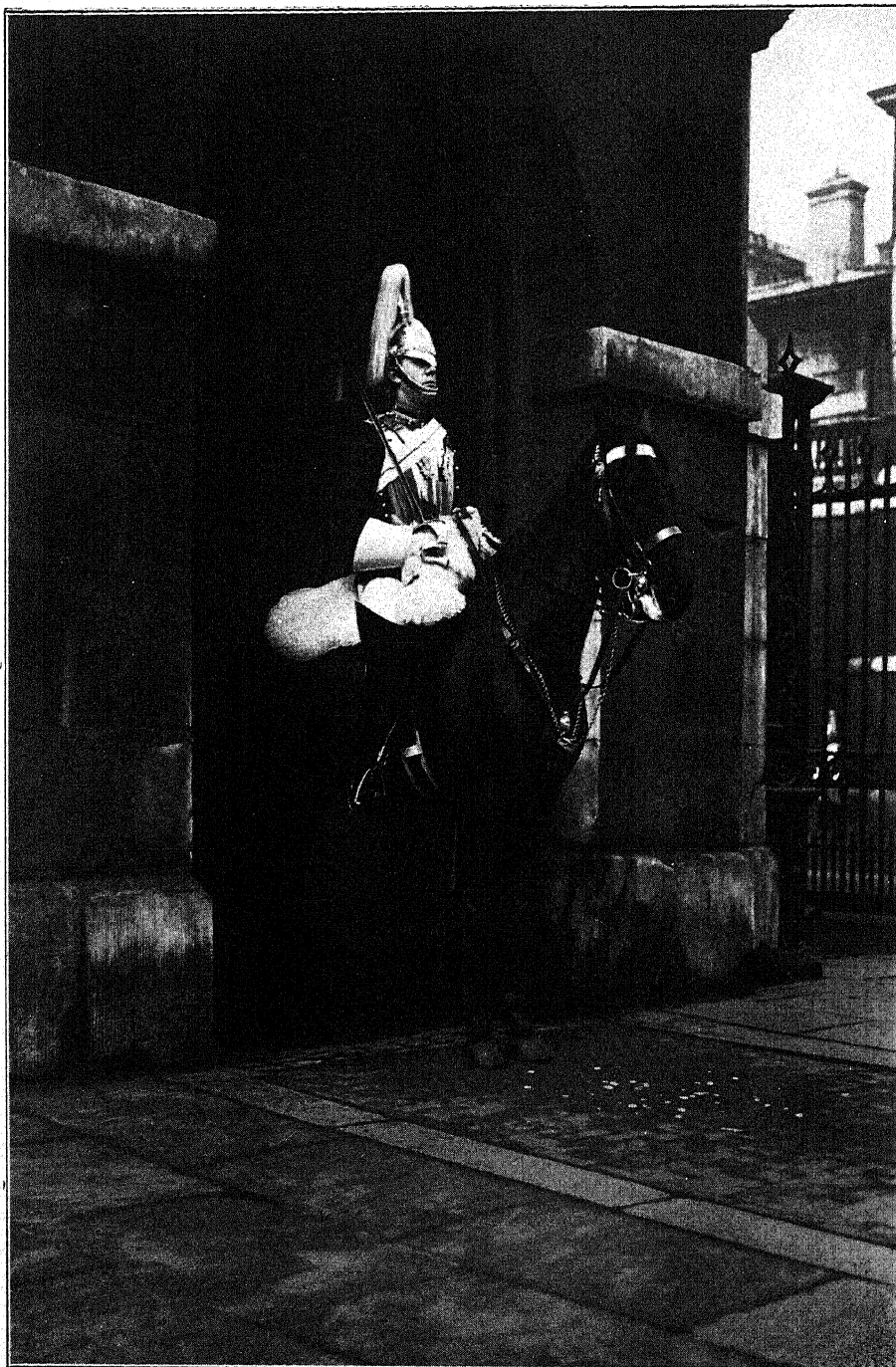
### SHAKESPEARE'S LONDON.

Ralph Agas, land surveyor and engraver, gave us his plan about twenty years later, and we at once notice that St. Paul's spire is down, having been struck by lightning in 1561. Within the walls many of the houses have spacious gardens, where now the buildings cluster. We see the suburbs gathering under the walls or stretching out along the roads and by the silent highway of the Thames. We also see the familiar names of Bunhill Fields, Smoothfield or Smithfield, St. Giles' Fields, St. George's Fields,



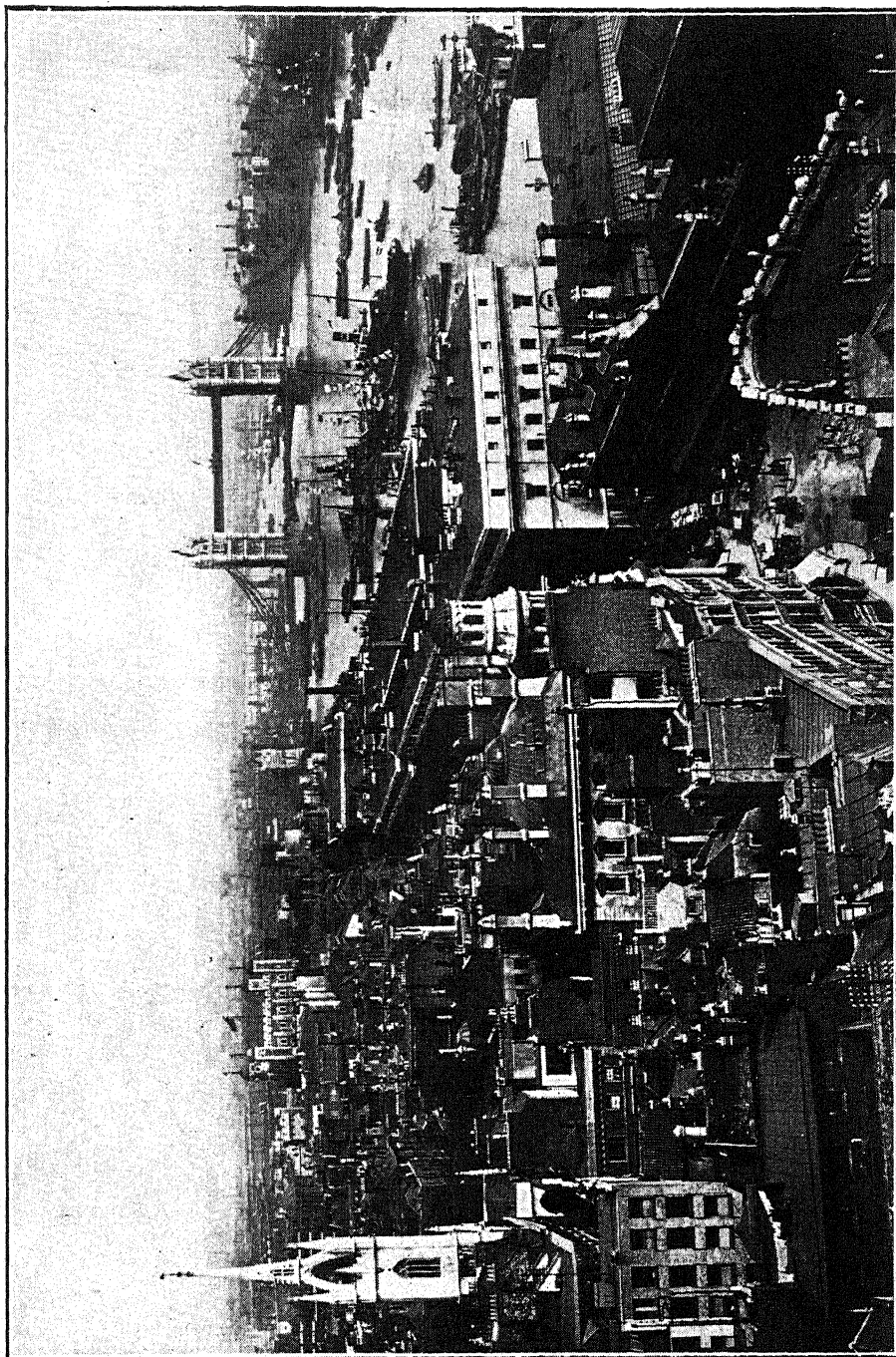
WESTMINSTER ABBEY—THE SHRINE OF THE EMPIRE

*Photo, L. Toms & Co. Ltd.*



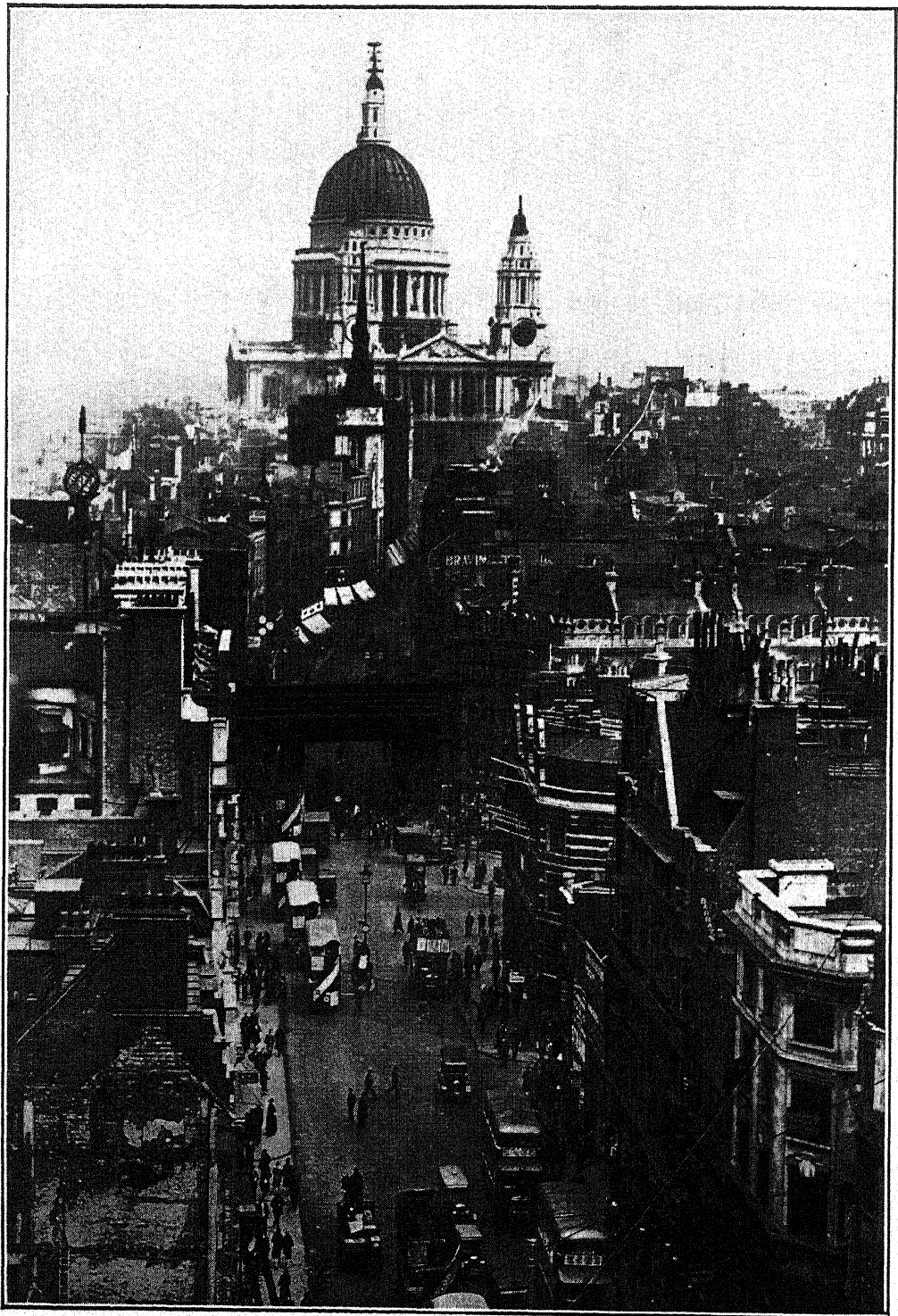
HORSE GUARD, WHITEHALL

*Photo, D. McLeish, London*



VIEW FROM MONUMENT, LONDON



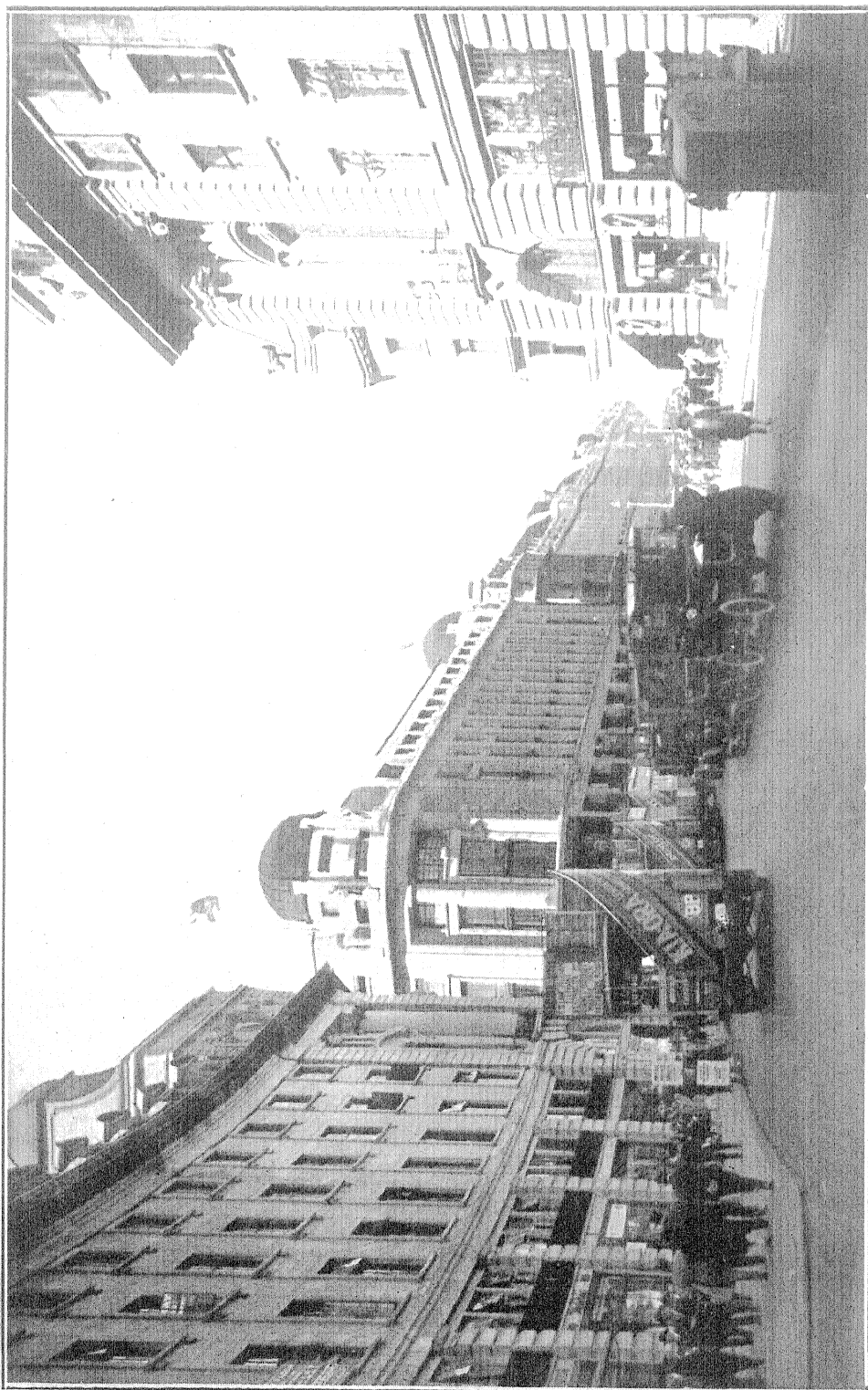






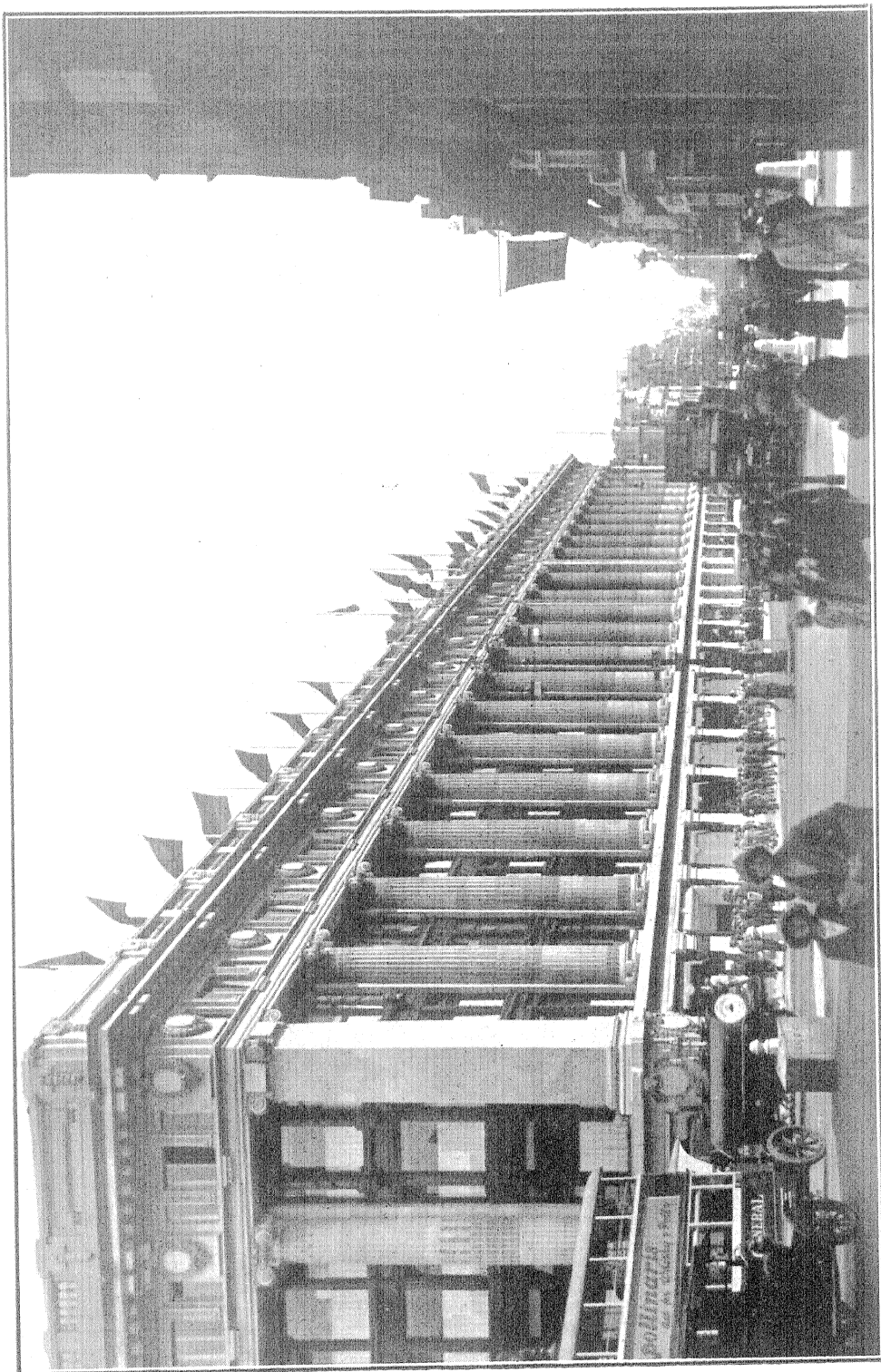
KINGSWAY, FROM THE TOP OF BUSH HOUSE

*Photo, Will F. Taylor*  
29



REGENT STREET, LONDON

*Photo, Will F. Taylor*



*Photo, Will F. Taylor*

OXFORD STREET SHOWING SELFLEDGE'S STORE





THE BALLROOM, MANSION HOUSE  
The Official Residence of the Lord Mayor of London

*Photo, Miles & Kaye*

and the Haymarket, and we learn that within a few hundred yards of the walls were green fields and country lanes, where now nothing but the name reminds us that the land ever produced any other crops than bricks and mortar and throngs of people. It is amusing to note how Agas quaintly emphasises the rural character of the lands immediately adjoining the confines of the city by depicting cattle in the fields, and the good wife bleaching her washing within a few yards of Moorgate. North of the Strand there was a road running up to the pleasant suburbs of Holborn and Bloomsbury, surely a dim prophecy of the present Aldwych and Kingsway.

There was a continuous line of buildings from Westminster to Poplar, and the northern and eastern roads leading from Bishopsgate were lined both sides with houses as far as Shoreditch and Mile End. South of the Thames, Southwark had spread a long way along the river bank in both directions, and in the map are conspicuous the enclosures for bear and bull-baiting, the former of which is now believed to have been the site of the Roman Amphitheatre. In Bankside, Southwark, we see the two theatres, "The Rose" and "The Globe," which remind us that we are looking at Shakespeare's London.

There are Cheapside, Wood Street, Milk Street, Lothbury, and all the rest of the Saxon streets; there are the main roads running north, east, south and west. In "The way to Reading" we recognise Piccadilly; Oxford Street in "The way to Uxbridge";



ST. PAUL'S CATHEDRAL, THE CHOIR

Photo, G.W. Rly.



the Tower and Westminster Abbey are there, standing like sentinels at either end of the city. The principal shopping street was Cheapside with its Goldsmith's Row, the fashionable promenade was Paul's Walk, which passed through the nave of St. Paul's Cathedral, to the detriment of the sanctity of that edifice, and the slums just outside the walls were crowded with tenement dwellings of the poorest class. The population was 125,000.

### THE GREAT FIRE.

Such was the London of the Tudors ; and from this picture we pass to London under the Stuarts, as shown us in the views and plan of Morden and Lea, 1682. Between the time of these two pictures, London has passed through the deep waters—she has been torn by civil wars, has witnessed the execution of her King, been desolated by the plague, and finally overwhelmed by the great fire of 1666. There had been fires before, but

nothing which could be compared with this terrible calamity, the tale of which, as told by Pepys, is heartrending. London was destroyed ; 396 acres, or about five-sixths of its entire area were laid waste, and 13,000 houses were consumed. The population had by this time reached nearly 500,000, and of these people 200,000 were rendered homeless. The only part of the city proper which was not consumed was between the Tower and Coleman Street. From this point to the Temple the whole was burnt to the ground. All the buildings were down, St. Paul's, the Guildhall, the Royal Exchange, eighty-nine churches, and nearly all the halls of the companies. So complete was the clearance that it was regarded as an opportunity of remodelling the city and replacing the narrow and tortuous streets by others broader and more handsome.

The two principal architects of the times, Wren and Evelyn, were desired to prepare plans for this purpose, but the difficulties



THE LAW COURTS AND FLEET STREET  
The centres of Law and Journalism

*Photo, L. Toms & Co. Ltd.*



*Photo, L. Toms & Co. Ltd.*

#### TRAFALGAR SQUARE AND NELSON COLUMN

Looking towards the West End

This square, surrounded by fine buildings, including the National Gallery, is generally considered as the centre of the great city, although topographically it is far from being the central point

were too great to allow of the project being carried out. These plans are extant, laying out the city on rectangular lines; and it is considered by many that the failure of their scheme was by no means a matter for regret. As it is, a new London rapidly arose upon its former ruins, but the streets were widened and the old wooden and thatched houses were replaced by brick buildings with tiled roofs,

which were at once more cleanly and less exposed to risk from fire.

#### WHEN CHARLES WAS KING.

The tide of fashion was flowing westwards—already had appeared the stately houses of Lincoln's Inn Fields, and in the new impetus of the re-creation of London there arose the still more imposing mansions of Pall Mall and Piccadilly. In Mordey's plan (which marks the close of the Jacobean period) we observe a great change without the walls, as we might expect from the fact that the population had quadrupled since our last review. The fields are closely built over westwards as far as St. James's Street. In Piccadilly appears Burlington House, erected by its owner so far west that "he felt sure no one would ever build beyond it." St. Giles's has been engulfed, the buildings reach Soho Square and Great Russell Street. Clerkenwell, St. Luke's, and Spitalfields are solid masses. Westminster has spread down to

Lambeth Bridge. On the south side of the river, private houses with gardens line the river bank from Lambeth House to a point opposite Somerset House; Southwark is greatly enlarged and the marshes are being slowly reclaimed. Fashion has now long left the city, and has taken up its abode in Piccadilly and in Kensington, which developed rapidly under William III.



WHITEHALL AND PARLIAMENT STREET, WESTMINSTER  
The Administrative Centre

*Photo, L. Toms & Co. Ltd.*

The building on the right of the picture (with towers) is the War Office, and in front of it on the same side is the old Westminster Hall, in front of which King Charles I was executed

### GEORGIAN LONDON.

Georgian London still finds the tide of buildings flowing westwards apace ; the land south of Tyburn Road, which was called Oxford Street in 1729, became rapidly covered with houses which are said to have been sold before they could be finished, and by the year 1770 the Portman Square district was covered. Eastwards the town was growing, and in narrow strips the houses had crept along the river bank as far as Limehouse ; but northwards the extension was slow, and as late as 1756 the land adjoining the British Museum was still farm land. South Lambeth was a health resort recommended for its situation, and Chelsea was a country village.

Georgian London was not distinguished for the beauty of its architecture. Most of the old gabled houses which had survived the fire were pulled down and their places were filled by buildings of what Ruskin describes as the Gower Street order of architecture—

row upon row, and street upon street, of dull brick buildings with flat fronts and sash windows. But if the building was ugly in style, it was prolific in quantity ; the old boundaries were too restricted and the outlets too narrow to accommodate the flowing tide of traffic. In 1760 the remnants of the old walls were demolished and the gates were all removed ; the picturesque but inconvenient London Bridge, with its piles of buildings and narrow ways, was stripped and widened, but the bridge itself stood until 1831, when it was replaced. Three new bridges were provided, Westminster, Blackfriars and Southwark, and the Fleet River was covered over as far down as Holborn Bridge. The picture of life in London under the Georges presents a vivid contrast to FitzStephen's description of Plantagenet London, and its depravity and vices were typified by the licence of its pleasure grounds of Vauxhall, Ranelagh, and Bagnigge Wells ; and by the horror of its debtors' prisons,

the Fleet, the King's Bench, and the Marshalsea.

The maps of the closing years of the Georgian period show us St. Marylebone built on as far north as Regent's Park, and a solid mass of houses reaching from Hyde Park to Stepney, bounded on the south by the river, and on the north by Regent's Park, Somers Town, Pentonville, and Shoreditch, with lines of houses creeping out in every direction. South of the river, Southwark is now a town in itself, but the development of the southern suburbs is as yet hardly began. In this huge town of Georgian London there reside over 1,000,000 souls.

### VICTORIAN LONDON.

Building, which had received a check in consequence of the expense of the Napoleonic Wars, found fresh stimulus on their conclusion. Within the next few years Victorian London witnessed the covering of the whole of the northern portions of Marylebone, St. John's Wood, Camden and Kentish Towns, Clerkenwell, Hackney, and the

northern suburbs. To the west, Paddington, Bayswater, Notting Hill, Pimlico, and Chelsea; to the east, Stepney, Limehouse and Poplar; and to the south, Greenwich, Lambeth, Peckham, Camberwell, Brixton, Stockwell, and Clapham. During the latter half of the century the great increase in railway and other means of traffic stimulated development to such an extent that not only were the areas mentioned more thickly and completely covered, but other large districts sprang into being; and still others, which until then were small hamlets, grew out of all recognition, and became merged in the topography of the vast metropolis.

### EDWARDIAN LONDON.

The district known as the Administrative County of London includes an area of 117 square miles, and the whole of it is covered with buildings, no open spaces being left except the parks. The population increased from 2,800,000 in 1861 to 4,483,249 in 1921.

Not only so, but London has passed the ample boundaries of the Administrative



BUCKINGHAM PALACE  
The residence of their Majesties, the King and Queen

*Photo, L. Toms & Co. Ltd.*

County and overflowed the Urban Districts of Brentford, Acton, Ealing and Chiswick; Willesden and Finchley; Hornsey and Wood Green; Tottenham and Ilford; Walthamstow, Leyton, East and West Ham, and Barking; Beckenham and Penge; Kingston, Richmond and Wimbledon—these alone having a population of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  millions and an area of 100 square miles. Yet even this wide range does not put a period to the growth of the metropolis—along every main road it pushes its feelers, and far beyond the boundaries of the urban districts the houses stretch almost without a break to Southall, Edgware, Barnet, Enfield, Woodford, Romford, and even Croydon and Surbiton. We watch it growing—ever growing,—and we know that it must still sweep onwards and outwards, in ring beyond ring, adding suburb to suburb, and town to town, until——. Who among us will dare to complete that prophecy?

### MODERN LONDON.

After having reviewed the Imperial Metropolis statistically and historically, there remains only to enumerate some of the chief thoroughfares, public buildings and places of amusement. In a city of considerably over 2,400 miles of streets, it will be readily understood that a guide book of very considerable size would be necessary to describe it, even in the most brief manner. Greater London, on June 19th, 1921, was discovered, by a census, to contain no less than 7,476,168 people. It was estimated, in 1930, that this figure had increased to considerably over 8,000,000. The assessable value of the London Cities and Boroughs, which is only a small part of the total populated area, is

approximately £111 millions. Within the proposed "London Health Area" there will be over 10,000,000 people.

In this huge metropolis the transport systems, although wonderfully organised, cannot keep pace with the demand, and form an ever-present problem. There are about 6,000 motor omnibuses, 7,000 taxicabs, 2,700 tramcars, and the underground railways carry 600,000,000 passengers a year. The tramways are used by 1,000,000,000 people, and the suburban lines by 400,000,000 passengers a year. The movement of this enormous volume of traffic, combined as it is with millions of motor cars, cycles, carts, vans, and other wheeled vehicles, is mainly responsible for 47,000 street casualties a year, of which 1,000 result in death. In view of the efforts made during recent years to prevent the horrors of war, these casualties in one large city, which almost equal the loss of life and limb in a small battle, are worthy of consideration.

Social life is catered for by 4,000 hotels, 186 large clubs, 470 newspaper offices, 3,060 public institutions, 532 cinemas, and 65 theatres. There are 124 hospitals and 25 public dispensaries, with a chain of ambulance stations. The average tonnage of shipping entering and clearing from the London Docks each year amounts to 18,000,000 and 16,000,000 tons, respectively.

The steady growth of this colossus of the Twentieth Century will be better understood when it is stated that an average of 16,000 houses a year have been built for the past 50 years, and it is estimated that in order to make up for the absence of building during the war years, 100,000 per annum will be needed to house the population during the next ten years.





# BRITISH ISLES

## IMPERIAL HISTORY

**T**HE heart of the world-wide British Empire is "The Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland," geographically known as the British Isles, which consist of the two main islands of Great Britain and Ireland, with the Isle of Man and the Channel Islands, and a large number of islets lining the coasts or situated in the surrounding seas at no great distance from them (Scilly Isles). They are washed on the north-west, west and south-west by the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by the Atlantic and English Channel, and on the east by the North Sea. They lie between latitude  $48^{\circ}$  and  $61^{\circ}$  N., and longitude  $2^{\circ}$  E. and  $11^{\circ}$  W. The total area is 121,630 square miles, or 77,683,084 acres, with a population of about 50,000,000.

### Early History

Although very little is known of Britain before the Roman invasion, it appears to have been divided into a number of states, these being sub-divided into clanships. The inhabitants were tribes of the Celtic stock, and were often at war with each other. Although there was no organised form of central government, each tribe being ruled by its own chief, the sacerdotal order, known as the Druids, had great power throughout the land.\* They ministered religion; enjoining the worship as deities of many such objects as the sun, moon, fire, water, and the oak tree; their temples were massive structures of stone, and they acted as judges and doctors. The Britons were expert horsemen, and were skilled in the art of primitive

warfare, but they lacked cohesion and discipline. Hunting and fishing were the principal occupations; and the dwellings consisted of rude huts covered with the skins of animals. Such was the condition of the country previous to the Roman invasion.

### ROMAN PERIOD.

From the pages of Caesar and Tacitus we learn the state of Britain at the dawn of Christianity. About half a century before the Christian era (55 B.C.) Julius Caesar, then Governor of that portion of the Roman Empire which embraced the greater portion of Western Europe, decided on the conquest of Britain. He sailed from Gaul on his first expedition in 55 B.C., and landed at Deal. The Britons opposed the landing, but the superior discipline and arms of the Romans prevailed. Not wishing to winter in the island, Caesar withdrew to Gaul, but returned with a stronger force in the following year (54 B.C.). He defeated the Britons, first, on the banks of the Stour, near Canterbury, and later crossed the Thames, eventually capturing St. Albans, the principal stronghold.

Julius Caesar then finally withdrew from the island, and for almost a century Britain remained unmolested, but in the reign of Claudius (43 A.D.) the Romans, under Aulus Plautius (with Vespasian and Titus), again invaded the country. These and other leaders finally subdued nearly the whole island, which became a Roman Province. In this condition it remained for nearly 400

\* By some historians it is thought that the headquarters of Druidism was in Britain, and by others that it was on the Continent.



EARLY BRITONS

years, and so great was the effect of the Roman occupation that the face of the land was changed from a wild, swamp and tree-covered island, inhabited by semi-barbarians, into a rich agricultural land, with roads, cities and all the attributes of early civilisation.

The first independent King of Britain was the Roman Governor, Carausius, who held the position of *Comes littoris Saxonici*, or "Count of the Saxon Shore." In this post he amassed great wealth and power, corrupted the fidelity of the troops occupying the country, defied the Imperial Government, and ruled as an independent sovereign from 288 A.D. to 293 A.D., when he was assassinated by Allectus, who ruled for three years, and was then, himself, defeated and slain by Constantine; and Britain again became a province of the Roman Empire.

The first Christian

ruler was Constantine, son of Constantine, under whom Britain enjoyed many years of peace (306 A.D.). With the decay of the Roman Empire the peace and prosperity of Britain declined. The troops were gradually withdrawn to defend Rome itself, and in 410 A.D. the Romans finally withdrew from Britain and a period of anarchy followed.

### THE ANGLO-SAXON RACE.

The Britons, who had lost the spirit of freedom, found themselves unable to resist the incursions of the Picts and Scots, who inhabited the northern portion of the island, or to check the attacks on the southern coast by the Saxon pirates. In their extremity they appealed to Rome for aid, and on this being refused they welcomed the assistance of the Saxons, who quickly made themselves



STONEHENGE, WILTSHIRE

Photo, G.W. Rly.

masters of the country, which was divided—under the Heptarchy—into seven separate kingdoms. These were : Kent, founded in 457 ; Sussex in 490, Wessex in 495, Essex in 527, East Anglia in 570, Northumbria in 547, and Mercia in 582. Each of these states had its own independent ruler. The whole land was gradually re-peopled by the Saxon immigrants, the Britons being driven into the mountains of the West, South-west and North.

The Anglo-Saxons, as they eventually became, were a noble and brave race with a distinct fondness for maritime enterprise and a great respect for women. Christianity was introduced into Saxon-Britain by Pope Gregory the Great (British Christianity already existed in the West), who sent missionaries into the country under Augustine, in 596. About the events of the Heptarchy little is known. The seven chiefs ruled independently of one another, but each was naturally anxious to extend his dominions. Internal warfare raged, almost without intermission, until 827, when Egbert, exiled heir to the throne of Wessex, succeeded in making himself master of the whole country and gave to his island dominion the name of England. He died in 833, and was succeeded by his son Ethelwulf.

### THE BIRTH OF ENGLAND.

Struggles with the Danish invaders constitute the principal events of this and the succeeding three reigns. Ethelbald, the eldest of the four sons of Ethelwulf, ascended the throne in 858 ; Ethelbert in 860 ; Ethelred in 866 ; and Alfred the Great in 871. This reign is the most brilliant in the early history of England. Long before Alfred came to the throne the Danes had gained a sure footing on British soil, but so vigorous was the rule of this Sussex king that they were everywhere held in check until his death in 901.

During the next few reigns the Danes consolidated their conquests in various parts of the island, and entered into joint action with the Britons, Scots and Welsh. The rulers of Saxon-England during this period were : Edward the Elder (901), Athelstan (925), Edmund (941), Edred (946), Edwy (955), Edgar (959), Edward (975), and Ethelred (978). It was during the last reign that the Danes, under Sweyn, son of the Danish King, succeeded in mastering the

country and compelling the weak Ethelred (the Unready) to leave his kingdom and take refuge in Normandy.

### DANISH PERIOD.

In the year 1014, Sweyn became the unopposed ruler of England, but he died in the following year and was succeeded by his son, Canute. In the meantime the exiled Ethelred also died, and a dispute arose between his son, Edmund (Ironside) and Canute, which resulted in the division of the kingdom between the rival Saxon and Danish kings. The former died one year after this arrangement was made, and Canute became the ruler of the two kingdoms. His reign was a prosperous one, but his sons Harold and Hardicanute, who succeeded him in 1036 and 1040, were both cruel and intemperate, the latter dying of a debauch in 1041. This was the last of the Danish kings, the Saxon dynasty being resumed in the person of Ethelred's son, Edward.

### SAXONS AND NORMANS.

Edward the Confessor was a feeble ruler with a strong liking for the Normans, among whom he had lived until called to the throne of England by universal acclamation in 1042. No important events occurred during this and the succeeding few reigns. Harold II, son of Earl Godwin—a ruler under Canute—ascended the throne 1066. The country was at this time invaded by the Norwegian king, and Harold's brother Tosti, who were, however, overthrown in a great battle near York. This was followed by the more formidable invasion of William of Normandy (1066). Harold hastened from his victory near York to repel the new invasion of the south, and the two armies met near Hastings (1066), where the English sustained a decisive defeat, Harold and his two brothers being among the slain. This ended the Saxon dynasty in England.

### THE FEUDAL SYSTEM.

William I (the Conqueror) ascended the throne in 1066, but it was fully ten years before he succeeded in effecting the subjugation of the whole country. He was a wise but despotic ruler. The principal events of this important reign were the establishment of the Feudal System and the Domesday Book, which was a register of all



TOWER OF LONDON

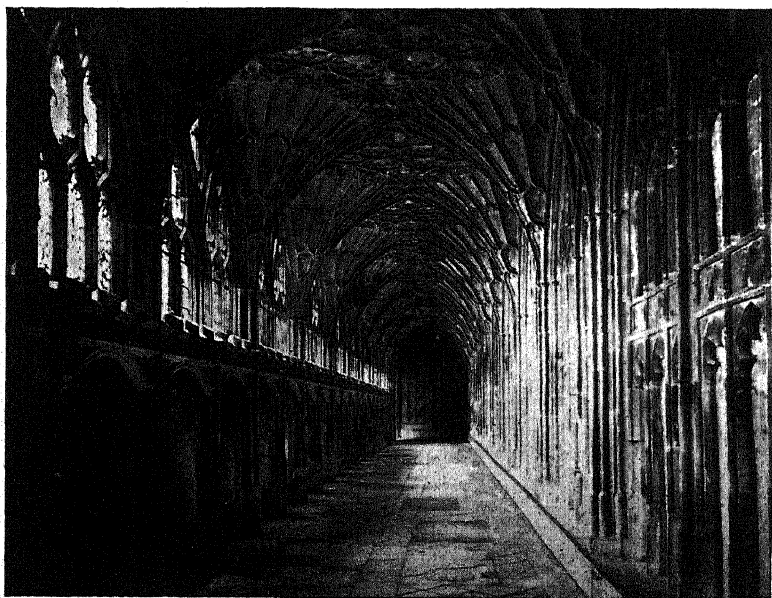
lands in the kingdom, and is now one of the most valuable of ancient records possessed by any country.

Although the principal features of the Feudal System were introduced during the reign of William I, its origin in Britain can be traced to Saxon times. The principal object of this system was to obtain a strong and well-equipped military force, but there were also subsidiary motives for its introduction. Among the principal features of the Feudal System must be mentioned (1) that every holder of land was required to serve in the military forces, (2) to help in the construction and maintenance of bridges and the walls of towns. These were the earliest of the feudal conditions of land tenure. Others arose later in which the great lords

or knights were directly subject to the king, and the lesser tenants to the great lords. All were vassals and had to serve with life and limb in return for the land they held.

The principal divisions of the Feudal System, when at its zenith, were (1) "The Knights' Fee" — by which every estate of the yearly value of £20 had to supply one knight for 40 days' military service in the year. It is believed that there were about eight to ten thousand of these. Then came (2) "The Soutage"—or inversion of personal

service into levies for overseas enterprise. These were the chief military conditions; there were, however, several important "feudal incidents" (principally financial conditions). First came "the Reliefs," by

GLOUCESTER CATHEDRAL  
The Cloisters

*Photos, G.W. Rly.*



WINCHESTER CATHEDRAL, THE CHOIR

Believed to have been first built in A.D. 164. King Canute and William Rufus are buried here

which an estate on the death of a tenant was only re-granted to his heir on the payment of "relief." "Aids" were occasional demands for the payment of special contributions (limited in later years by the Magna Carta). "Wardship" was, as its name implies, the management of an estate and the collection (and personal ownership) of the revenues of a minor by the lord during the time of minority. In this relation much oppression occurred through the power of a lord to compel an heiress who was under age to marry a suitor chosen by himself. These were the distinguishing features of the Feudal System, which was the basis of national life for several hundred years, and the results of which

can be traced to quite modern times.

#### NORMAN PERIOD.

The Tower of London was built during the reign of William the Conqueror, who died in 1087. He was succeeded by his second surviving son, William II (Rufus), who was killed by Sir Walter Tyrrel while hunting in the New Forest in 1100. Few important events occurred during this reign. An attempt was made to obtain the Duchy of Normandy, and the Scots, under Malcolm Canmore, invaded England, but were repulsed by Earl Mowbray. Westminster

Hall was built; and the Goodwin Sands were formed by the inundation of the land. On the death of William II, the crown of England belonged by right to his brother



WARWICK CASTLE

One of the finest remaining feudal castles

Photos, G.W. Rry.





Robert, then leading a crusade in the Holy Land, but was usurped by his brother Henry, who mounted the throne in 1100.

A conflict between the two brothers arose, which eventually resulted in the invasion of Normandy, the defeat of Robert's army at Tenchebrai (1106), and the capture of Robert himself, who was then confined in Cardiff Castle; on attempting to escape, his eyes were put out. Trouble with the Church resulted in a compromise, and Henry I died in Normandy in 1135. The religious order of knighthood, known as Knights Templars, was inaugurated; and woollen manufacture was introduced into Wales by a colony of Flemings. Stephen (of Blois) usurped the throne from Matilda, daughter of Henry I, and became King of England in 1135.

A civil war was immediately begun on behalf of the rightful Queen. The Scottish king led an army into England, but was defeated in the Battle of the Standard, at Northallerton, in 1138. A year or two later Robert of Gloucester raised an army and defeated Stephen, taking him prisoner at the battle of Lincoln in 1141. Matilda was proclaimed Queen, but she made enemies on all sides, and the people rose and compelled her to flee from London. In the war which followed, Robert of Gloucester was captured, but was exchanged for Stephen. Matilda, becoming disheartened, left the Kingdom, and Robert died in 1146.

Prince Henry, Matilda's son, who had inherited Normandy, Anjou, Touraine and Aquitaine, contested the crown with Stephen. He crossed the Channel with a large army, and met the forces of Stephen at Wallingford. A conference took place at which it was agreed that Stephen should reign for the remainder of his life, and that Henry should succeed him. Stephen died at Dover in 1154, and with him ended the Norman era.

### THE PLANTAGENETS.

The founder of this line of English kings was Henry II, son of Geoffrey Plantagenet, Earl of Anjou, who ascended the throne in 1154. Besides England, he had inherited vast domains on the Continent, and was one of the most powerful rulers in Europe. The chief events of this reign, which was one of the most notable in English history, were the struggles with the clergy, the murder of Thomas Becket, the conquest of Ireland,

rebellion of the King's sons, war on the Continent, war with the Scots, and the adoption of trial by jury.

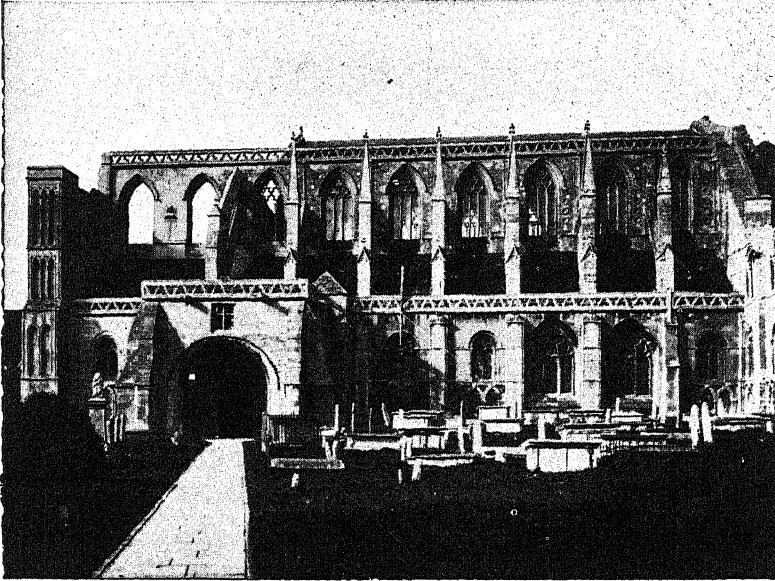
Henry, wishing to remedy the great difficulty (almost impossibility) of punishing clerics for actual crimes committed, brought in the Constitutions of Clarendon in 1164. By these it was ordained, among other things, that clerics accused of crime should be tried by a secular as well as an ecclesiastical court, and in the event of being found guilty should not be withheld from justice by the Church. Archbishop Becket, whom Henry had expected to help him in the matter, proved a strong opponent, and a great struggle between the King and the Church took place until the murder of the Archbishop in his cathedral at Canterbury. A thrill of horror at this crime passed over the whole of Western Europe, and Henry did penance at the tomb. Becket was canonised, and "St. Thomas" became a very popular saint in England.

### CONQUEST OF IRELAND.

This island, at the time of its conquest by Henry II, was divided into five kingdoms, and one of its chiefs (Dermot McMurchad) had been dethroned by a confederacy of the other four ruling chiefs. In order to get back his kingdom, Dermot, in return for military aid, promised Henry to become his vassal. The English king, being engaged elsewhere at the time, did not lead the first expedition in person, but allowed some of his knights, including Strongbow, Earl of Pembroke, to take up arms in aid of Dermot. The expedition was entirely successful; Wexford, Waterford and Dublin being captured, and Dermot reinstated. On the death of the Irish chief, Strongbow succeeded to the throne, and Henry, fearing that he and the other chiefs might become too powerful, recalled them to England, and himself went over to Ireland at the head of a large force. Nearly all the Irish chiefs gave in their allegiance, and in 1171 Ireland became a possession of the English Crown. Henry II died in 1189, and was succeeded by his eldest son, Richard I.

### DAWN OF OVERSEA ADVENTURE.

The coronation of this king was marked by a terrible massacre of Jews who had assembled to witness the ceremony. Similar



MALMESBURY ABBEY, WILTSHIRE

A famous seventh century Abbey containing the tomb of Athelstan

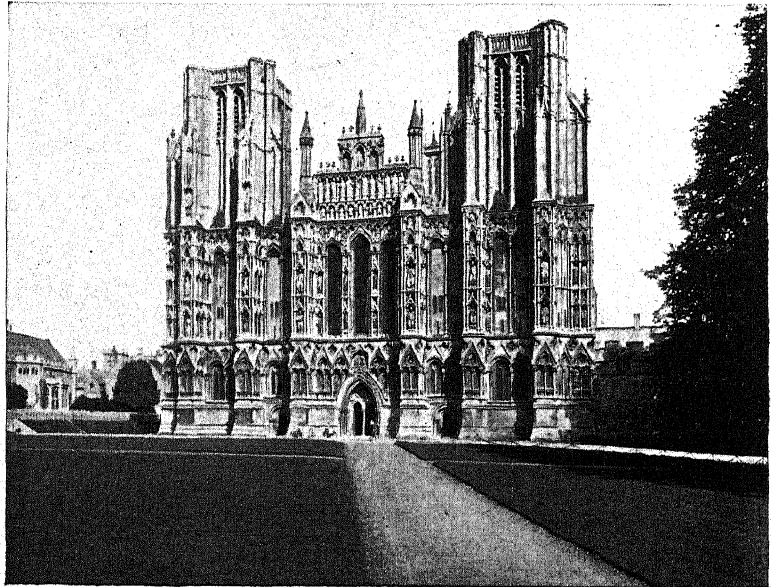
massacres also took place at York, Norwich and Stamford. One of the principal events of this reign was the expedition to the Holy Land, or Third Crusade. Richard (Cœur de Lion), being fond of warlike enterprise, equipped a large army at the expense of his subjects, and in conjunction with the French king set out for the Holy Land. Richard conquered the Island of Cyprus, and, on reaching Palestine, took part in the capture of Acre, and the defeat of the Saracen troops, under Saladin at Jaffa and Ascalon. Jerusalem was, however, left uncaptured owing to dissensions among the Crusaders themselves, and Richard left Palestine in 1192.

While travelling through Germany on his return to England, Richard was seized by the Archduke of Aus-

tria and imprisoned for several years, eventually being released on the payment of a heavy ransom by the people of England. In the meantime the Kingdom was sadly misgoverned, and efforts were made by his brother John to deprive him of the crown. Richard was, however, as much beloved by his people as John was hated, and the nation cheerfully paid the ransom demanded by the Archduke of Austria.

Scarcely had Richard returned from captivity, before he led an expedition into

France to punish the French king, who had aided his brother John in his treacherous efforts to secure the throne. John surrendered and was pardoned, and a truce was concluded with Philip of France, but



WELLS CATHEDRAL (West Front), SOMERSETSHIRE  
Built in 1135-66. The West Front contains 300 carved stone figures

*Photos, G.W. Rly.*

Richard died of a wound in 1199. John, who usurped the throne, was of a despicable and cruel disposition. He carried off and married the affianced bride of the Count de La Manche, while his own queen was alive, and sanctioned the murder of Prince Arthur, the rightful heir to the throne.\* He engaged in humiliating struggles with the Pope, the King of France, and his own nobles, in all of which he was ultimately defeated.

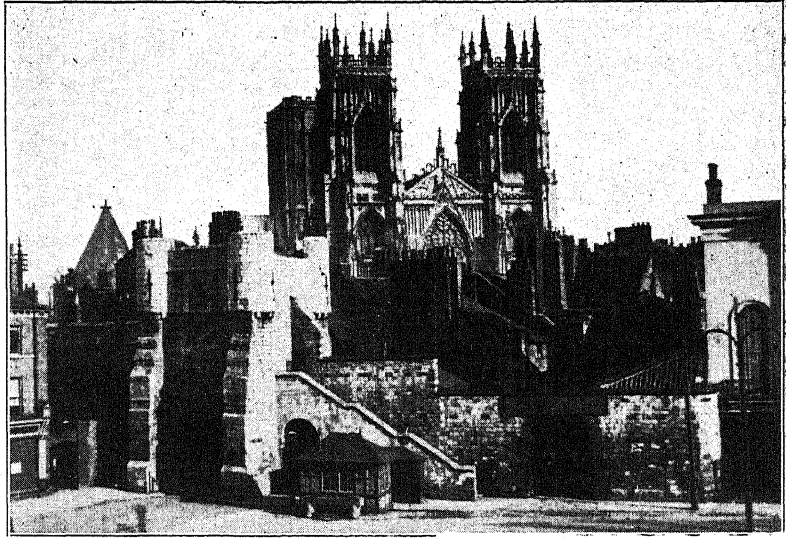


Photo by kind permission of the Town Clerk

#### YORK MINSTER AND OLD CITY WALL

Once the Eboracum of the Romans, York still contains many interesting relics of the past; among them, the Minster, which was built between 1154-1400. From the reign of Henry II onwards Parliament frequently sat in York

#### MAGNA CARTA.

The principal event of his reign was the signing of the Magna Carta, at Runnymede, on 19th June, 1215. In this document were embodied many restrictions on the arbitrary actions of the King. In one clause the ancient privileges of

London were guaranteed, in another it was stipulated that the Church (*Ecclesia Anglicana*) should be free, and in yet another that justice was not to be sold, delayed or denied to any subject.

Although King John signed this treaty, he made no effort to keep to its conditions, and an unsatisfactory war with the Barons followed. He died at Newark in 1216.

It is interesting to note that during this reign Londoners were allowed for the first time to elect a Mayor; the first to be so elected being Henry Fitz-Alwin (1208). London Bridge was completed, and chimneys first invented. Henry III, John's eldest son, was crowned King of England in 1216. His was a long



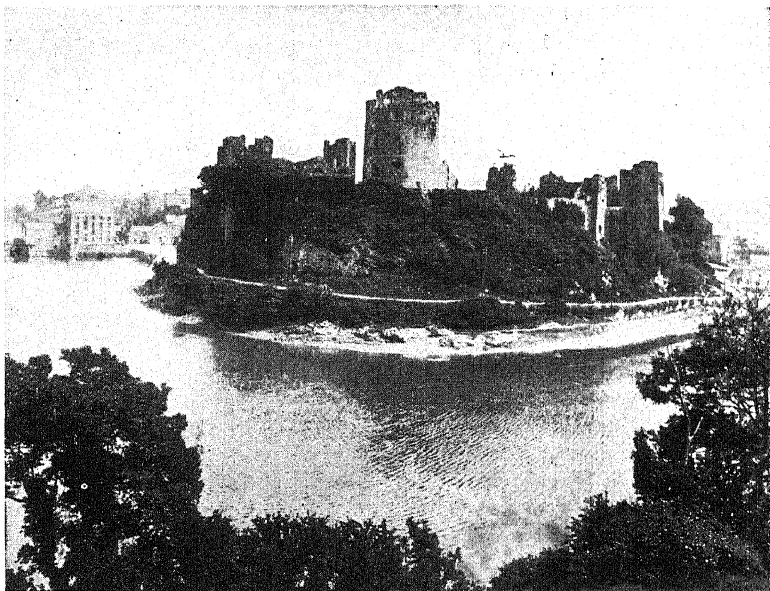
TINTERN ABBEY, MONMOUTHSHIRE

Photo, G.W. Rly.

Nave of the famous church built at the close of the twelfth century

\* It is said by some historians that he murdered him with his own hands.

and feeble reign. As he was only ten years of age at the time of his coronation, the Earl of Pembroke was appointed Regent. The Dauphin, who had been assisting the Barons in their struggles against John, was quickly overthrown. On the death of Pembroke the direction of affairs was entrusted to Hubert de Burgh. A short and successful war with France preceded the Civil War, which was caused by the young king's extravagance and liking for foreigners.



**PEMBROKE CASTLE**

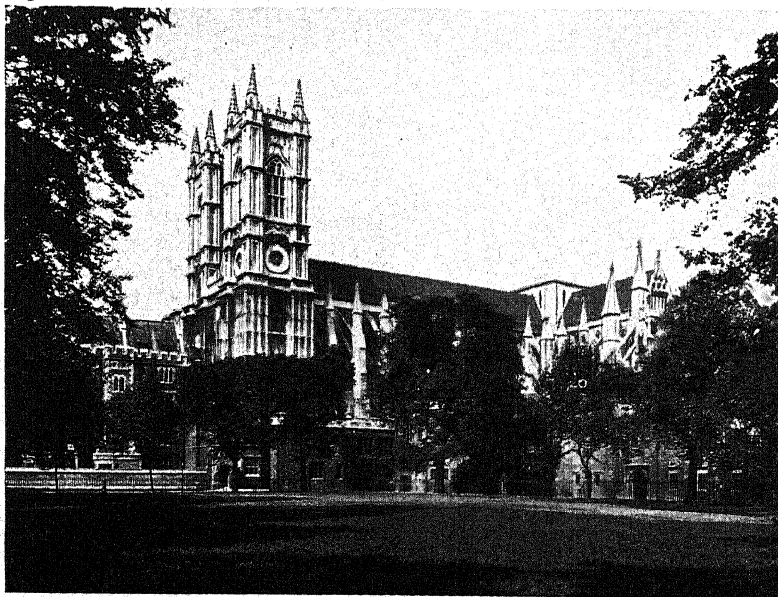
The Great Keep, built in the reign of King John, is 80 feet high

### ORIGIN OF PARLIAMENT.

The leader in this struggle between the nobles and the King was Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester. By a decree of the Mad Parliament, held at Oxford in 1258, twenty-

four nobles were appointed guardians of the King. A war ensued, in which the nobles gained the decisive victory at Lewes in 1264, the King and his principal supporters being taken prisoners. To this

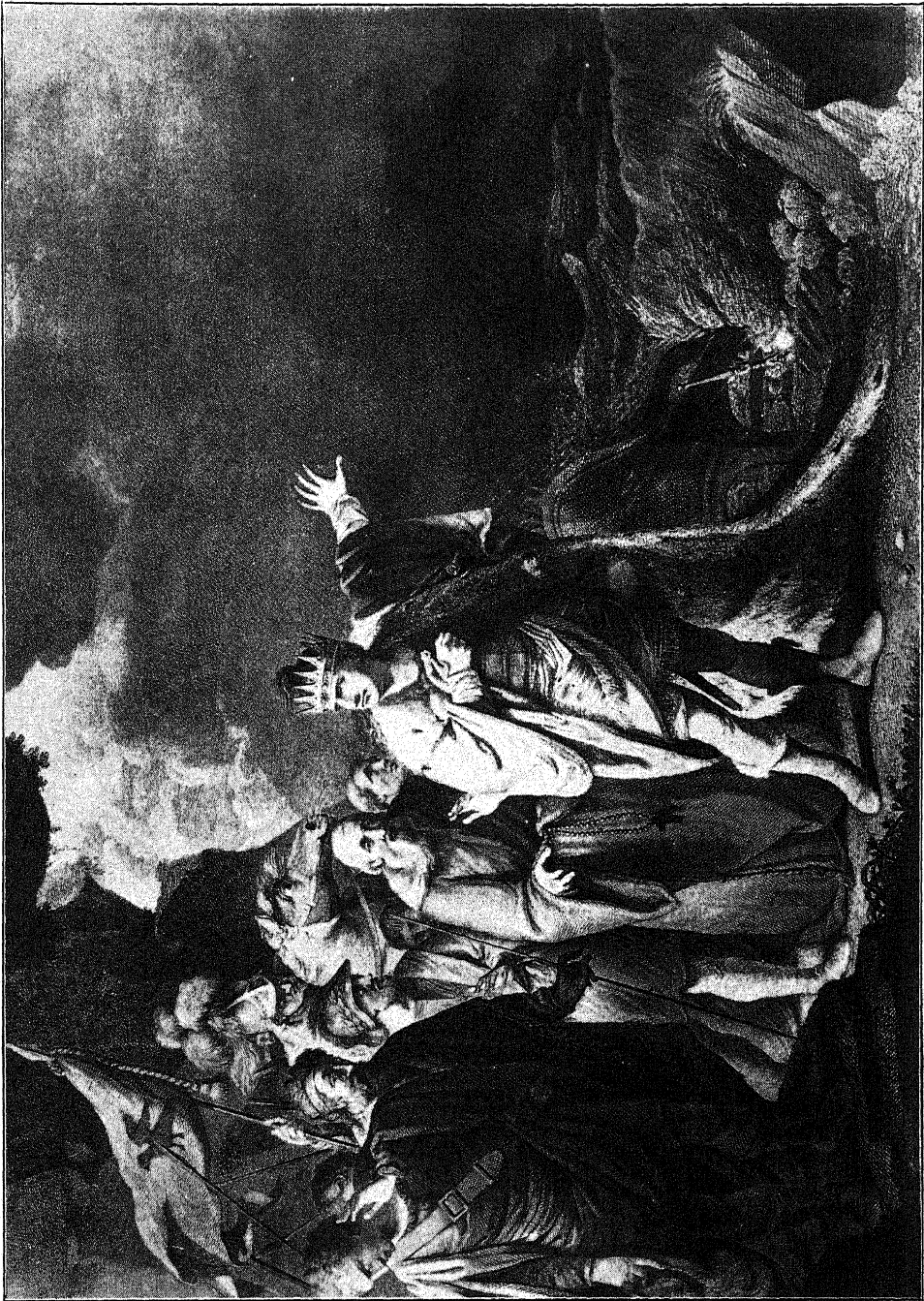
victory may be traced the origin of the House of Commons (1265). Previously the King's council had been composed entirely of nobles and the clergy, but Leicester in order to strengthen his hand by popular power, issued writs in the King's name to cities, boroughs and counties, asking each to send two representatives to Parliament. A turn in the wheel of fortune made the King again triumphant, and Leicester was defeated and slain in the battle of Evesham (1265). Henry III died in 1272.



**WESTMINSTER ABBEY**  
Rebuilt during the reign of Henry III

*Photos, G.W. Rly.*



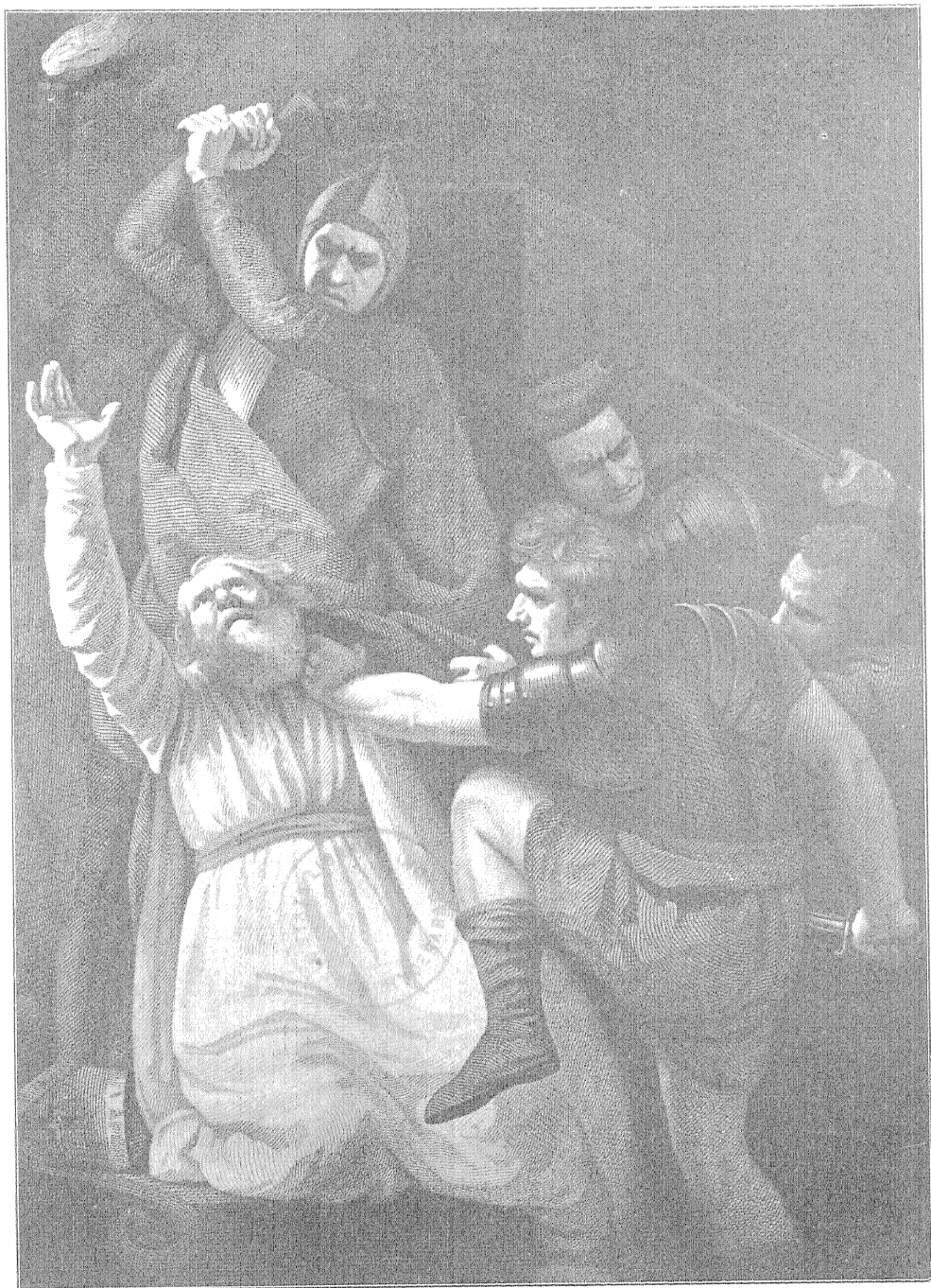


KING CANUTE COMMANDING THE WAVES TO BE STILL

W. A. Mansell & Co.

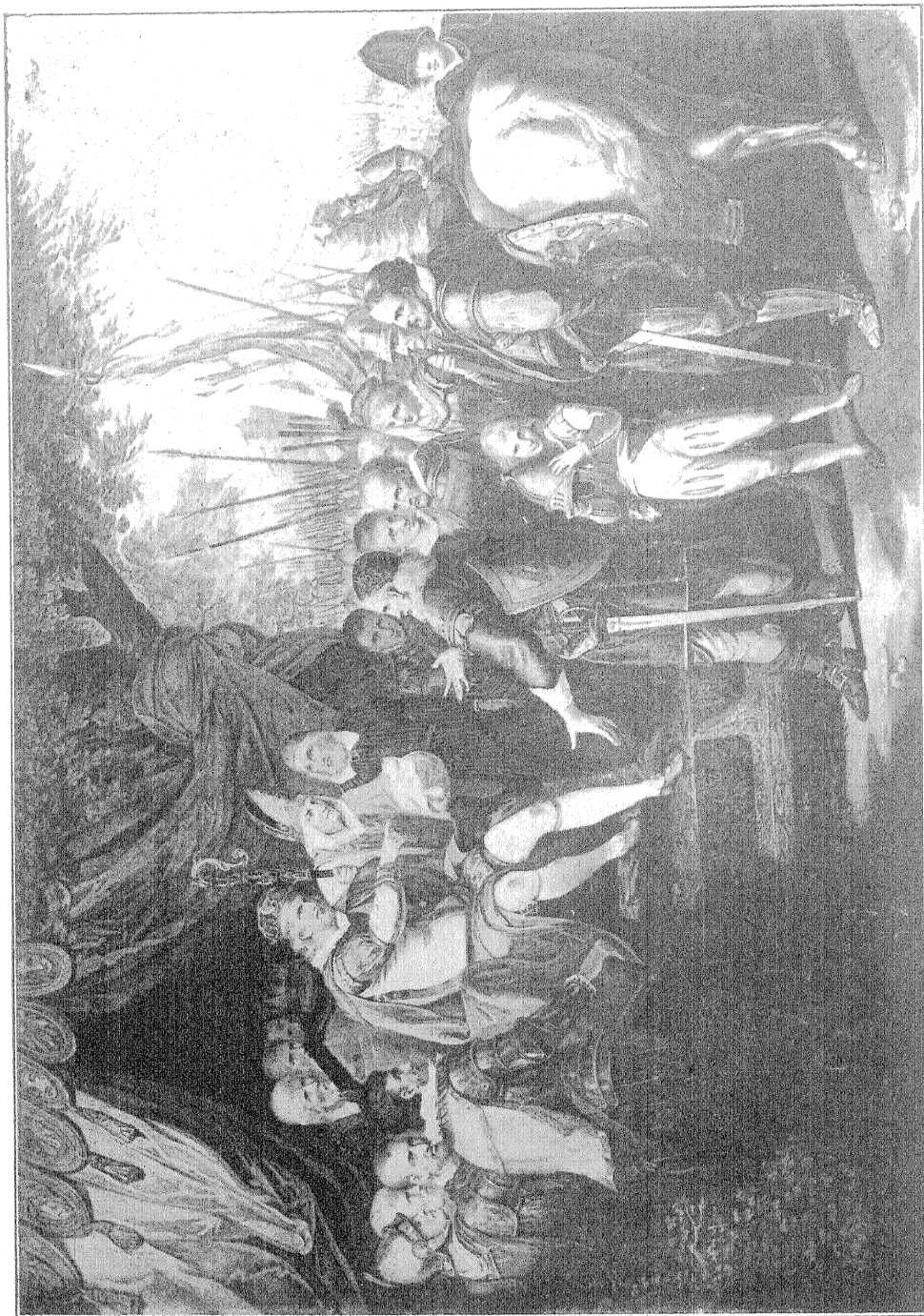


W. A. Mansell & Co.  
WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR RECEIVING THE CROWN OF ENGLAND



W. A. Mansell & Co.  
THE MURDER OF THOMAS BECKET IN CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL

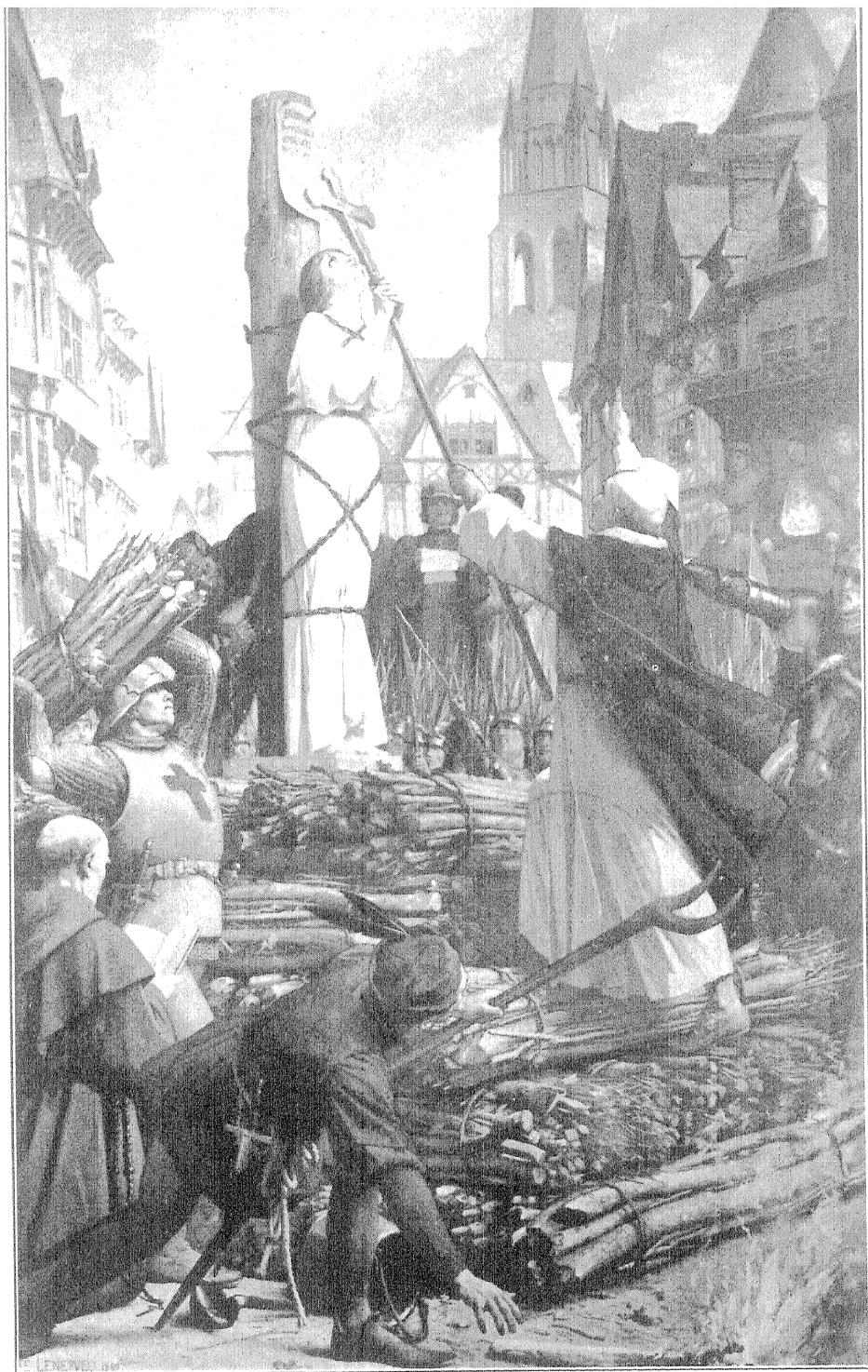




Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

KING JOHN SIGNING MAGNA CARTA

From a painting by Motimer



W. A. Mansell & Co.

*From the painting by J. E. Lenepveu*

THE BURNING OF JOAN OF ARC, AT ROUEN, IN 1431

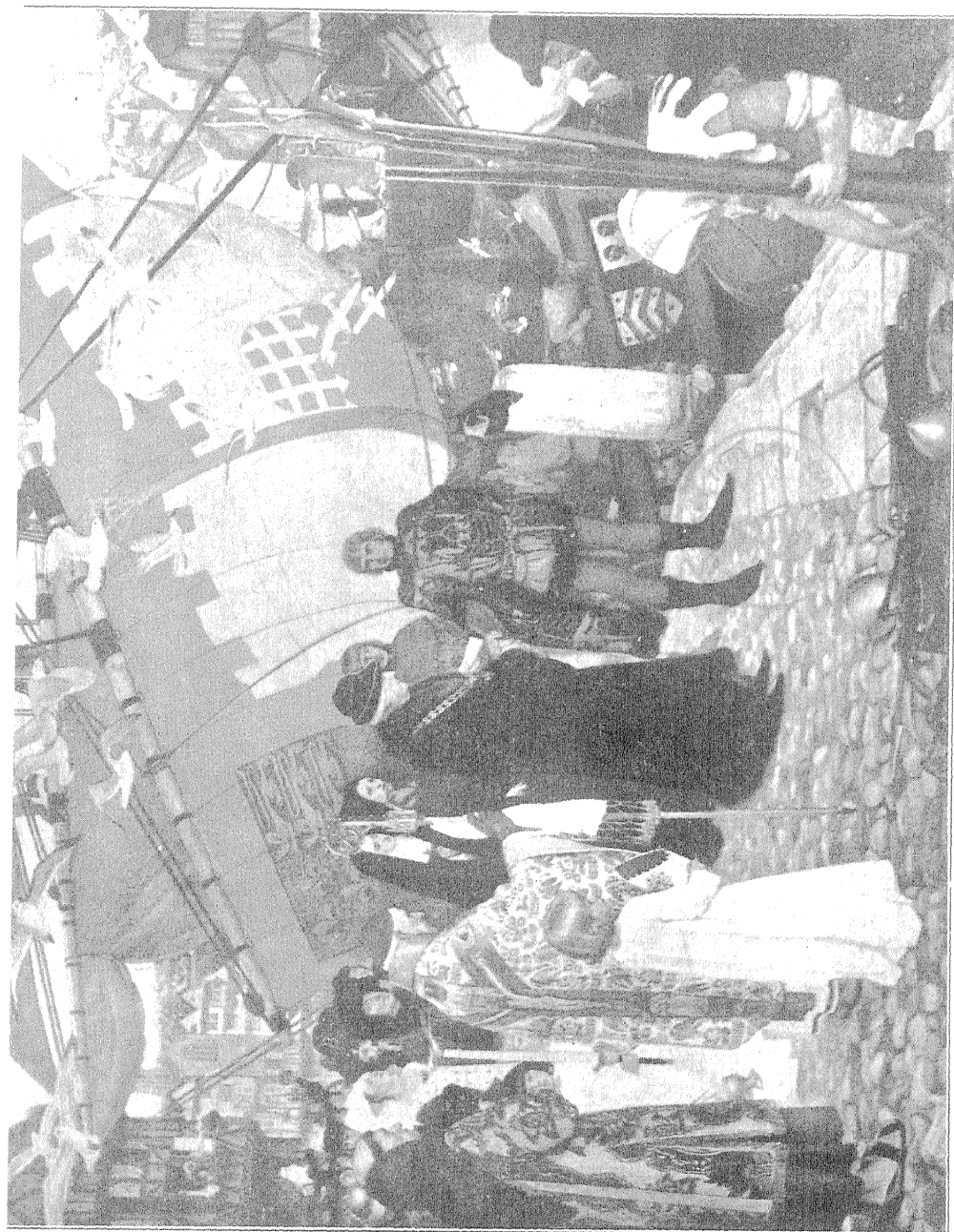




*Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.*

*From a painting by James Northcote*

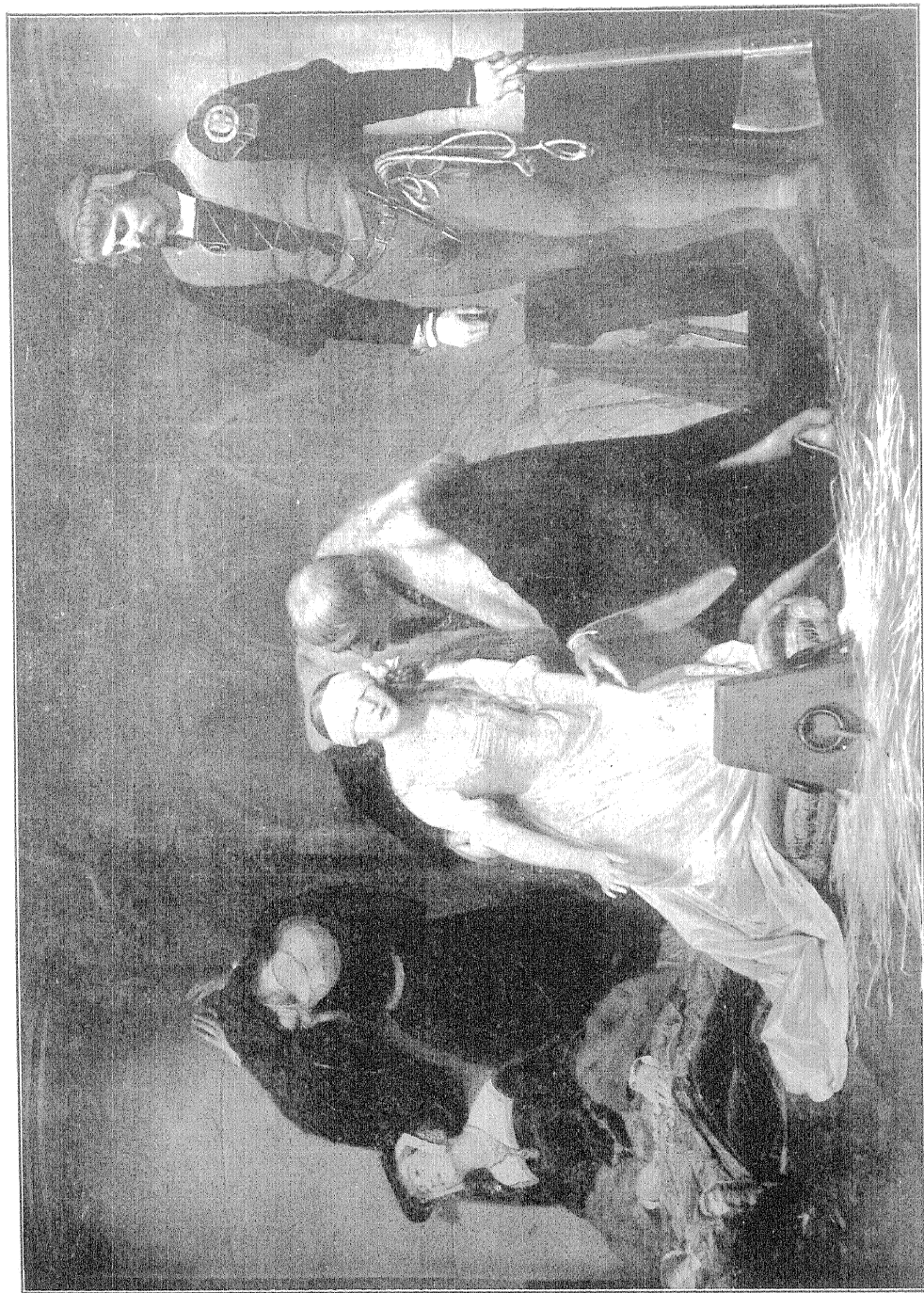
# MURDER OF THE PRINCES IN THE TOWER



*From the painting by Ernest Board*

**THE DEPARTURE OF JOHN AND SEBASTIAN CABOT FROM  
BRISTOL  
ON THEIR FIRST VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY, 1497**

*From the original in the Bristol Art Gallery*

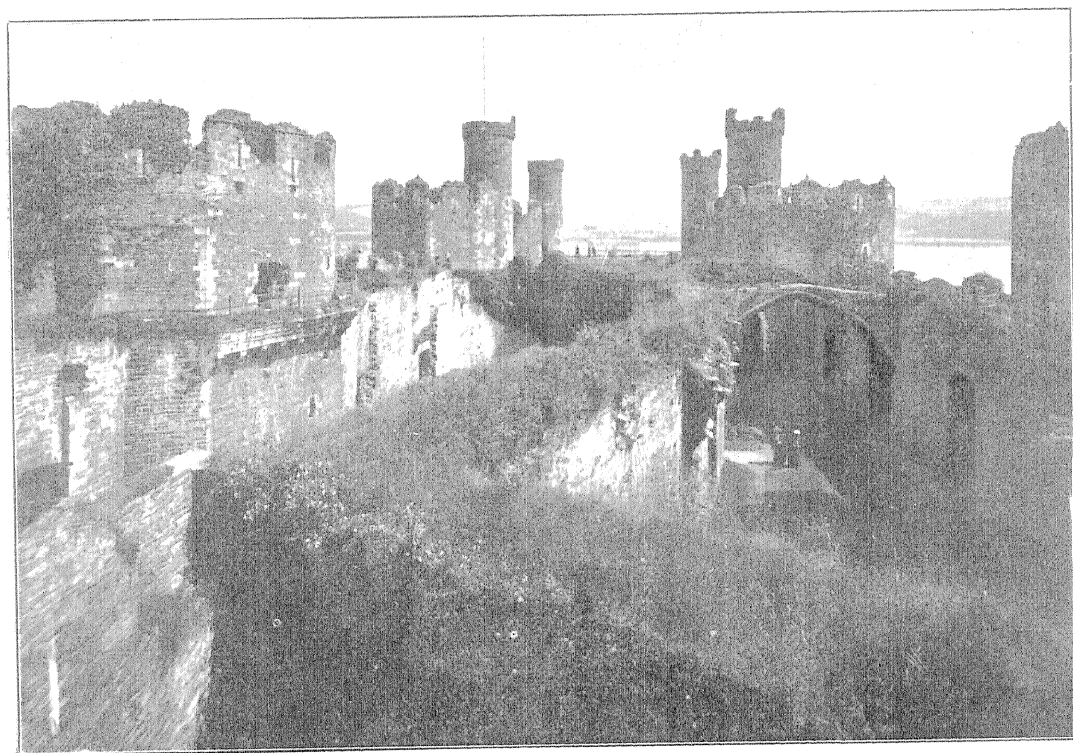
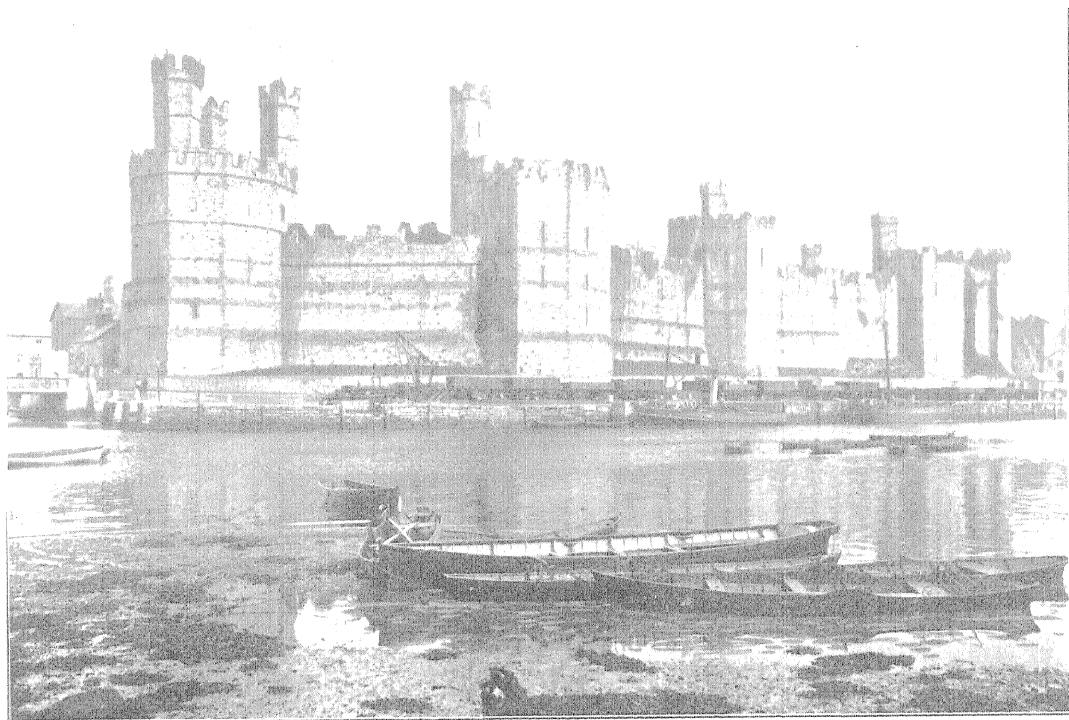


*From a painting by Delaroche*

EXECUTION OF LADY JANE GREY

*Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.*

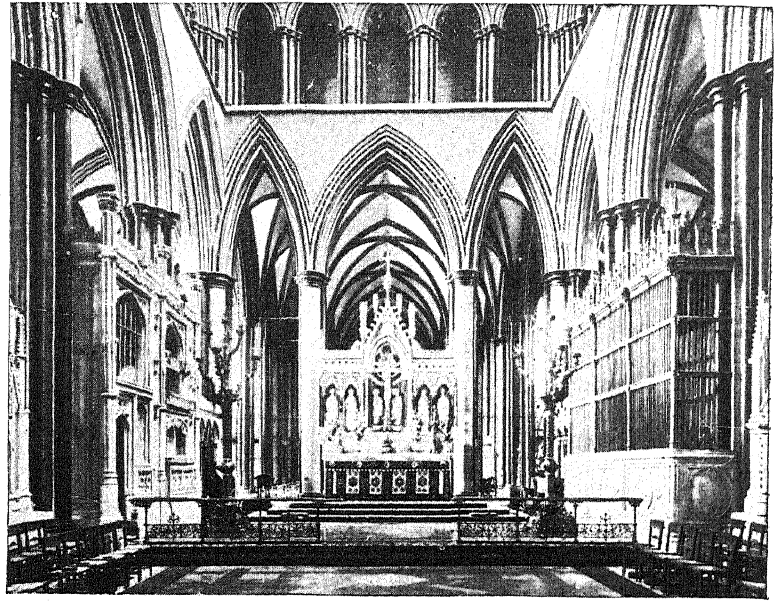




*Photos, L. & N.W. Rly*  
 TWO FAMOUS WELSH CASTLES BUILT IN THE REIGN OF EDWARD I  
 (1) CARNARVON CASTLE    (2) CONWAY CASTLE

### ANNEXATION OF WALES.

It was during this reign (1239) that a licence was first granted to the people of Newcastle to dig coal. Westminster Abbey was rebuilt and the mariner's compass was invented. Edward I ascended the throne on his return from Palestine in 1273, one year after the death of his father. The first important event was the conquest of Wales (1282). Llewellyn, the last reigning Prince of Wales, who had aided Leicester, had been compelled to acknowledge his allegiance to King Henry, but on being summoned to renew the oath to Edward I, refused to do so unless Eleanor de Montfort, to whom he was betrothed, was released from captivity.

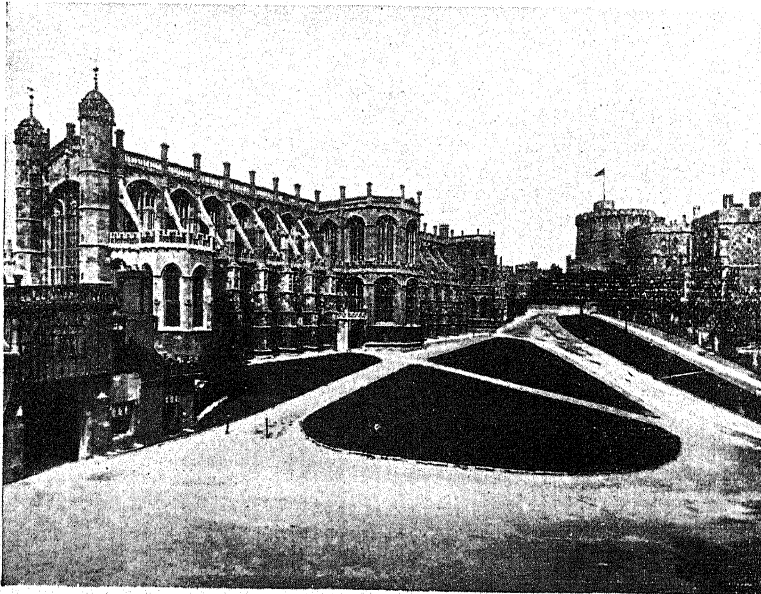


**SALISBURY CATHEDRAL, WILTSHIRE**

The only Cathedral built entirely in the Early English style. The spire is the most lofty in the kingdom, 404 feet

A war ensued, and the Welsh sued for peace, but the severity of the English rule caused an insurrection, and Edward with a powerful force defeated the Welsh at Llandiloawr.

In this battle Llewellyn was slain, and his brother David was shortly afterwards captured and executed. At the Council of Rhuddlan (1283) Wales was annexed to the Crown of England.



**ST. GEORGE'S CHAPEL, WINDSOR**

Windsor Castle, for many years the premier residence of the Kings of England, was rebuilt in the reign of Edward III by the famous architect, William of Wykeham

### THE STRUGGLE WITH SCOTLAND.

War with Scotland resulted in the English victory at Dunbar (1296), after which Edward received the allegiance, as feudal lord, of the Scottish nation, and carried to London from Scone the stone on which the Scottish sovereigns were crowned. This stone is now placed under the Coronation



Chair in Westminster Abbey. An insurrection broke out in Scotland in the following year, in which the Scots, under Wallace and Douglas, gained a victory at Cambuskenneth (1297), but suffered signal defeat at Falkirk in the following year. Among the names famous during these troublous times in Scottish history must be mentioned John Baliol, Robert Bruce, and William Wallace. Edward I died in 1307, while on his way to Scotland to quell the rebellion caused by the illustrious Robert Bruce raising the Royal Standard of Scotland and being crowned at Scone.

During the reign of Edward I the Great Charter was confirmed, with the additional stipulation that no tax should be levied without the consent of the Lords and Commons ; and, by the Statute of Mortmain, the rising temporal power of the Church was checked. The present banking quarter of London, known as Lombard Street, was formed about this time by the settlement there of a number of money-lenders and merchants from Lombardy. Edward II (1307) was a weak king with a strong regard for worthless favourites. Piers Gaveston and Hugh le Despenser were the first two on whom he showered both honours and power. This led to a war between the King and the nobles, which resulted in varying success for both parties.

In the meantime the Scots, under the great Robert Bruce, had organised a large army and regained most of their fortresses. Edward II marched with 100,000 men to the relief of Stirling Castle, which was on the point of surrendering. The Scottish Army, under Bruce, was not more than 40,000 strong, but at the Battle of Bannockburn (1314) the English forces were completely overthrown, and Scotland became an independent kingdom.

Further trouble arose between the King and his nobles, brought about by the infidelity of Queen Isabella, which resulted in the imprisonment of Edward and the resignation of the crown to his son. Edward was soon afterwards brutally murdered in Berkeley Castle at the instigation of his faithless and unscrupulous Queen. Edward III was under age when he came to the throne in 1327, and a regency was formed with Lancaster as the head, but the Queen and her

favourite, Mortimer, were the real power. At the age of eighteen, Edward III threw off the restraint placed upon him, imprisoned and executed Mortimer, and confined the Queen in Castle Rising, Kent, for the remainder of her life.

### FAMOUS BATTLES OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

The principal events of this reign were two wars with Scotland, in 1333 and 1346, and three wars with France, in 1339, 1346 and 1356, in all of which the English armies were victorious. It was during Edward's second and third campaigns in France that the famous battles of Crecy (1346) and Poitiers (1356) were fought and won. In a naval engagement off Sluys (1340) an English fleet of 250 sail, commanded by the King, inflicted a crushing defeat on the French fleet of 400 ships.\* It is said that over 200 French ships were sunk, and 30,000 men placed *hors de combat*. Towards the close of this reign Charles V of France succeeded in wresting from the English all the conquests made, and also in depriving Edward III of his hereditary continental dominions, with the exception of Calais. Many of the earlier victories of the English in France were due to the military genius of the Black Prince. Edward III died in 1377.

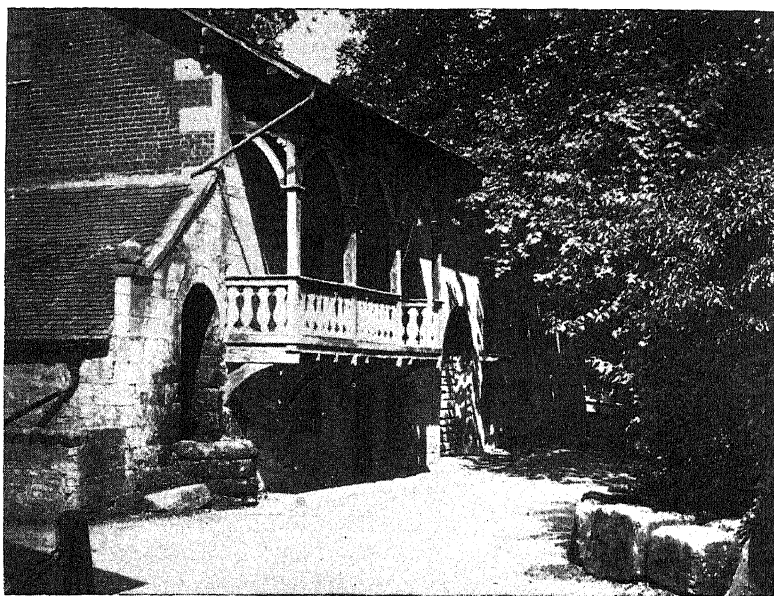
Among the other important events of this reign must be mentioned the passing of the Law of Treason ; the terrible plague, known as the Black Death, which swept over Europe, visiting England in 1349 and killing one-third of the population ; the institution of the Order of the Garter ; and the rebuilding of Windsor Castle by the great architect William of Wykeham. Wycliffe, the reformer, and Chaucer, the poet, lived in this reign. Richard II, who ascended the throne in 1377, was the son of the Black Prince. He was under age at the time of his accession, and the government was placed in the hands of a council. The imposition of a poll-tax caused a rebellion in the Eastern Counties in 1381. This was known as Wat Tyler's Insurrection. The rebels marched on London, and after doing considerable damage were persuaded by the King to disperse. Wat Tyler (a blacksmith) was slain, and many hundred were imprisoned and executed.

\* The number of ships engaged is doubtful.

Richard grew tired of the restraint placed on him by the Commission of Regency, and on coming of age threw off the yoke and ruled as an absolute monarch. Treachery to his uncles, the Dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester, caused his downfall. Gloucester was mysteriously murdered at Calais, and the estates of Lancaster were seized on the death of the Duke, whose son, Henry Bolingbroke, after living some years in exile, returned to England and was joined by the Earls of Northumberland and Westmorland. Rich-

ard, on returning from Ireland, was taken prisoner by Bolingbroke and his supporters, and confined in the Tower, where he signed his abdication in favour of Bolingbroke, who had no direct hereditary title to the

throne. Richard II was done to death in Pontefract Castle in 1399. It was during this reign that the present Westminster Hall was built, and that peers were first created by letters patent.



THE MILL, GUYS CLIFF, WARWICK  
Famous in the days of Piers Gaveston



HARLECH CASTLE, MERIONETHSHIRE  
Surrendered and dismantled, 1468

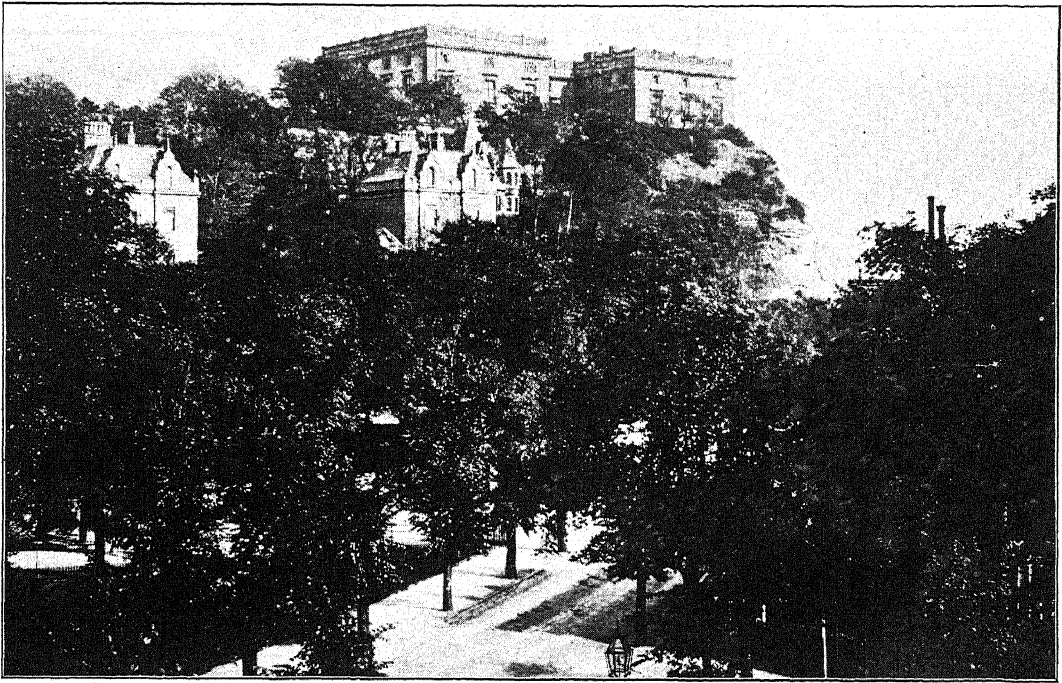
*Photos, G.W. Rly.*

### HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

Bolingbroke took the title of Henry IV, and commenced his reign by instituting many needed reforms. An unsuccessful invasion of Scotland was followed by a Scottish invasion of Northumberland, which was, however, checked at Kemildon (1402). A rebellion in Wales was headed by Owen Glendower, who successfully defied the King's authority. In 1403 the Percies allied themselves with Glendower and the Scottish Earl Douglas. A battle was fought between royal and rebel forces

at Shrewsbury in 1403, in which the rebels were utterly defeated. A second rebellion occurred in 1405, in which the leading spirits were the Duke of Northumberland, the Earl of Nottingham, and the Archbishop of York. This was finally suppressed at Tadcaster in 1408. Henry IV died in 1413, after laying the foundations of the fierce

were of a generous nature, but the persecution of the Lollards was continued. The claim of Henry V to the throne of France caused a war with that country, which was, itself, torn by the antagonism of the two great Houses of Orleans and Burgundy. The first expedition, which was led by Henry in person, achieved the decisive victory of



NOTTINGHAM CASTLE

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

A famous stronghold of mediæval England. Many stirring events took place within and without its walls in the days of Robin Hood, Charles I, and Cromwell

feud which lasted for many years between the Houses of York and Lancaster.

### MILITARY POWER IN THE MIDDLE AGES.

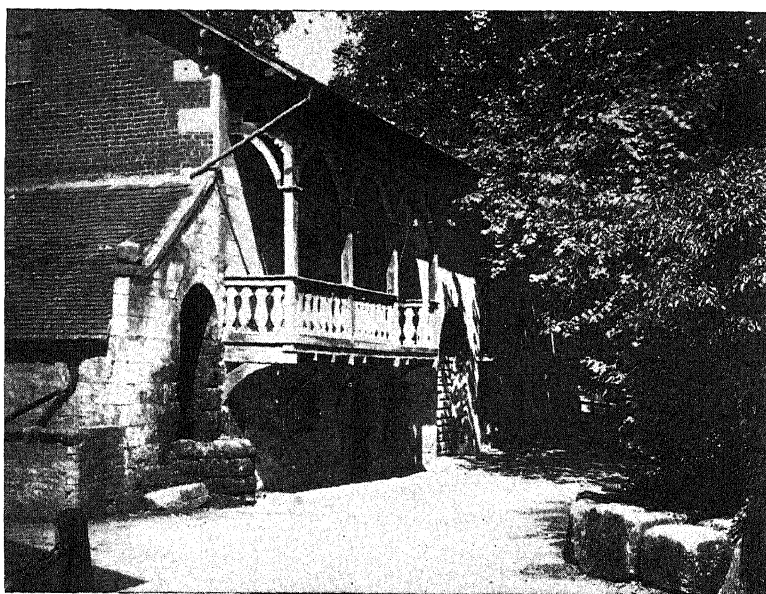
It was during this reign that the persecution of the Lollards (followers of Wycliffe) was begun; and members of Parliament were granted freedom from arrest. Henry V (son of the founder of the Lancastrian Line) came to the throne in 1413. His first acts

Agincourt (1415) with greatly inferior numbers. The second expedition, in which Henry led a much larger army, was equally successful, and the Perpetual Peace was signed at Troyes in 1417. By this treaty Henry became Regent of France during the King's lifetime, and was to succeed to the crown at his death. A revolt in the provinces south of the Seine was soon crushed by Henry, whose wonderful success made his reign one of the most brilliant in the annals of English military

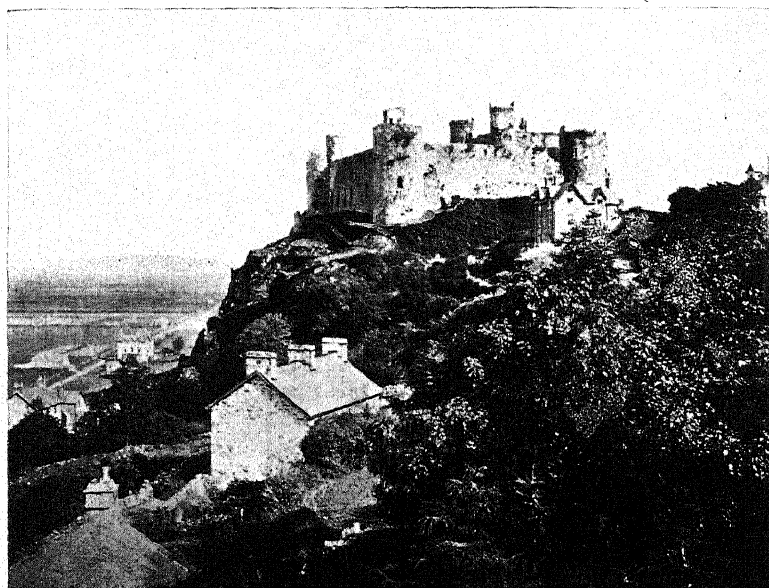
Richard grew tired of the restraint placed on him by the Commission of Regency, and on coming of age threw off the yoke and ruled as an absolute monarch. Treachery to his uncles, the Dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester, caused his downfall. Gloucester was mysteriously murdered at Calais, and the estates of Lancaster were seized on the death of the Duke, whose son, Henry Bolingbroke, after living some years in exile, returned to England and was joined by the Earls of Northumberland and Westmorland. Rich-

ard, on returning from Ireland, was taken prisoner by Bolingbroke and his supporters, and confined in the Tower, where he signed his abdication in favour of Bolingbroke, who had no direct hereditary title to the

throne. Richard II was done to death in Pontefract Castle in 1399. It was during this reign that the present Westminster Hall was built, and that peers were first created by letters patent.



THE MILL, GUYS CLIFF, WARWICK  
Famous in the days of Piers Gaveston



HARLECH CASTLE, MERIONETHSHIRE  
Surrendered and dismantled, 1468

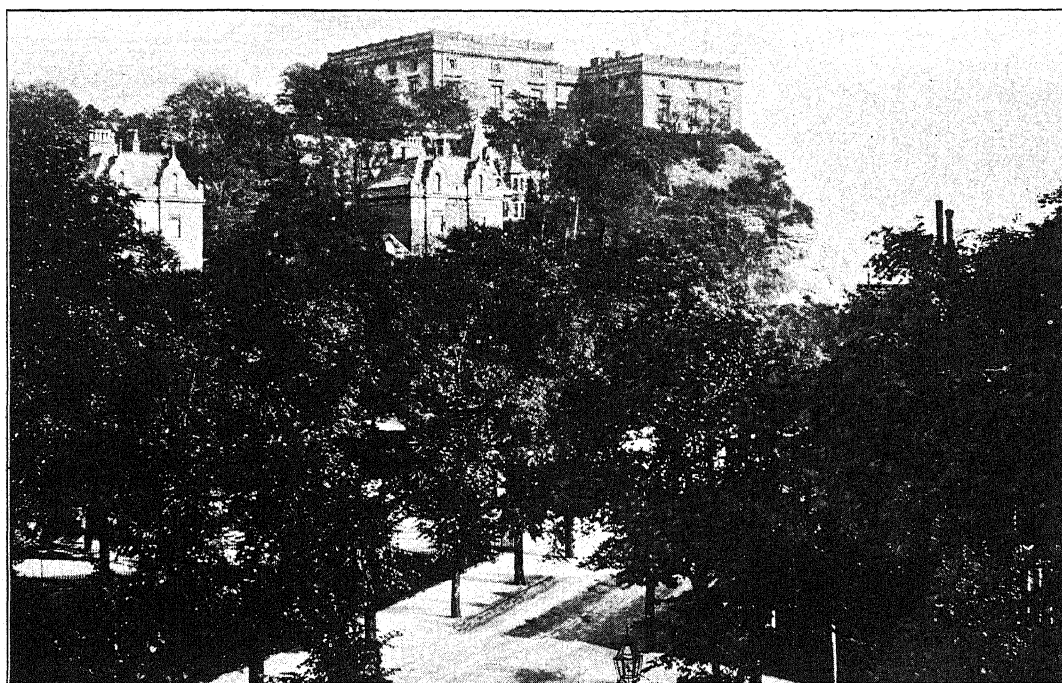
*Photos, G.W. Rly.*

### HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

Bolingbroke took the title of Henry IV, and commenced his reign by instituting many needed reforms. An unsuccessful invasion of Scotland was followed by a Scottish invasion of Northumberland, which was, however, checked at Kemildon (1402). A rebellion in Wales was headed by Owen Glendower, who successfully defied the King's authority. In 1403 the Percies allied themselves with Glendower and the Scottish Earl Douglas. A battle was fought between royal and rebel forces

at Shrewsbury in 1403, in which the rebels were utterly defeated. A second rebellion occurred in 1405, in which the leading spirits were the Duke of Northumberland, the Earl of Nottingham, and the Archbishop of York. This was finally suppressed at Tadcaster in 1408. Henry IV died in 1413, after laying the foundations of the fierce

were of a generous nature, but the persecution of the Lollards was continued. The claim of Henry V to the throne of France caused a war with that country, which was, itself, torn by the antagonism of the two great Houses of Orleans and Burgundy. The first expedition, which was led by Henry in person, achieved the decisive victory of



NOTTINGHAM CASTLE

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

A famous stronghold of mediæval England. Many stirring events took place within and without its walls in the days of Robin Hood, Charles I, and Cromwell

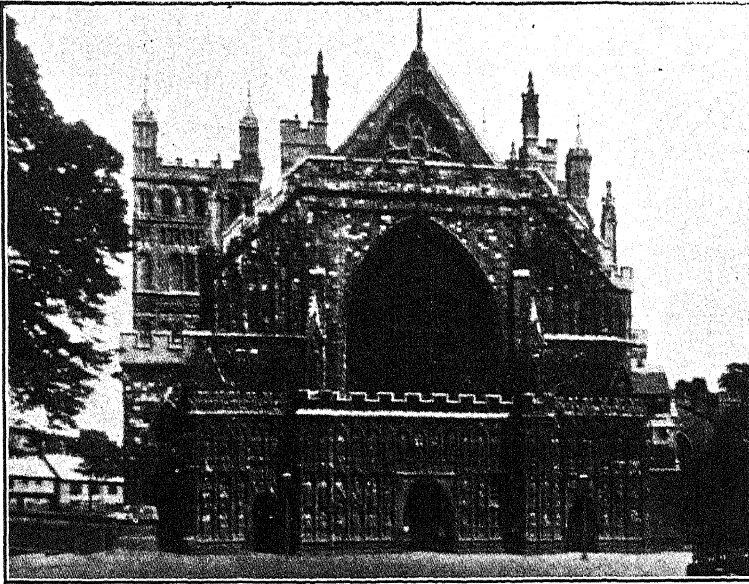
feud which lasted for many years between the Houses of York and Lancaster.

### MILITARY POWER IN THE MIDDLE AGES.

It was during this reign that the persecution of the Lollards (followers of Wycliffe) was begun; and members of Parliament were granted freedom from arrest. Henry V (son of the founder of the Lancastrian Line) came to the throne in 1413. His first acts

Agincourt (1415) with greatly inferior numbers. The second expedition, in which Henry led a much larger army, was equally successful, and the Perpetual Peace was signed at Troyes in 1417. By this treaty Henry became Regent of France during the King's lifetime, and was to succeed to the crown at his death. A revolt in the provinces south of the Seine was soon crushed by Henry, whose wonderful success made his reign one of the most brilliant in the annals of English military





EXETER CATHEDRAL, WEST FRONT

One of the most beautiful Cathedrals in England. The Norman Towers are unique and the decorations are of the period 1281-1369

history. He died in the midst of his glorious career (1422). It was during this reign that a permanent Royal Navy was established—previously merchantmen had been borrowed when occasion demanded.

Although Henry V is generally credited with having established the national navy, it was really not until after the defeat of the Spanish Armada (1588) that the British Navy received its first great impetus. Henry VI was only nine months old on his accession to the throne in 1422, and a Council of Regency, with the Dukes of Bedford and Gloucester at its head, was appointed. Charles VI of France died soon after his great rival Henry V, and, by treaty, the crown of France was assumed by the King of England. The Duke

of Bedford was appointed Regent. The cause of the Dauphin was, however, strongly upheld in many parts of France, and war resulted. Assisted by the House of Burgundy, the English were at first successful, winning the battles of Crevant (1423), Verneuil (1424), and Herrings (1429). About this time a peasant girl, known as Joan of Arc, persuaded the French to entrust her with the command of the army, insisting that she had been sent from Heaven to free the country from foreign aggression. A series of reverses was then suffered by the English, but Joan was taken prisoner by the forces of Burgundy, and was sold to the English, by whom she was tried for sorcery and burned in the market-place of Rouen.



EXETER CATHEDRAL THE CHOIR

Photos, G.W. Rly.

### WARS OF THE ROSES.

The war dragged on for some years, but on the whole disadvantageously for the English, and a temporary armistice was concluded in 1444. Hostilities were renewed in 1452, but again the fortune of war turned against England, and all the conquests of Henry V (with the exception of Calais) were lost. The death of the able Duke of Gloucester in 1447, followed by the mock trial and execution of the Earl of Suffolk, and Cade's Rebellion in Kent (1450) caused great discontent in the country, which was increased by the insanity of the King. Disputes arose between the Duke of Somerset (who was acting as Regent during the King's imbecility) and the Duke of York, heir-presumptive to the throne (on the death of Gloucester). Thus began the Wars of the Roses, which lasted for thirty years. The first conflict at St. Albans (1455) ended victoriously for the Yorkist cause. The death of Somerset and the appointment of the Duke of York as Protector, caused a lull in the actual hostilities, but each party was awaiting events.

The partial recovery of the King and the dismissal of the Duke of York from the office of Protector caused hostilities to be renewed. The whole country was divided into two factions, the Yorkists, whose badge was the white rose, and the Lancastrians, who wore the red rose. Many bloody conflicts took place during the long struggle. The principal battles were as follows : Blore Heath (1459), Yorkist victory (followed by defeat) ; Northampton (1460), Yorkist victory ; Wakefield (1460), Lancastrian victory ; Mortimer's Cross (1461), Yorkist victory ; St. Albans (second), (1461), Lancastrian victory ; Towton (1461), Yorkist victory ; Hedgely Moor (1464) Yorkist victory ; Hexham (1464), Yorkist victory ; Barnet (1471), Yorkist victory ; Tewkesbury (1471), Yorkist victory ; Bosworth (1485), Lancastrian victory. Henry VI was dethroned after the first battle of St. Albans, and died ten years later (1471) in the Tower.

### HOUSE OF YORK.

On entering London in 1461, the Duke of York was proclaimed King, becoming Edward IV. A large Lancastrian army in the north caused the Wars of the Roses to be continued, and the eventual alienation of some

of the most powerful supporters of the House of York compelled Edward to become an exile in 1470 ; and Henry VI was released from the Tower and replaced on the throne. In the following year Edward returned from France with a small army, and after fighting the battles of Barnet and Tewkesbury succeeded in regaining the throne. Margaret, wife of Henry VI, and her son, Edward, were taken prisoners. The Queen suffered five years' captivity in the Tower before being ransomed by the King of France and the young prince was put to death. On the day following the victory at Tewkesbury, King Henry was found dead in his prison.

In this way the Yorkists disposed of their principal rivals, but some fourteen years later a new champion of the Lancastrian cause arose in the person of Henry Tudor. In the meantime Edward renewed his claim to the crown of France, and crossed the Channel with a large army, but through desertion and intrigue was induced to sign a treaty with Louis XI, which provided for annual payments of money in place of the crown. Edward IV died at Westminster in 1483. It was during this reign that printing was introduced into England, William Caxton establishing a press in Westminster Abbey, where the first book to be printed was *The Game of Chess*. The next King of England was Edward V, who was barely thirteen years of age on coming to the throne in 1483. This ill-fated monarch never reigned, both he and his infant brother being murdered by the infamous Gloucester, who usurped the throne and was crowned as Richard III in 1483.

### THE TUDOR LINE.

The principal events of this reign were the murder of the Princes in the Tower, followed by Buckingham's Rebellion in favour of his old enemies, the House of York, and in 1485 the final conflict in the Wars of the Roses. Henry Tudor, although not a legitimate descendant, was generally looked upon as leader of the House of Lancaster. He had spent much of his life in exile, but, being promised powerful support, landed at Milford Haven with three hundred French troops. He was joined by large numbers of English adherents to the Lancastrian cause on his long march through Wales. Crossing the Severn at Shrewsbury, he moved forward towards Leicester, and met the royal army

under Richard at Bosworth (1485). Lord Stanley, in command of one wing of the king's forces, deserted to the Lancastrian side, and Richard was completely overthrown and killed. The crown of England, which was found under a bush on the field of battle, was at once offered to Henry Tudor, Duke of Richmond. It was during the reign of Richard III that the laws of England were first written in English (previously in French), and consuls were first appointed.

### EARLY EXPLORATIONS.

Henry VII (Henry Tudor) was a prince of the House of Lancaster, and on ascending the throne in 1485 united the two great factions by marrying the Princess Elizabeth, the representative of the House of York. This terminated the bloody Wars of the Roses which had torn the whole country for thirty years. This reign was a long and comparatively peaceful one. A rebellion occurred in 1491-97, which was headed by Perkin Warbeck, an imposter, who represented himself to be one of the young princes murdered by Richard III in the Tower. He received encouragement from France and Scotland, but was eventually captured, imprisoned and hanged at Tyburn. The Earl of Warwick, who had aided Warbeck in an attempted escape from the Tower, was also executed. Henry VII died at Richmond in 1509. It was during this reign that Columbus discovered America (1492); Sebastian Cabot explored the coast of North America (see under *Canada*); the Portuguese navigator, Vasco da Gama, rounded the Cape of Good Hope and reached India (*q.v.*); and Henry, himself, built the thousand-ton vessel *Great Harry*.

Henry VIII, who was only eighteen years of age when he ascended the throne in 1509, was one of the richest of England's kings, having inherited several millions sterling from his father, Henry VII. He began his reign in very favourable circumstances, for he united in his own person the claims of the two rival Houses of York and Lancaster. War with France was the first event of importance, the only combat deserving the title of battle being that of the Spurs (1513), in which the English mounted archers routed the French Army. Peace was made in the following year. In the meantime Scotland,

owing to various causes of dissatisfaction, took up arms in aid of the French. The Scottish king, James V, with a large army, invaded England, but was met and defeated by an English army under the Earl of Surrey at Flodden (1513).

### THE REFORMATION.

It was during this period that Cardinal Wolsey rose to almost supreme power in England. For fifteen years he virtually ruled the country. The son of an Ipswich grazier, he was educated for the Church, and by pandering to the vices of Henry VIII succeeded in rising to the Chancellorship, but notwithstanding his wonderful ability his fall was almost as rapid as his rise, and he died in 1530. In the meantime, however, the Duke of Buckingham, who had incurred the displeasure of Wolsey, was arrested and executed on a false charge of treason.

The Reformation was at this time making headway in many parts of Europe. Martin Luther, the German reformer, was born in Saxony, in 1483. From the Continent the new doctrine made its way to England, but was strongly opposed by Henry, who, himself, wrote a treatise denouncing Luther. For this the Pope conferred on the royal author the title of Defender of the Faith (1521).

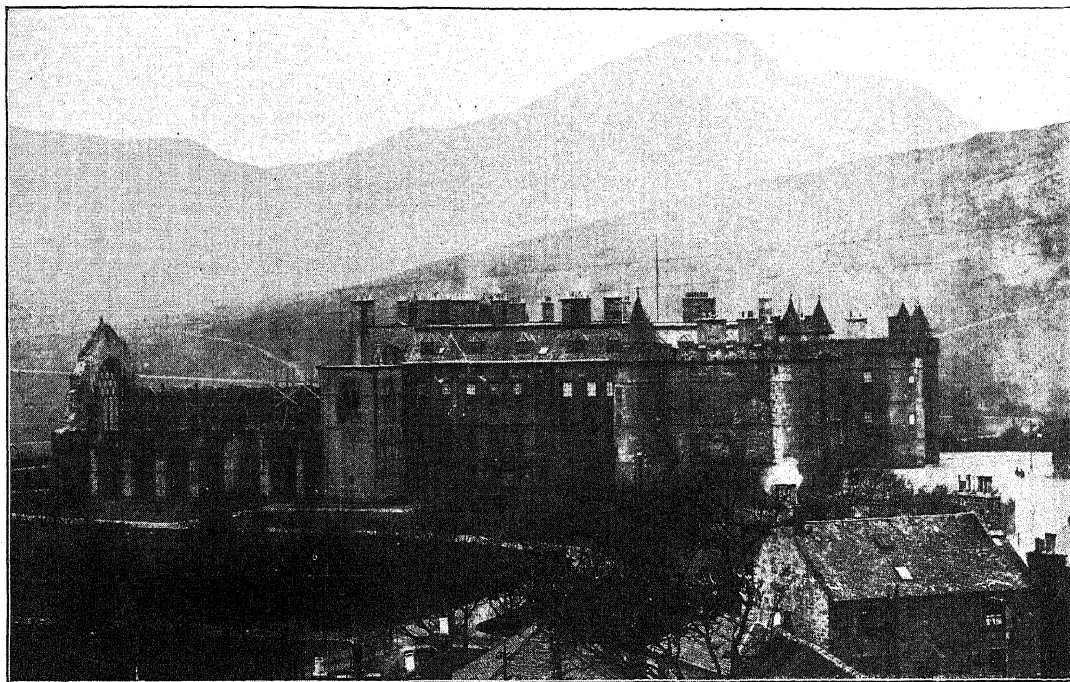
The next events of importance were the King's divorce from Catherine, the fall and death of Wolsey, the rise of Cranmer, the acknowledgment of Henry as supreme head of the Church of England, the marriage of Henry VIII to Anne Boleyn (1533), the suppression of the Monasteries (1536) which resulted in risings among the peasantry, the execution of Anne Boleyn (1536), the King's marriage to Jane Seymour on the day following the execution of his former wife, the religious persecutions following the separation of the Church in England from the authority of Rome and the passing of the Acts of Six Articles,\* the natural death of Jane Seymour, and the marriage of the King to Ann of Cleves (1540) the divorce of Ann of Cleves (1540), the execution of Cromwell, Earl of Essex, on a charge of treason, but really because of his having been instrumental in bringing about the marriage with Anne of Cleves; the marriage of the King to Catherine

\* Sometimes called the Bloody Statute.









HOLYROOD PALACE, EDINBURGH

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

The thank-offering of a Scottish King. David I erected this Abbey after a lucky escape in the hunting field. King James V converted it into a Palace 400 years later. Only a small part of the earlier buildings remain, including Darnley's apartment with its relics and tapestries, the supper room in which Rizzio was murdered, and Queen Mary's apartments

Howard (1540), the execution of Catherine Howard (1542), the marriage of Henry to his sixth wife, Catherine Parr (1543), who succeeded in outliving him. The closing events of the reign of Henry VIII were a war with Scotland (1543), and an indecisive war with France in 1544. He died in 1547.

It was during this reign that ship building was improved, Woolwich Arsenal was founded, Hampton Court Palace was built, Trinity College (Cambridge) and Christchurch (Oxford) were founded, and Ireland was constituted a Kingdom. In 1547 Edward VI, then only ten years old, was crowned King, but a council of sixteen was appointed to administer the Government. The Duke of Somerset, uncle of the King, made himself Protector, and ruled from 1547 to 1549. A war with Scotland, undertaken to force the Scots to consent to the marriage of their

Princess Mary (afterwards Mary, Queen of Scots) with the young King of England, was begun in 1547, and the Scottish forces were defeated by the English Army under the Protector at Pinkie. The Princess was, however, immediately conveyed to France and betrothed to the Dauphin. Rebellions occurred in many parts of the country, notably in Norfolk, but were bloodily repressed.

#### THE TRAGEDY OF LADY JANE GREY.

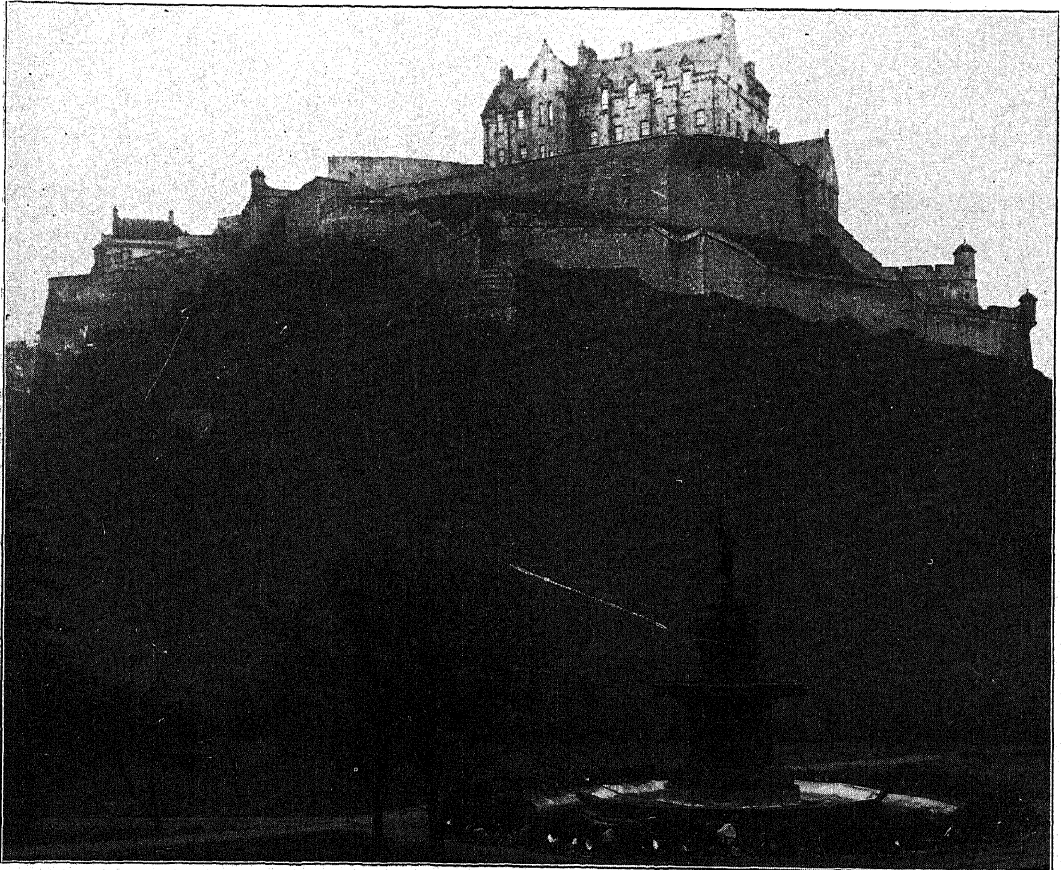
The fall of Somerset, the Protector, occurred in 1550. He was eventually imprisoned in the Tower and executed in 1552. Warwick, Earl of Northumberland, succeeded him in office. By a matrimonial alliance the family of Northumberland was connected with the throne (marriage of Lord Guildford Dudley to Lady Jane Grey), and the Earl

succeeded in persuading the young King Edward to nominate Lady Jane Grey as his successor to the throne. Edward VI died in 1553. Among the events of his reign were the attempted discovery of a north-east passage to China, the opening of commercial relations with Russia, the appointment of Lords-Lieutenant of counties, and the founding of many grammar schools.

On the death of Edward, the Earl of Northumberland caused Lady Jane Grey to be proclaimed Queen against her own wishes. Mary, although excluded from the throne by the will of her father, was generally looked upon as the rightful queen, and on hearing

of the proclamation of Lady Jane retired into Norfolk, where the name of Northumberland was odious, owing to the cruel suppression of a previous rebellion. Mary was supported by many of the nobles and was liked by the people. Northumberland collected a small force and marched to meet the army of Mary, but was forced to surrender at Cambridge. He was condemned and executed in 1553.

The first act of the new queen was to restore the ancient Church order. Wyatt's rebellion was suppressed with the aid of the citizens of London; and the unfortunate and unoffending Lady Jane Grey and her



EDINBURGH CASTLE

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

“Time’s Hoary Sentinel.” It contains many relics of Scottish history, including the Old Parliament Hall, now filled with tattered flags, broad swords and suits of mail, each of which has a page of history or a secret in its keeping

husband, Lord Guildford Dudley, were executed (1554). The Princess Elizabeth, who had sanctioned the Wyatt Rebellion, was imprisoned in the Tower. The principal event of this reign was the persecution of heretics. A war with France, which resulted in the loss of Calais, England's last continental possession, was the final event in the reign of Queen Mary. During this period Russian ambassadors were first appointed to the English Court, and a commercial treaty was signed.

### SCOTTISH HISTORY.

The next to mount the throne was Elizabeth (1558). She was the daughter of Anne Boleyn, and her first act was to restore the English vernacular liturgy, but this was done with great caution and without persecution. About this time (1561) the affairs of Scotland became complicated. Mary, who had married the Dauphin of France (Francis II) returned to Scotland on the death of the French king. Her early administration of that country was peaceful, but she incurred the dislike of her own subjects and also of the English, by her efforts at a religious propaganda. In 1565 she married Darnley; which act was followed by Murray's unsuccessful rebellion, the murder of Rizzio, the Queen's French secretary, in Holyrood Palace, and the transference of the Queen's affections to Bothwell. Shortly afterwards Darnley was murdered, and the Queen married Bothwell. Danger to the life of the young prince through Bothwell's ambition caused many of the most powerful Scottish lords to unite for his defence. A civil war broke out and the forces met at Carberry Hill (1567). The Queen was taken prisoner and confined in Lochleven Castle, where she signed the abdication in favour of her infant son, James. With the aid of friends inside the Castle she succeeded in escaping, and was joined by several powerful lords. An army was raised, but was quickly overthrown at Langside Hill (1568), and Mary was forced to take refuge in England. She endeavoured to obtain a personal interview with Elizabeth, but owing to certain imputations against her, the Queen would not grant it until she had cleared herself. An inquiry was instituted, but the results were unsatisfactory, and Mary was confined in Tutbury Castle. Rebellions occurred in

various parts of England, among the Roman Catholics, with the object of setting Mary at liberty; and the Duke of Norfolk was executed as the instigator (1571).

The extensive persecutions of the Protestants in France, Spain and the Netherlands, combined with the conduct of Pope Pius V, who caused Elizabeth to be excommunicated and forbade all her subjects to obey her on pain of a similar sentence, compelled the Queen of England to suspect an extensive Romanist plot on the Continent to dethrone her. She aided with men and money the revolt of the Netherlands against Spanish dominion and persecution, and so incurred the hatred of Spain which afterwards resulted in the despatch of the great Spanish Armada. In 1586 Babington's Conspiracy to assassinate Elizabeth and place Mary Queen of Scots on the throne was discovered and its instigators executed. Mary, herself, was accused of complicity in this and other plots on the life of Elizabeth, and was tried and executed in Fotheringay Castle (1587).

### RISE TO NAVAL POWER.

Spain now declared war against England, and prepared to despatch the great Armada. Drake destroyed many of their ships in the harbour of Cadiz, and hasty preparations were made to resist the Armada with an English fleet and army. The command was given to Lord Howard of Effingham, but under him served the distinguished captains Drake and Raleigh. A storm aided the English fleet, and the Spanish Armada (1588) was all but destroyed, only 50 battered vessels returning to Spain. The war continued for some time, Cadiz being taken by the English and many of the Spanish provinces in America being raided. A rebellion in Ireland was suppressed in 1602; and a revolt in London, raised by the Earl of Essex, owing to his removal from the command of the army in Ireland, resulted in the execution of Essex—once the Queen's favourite—in the Tower in 1602. Elizabeth died at Richmond in 1603. It was during this reign that the English Navy received its first great impetus, Sir Francis Drake sailed round the world, and the East India Company received its first charter. (See under *Indian Empire*).



SHAKESPEARE'S BIRTHPLACE, STRATFORD-ON-AVON

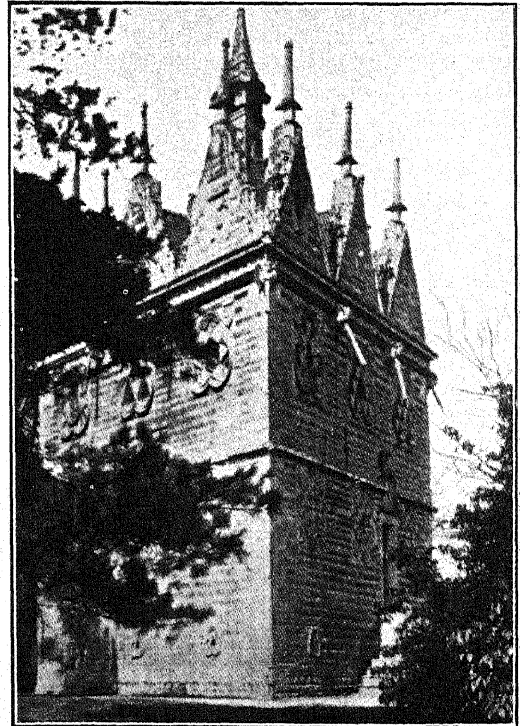
## Birth of the Empire

### UNION OF ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND.

With the accession of James I (previously James VI of Scotland) to the throne of England in 1603, the rise of the British Empire may be said to have begun. It was at Edinburgh that James heard of the death of Elizabeth, and he hastened to London. For some time previous he had, however, been in secret correspondence with Cecil, the son of the great Burghley, and with the rebellious Earl of Tyrone and the Pope, whose support had been assured. Although from the beginning his selfish and cunning nature rendered him unpopular, there was no active opposition to his succession, and the two kingdoms of England and Scotland became united after many years of independence and hostility.

Conspiracies were the chief events in the early part of this reign. First came the Surprise Plot (1603), which was an organised effort on the part of the Roman Catholics to seize the King and compel toleration; next, the Spanish Treason (1603), which aimed at the dethronement of the King with the aid of Spanish money and troops, and the offer of the crown to Lady Arabella

Stuart. It was in this plot that Sir Walter Raleigh was implicated, and for which he suffered thirteen years' imprisonment in the Tower, being executed in 1618. Next came the Gunpowder Plot (1605), which was a conspiracy by Catesby, Fawkes, Percy, Wright and other Roman Catholics, to blow up Parliament when the King was present at its opening. The timely discovery of this plot through an anonymous letter addressed by one of the conspirators to Lord Mounteagle, whom he desired to



Photos, G.W. Rly.  
CONSPIRATORS' LODGE, RUSHTON  
The rendezvous of Catesby, Fawkes, Percy, Wright and others engaged in the Gunpowder Plot

save, led to the discovery of Guy Fawkes hidden in the vaults beneath the Houses of Parliament ready to set fire to a large store of gunpowder, which had been collected there by the conspirators (5th November, 1605). Most of the conspirators were captured and executed.

The ineffective Hampton Court Conference between the leading members of the Puritan party and those of the Church took place in 1604; but was dissolved by the King after three days of violent discussion, and a royal proclamation was issued enforcing strict conformity with the doctrines of the Church. Disputes between the King and the Parliament were almost incessant, and the investing of worthless favourites with high offices led to much discontent. In 1617 James visited Scotland for the first time since his accession, his object being to substitute Episcopacy in the place of Presbyterianism. In this he was successful.

#### COLONISATION OF ULSTER.

After the suppression of Tyrone's rebellion in Ireland during the previous reign, the large estates belonging to the rebel leaders, comprising nearly the whole of Ulster, were confiscated, and during the reign of James I were split up into allotments and given to large numbers of Lowland Scotch and English emigrants. It was in this way that Ulster was first colonised.

Among other events in this reign was the release of Sir Walter Raleigh from the Tower and his expedition to Guiana in search of an alleged gold mine. An affray with the Spaniards angered James, and the sentence of death which had been hanging over Raleigh since his participation in the Spanish Treason was carried out on the return of the expedition to London in 1618. The present translation of the Bible was accomplished during 1607-10; the title of Baronet was created and sold for the benefit of the Royal Purse; Dr. Harvey discovered the circulation of the blood; and colonies were established in North America.

The marriage of Elizabeth, eldest daughter of James, to Frederick, Count Palatine of the Rhine, who made an unsuccessful attempt to obtain the crown of Bohemia, and was in consequence deprived by the Austrians of the palatinate itself, led James to take up arms in defence of the Elector, but the feeble

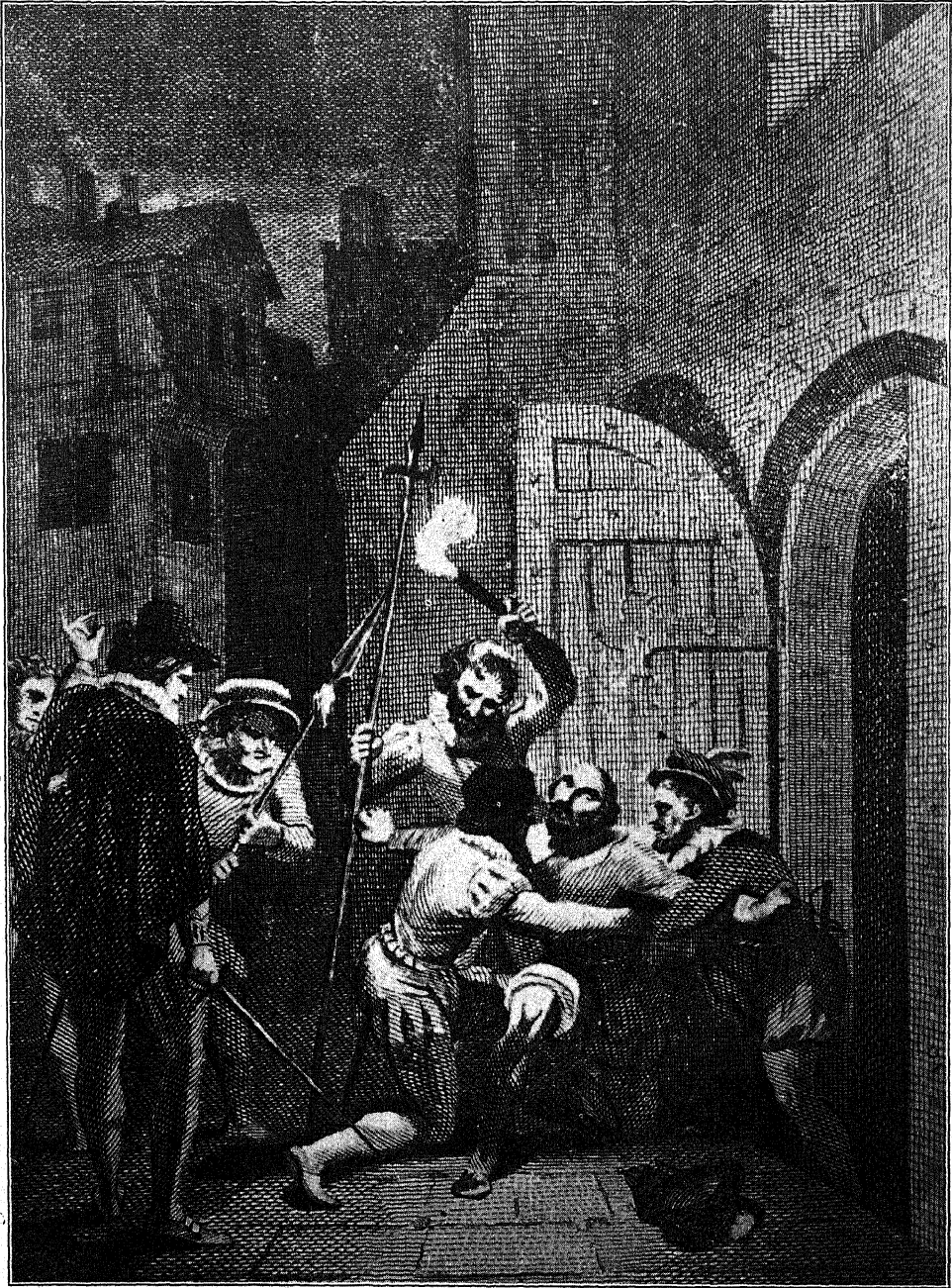
and ineffectual prosecution of the war caused Parliament to remonstrate, and Pym, Coke and many other members were committed to prison. The failure of the Spanish alliance between the King's second son Charles (Henry having died in 1612 at the age of 19) and the Infanta of Spain, displeased the people of England, who had always regarded the idea with disfavour, and the prince (afterwards Charles I) married Henrietta of France, whom he met at the court of her father (Henry IV). James I died of ague in 1625, and was buried at Westminster.

#### THE PARLIAMENTARY STRUGGLE.

Charles I, who ascended the throne, was a strange contrast to his father, and in appearance was every inch a king. His first act was to marry Henrietta of France, who, being a Roman Catholic princess, was regarded with as much disfavour as the Infanta of Spain; and the upstart Buckingham, once George Villiers, a page at the court of his father, was retained in the highest favour. The whole country was split into three parties: the Puritans, zealous in religion, whose efforts were directed against Popery and to obtain national liberties; the Country Party, whose object was the securing of civil rights, but who were content with the Church; and the Court Party, who believed in the "Divine Right of Kings," and supported the Crown even when in opposition to the rights of the subject. These parties were all strongly represented in the House of Commons, the last, however, being the weakest, and whenever it was necessary the two former united to obtain an overwhelming majority.

This was the political state of the country at the time of the first parliament of Charles I, who was anxious to secure a large money vote to pay the expenses of his recent marriage and to provide funds for a war against Spain. Trouble arose out of the supply question, as the Commons doubted the advisability of a war with Spain, and they voted only a small sum. Wishing to prevent the misappropriation of money, they reversed the custom of bestowing "tonnage" and "poundage"—the former being the duty paid on all wine imported, and the latter a duty of twelve pence in the pound on all other goods imported and exported—on the King for life, at the time of his accession, and





*Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.*

DISCOVERY OF GUY FAWKES IN THE VAULTS OF THE  
HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT

*From an old print*

granted it for one year only. This measure was thrown out by the Lords. In 1625 help was being furnished to the Elector and the King of Denmark in their resistance against the Catholic powers of Germany. Urged forward by the unscrupulous Buckingham, Charles also despatched an expedition to attack Cadiz, which had as a subsidiary object the intercepting of the Spanish treasure fleet, with the spoils of which the King's treasury was to have been replenished.

The utter failure of this expedition compelled the King to make every effort to court the favour of the second Parliament, which he did successfully, with the result that liberal supplies were promised; but the Commons decided to impeach Buckingham, whom they regarded rightly as the evil genius of the King. At this critical moment Charles came into collision, over several high-handed acts, with the House of Peers, and was obliged to give way. Buckingham was impeached before a tribunal of the Lords, and in order to save his favourite, Charles dissolved the second Parliament before any supplies had been voted. In order to obtain money he resorted to illegal taxation. In 1627 Buckingham succeeded in bringing about a war between England and France in order to avenge a private injury, and the expedition sent to assist the Huguenots, who were then defending themselves in La Rochelle, ended in complete disaster, with the result that the Huguenots, much to the indignation of the people of England, were abandoned.

### THE PETITION OF RIGHT.

The third Parliament was convened by the King in 1628 in order to obtain supplies. The Commons offered liberal subsidies on the condition that the royal assent was given for the redress of a list of grievances embodied in the Petition of Right. The King at first agreed to this drastic proposal, which has been likened in importance to the Magna Carta, and then broke faith and resorted to the old ways of illegal taxation, imprisonment and the enforcing of compulsory loans. The next event of importance was the assassination, by Felton, of the Duke of Buckingham while preparing another expedition to La Rochelle. On the death of Buckingham, Charles took for his advisers, Archbishop Laud, and Wentworth, after-

wards Earl of Strafford, the latter having been gained over from the popular cause.

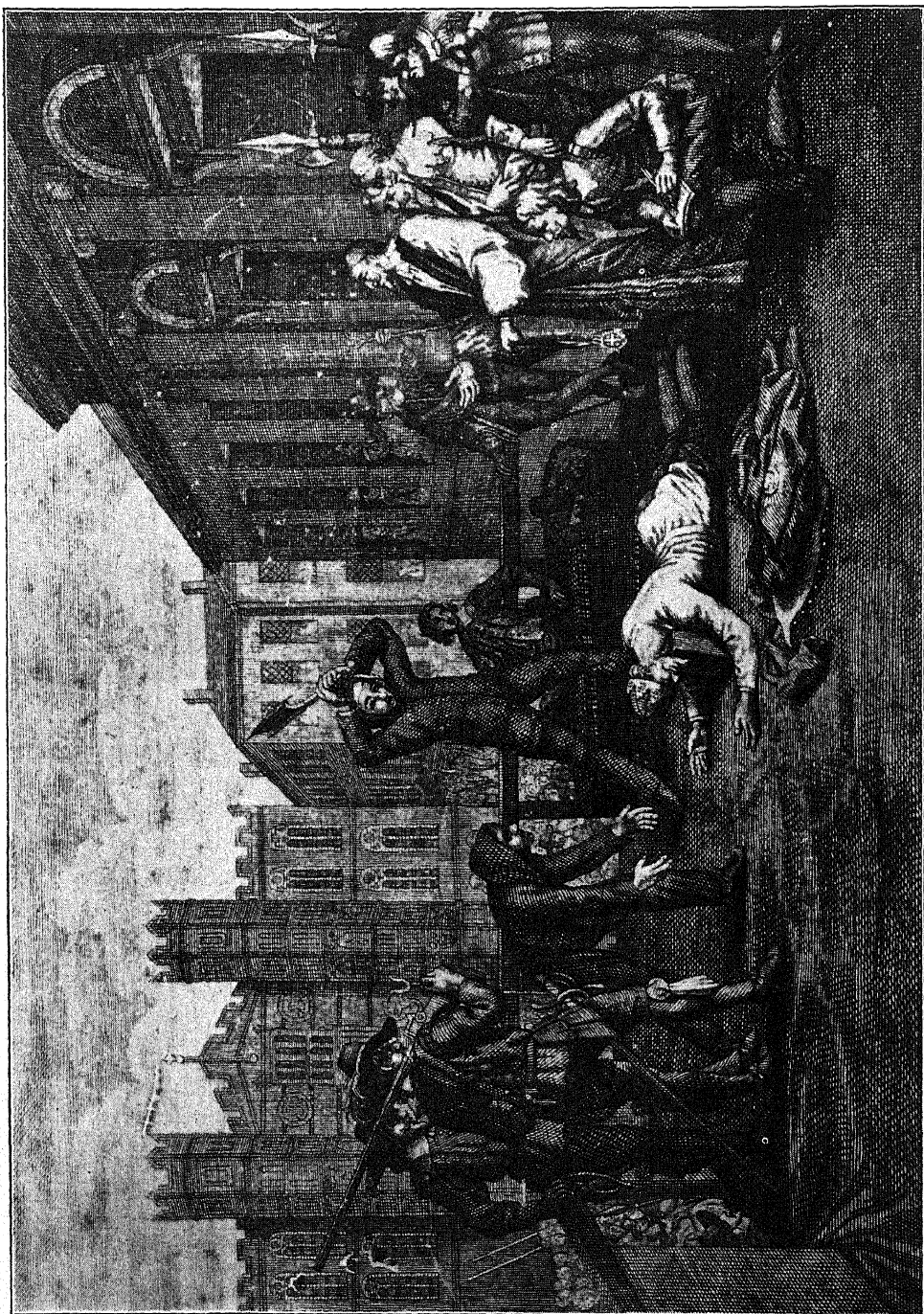
On the reassembling of Parliament, Sir John Eliot brought forward several resolutions against religious innovation and illegal taxation. A tumult occurred, and when the Speaker, acting under instructions from the King, refused to put them to the vote, he was assaulted by two members and held down in the Chair while the resolutions were passed with enthusiasm. Officers sent by the King to stop the proceedings found the doors locked against them, and soldiers were despatched to force their way in and clear the House, but before they could arrive the members had adjourned. A week later Charles dissolved Parliament. Several members were arrested and fined; and Eliot died in prison.

From 1629-1640 Charles I ruled with despotic power, raising the necessary revenue by illegal taxation. The Courts of the Star Chamber and of the High Commission were in force, having jurisdiction over civil and ecclesiastical matters, respectively. In order to illustrate the severity of these tribunals it is necessary to refer only to one case, that of Leighton, a Puritan, who had published a book against prelacy. This unfortunate man was sentenced to pay a fine of £10,000, to be twice publicly flogged, to have his nostrils slit, his cheek branded, and to be imprisoned during the King's pleasure.

### THE COVENANTERS.

In 1637 Charles attempted to enforce the use of the English liturgy in Scotland, which brought about the unification of all classes in Scotland and the signing of the Solemn League and Covenant (1638). The Covenanters denounced popery and episcopacy, and formed an army, under Lesley, to defend their rights. An English army was despatched to suppress the rising, but was unsuccessful, and Charles was compelled to resort to the weak policy of negotiation.

In 1640 another English army invaded Scotland, but the Covenanters, anticipating the move, had entered Northumberland, and the King, knowing that disaffection was rife among the troops, again entered into negotiations. In order to obtain supplies for the subjugation of the Scots, Charles convened, in 1648, what is known as the Short Parliament, but instead of granting supplies, the



W. A. Mansell & Co. EXECUTION OF KING CHARLES I OUTSIDE THE PALACE OF WHITEHALL, ON JAN. 30th, 1649

*From an old print*

Commons enumerated the illegal acts of the King and his council, with the result that Charles dissolved it after it had been in existence only three weeks. Beset with difficulties, the King summoned a second Parliament in the same year. This is known as the Long Parliament, and a whole series of reforms were instituted, among the most important of which was the abolition of the Star Chamber and High Commission (1641), and the limiting of the duration of Parliament to three years. The next event was the impeachment of the Earl of Strafford, which collapsed, but was followed by his attainder, the bill passing both Houses with but little opposition, and Charles weakly gave his consent. Strafford was executed, and many acts of violence were done by this Parliament. An Act was also passed to prevent the dissolution of Parliament without its own consent.

#### CAVALIERS AND ROUNDHEADS.

To effect the overthrow of the King's authority the Commons proceeded to extreme measures, and proposed the removal of the bishops from the House of Lords. Many members of the opposition enrolled themselves as a body-guard for the King, and were called Cavaliers, while others sided with the Parliament and were called Roundheads. Again doing the wrong thing at the crucial moment, Charles, when he was regaining popularity by allowing himself to be advised by the moderate party, demanded the impeachment of his principal opponents and himself went to the Houses of Parliament with an armed guard to arrest Pym, Hampden, Hollis, Hazlrig, and Strode. The members had, however, left and taken refuge in the Guildhall. On the following day they were escorted to Westminster by a guard of 6,000 armed citizens with artillery. This was the beginning of the Civil War, for Charles retired, first to Hampton Court, and then to Windsor. In this same year there broke out the Irish Rebellion. A great massacre of Protestants resulted.

#### The Civil War

Two bills were sent by Parliament to Hampton Court for the royal assent. One was for the removal of the bishops from the House of Lords, and the other was to place

all the military forces under parliamentary control. The King assented to the former, but rejected the latter. A period of discussion followed, and it soon became apparent that any definite understanding between the King and the Parliament could not be arrived at. The Queen had left for the Continent to sell the crown jewels in order to provide funds for the Royal Army, and Charles raised his standard at York and was joined by many supporters. The advantage was, however, on the side of the Parliament, as they had the navy entirely in their favour, and no help could reach the King from abroad. The Parliamentary Army at first numbered 15,000 men. Nearly all the towns, including London, were on their side; but the nobility, landed gentry, and the Church and Catholic parties, were hard and fast for the King. The first battle was fought at Edgehill (1642), where the Royalists gained the advantage. Lindsay, their commander, was, however, slain, and the losses on both sides numbered about 1,500. Charles retired on Oxford, and the Parliament opened peace negotiations, but these were unwisely rejected by the King and his advisers.

The principal battles of the Civil War are : Chalgrove Field, 1643 (Parliamentary success) ; Lansdown (Royalist victory) ; Roundway Down (Royalist victory) ; Atherton Moor (Royalist victory) ; Newbury, 1643 (indecisive) ; Marston Moor, 1644 (decisive Parliamentary victory — aid of Scottish forces) ; Cropredy Bridge (Royalist victory) ; second Battle of Newbury, 1644 (indecisive) ; Naseby, 1645 (decisive Parliamentary victory). The Battle of Naseby was the most decisive combat in the Civil War, and ruined the cause of Charles I. In Scotland the Marquis of Montrose successfully upheld the King's cause until 1643. He defeated the Duke of Argyll and the other Parliamentary leaders in several engagements; but after the desertion of many of his followers, was defeated by Lesley at Philiphaugh in 1643, and was compelled to take refuge in the Highlands.

While these events had been taking place, the Parliamentarians had themselves divided into two parties—Presbyterians and Independents. The latter succeeded in passing the Self-denying Ordinance, under which a member of either House was prevented from holding military command. An exception





*Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.*

**OLIVER CROMWELL DISSOLVING THE LONG PARLIAMENT**

*From a painting*



was made in the case of Cromwell, who was considered indispensable both in Parliament and in the army. An attempt was made by a commission which met at Uxbridge to negotiate with the King, but this failed. Archbishop Laud was tried and executed in 1645. After the defeat at Naseby, Charles took refuge in Oxford, but, seeing that nearly all his strongholds had fallen, and that Oxford itself was threatened, he gave himself up to the Scots, who surrendered him to the Parliamentary forces.

The Presbyterians having gained a majority in the House of Commons, and being jealous of the power enjoyed by the army, denounced Cromwell and the other military commanders as traitors. Colonel Pride, with a company of soldiers, was despatched to clear the House of all those members who disagreed with the views of the army. This Act is known as "Pride's Purge." The remaining fifty members were known as "The Rump," and they immediately passed an ordinance for the trial of the King. Although this measure was rejected by the House of Lords, Charles was arraigned as a traitor in Westminster Hall, the presiding judge being the notorious Bradshaw. It was by this illegal tribunal that Charles I was tried and condemned. He was beheaded on 30th January, 1649, on a scaffold erected in front of the Banqueting House of Whitehall, and was buried at Windsor.

It was during the reign of Charles I that linen manufacture was introduced into Ireland by Strafford, who did much for that country; Covent Garden Market was built and hackney coaches were first used in England.

## The Commonwealth

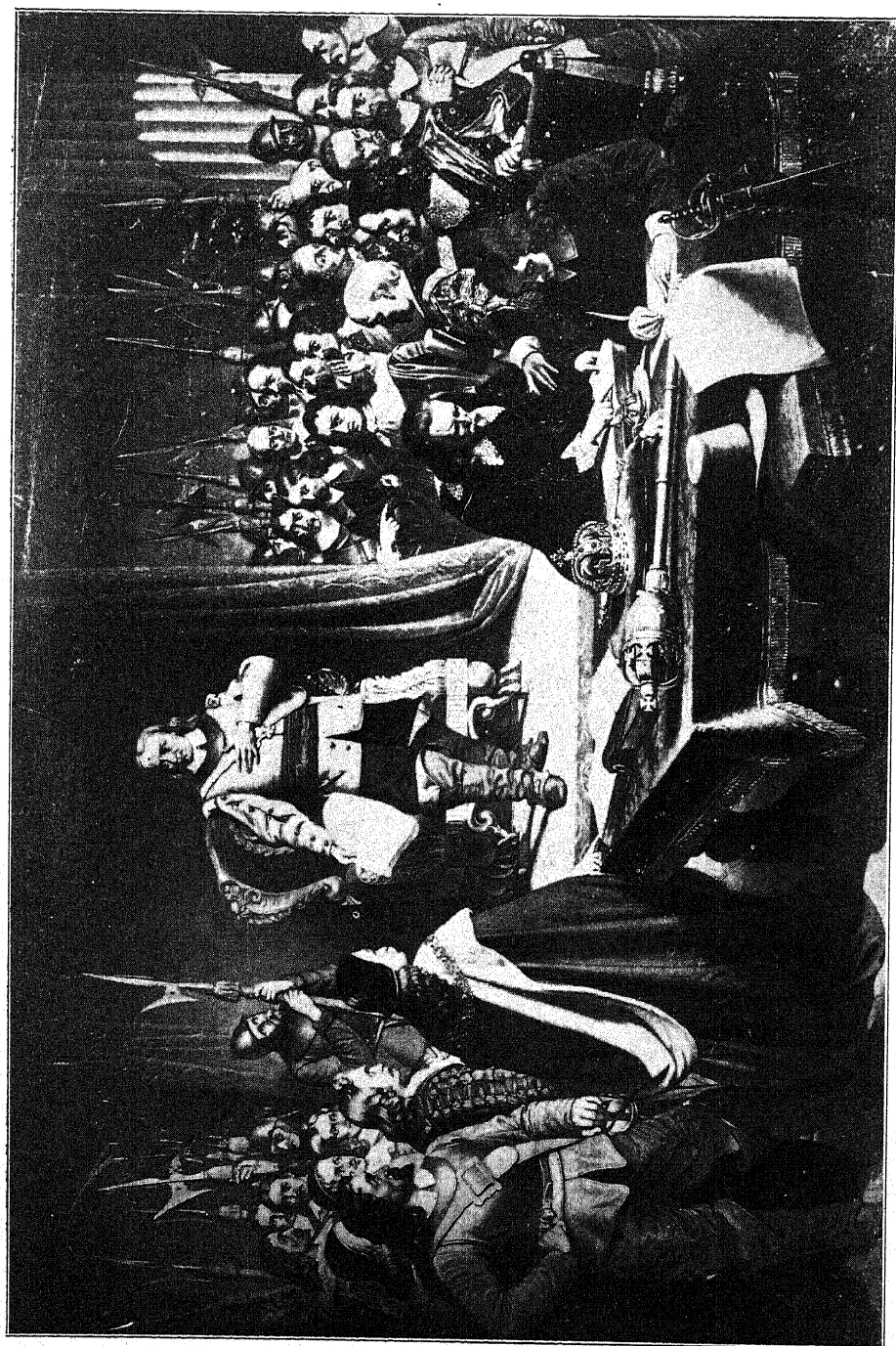
When the confusion occasioned by the overthrow of the Royalist cause and the execution of the King had somewhat subsided, there still existed three opposing political parties: (1) the Royalists, who, although beaten, were quietly waiting for an opportunity to assert the rights of Charles II; (2) the Presbyterians, hostile to the Independents, but growing more friendly towards the Royalists; and (3) the Independents, who, although weak in political representation, had talented and vigorous leaders and the entire support of the army. With the

execution of the King the Rump abolished the House of Lords and declared it treason to proclaim anyone as King. A Council of State was appointed to take the place of the House of Lords, with Bradshaw as President.

The Prince of Wales was proclaimed King in Ireland on the death of his father, and, the Irish people being favourable to his cause, some Royalist successes were gained. Cromwell, who had, however, been appointed Lord Lieutenant, landed at Dublin with a large and well-trained army. No battle was offered in the open, but a series of sieges were begun, among the most famous of which were those of Drogheda and Wexford. On their capitulation to the Parliamentary forces a horrible and ruthless massacre took place. While Cromwell was investing Waterford he was recalled on account of trouble brewing in Scotland, and Ireton succeeded to the command and subdued the country.

The Scottish Parliament had proclaimed Prince Charles as King of Scotland on his signing the Solemn League and Covenant; but in the meantime Montrose had led a Royalist expedition in his favour, which was defeated and the chief was hanged at Edinburgh. Cromwell, now Commander-in-Chief, decided on the invasion of Scotland, and after crossing the border came up with the Scots, under David Lesley, at Dunbar (1650), and defeated them. Charles was, however, crowned at Scone, and an army for the defence of the country was concentrated at Stirling. On the advice of the newly-crowned King, this utterly inadequate army marched into England, hoping to swell its ranks with English adherents to the Royal cause. In order to allow this army to cross the border and then to cut off communication with the Highlands, Cromwell took up a position at Perth and then followed the King's forces southwards, overtaking and utterly defeating them at Worcester in 1651. Charles succeeded in escaping, and after many adventures arrived in Normandy. General Monk, who had been left in Scotland by Cromwell, quickly reduced the country to subjection. Thus both Ireland and Scotland were subdued, and Cromwell had made himself the supreme power throughout the British Isles.

The refusal of the Dutch States to enter into an alliance with the English Commonwealth, and the assassination of the English



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

CROMWELL REFUSING THE CROWN (1653)

from a painting

envoy (Dr. Dorislaus) at the Hague, caused a war to break out between the English and the Dutch in 1652. The command of the British fleet was given to Blake, who defeated the Dutch Admirals Van Tromp, De Ruyter and De Witt. When peace had been made in 1654, the Parliament, intending to curb the power of Cromwell, endeavoured to disband the army. This produced a storm of complaint from the military faction, and as the Parliament would not yield to the demands of the troops, Cromwell went to the House with a strong force of soldiers, and, driving out the members, locked the doors and placed the keys in his pocket.

### THE PROTECTORATE.

With the dissolution of the Long Parliament, the only authority in the three Kingdoms became that of the army, but Cromwell, thinking it imprudent to dispense entirely with the appearance of a Parliament, decided to create one which would be subservient to his will. With this object in view he ordered the ministers of religion to nominate members from which Cromwell and his officers made a selection. This, which was known as Barebone's Parliament, consisted of 139 Englishmen, four Scotsmen, six Irishmen, and six Welshmen. The measures passed, although honest in purpose, did not meet with the approval of Cromwell, and the members were dismissed.

A new plan for the government of the British Isles was then drawn up, the supreme authority being vested in Cromwell as the Lord Protector, and a Parliament consisting of 400 members for England, thirty for Scotland, and thirty for Ireland was created. Parliament was to be summoned every three years, and must sit for at least five months before being prorogued or dissolved. Royalists and Roman Catholics were prohibited from voting. At the same time the first standing army in England was established, consisting of 30,000 men. The first Parliament (1654) assembled under the new scheme did not prove tractable, and was dissolved at the end of the five months.

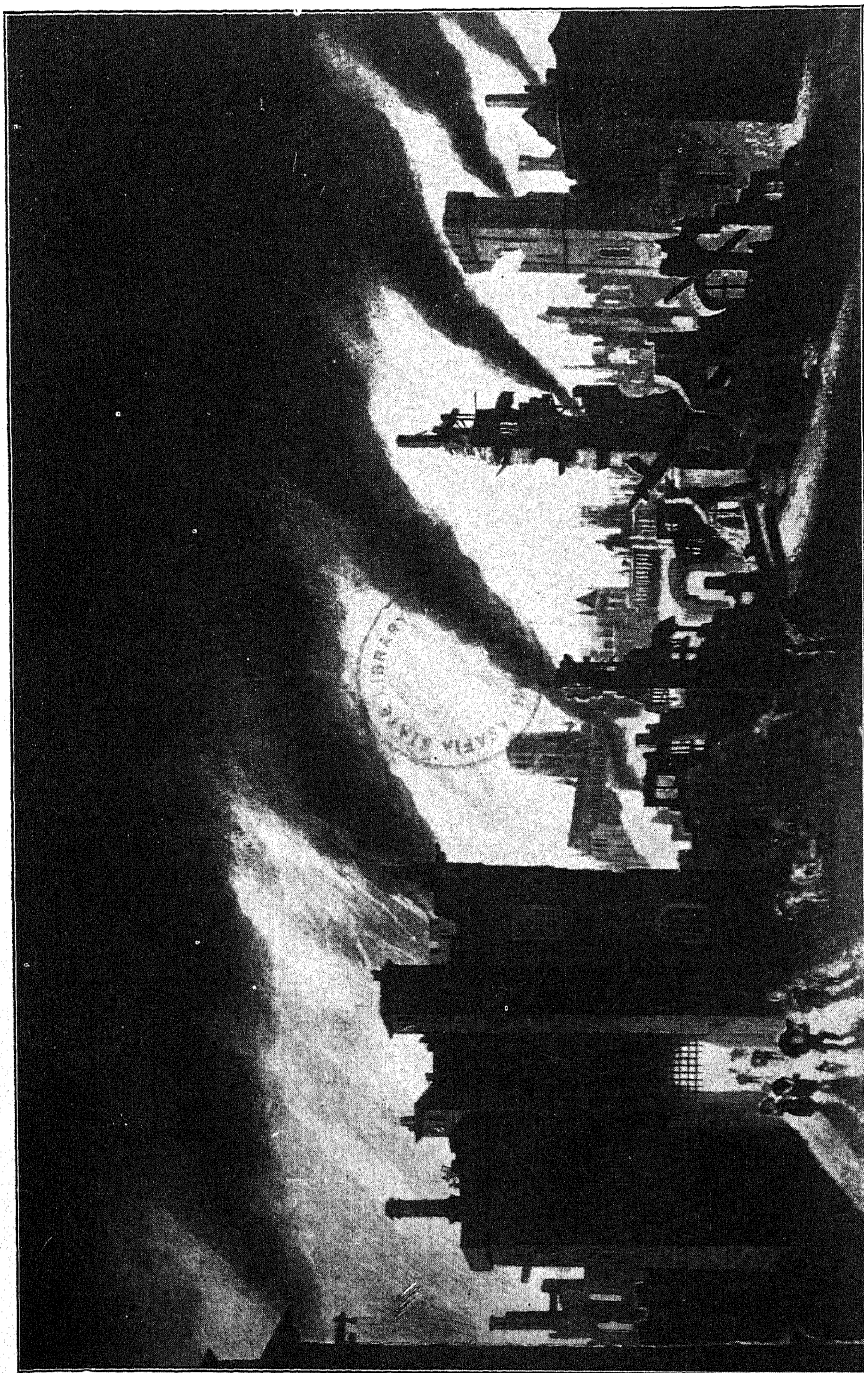
A war with Spain next occupied the attention of the country. This was undertaken ostensibly to obtain for British merchants the right to trade with America. Although the fleet, which was despatched to the West Indies under the command of Admiral Penn

and General Venables, failed in general purpose, it succeeded in capturing the island of Jamaica in 1655, and some time later a Spanish treasure fleet was captured in Cadiz harbour. Blake's last sea fight was the daring attack on Santa Cruz, in the island of Teneriffe; he died on the return voyage, when in sight of England, and was buried in Westminster Abbey. A treaty was concluded with France, then also at war with Spain, and large forces were sent into the Spanish Netherlands. In 1656 Dunkirk was captured by the allies and was ceded to the English.

The third Parliament under the Protectorate was assembled in 1656, and sat for nearly two years, but 100 members were excluded owing to their opposition to Cromwell. It was this Parliament which gave Cromwell the right to appoint his successor and to create a House of Lords. Eventually becoming unmanageable, it was dissolved. In the year 1658 Oliver Cromwell died of ague in the midst of his triumphs. Virtually King of England, Scotland and Ireland, he intended to found a dynasty, but his son, Richard, who succeeded him as Lord Protector, lacked both the ability and the ambition to rule, preferring the life of a country gentleman. He succeeded, however, to the position of first authority without a dissentient voice; but with the meeting of Parliament in 1659 trouble arose over an effort made to curtail the power of the Council of Officers, who represented the army and were the advisers of the Lord Protector. The council compelled Richard to dissolve Parliament after a sitting of only three months, and the "Rump" was restored. Finding that his power was declining, Richard willingly resigned office and withdrew to the Continent, eventually returning to England and dying in 1712.

### Restoration of the Commonwealth

A dispute within the military faction caused the second dismissal of the Rump, and a Committee of Safety was formed, consisting of twenty-three persons. In this Committee the supreme authority was vested. In the meantime General Monk, commanding the army in Scotland, was carefully weeding from his forces all upon whom he could not



W. A. Mansell & Co.

THE FIRE OF LONDON

*From an old print*

rely. Although he had faithfully supported Cromwell, he had originally been a Royalist, and was at this time the "unknown quantity" in the political situation. The people throughout the country were eager for a free Parliament, and in 1660 General Monk and his army set out on the march to London. To the great joy of the people, Monk restored the excluded members of the Long Parliament, which, however, dissolved itself finally on 16th March, 1660. A new Parliament was immediately elected, known as the Convention Parliament, in which the Royalists constituted a large majority. On the first meeting of the new Parliament a letter was received from Charles, together with the Declaration of Breda, which promised: (a) a pardon to all except those charged by Parliament; (b) full liberty of conscience as sanctioned by Parliament; and (c) the settlement of disputed estates and the arrears of the army. Charles was at once invited to return without the imposition of any restrictions.

### Restoration of the Stuarts

The prospect of a settled administration caused the people of all classes to join hands in welcoming Charles II, who made his public entry into London on 29th May, 1660, amid scenes of delirious joy. General Monk was created Earl of Albemarle, Montague was made Lord Sandwich, and Hyde became Lord Clarendon. In order to conciliate the Presbyterian faction, several of their chief members were retained as members of the King's Privy Council. In accordance with the Declarations of Breda, Parliament sanctioned the pardoning of all except the principal regicides. Ten of these were executed, and the others confined for the remainder of their lives. The bodies of Cromwell, Ireton and Bradshaw were taken from their tombs in Westminster Abbey, and were hung on gibbets.

A reorganisation of the revenue was the next important event. Charles agreed to accept a fixed annual income of £1,200,000 in lieu of the revenue derived from his feudal rights, which were abolished by law. This relieved land owners from their heaviest burdens, and they succeeded in preventing the new revenue from being derived from a land tax by voting that the excise upon beer

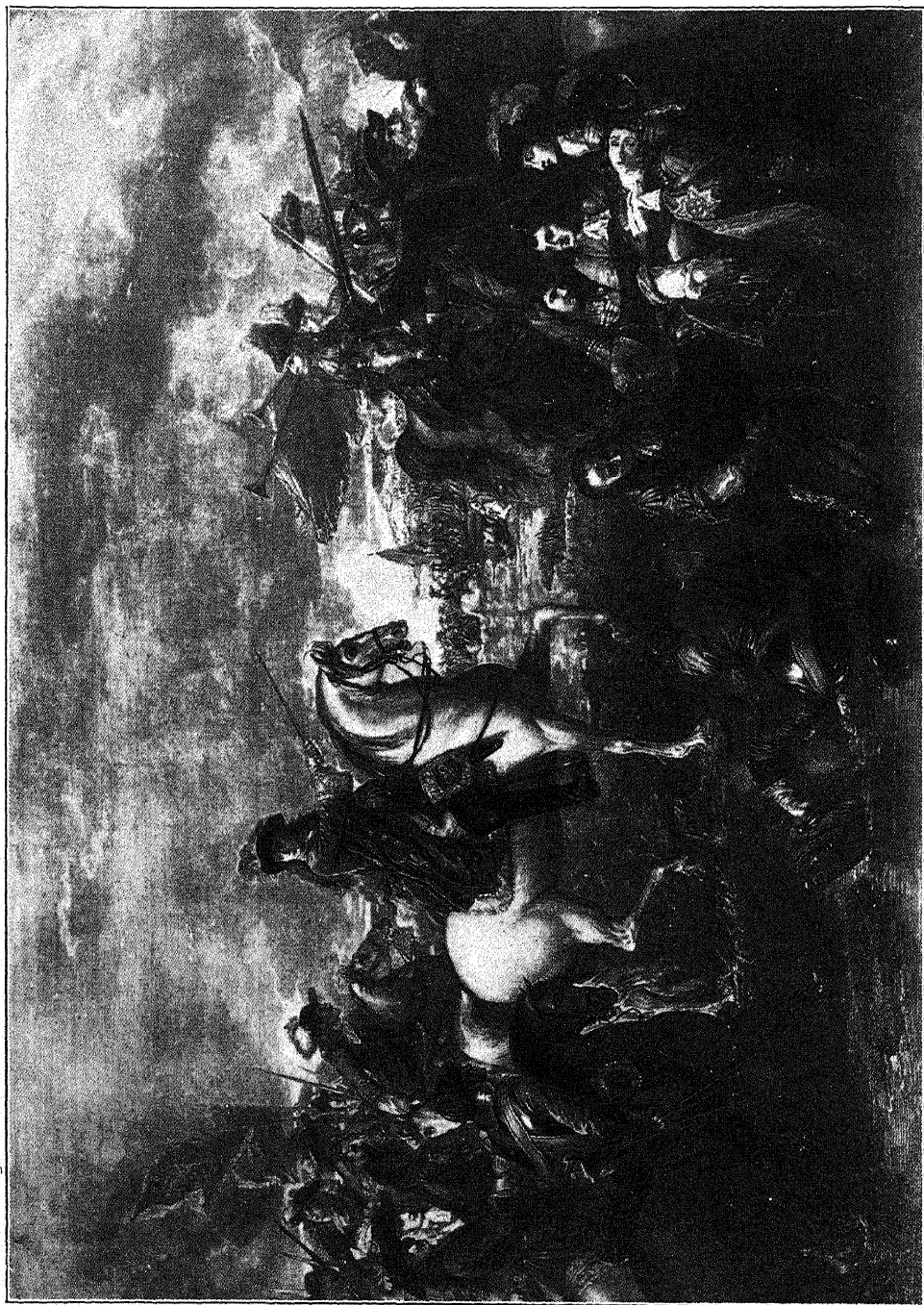
and other liquors should be permanently settled upon the Crown. The Royal prerogative was curtailed and the last remnant of the feudal system was abolished. Among other Acts following on the restoration of Charles II to the throne, was the disbanding of the army with the exception of 5,000 Guards, the restoration of certain Royalist lands, and the passing of the Corporation Act (1661), which was directed against the Presbyterians.

During the Commonwealth and Protectorate, England and Scotland had been closely united, but this good work was almost undone by the determination of the Parliament to restore episcopacy, and the execution of Argyll. The Act of Uniformity, passed in 1662, compelled every minister of religion publicly to declare his assent to everything contained in the Book of Common Prayer, or to be deprived of office. This caused a loss of benefice to over 2,000 preachers, who were furthermore prevented from holding religious meetings or forming congregations of their own by the Conventicle Act (1664), which provided that any person attending a religious meeting not held in connection with the Church should be imprisoned, and, for a third offence, transported for seven years.

### SEA FIGHTS.

A war broke out with the Dutch in 1665. It was caused by the personal ambition of the Duke of York, who commanded the British fleet, and was hastened by an English squadron taking possession of a Dutch settlement on the American coast on the plea of discovery. This war was confined to the seas, and the first action occurred off the coast of Suffolk, where the British fleet, under the Duke of York, defeated the Dutch under Admiral Opdam. In the following year another action took place off the North Foreland, which resulted favourably to the Dutch, but was followed a few weeks later by an English victory, after which the British fleet sailed along the Dutch coast, inflicting great damage. The British commanders were Albemarle and Prince Rupert, and the Dutch admirals De Ruyter and the younger Tromp. In revenge for the raid on the Dutch coast, and while peace negotiations were pending and part of the British fleet had been cashiered, a Dutch squadron sailed up the Medway and destroyed Sheerness and





W. A. Mansell & Co.

THE BATTLE OF THE BOYNE

*From a painting*



A RELIC OF THE MIDDLE AGES Photo, Southern Rly.  
The oldest house in an old city. Cheesehall Rectory, Winchester

the dockyard at Chatham, afterwards retiring. The Peace of Breda was signed in 1667.

#### THE PLAGUE AND THE FIRE.

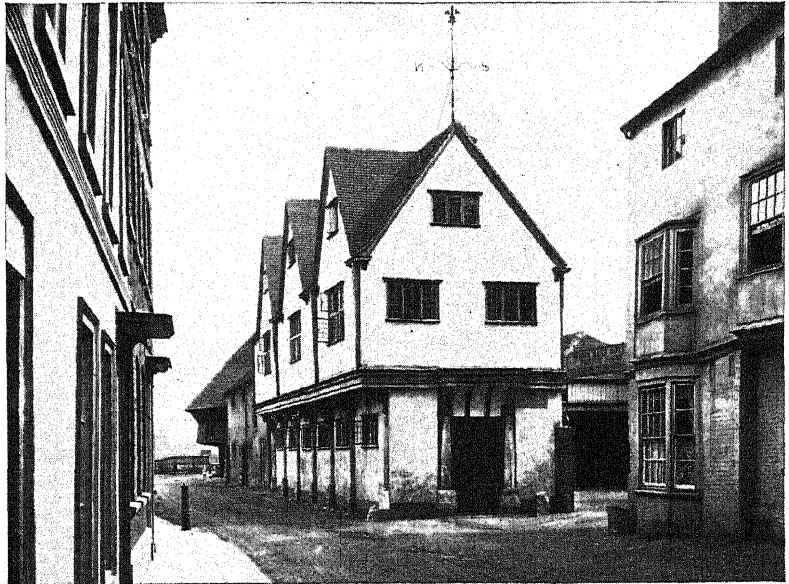
Contemporaneously with the Dutch War came the Plague of London (1665), which, starting in a crowded and dirty quarter of the city, soon spread over the whole of London. Infected houses were marked with a red cross on the door, and carts went round at night to take away the dead. It started in May and raged until December, and it is said that 100,000 persons perished in London alone. In the following year the Great Fire broke out, which raged for days. All the houses being of wood, the water-pipes empty, and a strong wind blowing from the sea, there is little wonder that 13,000 houses and 89 churches, including St. Paul's, were engulfed by the flames.

The Five-mile Act (1665) prevented ministers, who would not swear that it was unlawful to take up arms against the sovereign on any pretext whatsoever, from going within a radius of five miles of any corporate town, except when travelling, and also prohibited them from keeping schools. This, combined with the previous Corporation Act, Act of Uniformity, and Conventicle Act, was known as "The Clarendon Code." The absence of any gain from the Dutch War rendered Clarendon very

unpopular, and he was deprived of office and banished from the country. He retired to France, and there wrote his *History of the Great Rebellion*.

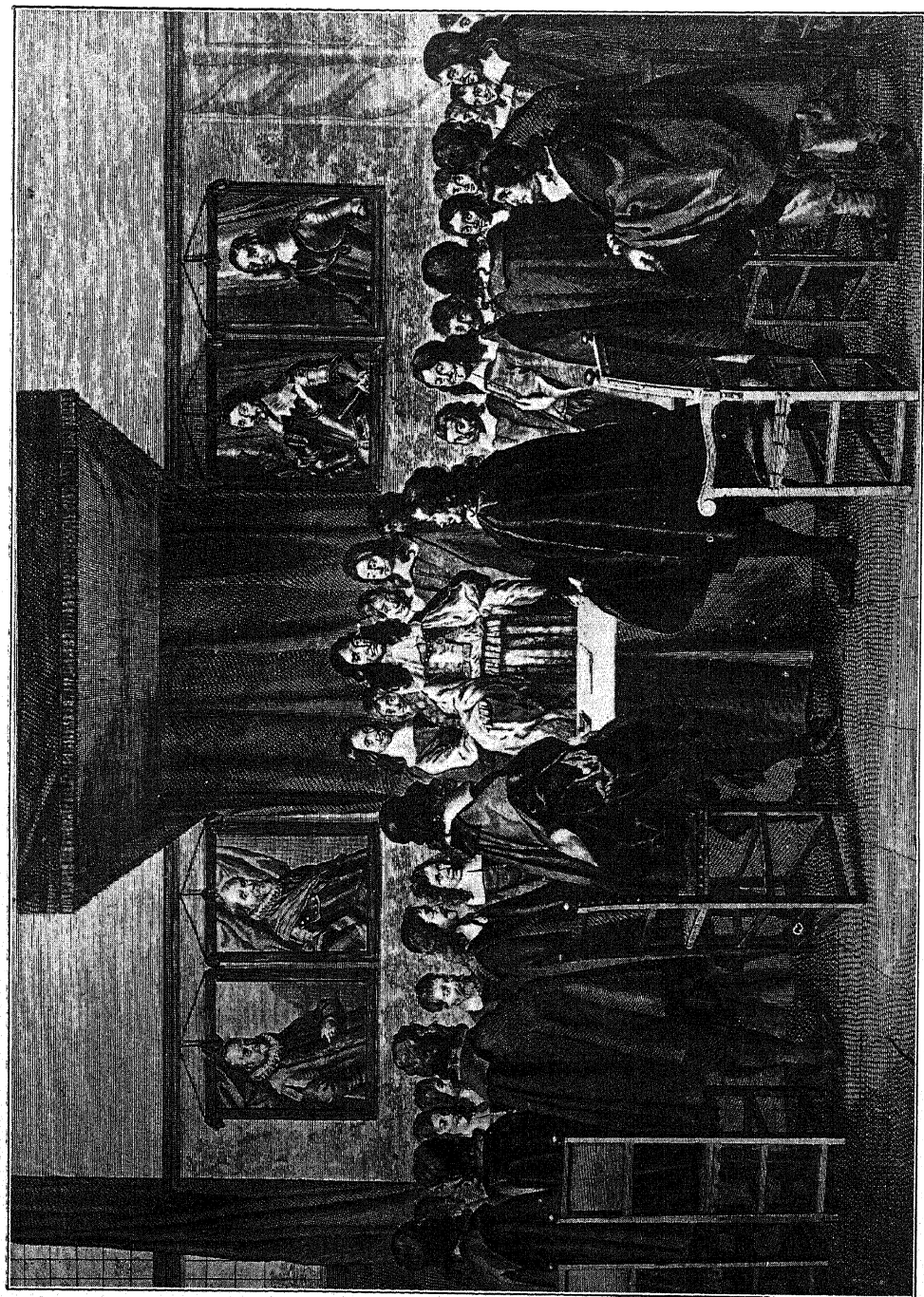
#### THE CABAL MINISTRY.

The ministry which took office on the fall of Clarendon, known as the Cabal (1668),



JACOBEOAN ENGLAND  
The Old Cloth Hall, Newbury

Photo, G.W. Rly.



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

SIGNING THE TREATY OF BREDA

From an old print

was, perhaps, the most corrupt that had ever existed in England, and was secretly in the pay of Louis of France. A League, known as the Triple Alliance, was formed about this time between England, Holland and Sweden, in order to check the designs of the French King on the Netherlands. But Louis had bribed not only the Ministry and many members of Parliament, but also Charles II, who had so far debased himself as to enter into a secret and treacherous agreement to aid the French King against Spain and Holland in return for a pension of £120,000 per annum. There is little doubt that Charles was drawn into this nefarious design by the corrupt Cabal Ministry. Even before war had been declared, the British fleet, under Sir Robert Holmes, attacked the Dutch Smyrna fleet, and immediately on the declaration of hostilities an action between the two main fleets was fought off Ostend, with the result that the Dutch were forced to retire from the action and French forces marched into the Netherlands. The Dutch were compelled to sue for peace in 1674.

By the Coventry Act of 1671 it was made felony to disfigure the person, and the Test Act made it necessary for all holding public offices to conform more closely and publicly to the exact doctrines of the Church. This caused the resignation of the Duke of York from the Navy, as he had turned Romanist. It is asserted that this Act was aimed at no humbler personage. The fall of the corrupt Cabal Ministry was followed by the accession to power of the Danby Administration, which held office from 1673-1679, when Lord Danby (Sir Thomas Osborne) was impeached by the Commons and imprisoned in the Tower for having been a party to the treacherous French Agreement. He was betrayed by Louis, who was angered at the success of his exertions to bring about a marriage between the Princess Mary and William, Prince of Orange.

Intrigue was at this time rife throughout the country, and many plots were hatched for the sake of the rewards given for their discovery. An infamous character of the name of Titus Oates pretended to have discovered the Popish Plot (1678), and so plausible was his sworn testimony that Lord Stafford was condemned and executed, and many others were imprisoned. The Meal-Tub Plot in the following year was hatched

in the hopes of reward, and the papers on which it was based were all forgeries. Such was the state of England in the nineteenth year of the reign of Charles II.

A rebellion broke out in Scotland owing to the tyrannical way in which episcopacy was forced upon the people, soldiers being employed to prevent the observance of Presbyterian worship. After many sharp encounters between the English soldiers and the Scottish peasantry, the insurrection was finally suppressed with great cruelty by the Duke of Monmouth and Graham of Claverhouse.

### RYE HOUSE PLOT.

Charles, who had been ruling without a Parliament since 1681, now sought still further to strengthen his authority by depriving London and other large towns of their charters; only restoring them on obtaining the right to have the final voice in the appointment of town officials. This gradual return to the despotic rule of Charles I caused many leaders of the patriotic party, among whom were Monmouth, Shaftesbury, Russell and Sidney, to hold frequent meetings to decide on the best measures of a non-seditious character to resist the return to the old obnoxious ways. Several of those present at these meetings were, however, of a more violent disposition, and plotted to conceal themselves in the Rye House, Hertfordshire, and from there to shoot the King when on his way to Newmarket. Several of the conspirators turned informers, and all concerned in the meetings, whether cognisant of the inner plot to kill the King or unaware of its existence, were arrested. Monmouth was pardoned, but Russell and Sidney were condemned and executed. This was known as the Rye House Plot (1683). Charles II, who married the Infanta Catherine of Portugal, by whom he had no children, died of apoplexy in 1685.

The only other event of his reign worth recording was the passing of the Habeas Corpus Act in 1679, which prevented arbitrary imprisonment, and provided that every prisoner should be brought before a judge within a limited time or released on bail, that no one should be tried twice for the same offence, and that no one should be sent to a prison overseas. Greenwich Observatory was founded; the Royal Society was



incorporated ; St. James's Park was planted ; *Paradise Lost* was published ; and Bombay, which was part of the dowry of Catherine of Portugal, came into the possession of England. (See *India, History*).

### MONMOUTH REBELLION.

James II, brother of Charles, came to the throne unopposed in 1685. Although a Roman Catholic, he agreed by manifesto to respect the civil and religious liberties of his subjects, but broke all his promises within three years from the date of his accession. The Duke of Monmouth, who had been, with many other disaffected nobles, watching events from Holland, thinking England ripe for rebellion, decided to invade the country and raise the Protestant banner. He landed in Dorset with a small untrained army, but some hundreds of the West Country peasants joined his standard, and he marched on Taunton, there proclaiming himself King. Monmouth proceeded to Bridgwater, and encountered the Royal forces under Lord Churchill (afterwards Duke of Marlborough) at Sedgmoor (1685). His ill-trained army was utterly routed, and he fled, being discovered some days later hiding in a ditch. Monmouth was conveyed to London and executed on Tower Hill. This rebellion was followed by the Bloody Assize, which is the name given to the trials by the notorious Judge Jeffreys of all those who showed sympathy with the ill-fated Monmouth. Over 300 persons were executed, and 1,000 were sold as slaves in the colonies.

In Scotland, the Earl of Argyll declared for the covenant and raised a rebellion, but his forces were defeated, and he was executed at Edinburgh. With the suppression of these rebellions, James considered that he could rule as a despotic monarch and establish the Roman Catholic faith. In order to effect this he decided to maintain a large standing army and to repeal the Test and Habeas Corpus Acts. The Parliament opposed these measures and the King dissolved it. He re-established the Court of High Commission ; received an ambassador from the Pope ; and endeavoured to force the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge to admit to a degree monks and others without taking the oaths. In 1688 the Declaration of Indulgence was ordered to be read in all Churches, but the clergy refused, and asked the bishops to

support them. Seven of the prelates drew up a petition asking for the recall of the order, and were at once imprisoned, but they were acquitted by a jury.

### THE PRINCE OF ORANGE.

The daughters of James were non-Romanists, and this in no small measure accounted for the toleration shown by the people of England to the King when setting aside the liberties of the people as established by the



Photo, L.M.S. Rly.  
PRINCE CHARLES' MONUMENT  
Loch Shiel

Civil War. It was understood that one of these daughters must succeed him ; but the unexpected birth of a son created an alarm and the leaders of the patriotic party immediately asked for the assistance of the Prince of Orange to overthrow the King's Government. William of Orange landed with a large army and a powerful fleet at Torbay in 1688. He issued a proclamation that his object was "the defence of the liberties of England." Deserters from the Royal cause flocked to his standard, and the army of 16,000 with which he landed was soon heavily reinforced. Among those who





*Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.*

**ENTRY OF PRINCE CHARLES EDWARD INTO EDINBURGH**

*From a painting by G. Duncan*

joined the Prince were Lord Churchill and Prince George of Denmark. James, seeing the danger to his throne, endeavoured to regain the lost affection of the people, but in this he failed, and seeing the desertions from his cause growing daily he left the remnant of his army and returned to London. The Prince of Orange advanced rapidly on the capital, and James attempted flight, but was brought back. He, however, succeeded in escaping a second time, and arrived safely in France, dying at St. Germans in 1701.

### THE DECLARATION OF RIGHTS.

The Crown of England was offered to, and accepted by, the Prince and Princess of Orange; and with the formal tendering of the Crown was also delivered the Declaration of Rights. This declared to be illegal: (1) the suspension of the laws; (2) the Court of the High Commission; (3) taxation without the consent of Parliament; (4) the maintenance of a standing Army without the consent of Parliament; and also stated that (5) subjects might petition the King; (6) Protestants possess arms for their defence; (7) the election of members of Parliament should be free; (8) the freedom of speech in Parliament; (9) excessive bail should not be required; and (10) Parliament should meet frequently. The family of James II by his first wife (Anne, the daughter of Lord Clarendon) consisted of Mary, Princess of Orange, and Anne, afterwards Queen of England. By Mary d'Este, his second wife, James Edward, the Old Pretender.

William and Mary, after agreeing to the stipulations contained in the Declaration of Rights, were proclaimed King and Queen of England on 13th February, 1689. One of the principal features of this reign was the continual struggle between the two great political factions, the Whigs and Tories. The former and the more moderate members of the latter party supported William and Mary; but James still had many adherents among the extreme Tories. William's somewhat repulsive manner and his marked liking for his Dutch friends prevented his ever becoming popular; and many of the Whigs—his own political party—were in secret communication with the exiled King. Among these was the famous Duke of Marlborough. William's first act was the change of the Convention into a full Parliament with great

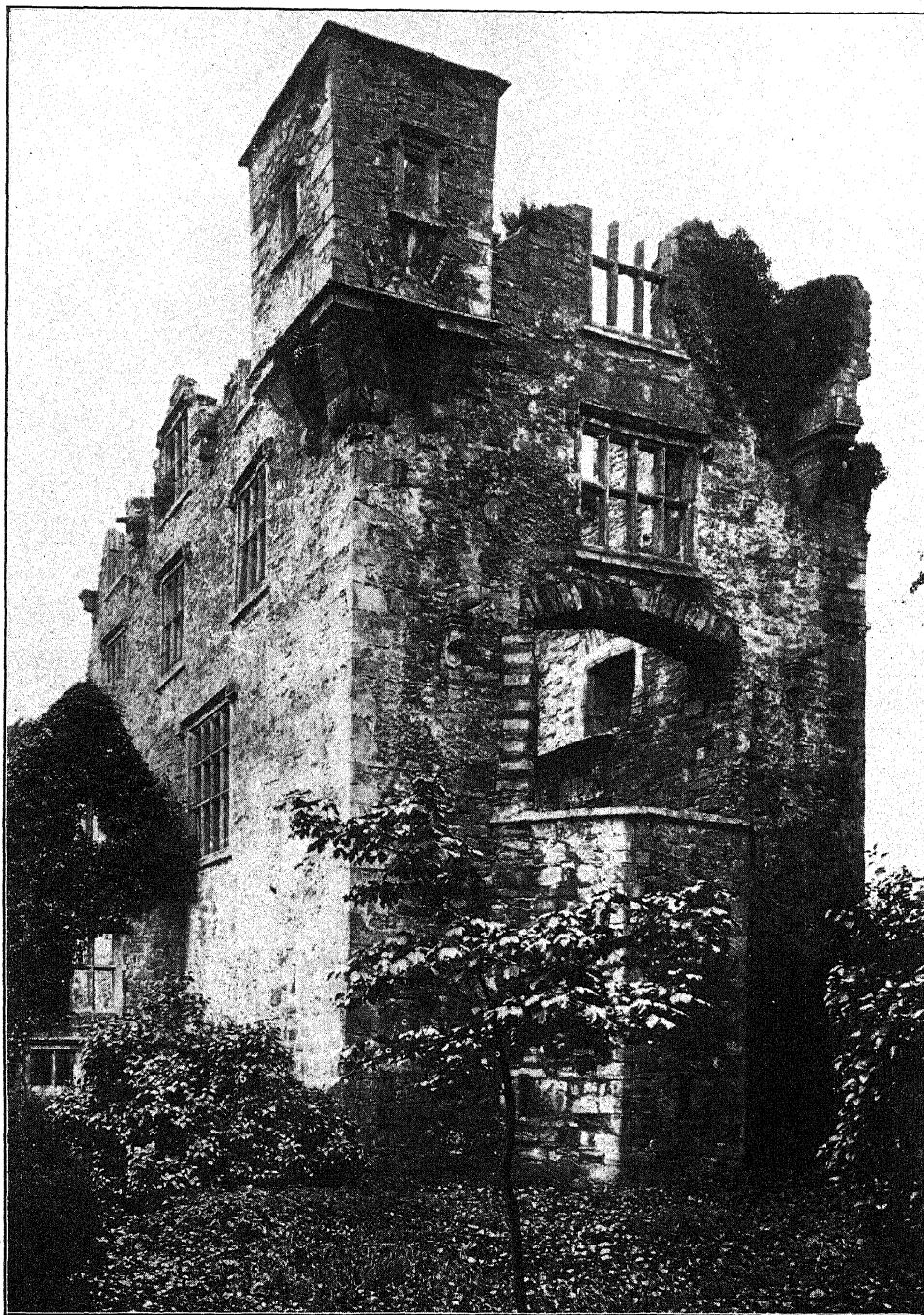
freedom, and then came the Toleration Act, which liberated dissenters from the penal statutes. The Roman Catholics were treated very leniently.

### MASSACRE OF GLENCOE.

Scotland, which had suffered much at the hands of James, was generally favourable to William and Mary, but there were, however, several powerful supporters of the late King north of the Tweed; among whom were the Duke of Gordon, and Graham of Claverhouse (Viscount Dundee). The latter defeated the Royal forces under Mackay at the Pass of Killiecrankie in 1689, but was mortally wounded. The loss of this chief gave the death blow to all resistance in Scotland, and episcopacy was abolished and Presbyterianism—which has since been the national religion in Scotland—was finally established. Three years later there occurred the Massacre of Glencoe. The Highland chief, Macdonald, having failed to give in his allegiance to King William within a specified time, was declared to be a rebel, whereas the delay had been caused by unavoidable circumstances. Dalrymple, the Secretary for Scotland, in order the gratify private malice, sent troops to the peaceful vale of Glencoe, and the inhabitants were massacred without mercy.

### JAMES IN IRELAND.

In Ireland, with the exception of Protestant Ulster, the cause of James was at once espoused on the landing of the exiled King at the head of a few troops lent by the King of France, and a large army was soon formed. James entered Dublin in 1689, and at once proceeded to join his army which was besieging Londonderry. This siege is one of the most famous in history. Although the town was reduced to the direst extremity, and had to contend with a numerous and well-equipped army without and treachery within, it held out until relieved by General Kirke. When this had been accomplished, the Enniskilleners sallied forth and defeated a portion of James's army at Newton-Butler. Dublin became the headquarters of James, and he summoned a Parliament and assumed the state of a sovereign. The Duke of Schomberg was sent from England with a considerable force, but he effected little. In the following year, however, William landed at



IRELAND IN THE MIDDLE AGES. DONEGAL CASTLE

*L.M.S. Rly.*

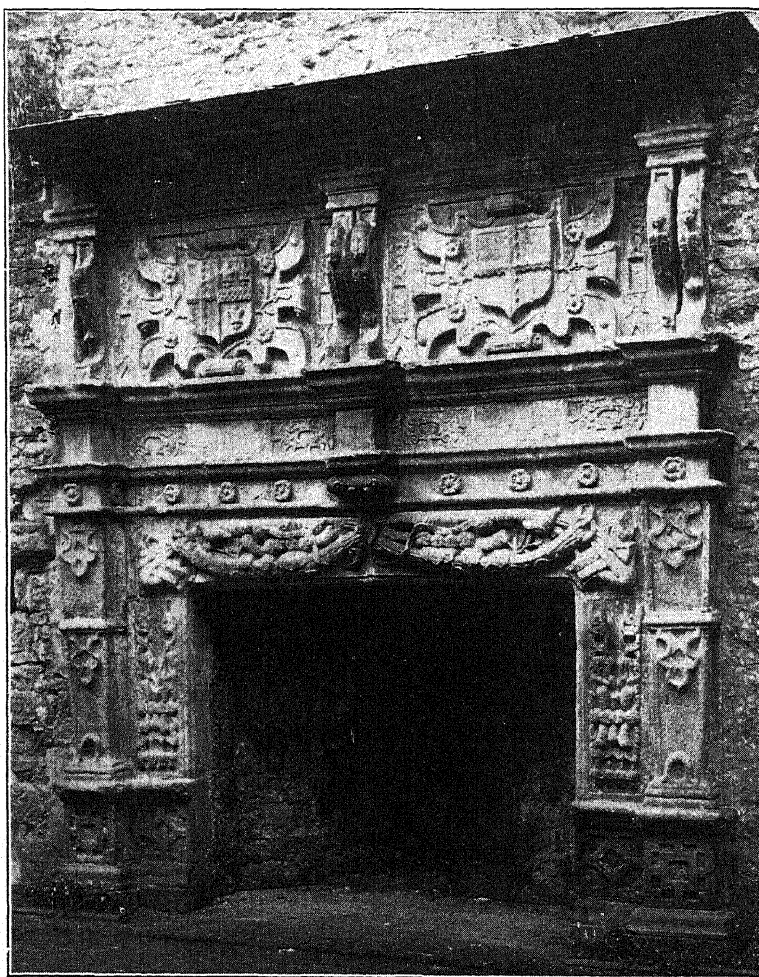
Carrickfergus and routed the army of James at Drogheda on the Boyne (1690). James became a fugitive, and fled first to Dublin and then to France. William marched into Dublin and pardoned all the common people who had aided James, and then advanced southwards and captured Waterford. Limerick still held out, but Cork and Kinsale were taken by Marlborough, and Athlone fell, after a desperate resistance, to the Royalist forces under Ginckell, who subsequently routed the revolutionary army with great slaughter at Aghrim. This was followed by the surrender of Galway and the fortress of Limerick.

During the war in Ireland a naval action took place off Beachy Head, between a combined English and Dutch squadron and the French, who were endeavouring to carry supplies to the insurgent forces. Owing to the treachery of the Earl of Torrington, the French fleet was victorious. This, however, had but little influence on the campaign, which terminated with the fall of Limerick.

### WAR OF THE GRAND ALLIANCE.

Next came the War of the Grand Alliance, which lasted for nine years (1689-97). One of the principal objects of William's life had been to check the ambitions of the French King, and with this aim in view he joined forces with the princes of Germany, the Republic of Holland, and Savoy. The assistance which Louis had rendered to James afforded the necessary pretext, and

hostilities were commenced in various parts of Europe; but although the war lasted for nine years, no decisive results were attained. The principal engagement was a naval action off La Hogue (1692), in which the French were completely defeated. This was the last effort made by the French



AN IRISH BARONIAL HALL  
Fireplace, Donegal Castle

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

King to place James again on the throne of England. The war terminated with the Peace of Ryswick, by which treaty the right of William to the English throne was recognised. Queen Mary died of small-pox, to the regret of the whole nation, in the year 1694.



Trouble now arose between the King and the Parliament over the size and composition of the standing army, and it was with difficulty that William was persuaded from abandoning the Government and leaving the Kingdom. Next came the Partition Treaties, which were an arrangement entered into between William and Louis XIV for the peaceful distribution of the Spanish Dominions, on the death of the childless Charles II of Spain, among the numerous claimants to the Spanish throne. An act of treachery on the part of Louis, whereby the whole of the Spanish Dominions were bequeathed by Charles II upon his deathbed, to the second son of the Dauphin, in total disregard of the arrangements with William, caused great consternation in England, as it meant the uniting of France and Spain, and a change, detrimental to England, of the balance of power in Europe.

When Louis also disregarded the Peace Treaty of Ryswick by recognising the son of James II as King of England, it became apparent that the aim of France was to be supreme in Europe. In order to frustrate this design, William formed a league, in which were included Germany, Russia, Prussia, Sweden, Holland and Savoy. War did not break out, however, until after the death of William.

The Act of Settlement (1700) became necessary owing to the death of the Duke of Gloucester, the only surviving child of Anne. By this Act all the descendants of Charles I were excluded from the throne, which was settled (after Anne) upon the Princess Sophia of Hanover and her heirs, not being Roman Catholics. William died in 1702 from the effects of a fall from his horse, and was buried at Westminster. He left no family. Among other notable events of this reign was the passing of the Triennial and Treason Bills; the latter regulating the mode of trial. The Bank of England was founded; Chelsea Hospital was completed; Greenwich Palace was changed from a royal residence into a home for old and disabled seamen; the National Debt was first created; and Peter the Great of Russia served as an apprentice to a ship-wright at Deptford.

#### WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION.

Anne, the youngest daughter of James II, ascended the throne in 1702, and reigned for

thirteen years. This period was full of important historical events. First came the War of the Spanish Succession; and the policy of William and the League was adopted. The Duke of Marlborough was appointed to the command of the Allied Forces and landed in the Netherlands with an army of 60,000 men (1702). The slowness of the Dutch delayed operations, but Venloo, Liège and other frontier towns were captured during this year. Following the plan suggested by William, an allied British and Dutch fleet, under Sir G. Rooke, carrying a force of 14,000 men, was despatched against Cadiz. This expedition, owing to gross mismanagement, failed in its purpose, but on the homeward voyage came up with the Spanish Plate Fleet and obtained a considerable amount of treasure.

A British squadron under Admiral Benbow brought a French fleet to action off the West Indies, and defeated it, but a mutiny among the British officers marred this success. In 1703, Bonn, on the Rhine, and other towns, were taken by the forces under Marlborough, and Portugal and Savoy joined the Alliance. In the following year Marlborough hastened into Bavaria to assist the Emperor of Germany, who was in danger. After breaking through the Bavarian lines at Schellinberg, Marlborough was joined by Prince Eugène, of Savoy; and the allied armies met the united French and Bavarian forces, under Tallard, near Blenheim (1704). This hard-fought battle resulted in a decisive victory for Marlborough, and the Allies recrossed the Rhine and brought the year's campaign to a close by besieging the fortresses of Landau and Trèves.

Meanwhile (1704) an expedition under Sir George Rooke to Barcelona proved unsuccessful, but on the return voyage Gibraltar was seized; and this magnificent fortress has since remained in the hands of the English (*q.v.*). Barcelona was afterwards reduced by Lord Peterborough and the Archduke Charles after desultory warfare in the surrounding country, but the opposition of the majority of the Spanish nation rendered this success of little avail. In 1705-6 Marlborough planned a campaign in Italy, but abandoned the scheme through considerations for the safety of the Netherlands; and while preparing to lay siege to the fortress of Namur was met in battle at Ramillies





W. A. Mansell & Co.

DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE AT QUEBEC, 13th SEPTEMBER, 1759

*From a painting*

(1706) by the French under Marshal Villeroy, whom he defeated with heavy losses. This decisive victory induced the States of Brabant to acknowledge the Archduke Charles as King; and the fortresses of Antwerp, Ghent, Brussels and Oudenarde were surrendered.

Little was accomplished during 1707, but early in the following year the French surprised and captured Ghent and Bruges, but while besieging Oudenarde were met by the allied armies and forced to raise the siege. Ghent was soon recovered and the great fortress of Lille captured. Louis of France now sued for peace, and agreed to give up all the Spanish possessions with the exception of Naples, but the allied Powers insisted on the surrender of all the Spanish Dominions, and Louis refused. The allied forces immediately besieged and captured Tournay, and were investing Mons, when battle was given by the French army under Villars at Malplaquet. The French were routed and Mons was taken. The next move was the invasion of France, and Marlborough succeeded in forcing the frontier defences erected by Villars; but a change in the English Ministry led to a secret treaty with the French King, and Marlborough's enemies at home at last succeeded in getting him recalled and dismissed from office.

### THE TREATY OF UTRECHT.

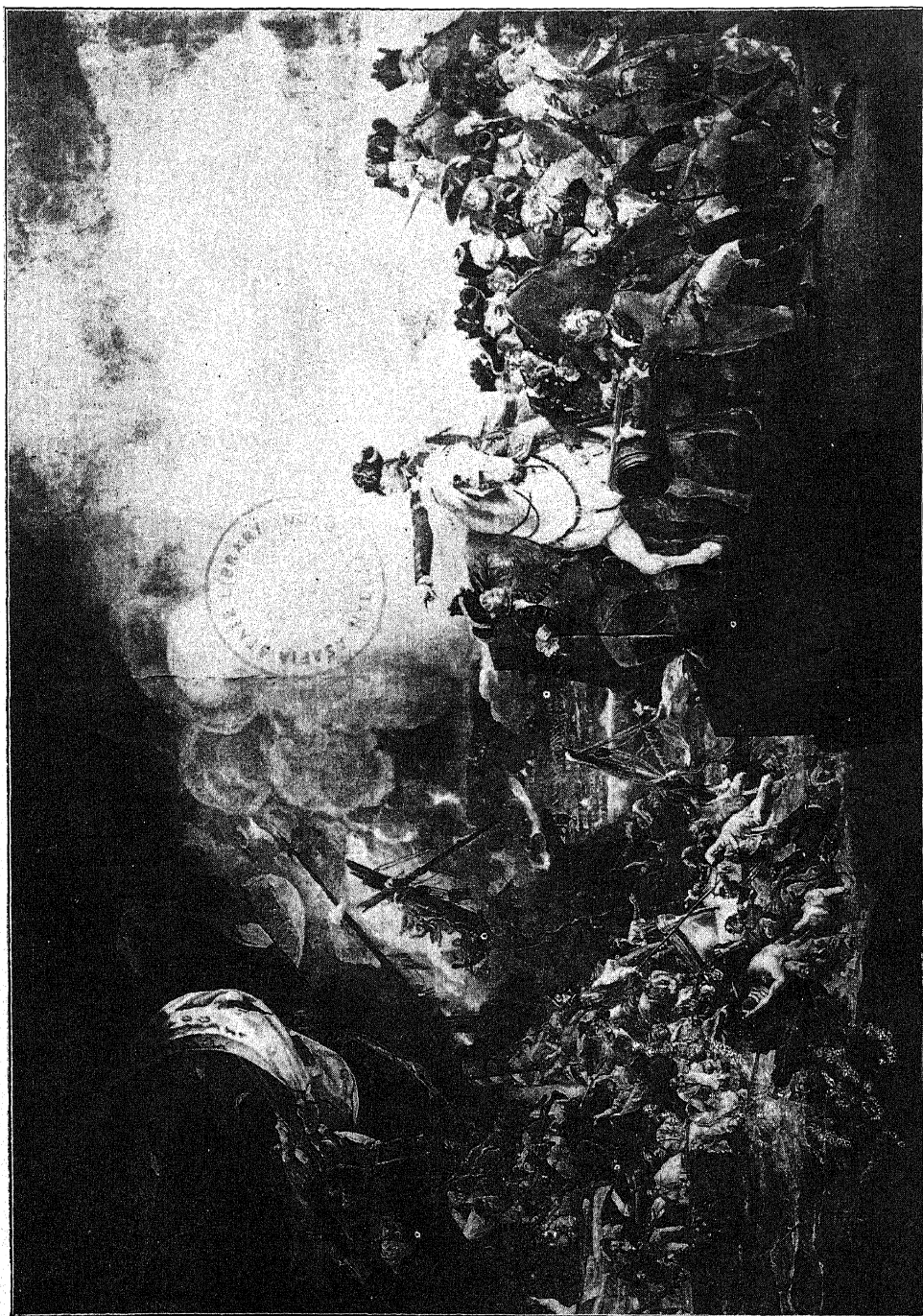
Deserted by the English in this impolite and callous manner, the Allies made peace, which was ratified in 1713 by the Treaty of Utrecht. By this treaty, which was brought about by Bolingbroke (St. John) and Oxford (Harley), and was a disgrace after the magnificent successes of Marlborough, Louis obtained far better terms than those he had offered in 1708. It was thereby agreed that Philip should retain the whole of Spain; the Emperor having the Netherlands and the Italian Dominions; the Duke of Savoy taking Sicily; and England having Gibraltar, Minorca, Hudson Bay and Newfoundland (*q.v.*).

While these events had been taking place on the Continent—in the effort to maintain the balance of power in Europe—the usual party dissensions were rife in England, being even more bitter than in the reign of William. The Queen leaned to the Tory Party, and the first Ministry was formed under Lord

Godolphin (1702); but Marlborough's influence with the Queen enabled the second to be a Whig Ministry (1705), and included in the Cabinet were both Marlborough and Godolphin—never a strong Tory. The great achievement of this Parliament was the passing of the Act for the Union of England and Scotland (1707). The third Parliament was also Whig, and the only important event was the impeachment of Dr. Sacheverell for sedition. He was found guilty, but the verdict was unpopular, and caused the return of the Tories to power, under Harley (Earl of Oxford) and St. John (Viscount Bolingbroke), by whom the Treaty of Utrecht was made. Queen Anne died in 1714, and was buried at Westminster. All her numerous family had preceded her to the grave. Among other events of this reign was the establishment of "Queen Anne's Bounty"—a one-time royal revenue alienated by Charter for the perpetual augmentation of poor livings—and the first publication of the *Spectator*. Sir Isaac Newton, the philosopher, became famous.

### THE JACOBITES.

The first sovereign of the Hanoverian line was George I, son of Sophia of Brunswick—a granddaughter of James I. He ascended the throne, in accordance with the Act of Settlement (1700), in the year 1714. Being of German inclinations, he was never popular. The Whigs, being the chief supporters of the House of Hanover, were predominant in the first Ministry. An early measure was the impeachment of Oxford, Bolingbroke and others for high treason in bringing about the Treaty of Utrecht. The former suffered two years' imprisonment, but the latter escaped to the Continent, where he joined the Pretender (Stuart line). In 1715 occurred the first of the Jacobite revolts, and the Riot Act was passed. Later in the same year the Earl of Mar caused an outbreak of rebellion on the part of the Jacobites with the object of restoring the Stuart dynasty. The standard of revolt was raised at Braemar. Simultaneously an insurrection occurred in the north of England under the Earl of Derwentwater. A junction was effected between the English and Scottish Jacobites, and the revolutionary forces marched southwards to Preston in Lancashire, where they were surrounded by the Royal troops and



W. A. Mansell & Co.

THE SIEGE AND RELIEF OF GIBRALTAR

The famous siege lasted three years, commencing in 1780. The attacking fleet were destroyed by the use of red-hot shot

From a painting

compelled to surrender. An indecisive action took place on the same day between the revolutionary forces under the Earl of Mar and the northern army of the King under Argyll at Sheriffmuir (1715). A few days later the Pretender landed, but failing to arouse the expected enthusiasm he fled, with some of the other Jacobite leaders, to the Continent.

A few of the revolutionary leaders were pardoned, others escaped, and Lords Derwentwater and Kenmuir were executed, and the estates of the former granted to Greenwich Hospital. The unsettled political state of the country caused the Ministry to deem it dangerous to risk a General Election, which, according to the Triennial Act, should have taken place in 1717. With the object of prolonging the life of Parliament, the Septennial Act was passed in 1716. By this the duration of Parliament was extended to seven years. An attempt on the part of Spain to recover the lost Italian provinces led to the formation of the Quadruple Alliance—England, France, Germany and Holland—to maintain the Treaty of Utrecht, and war with Spain was the result. England's part in this contest was confined to the sea; and the defeat of the Spanish fleet, off Cape Passaro, was the principal action. Spain endeavoured to assist the Pretender with an expedition against England, which, however, failed; and Atterbury, Bishop of Rochester, who was a party to the plan, was discovered and deprived of his see.

#### THE SOUTH SEA BUBBLE.

In 1720 the South Sea Company was started. This Company undertook to repay the National Debt in return for the exclusive privilege of trading to the South Seas. Shares were offered to the public, and rose from the original £100 in value to £1,000 each. The fall came rapidly, and thousands were involved in ruin. In fact, so great was the effect of the bursting of the South Sea Bubble, that the financial fabric of the whole nation was shaken to its foundations, but confidence was quickly restored by the admirable measures adopted by Sir Robert Walpole. King George I died at Osnaburgh in Hanover, in 1727. He had married the Princess Sophia, daughter of the Duke of

Brunswick and Zell, by whom he had one son, afterwards George II. Among other events of this reign was the re-establishment of the order of Knights of the Bath, the founding of Guy's Hospital, and the introduction of inoculation for small-pox, by Lady Wortley Montague.

#### SPANISH AND SILESIAN WARS.

George II came to the throne in 1727, but like his father he had German predilections and was but little more popular. Sir Robert Walpole continued as Prime Minister for fifteen years (until 1742). The Porteous Riots (1736) occurred in Edinburgh; and war broke out with Spain, who hampered English trade in the West Indies and harboured designs on Gibraltar. Admiral Vernon attacked and destroyed Portobello, but failed in an assault on Cartagena. A British fleet was despatched into the Pacific under Commodore Anson. He was away for four years and suffered great vicissitudes of fortune, but, after circumnavigating the globe, returned in 1744 laden with spoils. The general results of this war were, however, unsatisfactory. Walpole resigned office and was succeeded by Carteret, afterwards Earl Grenville.

The Silesian War was caused by the attempt on the part of Prussia, Bavaria and France—in opposition to treaty obligations—to deprive Maria Theresa of Austria of some of the hereditary dominions settled on her by Charles VI, in accordance with the Pragmatic Sanction. England's connection with Hanover caused the nation to enter the war on the side of Maria Theresa; and a strong British army, led by George II in person, entered Germany to join forces with the army of Austria. The Allies met the French at Dettingen (1743), and gained a decisive victory. In 1745 the Allies, under the Duke of Cumberland, were hastening to relieve Tournay when they were met and defeated at Fontenoy by the famous Marshal Saxe. The victory delivered Tournay and other fortresses in the Netherlands into the hands of the French. A naval victory over the French was, however, gained by Admiral Anson, off Cape Finisterre, in 1747, and another by Admiral Hawke, off Belleisle. This war was concluded in 1748 by the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.

### THE YOUNG PRETENDER.

In the meantime, Charles Edward, grandson of James II, and known as the Young Pretender, had landed in the Highlands, and was immediately joined by Lochiel, chief of the Camerons, and other Highland clans; assistance also being furnished by the French. Edward marched into Perth, where his father, the Old Pretender, was proclaimed King. He proceeded to Edinburgh and took up his residence in Holyrood Palace. A few days later he met and defeated the Royal army, under Sir John Cope, at Preston Pans (1745); and then, expecting aid from the Jacobites and the French, invaded England penetrating as far as Derby. Being disappointed in not receiving the assistance he had expected, he eluded the forces of King George and retreated into Scotland. On the approach of the Duke of Cumberland with a large army he retreated into the Highlands, but was brought to battle and defeated at Culloden, near Inverness, in 1746. The slaughter in this battle was very great, and shocking barbarities were consequently committed by the Royal troops. Lords Lovat, Kilmarnock and Balmerino were taken and executed, but "Bonny Prince Charlie," although a reward of £30,000 was offered for his capture, went from place to place in the Highlands, and eventually succeeded in escaping to France. He died in Italy in 1788.

### SEVEN YEARS' WAR.

In 1744, Mr. Pelham had become Prime Minister in the place of Earl Grenville; and the elder Pitt (Lord Chatham) was included in his administration. Pelham died in 1754, and was succeeded in office by his brother, the Duke of Newcastle. It was in 1756 that the Seven Years' War broke out, and in which nearly all the great European Powers were engaged. The cause was a comparatively simple one, but the ramifications were world-wide. It arose over a boundary dispute between the French and English colonists in North America. Being in possession of the Canadas, Newfoundland, Cape Breton and Acadia (Nova Scotia), in the north, and Louisiana and other provinces along the lower Mississippi in the south, the French sought, by the erection of a chain of forts, to exclude the English settlers from the wide hunting grounds of the West, and

to pen them between the Atlantic and the Alleghanies. Conflicts between the colonists themselves frequently took place, and war was at last declared. A community of interests caused England and Prussia to join forces against France, Austria, Russia and Sweden, and war was carried on in Europe, America, India and on the seas.

### CONQUEST OF CANADA.

A signal British defeat opened the campaign in America, General Braddock and the troops under his command being surprised and routed in the Ohio Woods by a force of French and Indians. Cape Breton Island was, however, captured by Admiral Boscawen and General Amherst in 1758; and in the following year a large force was despatched to Canada under General Wolfe, who succeeded, amidst great difficulties, in capturing Quebec (1759). Wolfe died on the field of battle; but the whole of Canada was soon afterwards surrendered to the British. (See *Canada*.) In Germany the allied forces, under Prince Ferdinand of Brunswick, triumphed at the Battle of Minden (1759); but in the war at sea, the Island of Minorca, which was defended by General Blakeney, was compelled to surrender to the French fleet after an unsuccessful attempt at relief by Admiral Byng, who was afterwards court-martialled and shot. Admiral Boscawen's fleet, which had been blockading Toulon, put to sea on the retirement of the English from Minorca to Gibraltar, and the French fleet escaped into the Mediterranean. It was pursued, and overtaken off the African coast, and several ships were captured. Admiral Hawke defeated the French fleet off Brest in 1759. In India, Robert Clive won the famous victory of Plassey (1757) with 3,000 men against Surajah Dowlah and 60,000 followers. (See *History of India*.) Clive returned to England in 1760, rich with the spoils of war. George II died suddenly in 1760, and was buried at Westminster. He had married Caroline of Anspach, and the eldest son, Frederick, Prince of Wales, had died before him. There were, however, several other children.

### PEACE OF FONTAINEBLEAU.

George III, grandson of the former King, ascended the throne in 1760. He was English both in education and ideas, and was far more



popular than the two previous sovereigns of the House of Hanover. The Duke of Newcastle remained as Premier until 1762. The Seven Years' War was continued under the new reign; and Belleisle, off the French coast, and Dominica, in the West Indies,

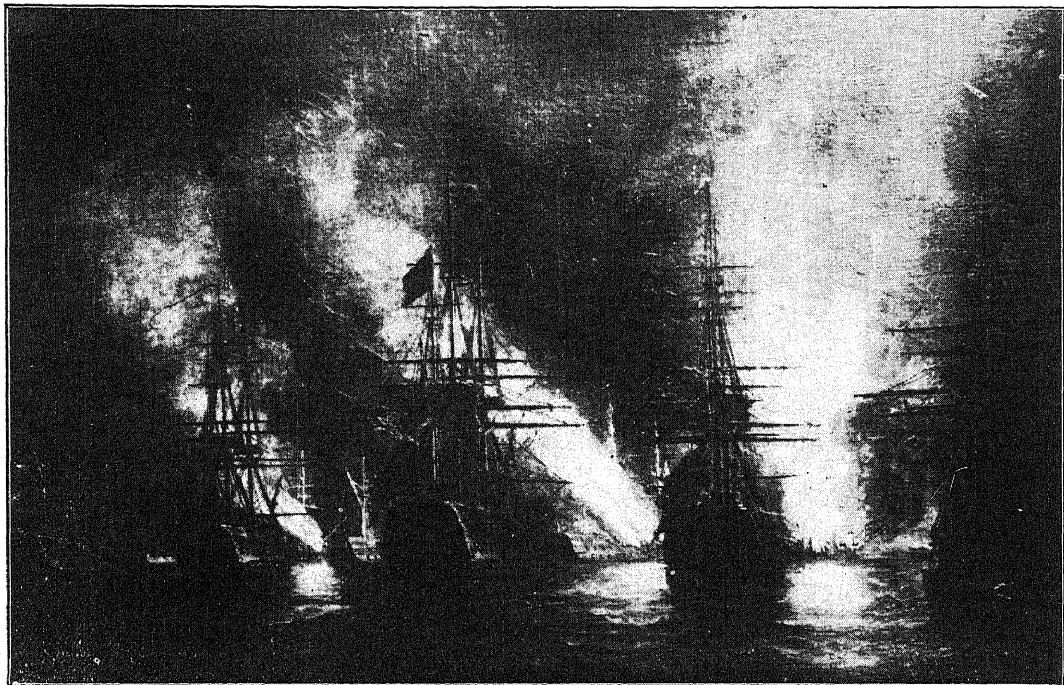
were captured by the British in 1761. France and Spain entered into an arrangement hostile to England which was known as the Family Compact. This caused war to be declared against the latter country. France and Spain tried to force Portugal to join them, and a British army was immediately despatched to assist Portugal, with the result that the Spaniards were quickly driven out. Manila (Philippine Islands) was taken by the British from Spain; and France lost several of her West Indian Islands. The Peace of Fontainebleau (1763) terminated the Seven Years' War. This treaty, which was very unpopular in England, provided that Great Britain should retain Canada, Cape Breton, and all her northern conquests; Louisiana in the south of North America, St. Vincent, Dominica and Tobago, in the West Indies; Florida and other possessions; but certain conquests were to be surrendered.



THE ORIGINAL "POORT," OR GATEWAY TO THE CASTLE, CAPE TOWN. CAPTURED FROM THE DUTCH IN 1796-1806

#### AMERICAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

English Ministries changed rapidly, and included those of Bute, Grenville, Rockingham, Chatham (Pitt) and Grafton. Then came Lord North's long administration, which lasted from 1770 to 1782. During the Grenville administration certain stamp duties were imposed on the American colonists, which, however, were substituted by Lord Rockingham for a duty on tea. The colonists denied the right of the Motherland to impose taxes without their consent. The Imperial Government, with a lamentable lack of foresight and tact, made no effort at compromise, but proceeded to enforce the obnoxious measures. The colonists opposed the landing of the Government tea in



*By kind permission of the West India Committee*

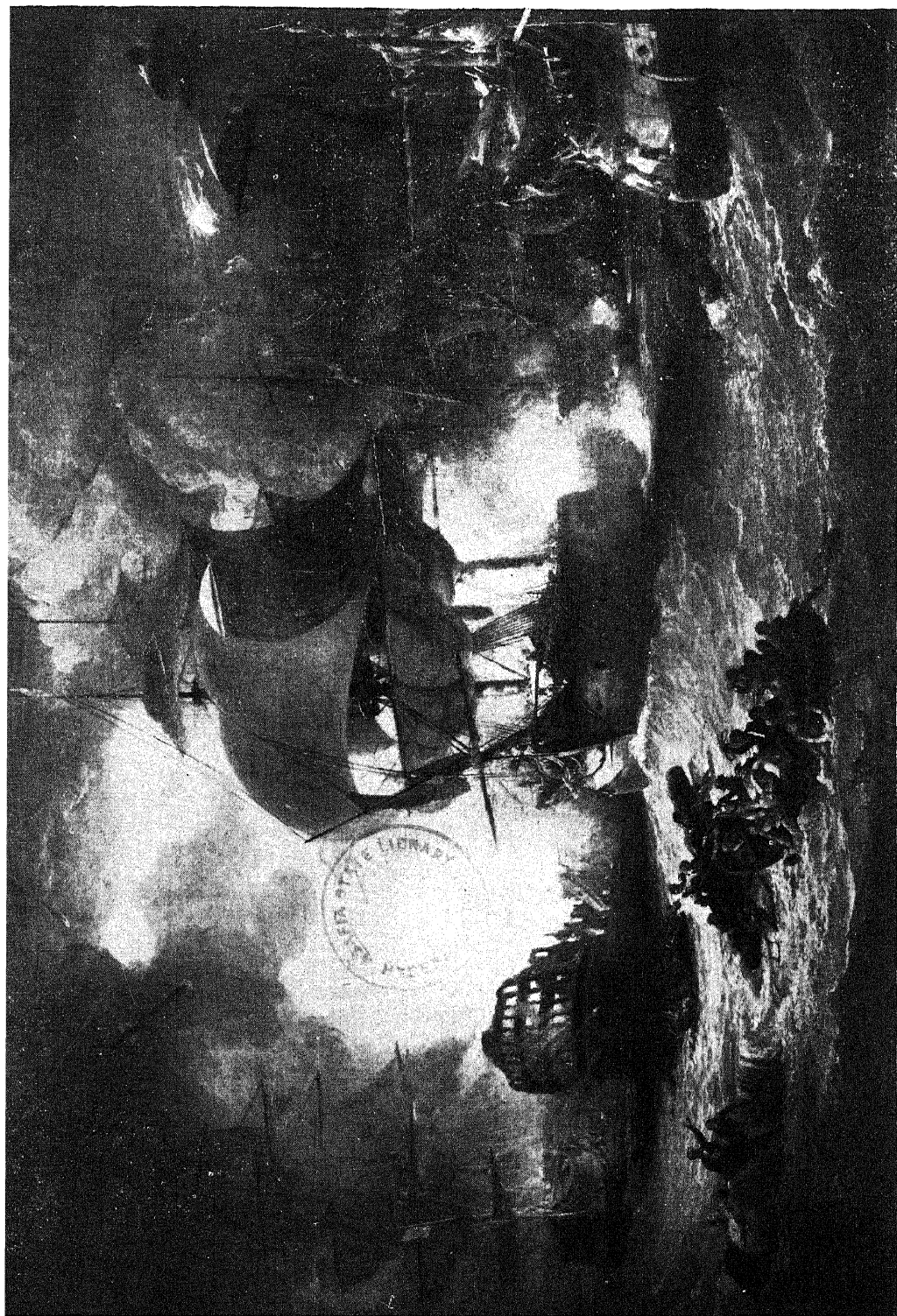
#### CAPTURE OF TRINIDAD, 1797

Boston Harbour and commenced organising for defence.

Early in the year 1775 the first skirmish in the American War of Independence took place at Lexington, between the King's troops, who had been sent to seize some military stores, and the rebellious colonial militia. In the summer of the same year a strong insurgent force attempted to blockade Boston by entrenching themselves on a neighbouring eminence, from which they were ultimately dislodged by the King's troops. This action, the first of importance in the War of Independence, was given the name of Bunker's Hill.

At this juncture the Colonial Congress tried to effect a settlement, but failed. Forces of Royal troops, under Generals Arnold and Montgomery, were sent to Canada. The latter captured Montreal, and on effecting a junction with Arnold commenced the investment of Quebec, but General Carlton and the insurgents compelled the siege to be

raised. General Washington now became the Commander-in-Chief of the Colonial armies, and soon compelled the King's troops, under General Howe, to evacuate Boston (1776), which was the key to the whole country south of the St. Lawrence. Later in the same year Howe landed on Staten Island, and after defeating the Colonial forces (local), captured New York and drove Washington out of New Jersey, a portion of which was, however, afterwards recaptured by the insurgents. In 1777, Howe invaded Pennsylvania; met and defeated the Colonial forces at Brandywine, and captured Philadelphia. In the same year, however, the King's forces suffered a serious disaster. General Burgoyne, coming down from Canada, met and defeated a detachment of Colonials, but shortly afterwards found himself hemmed in by the insurgent army under General Yates at Saratoga (1777). He surrendered with his whole army.



THE BLOWING-UP OF THE "ORIENT"

The victory of Admiral Sir Horatio Nelson over the French Fleet in Aboukir Bay, 1st August, 1798

*By permission of the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty*

In the following year (1778) France sent a fleet to assist the insurgents, and acknowledged the independence of the colony. War thus broke out between England and France. A French fleet, acting in conjunction with an insurgent army, attacked the British in Rhode Island; but were defeated and driven off by Lord Howe. The desultory fighting which followed proved unsatisfactory for the insurgents. The whole of Georgia was taken by the British and retained in face of the desperate efforts of General Lincoln and the allied armies to recover it. In South Carolina, Sir W. Clinton besieged Charleston and compelled Lincoln to surrender. An insurgent army, under General Yates, marching into the province to assist Lincoln, came out too late, and was defeated at Camden by Lord Cornwallis. General Arnold had gone over to the British, and was despatched with Cornwallis to Virginia, but a section of his army was routed. An indecisive action took place between Cornwallis and Greene at Guildford. This insurgent army was, however, subsequently defeated at Hobkirk's Hill by the King's forces under Lord Rawden, and the British entered Charleston. Assisted by the French fleet, under De Grasse, General Washington succeeded in capturing York Town and compelling Lord Cornwallis and his army to capitulate. This was the last action in the American War of Independence, although it was not until 1783 that peace was definitely assured. In the meantime war broke out with Spain (1779), and England had thus to face not only the insurrection in the American colonies, but also the forces sent against her in various parts of the world by France and Spain.

### INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES.

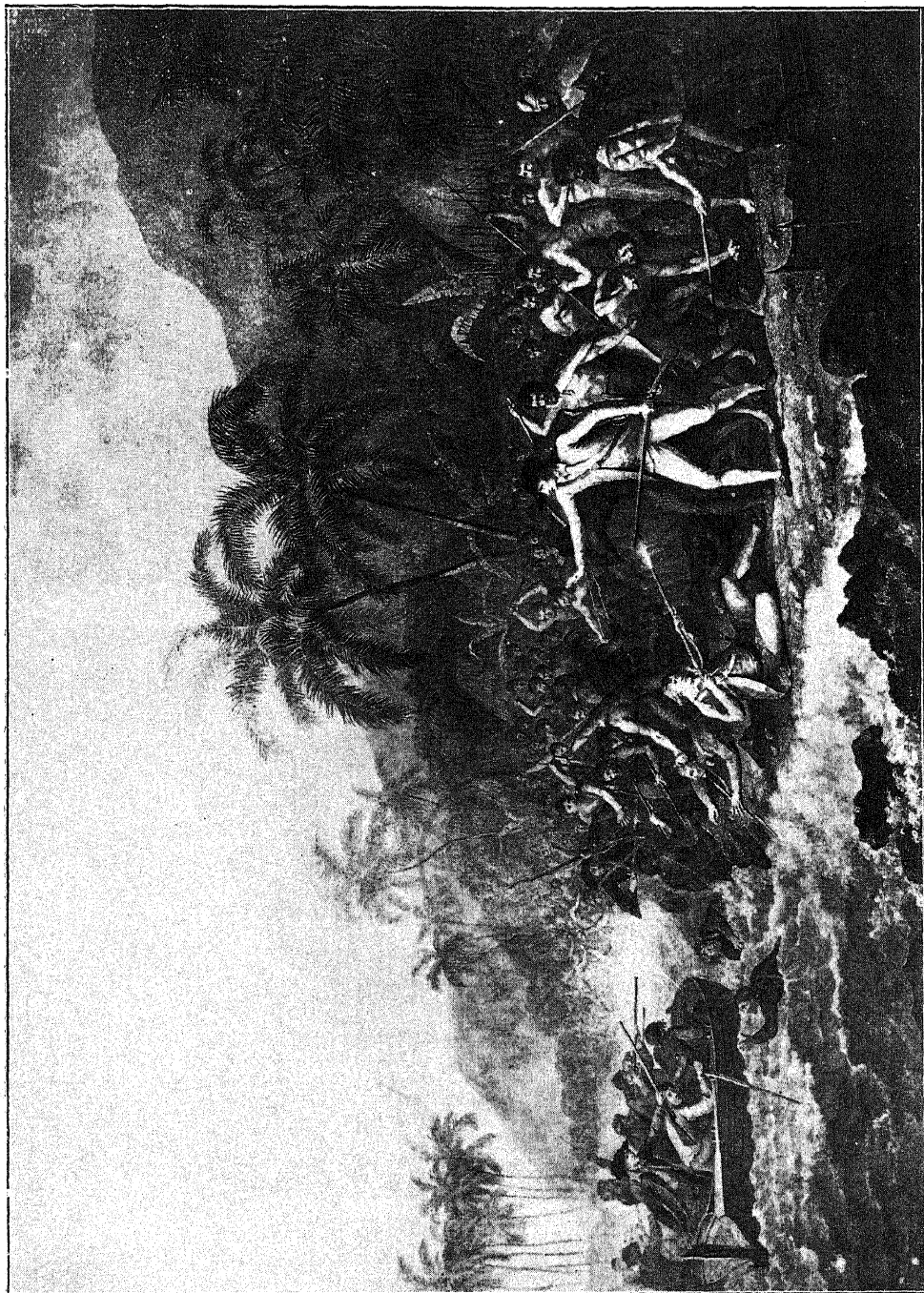
In the West Indies France captured several islands, including Dominica, St. Vincent and Grenada (1779). In the following year a British fleet, under Admiral Rodney, met the Spanish fleet off Cape St. Vincent and defeated it. He then set sail for the West Indies, and, in 1782, brought the French squadron under De Grasse (who had assisted Washington) to battle off St. Lucia and defeated it. The Dutch had also entered the war, and Admiral Hyde Parker caught a Dutch squadron, under Admiral Zoutman, off the Dogger Bank (1781) and

destroyed it. The island of Minorca was surrendered by the British after a long siege in 1782. The famous siege of Gibraltar, which lasted for three years, commenced in 1780. The Rock was defended by General Elliot, who eventually destroyed the attacking fleet by the use of red-hot shot. The war was brought to a conclusion by the Treaty of Versailles (1783). The independence of the United States of America was recognised by this treaty. Honduras and the Floridas were restored to Spain, and an exchange of conquests took place between France and England. Thus terminated the ill-advised and weakly conducted war in America, which added £100,000,000 to the National Debt of England. If Great Britain lost her American colonies by mismanagement, she at least, by her earlier colonising enterprise, laid the foundations for a new and prosperous English-speaking nation. A serious riot, known as the Gordon Rebellion, occurred in England in 1780. It was caused by the passing of an Act favourable to the Catholics, and the mob was incited to violence by Lord George Gordon, who was afterwards said to be insane. Many serious affrays occurred before it was suppressed.

### SEA POWER AND THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

In 1789 the leaders of the French Revolution offered their support to any country following their example in the overthrow of organised government; and in 1792 they opened the navigation of the Scheldt and attacked Holland, which was then in alliance with England. All efforts to negotiate proved futile, and the Convention declared war against England in 1793. An expedition, under the Duke of York, was sent to the Netherlands, but was compelled to return home after enduring great privations. Admiral Lord Howe defeated the French fleet under Admiral Villaret off Brest in 1794. The Dutch now joined the French, and war was declared against them by England. The Cape of Good Hope was taken from them, as well as several of their East and West Indian dominions. (See *History of South Africa, West Indies*, etc.). Spain was also at war with England, and Admiral Jervis met the Spanish fleet off Cape St. Vincent in 1797 and defeated it.





*From a painting*

THE DEATH OF CAPTAIN COOK

W. A. Mansell & Co.



In this action Nelson distinguished himself. Admiral Duncan defeated the Dutch under De Winter, off Camperdown, in 1797.

### UNION OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

A lull in the storm followed these victories, and the British administration occupied itself with home affairs. In 1797 the Bank suspended cash payments; and the crews of the North Sea and Channel Fleets mutinied. This was suppressed with some difficulty, and the leaders were hanged. About this time the Irish Rebellion broke out. The differences in religion, the monopoly of trade by English merchants, and the poverty of the Irish peasantry, all contributed to the coalition of the numerous political parties into a more or less united body known as "United Irishmen." Assistance was asked for from France; and outbreaks were numerous. The most formidable rebellion occurred in Wexford; but the defeat of the rebels at Vinegar Hill terminated the revolt. France despatched a force to the assistance of the Irish insurgents, which landed at Killala. A few minor successes were at first gained, but it ultimately surrendered to Lord Cornwallis. In 1800 the Act for the Union of Great Britain and Ireland under one Parliament was passed.

### THE STRUGGLE WITH NAPOLEON.

Affairs on the Continent had in the meantime taken a new turn. Napoleon Bonaparte, who was born in 1769, had, by military and administrative genius, raised himself from a lieutenant of artillery to First Consul of France, and then to Emperor. The Revolution had welded the French nation into a combined whole; and the ambitions of Napoleon were for world-wide dominion. In 1798 he led an expedition to Egypt, and Nelson, with a British squadron, had been watching for the French fleet, which was discovered lying at anchor in Aboukir Bay, at the mouth of the Nile. The Battle of the Nile resulted in the complete defeat of the French. A British force, under Sir Ralph Abercrombie, was despatched to the Helder, and was at first successful, but on the command being transferred to the Duke of York, its fortunes declined. In the East, Napoleon

had mastered Egypt and was invading Syria, with the intention of conquering the whole Turkish Empire, when, in 1799, he suffered defeat at Acre at the hands of the Pasha, aided by Sir Sidney Smith. Napoleon then returned to France.

England's claim to search vessels for contraband caused the Powers of Northern Europe, led by Russia, to enter into an armed neutrality to resist search. Negotiations were without result, and the British fleet, beginning with Denmark, bombarded the capital and destroyed the Danish fleet. This, together with the assassination of the Emperor Paul of Russia, ended the Convention for armed neutrality. In 1801 a British force, under Sir Ralph Abercrombie, was sent to force the French from Egypt. This expedition was successful, but Abercrombie fell mortally wounded at the battle of Alexandria. In 1802, by the Peace of Amiens, the war against Napoleon ceased for a time. By this treaty England retained all the conquests she had made, except Trinidad and Ceylon. The French retained their Continental acquisitions, and England acknowledged Napoleon I.

### TRAFALGAR.

While all these events had been taking place, England had changed her Ministry four times. With the dissolution of the Ministry under Lord North, came the short administrations of Rockingham, Shelburne and Lord Portland, the younger Pitt commencing his famous administration in 1783. In 1801 he retired and was succeeded by Mr. Addington, but resumed office again in 1804. In the following year hostilities with France were resumed. Malta was ceded by England to the Knights of St. John; and unsuccessful negotiations to this end were conducted with the French Government. Spain was allied to France; and Nelson, after a long search, came up with the combined French and Spanish fleets off Cape Trafalgar (1805). The action which followed resulted in a glorious British victory, which, however, was marred by the death of Admiral Lord Nelson. In 1806 Pitt died, and a Ministry, which was named "All the Talents," was formed under Lord Grenville. This was soon dissolved, and a Cabinet with Lord Portland as the head and Mr. Perceval as the Leader of the Commons was formed.

### PENINSULA WAR.

About this time Napoleon issued a manifesto from Berlin ordering all continental ports to be closed against British vessels and merchandise; and many of the Governments of Europe, through fear of reprisals, submitted to this order. Napoleon exhibited an intention of seizing the Danish navy and employing it against Great Britain, and in order to prevent this the Danes were asked to place their vessels under British protection during the war. This they refused to do, and an expedition, under Lord Cathcart and Admiral Gambier, was sent to Copenhagen. The city was bombarded, and the shipping was surrendered and conveyed to England (1807). Gallant little Portugal, having from the first refused to close her ports to British commerce, was invaded by Napoleon's armies, under General Junot. The Portuguese Royal Family fled to Brazil, and Junot was made King of Portugal.

Napoleon decoyed the King of Spain to France and forced him to resign the crown. The Spaniards appealed to England, and an army of 10,000 men, under Wellesley (afterwards the Duke of Wellington), landed in Mondego Bay. The French were defeated at Rolica and Vimiera (1808). By the Convention of Aintree the French were, however, allowed to leave Spain unmolested. Sir John Moore, who had conducted a diversion in the north of Spain, penetrated as far as Salamanca, but, being unsupported, was compelled to retreat, fighting and winning the famous rear-guard action at Corrunna, in 1809. This brave leader died in the hour of victory.

In the same year came Wellesley's second campaign. He drove the French from Oporto and followed them into Spain, inflicting a heavy defeat at Talavera (1809).<sup>\*</sup> Heavy French reinforcements, under Massena, were coming to the aid of the defeated legions, and Wellesley retreated to the defences he had caused to be prepared at Torres Vedras, defeating a French force at Busaco on his way. Massena, now in command of the strengthened French army, did not attempt to force the lines of Torres Vedras, but waited in front of them for

some time and retreated with the coming of spring. He was followed by the British, and a French force sent to relieve Badajos was defeated by General Beresford at Albuera in 1811. The attacks on the fortified places, Badajos and Ciudad Rodrigo, repeatedly failed, but they both fell in the spring of the following year. The battle of Salamanca was won in 1812, and Wellesley entered Madrid. Again however, he was compelled to retreat into Portugal, but on receiving heavy reinforcements once more entered Spain. The first victory was at Vittoria, in 1813. The French were then driven through the Pyrenees on to the plains of France. The fortified towns of Pampeluna and San Sebastian were taken, and the French were completely overthrown at the battles of Orthes and Toulouse. The remnants of the armies of France were pursued to Paris, where Napoleon signed the Act of Abdication and was exiled to Elba.

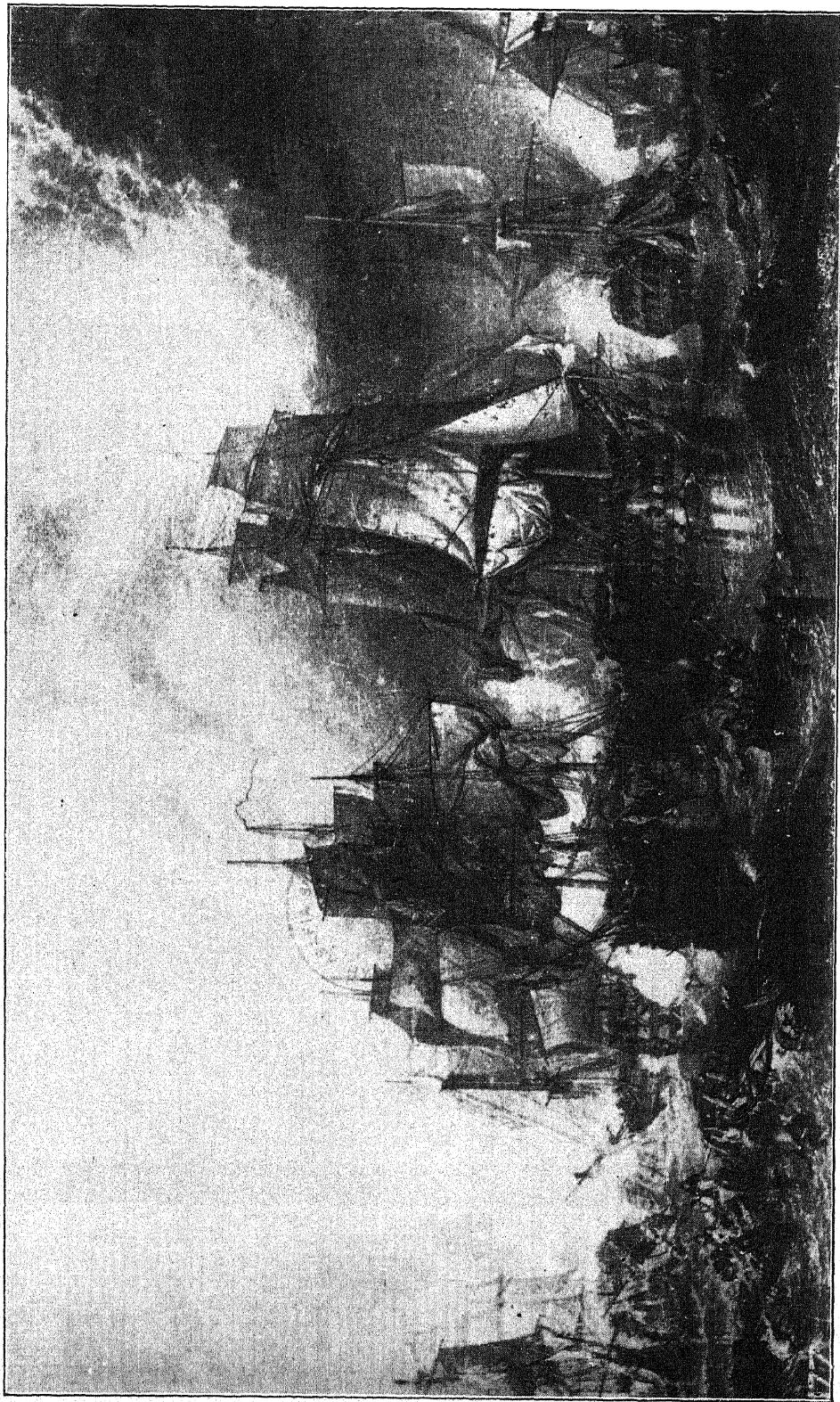
### WATERLOO.

Louis XVIII was placed on the throne by the Allied sovereigns who had united against Napoleon. In 1815 Napoleon escaped from Elba and landed in France. He was immediately joined by thousands of his veteran soldiers and generals. Louis fled from France and the British and Prussian armies were sent to resist Napoleon. Minor actions took place at Ligny and Quatre Bras, but the hostile armies met in general battle at Waterloo (1815). The French were routed, and Napoleon shortly afterwards surrendered to the British, and was banished to St. Helena, where he resided until his death in 1821.<sup>†</sup>

The fall of Napoleon after the Peninsula War had been mainly caused by his invasion of Russia. In June, 1812, he crossed the Niemen with 300,000 of his best troops, and in September defeated the Russians at Borodino and entered Moscow, which had, however, been set on fire and reduced to ruins by the retreating Russians. In October, Napoleon commenced the retreat from Moscow, and lost the major portion of his huge army in the long march through wasted country amidst the rigours of a Russian

<sup>\*</sup> At the same time, in the Walcheren Expedition, under Lord Chatham, a British army was almost decimated by ague.

<sup>†</sup> For the history of India and other portions of the Empire during this and other periods, see under *India*, etc.



THE BATTLE OF TRAFALGAR

*Photo, Imperial War Museum*

winter. Although he formed fresh armies in 1813, he never recovered from the blow, and in October suffered a serious defeat at Leipzig from the allied armies of Russia, Prussia, Austria and Sweden. In 1814, while Wellington was coming up from Spain, another large allied army was converging on Paris from the east, the two great armies entering Paris during March and April, 1814. The second overthrow of Napoleon after his escape from Elba was, however, almost entirely due to the splendid British victory at Waterloo, which was made even more complete by the arrival of the Prussians under Blücher.

#### WAR WITH THE UNITED STATES.

While this great Continental war was at its height, a quarrel arose between Great Britain and the United States, the American Government refusing to permit their vessels to be searched for deserting British sailors, and in 1812 the second war with America broke out. Several attempts were made to invade Canada, but owing principally to the loyalty of the Canadians, they were repulsed. There were raids by the British on land and sea, which alternately met with failure and success. In June, 1813, the famous single ocean combat between the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon* took place outside Boston Harbour, the American vessel being captured in fifteen minutes. A British expedition to New Orleans failed miserably, and this evenly contested but unsatisfactory campaign was brought to a close in 1814.

#### GEORGIAN ENGLAND.

In the year after Waterloo (1816) the Algerian Expedition was despatched under Lord Exmouth to put a stop to the piracy carried on along the North African coast. The Algerian fleet was destroyed, and the capital bombarded. During the period 1816-20 there was much discontent in England, and riots were frequent. In 1817 the Princess Charlotte, only child of the Prince Regent, died; and in 1819 the Princess Victoria (afterwards Queen Victoria), the daughter of the Duke of Kent, was born. In the following year King George III died, and was buried at Windsor. He had

reigned for sixty years, but during the latter part of this time the insanity of the old King caused the affairs of the nation to be in the hands of the Prince Regent, who ascended the throne as George IV, in 1820.\*

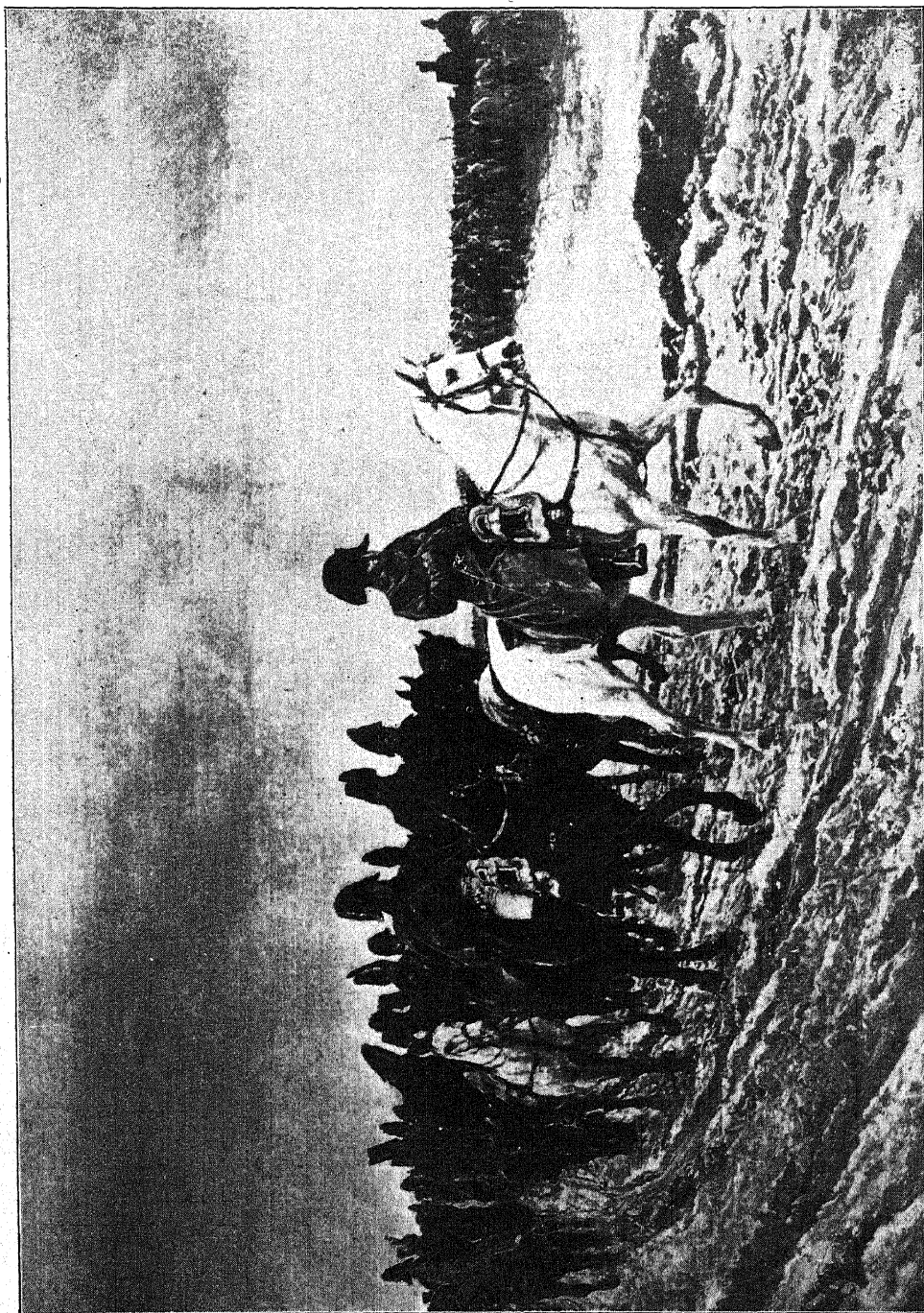
Other important events during the reign of George III were the passing of the Royal Marriage Act, which made the Royal assent necessary to the marriage of any member of the Royal Family under 25, and of the Council, when over that age; the slave trade was abolished in the British colonies; cotton manufacture was improved by many inventions; vaccination was introduced; and James Watt improved the steam engine. In 1807 London was first lighted by gas; the first steamboat was tried on the Clyde in 1811. Sir Humphrey Davy introduced the safety lamp in 1816. The voyages of Captain Cook took place during the years 1768-1779. In 1768 Bruce explored the Upper Nile. Mungo Park explored the River Niger in 1795. The turnpike system in England was extended in 1763; mail-coaches were used for the conveyance of mails in 1784; and Sunday schools were first established in 1781.

During the first seven years of the reign of George IV, Lord Liverpool held the Premiership; and the first event of importance was the Cato Street Conspiracy—a plot by Thistlewood, an ex-army officer, and others to assassinate the Ministers and set fire to London, taking advantage of the confusion to establish a Government of their own. Five of the leaders in this happily unsuccessful conspiracy were hanged. Queen Caroline, who had been separated from her husband, and had been living a rather free life on the Continent, returned at the coronation and endeavoured to assert her rights, but was repelled by force. Later a bill was introduced to degrade her from the title she held, but so ably was the Queen defended, and so popular was she with the people of England, that this bill was abandoned. She died in the following year.

#### WEST AFRICA AND BURMA.

In 1824-6 a war broke out against the Ashantees in West Africa. A British force was cut up, and Sir Charles Macarthy,

\* The family of George III included George (IV); Frederick, Duke of York; William (IV); Edward, Duke of Kent; Ernest, Duke of Cumberland, and King of Hanover; Augustus, Duke of Essex; and Adolphus, Duke of Cambridge.



W. A. Mansell & Co.

"1814." THE BEGINNING OF THE END  
The retreat from Moscow in which Napoleon's Grand Army was almost decimated

From the painting by Meissonier



Governor of Cape Coast Castle, was killed; but the Ashantees were subdued. Next came the Burmese War, caused by the aggressions of the Burmese on the East India Company's territory in Bengal. An expedition, under Sir Archibald Campbell, was despatched, and succeeded in capturing Rangoon. The nature of the country and the warlike character of the natives caused this war to last for two years. It was terminated by the Peace of Yandaber, by which Assam, Aracan, Tenasserim, and other parts of Further India were ceded to the British. During 1827 the Premiership changed hands three times. Lord Liverpool resigned office through ill-health, and was succeeded by Mr. Canning, who died the same year, and Viscount Goderich became the Prime Minister. In 1828 the Duke of Wellington formed a Tory Ministry.

During the struggle between Greece and Turkey in 1827, a British expedition was sent to the Mediterranean. Its stated object was the protection of British commerce, but the event which followed was directed against Turkey. The British fleet, under Admiral Codrington, was joined by the French and Russian fleets, and an allied attack was made on the Turkish and Egyptian navies in Navarino Bay. They were almost totally destroyed. George IV died in 1830, and was buried at Windsor.\* Among other events of this comparatively short reign were the founding of the National Gallery, and the establishment of the Metropolitan Police Force.

### REFORM BILL.

William IV, brother of the late King, ascended the throne in 1830. His reign of seven years was a peaceful one. Being in a minority over the question of reform, the Duke of Wellington resigned office, and Earl Grey formed a Whig Ministry. The first measure introduced by the Grey Administration was the original Reform Bill. Agitation for political reform had long been taking place in many parts of the country, and many anomalies had crept into the system of representation. Lord John Russell introduced the Reform Bill into the House of Commons in 1831, but it was defeated, and the Ministry resigned. A new Parliament carried the Bill through the Commons with

a large majority, but it was thrown out by the House of Lords. On being again introduced it was so altered by the Lords that the second Ministry resigned. Serious riots occurred in Bristol, Nottingham, and many other places, and the Duke of Wellington failed to form a Ministry. Earl Grey returned to office, opposition to the bill was withdrawn, and it was finally passed in 1832.

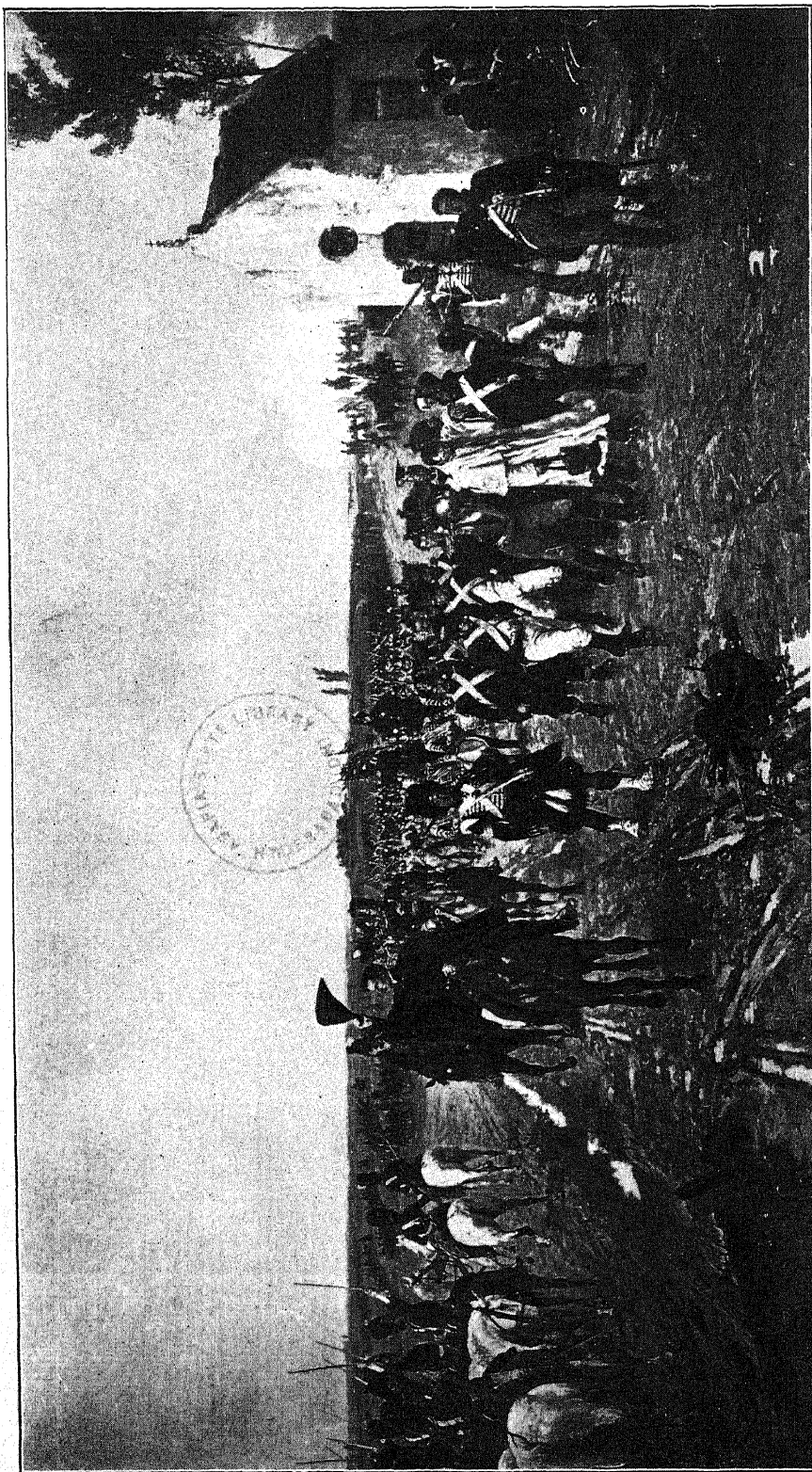
### ABOLITION OF SLAVERY.

In the following year a Bill for the Abolition of Slavery in the West Indies and elsewhere was passed through the exertions of Wilberforce. All the negroes existing in slavery, numbering about 700,000, were set free; the nation paying £20,000,000 as compensation to the slave owners. In the same year the Factory Act was passed, limiting the hours of employment in factories for women and young people, and rendering school attendance compulsory. In 1834 the Poor Law Amendment Act was passed, bringing the various parishes under the control of a central authority. In this year Earl Grey resigned, and was succeeded by Lord Melbourne, who, in turn, was succeeded by Sir Robert Peel and a Tory Cabinet; but Melbourne was soon recalled to office. The chief events of Melbourne's first administration were: the passing of the Municipal Corporation Act, the Tithe Commutation Act, and the Marriage Act. William IV died in 1837, and was buried at Windsor. He had married Adelaide, of Saxe Meiningen, and had two daughters, both of whom died during childhood. The first railway (Liverpool to Manchester) was opened during this reign; and cholera first appeared in England, at Sunderland, in 1831-2.

### EARLY YEARS OF QUEEN VICTORIA.

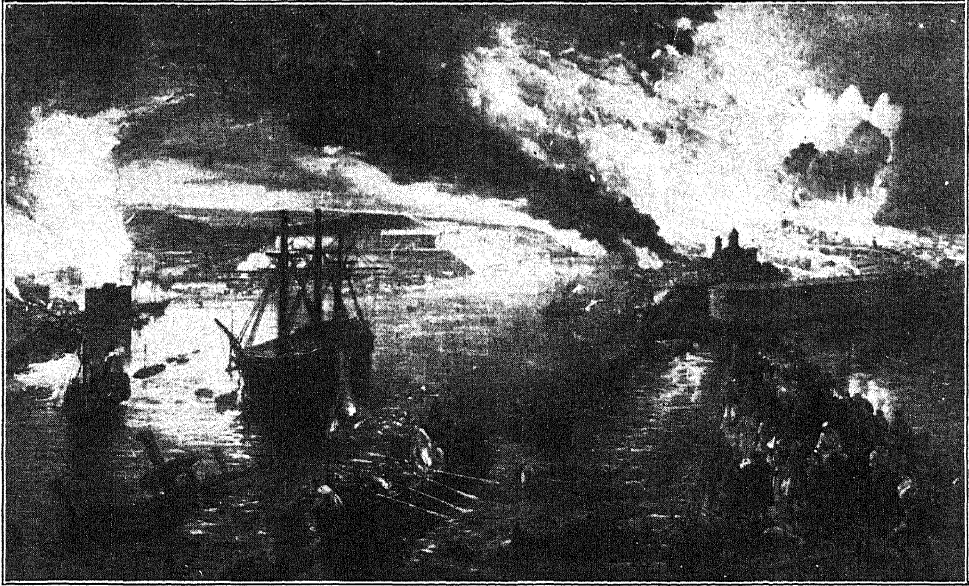
Queen Victoria, daughter of the Duke of Kent—son of George III—ascended the throne in 1837 at the age of eighteen. According to the Salic Law the Kingdom of Hanover was, on her accession to the English throne, separated from all connection with England. Lord Melbourne continued to hold the Premiership during the first four years of this long and wonderful reign, which added so much to the size, wealth, power, happiness and prestige of the growing British and Indian Empires. In

\* Family—Charlotte, Queen of the Belgians. Died 1817.



Photo, W. A. Mansell & Co.

WELLINGTON'S MARCH FROM QUATRE BRAS TO WATERLOO  
From the original by Ernest Crofts, R.A., in the Mappin Art Gallery, Sheffield



W. A. Mansell &amp; Co.

BURNING OF SEVASTOPOL

From a painting by Brierley

the first year came the Insurrection in the Canadas, which was quelled by Sir Francis Head, the Governor of the Province, and a few British troops aided by a large section of the population. (See *History of Canada*.) In 1841 the two Canadas were united and granted a constitution.

The expedition to Syria, in 1840, was undertaken in order to maintain the integrity of the Ottoman Empire against Mohammed Ali, Pasha of Egypt, who had revolted against the Sultan and conquered Syria. Combined naval and military action, under Admiral Stopford and General Sir Charles Napier, compelled Mohammed Ali to withdraw from Syria and to hold Egypt as an hereditary Pashalik of the Turkish Empire. In the same year trouble arose in China over the contraband trade in opium. The Chinese Government prohibited British vessels from entering Chinese waters, and war broke out. The War with China (1840) was at first confined to the bombardment of certain coast ports, but troops were eventually sent from India under Sir Hugh Gough, and the Chinese were defeated. They then agreed to open five ports to British trade. (See *England in China*.)

#### EXPANSION OF BRITISH INDIA.

In 1839-42 occurred the Afghan War, undertaken to check the advance of Russia on Afghanistan. The most notable event of this campaign was the disastrous retreat of the British forces, under General Elphinstone, through the Khyber Pass (1841); one officer and a few privates alone escaping. Two expeditions followed, and the British prisoners were recovered. (See *History of India*.) In 1843 Ireland was thrown into a state of agitation by Daniel O'Connell, who was prosecuted by the State and temporarily imprisoned, during which time his power over the more turbulent Irish declined, and when released he quitted the country.

At this period wars in India were of frequent occurrence. First came the Mahratta War (1843); the Scinde War (1843); the First Sikh War (1845-6); and the Second Sikh War (1849-50). These brought large additions to the territory under British suzerainty in India. (See *History of India*.)

#### REPEAL OF THE CORN LAWS.

In 1841 Lord Melbourne resigned the Premiership, and was succeeded by Sir Robert Peel and a Tory Ministry. The Repeal of the

Corn Laws (1846) was mainly brought about by Mr. Cobden and a league he had formed called the "Anti-Corn Law League." Through the exertions of this organisation popular feeling was aroused against a tax upon corn, which had been imposed throughout the country. Sir Robert Peel, hitherto a supporter of the corn laws, introduced a bill for their abolition in 1846. After encountering great opposition, this bill was passed and the taxes removed. This change in the political attitude of the Premier caused the resignation of his Ministry, and Lord John Russell held office until 1852.

A widespread famine, followed by riots, occurred in Ireland in the years 1846-7. The potato crop failed, and many died of famine and fever, notwithstanding the efforts made at relief. The spirit of revolution, which was openly rife on the Continent, spread into England, and the Chartist Riots were the result. These were followed by a rebellion in Ireland, set on foot by Smith O'Brien. This was easily suppressed, and many of the leaders were transported. The Great Exhibition was opened in Hyde Park in 1851. It was a brilliant success, nearly all nations being represented with their principal arts and crafts. In the following year the place of Lord John Russell was taken by Lord Derby and a Conservative Ministry, which was superseded a few months later by a Coalition Ministry under Lord Aberdeen. In 1852 the Kaffir War broke out. The British victory at Berea terminated this campaign, and peace was concluded in 1853.

#### CRIMEAN AND PERSIAN WARS.

Russian encroachments on the Turkish Empire was the primary cause of the Crimean War (1854-6). England and France joined hands, and landed considerable armies in the Crimea, under Lord Raglan and Marshal St. Arnaud. The Allies stormed the heights of Alma and invested Sevastopol. The siege of this powerful fortress occupied many months, and in the meantime the battles of Balaclava and Inkerman were won by the Allies. The severity of the Crimean winter, combined with general mismanagement, caused the loss of thousands of British troops. Sevastopol was taken in September, 1855. Certain ports on the Baltic and Black Sea were bombarded; and the war terminated on the signing of the Treaty of Paris in 1856.

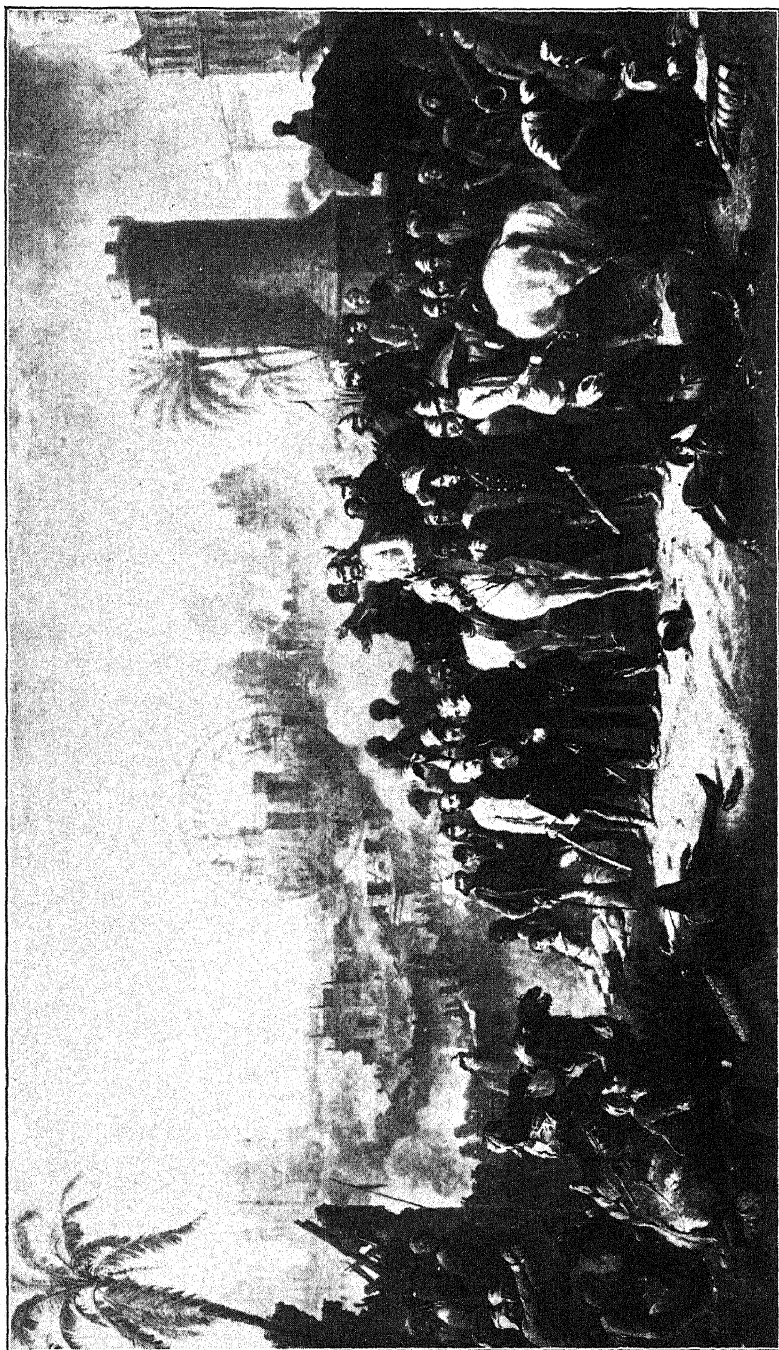
Lord Palmerston and a Liberal Ministry assumed office on the resignation of the Coalition Government, under Lord Aberdeen, in 1855. In this year Russian intrigues caused a war with Persia. The British captured Bushire, on the Persian Gulf, and won the battle of Mohammerah (1857); the war almost immediately terminated. Next came the Chinese War of 1856, which was caused principally by the arrogance of the Chinese Commissioner. Canton was occupied, and the British and French fleets sailed up to Tientsin, where a treaty was signed (1858), guaranteeing further commercial rights. (See *England in China*).

#### INDIAN MUTINY.

The Indian Mutiny broke out at Meerut in 1857, and lasted until 1858, being finally quelled by British and Sikh forces, under Generals Havelock, Outram, Lawrence, Colin Campbell, and many others. (See *History of India*.) The Government of Lord Palmerston was defeated over the Conspiracy Bill, and was succeeded by a Conservative Ministry, under Lord Derby, in 1858. In the following year, however, Lord Palmerston again took office over the question of reform. The failure on the part of the Chinese to observe the Treaty of Tientsin caused a resumption of the Chinese War. Allied British and French forces occupied Tientsin, and then marched on Peking, where a treaty was signed (1860), in which the Chinese agreed to the payment of an increased monetary indemnity, to open the port of Tientsin, and to cede Kowloon (Hong-Kong, *q.v.*) to the British.

#### AMERICAN CIVIL WAR.

The American Civil War broke out in 1861, and there was some danger of England being involved owing to the seizure of two envoys from the Southern States on British vessels, but the wise counsels of Prince Albert, husband of the Queen, prevented a rupture. The blockade of the Southern ports by the navy of the Union paralysed the cotton manufacture in England. Great distress was caused in Lancashire and elsewhere, but it was borne patiently, and the increased supplies from India and elsewhere gradually improved the trade until the termination of the Civil War in 1865. An important incident was the case of the *Alabama*, a vessel



W. A. Mansell & Co.

THE RELIEF OF LUCKNOW DURING THE INDIAN MUTINY  
The meeting of Generals Havelock, Outram and Sir Colin Campbell

*From a painting*



built at Birkenhead, which succeeded in getting away from England and preying on Union commerce. Although the American Ambassador warned Lord John Russell, he failed to arrest the vessel in time. Relations were somewhat strained for a time, but the matter was referred to arbitration, and England paid three millions sterling as compensation for the damage wrought by this vessel. The Second International Exhibition was held at South Kensington in 1862. It was similar to the one held in Hyde Park in 1851, and was a great success.

### THE FENIANS.

A conspiracy among the lowest class in Ireland, which had for its object the overthrow of Imperial authority and the establishment of a republic in Ireland, began to get troublesome during 1865-6. The conspirators formed themselves into the Fenian Brotherhood, which quickly became a dangerous anarchist league governed by head centres. The necessary financial support was derived from Irish-Americans; but the Imperial Government, by suspending the Habeas Corpus Act, deprived the conspiracy of the support it had hitherto received from America; and an attempted Fenian Raid into Canada from the United States, caused the Government of the latter country to adopt strong measures for the prevention of a breach of international law. Dissensions among the conspirators themselves soon robbed the conspiracy of all cohesive power, but there has been several times since been isolated revivals of the Fenian spirit.

### HOME AFFAIRS 1865-75.

The failure of many large banks and industrial companies caused a commercial panic in 1866, which was followed by great distress. In the same year the first Atlantic cable, connecting the old and new worlds, was successfully laid. The cholera epidemic, which had first appeared in England in 1831, then in 1849, and again in 1854, broke out afresh in 1866. It was of a malignant character, and caused great loss of life in the East End of London. In Parliament the reins of Government had changed hands several times since 1858. On the death of Lord Palmerston, the Premiership was taken by Earl Russell, who, however, failed to carry through the new Reform Bill in all its

details, and was succeeded in office by Lord Derby (1866) and a Conservative Ministry. In 1868 Gladstone became Premier; and this Ministry disestablished the Irish Church, passed the Education Act, the Irish Land Bill, and the Bill for establishing Voting by Ballot.

### FORMATION OF THE INDIAN EMPIRE.

In 1873 Disraeli and a Conservative Ministry were returned with a good majority. Through the efforts of Samuel Plimsoll a Bill was passed for the better protection of the lives of British merchant seamen. Powers were given to local authorities to pull down insanitary buildings and to erect workmen's dwellings on the sites. The Education Act was extended. The people of the British Isles were now beginning to awaken to a realisation of the value and development of the huge overseas Empire. The Prince of Wales visited India in 1875, and in the following year Queen Victoria assumed the title of Empress of India. Trouble with Russia, which threatened war, induced Disraeli, to have transported large numbers of Indian troops to Malta, which tended to increase Imperial prestige in the Near East. In 1875 Disraeli had purchased, on behalf of the British Government, £5,000,000 worth of Suez Canal shares, which secured for England the commanding voice in the control of this great highway to India. (See *Trade Routes, Canals and India*.) In 1877 the Russo-Turkish War broke out, which ended disastrously for Turkey, and in the following year a conference of European Powers was held at Berlin to decide on the terms of peace. (See *Near Eastern Question*.) Disraeli, who had now become Earl Beaconsfield, and Lord Salisbury (Foreign Minister) represented British interests at this conference; and their successful policy, which obtained peace with honour, was hailed with rejoicing.

### ENGLAND IN AFRICA.

Trouble now arose in South Africa (*q.v.*) and on the North-West Frontier of India (*q.v.*); and at the General Election in 1880 the Liberals were returned with a large majority. Gladstone again became Prime Minister. Among the Irish peasantry "boycotting" became the order of the day. This

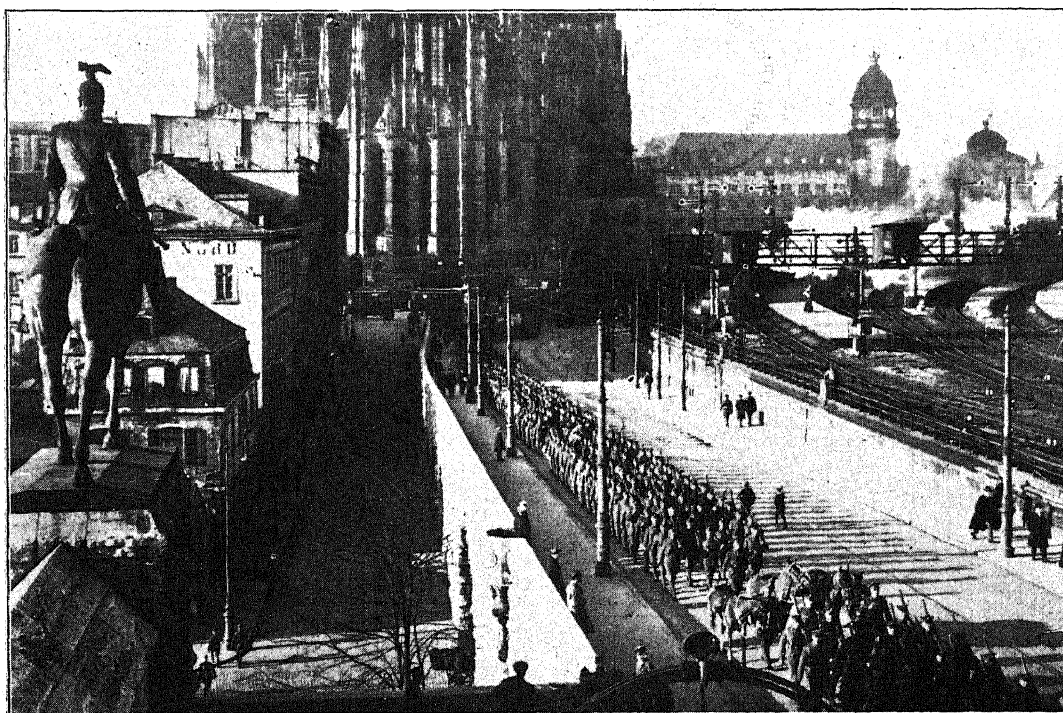
system caused tenants who took a farm from which another had been evicted to be boycotted by all around, "as if they were lepers." The trouble in South Africa (*q.v.*) resulted in the First Boer War, culminating in the defeat of the weak British forces at Majuba Hill in 1881. (See *History of South Africa*.) In Egypt the Araby Revolt led to the bombardment of Alexandria by the British fleet in 1882. Gordon was killed in the Sudan in 1885. (See *Egypt and the Sudan*.) Trouble in Afghanistan caused England and Russia to be on the verge of war for some months.

### IRELAND AND HOME RULE.

Trouble in Ireland, principally between the farmers and landlords, had continued in varying intensity since the "boycotting" system, introduced by Parnell, and the rise to power of the Land League had been effected in 1880. A Coercion Bill had been passed through Parliament to suppress outrages, and a new Irish Land Bill enabled

Land Courts to fix fair rents and to help tenants to purchase their own farms. The Home Rulers, under the leadership of Parnell, did not regard these measures with favour, and outrages became of frequent occurrence. Parnell and others were imprisoned, but released on undertaking to stop the outrages. Forster, the Secretary for Ireland, resigned owing to his disapproval of this method, and was succeeded by Lord Frederick Cavendish, who, with his private secretary, was assassinated in Phoenix Park, Dublin.

In 1884 the British Parliament passed a Parliamentary Reform Bill which increased by over two millions the number of voters, large towns were given increased representation, and the lowering of the Irish franchise increased the followers of Parnell. In June, 1885, Gladstone's Government came to an end, but after the General Elections the Liberals were returned with numbers equal to the Conservatives and Irish Home Rulers combined. A Home Rule Bill was



OCCUPATION OF GERMANY  
The Grenadier Guards marching through Cologne

Photo, British War Museum



*Photo, Imperial War Museum*

A CAMOUFLAGED TANK AT "CLAPHAM JUNCTION." (Note shell bursts in distance)

introduced in 1886, but was defeated on the second reading; and Gladstone resigned. The next was a Conservative Ministry under Lord Salisbury. The partition of Africa was completed, County Councils were established. Free education in elementary schools was introduced. The hours of factory labour for women were curtailed; and power was given to County Councils to assist people to acquire small holdings.

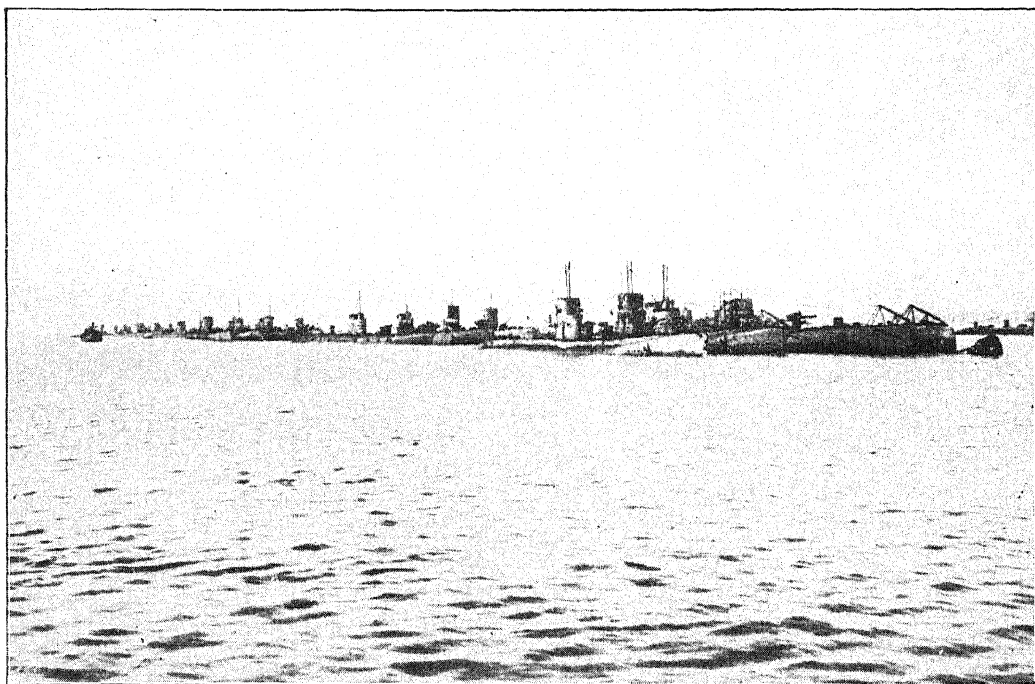
### SECOND BOER WAR.

Gladstone returned to office in 1892 with a very small majority. A new Home Rule Bill was passed by the Commons, but defeated in the House of Lords. The sessions in 1894 were occupied by the passing of the Parish Councils Bill. The amendments to this Bill made in its passage through the Lords caused Gladstone to resign. He made his last speech in March, 1894. Lord Rosebery next became Premier; and the Death Duties were greatly increased. In 1895 a Conservative Government was returned with a great majority. Lord Salisbury became

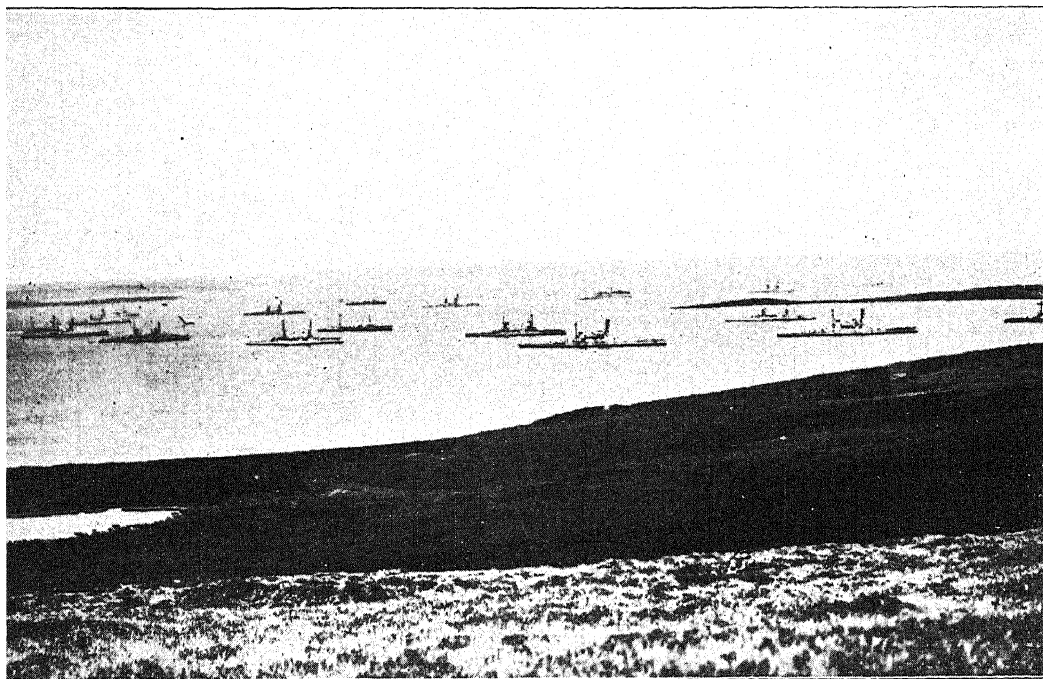
Premier, with Balfour as First Lord and Mr. Joseph Chamberlain as Secretary for the Colonies. The Colonial Secretary became very popular in all parts of the Empire, with the exception of certain portions of South Africa. In 1898, penny postage between the United Kingdom and the Colonies was established. In 1899 the Boer War broke out, which ended in the overthrow of the Transvaal and Orange Free State Republics in May, 1902. (See *History of South Africa*.) The Union of the Australian States into the Commonwealth of Australia was accomplished, and an Act sanctioning this administrative change was passed by the Imperial Parliament in 1900. On January 22nd, 1901, the great and beloved Queen Victoria died.

### ALLIANCE WITH JAPAN.

King Edward VII ascended the throne in 1901. The first Parliament of the Commonwealth was opened by the Prince of Wales (now King George V) in the same year. In May, 1902, the Boer War was brought to a



SURRENDERED GERMAN SUBMARINES MOORED AT HARWICH



THE ABOVE HISTORIC PHOTOGRAPH SHOWS A PORTION OF THE INTERNED  
GERMAN SHIPS AT SCAPA

*Photos, Imperial War Museum*

successful conclusion by the operations of Lords Roberts and Kitchener; and the Peace of Vereeniging was signed. In the same year a treaty was concluded with Japan, by which it was agreed that if either nation was attacked by two Powers at the same time, the other nation should go to its assistance. This treaty, which has since been revoked, applied more to India, Japan and the Far East, than to affairs in Europe or the New World. In the Russo-Japanese War of 1904 this treaty was of great assistance in limiting the struggle to these two powers. A refusal on the part of Venezuela to meet her financial obligations—long outstanding—caused a blockade of the ports of this country by the English and German fleets in the latter part of 1902. Antagonism between Germany and England had been steadily growing in intensity, although officially ignored; and this concerted naval action in South America was as unpopular in England and Germany as it was in the United States.

### THE ENTENTE CORDIALE.

Owing to an illness, the Coronation of King Edward VII had to be postponed from June to August (1902). In the following year King Edward visited Paris, where he was received with great enthusiasm; and the French President, in return, visited London, and received an equally cordial reception from all classes. This was the beginning of a series of friendly visits by statesmen and others of both nations, which led to the *Entente Cordiale*—a bond of friendship between the two countries. An agreement was at last arrived at with France over the Newfoundland question (See *History of Newfoundland*.) Towards the end of 1903 the boundary between Alaska and Canada was determined by an Anglo-American Commission; but, unfortunately, Canadians were dissatisfied with the result.

### NORTH SEA INCIDENT.

The Russo-Japanese War broke out in February, 1904, and resulted in a series of brilliant victories on both land and sea for the Japanese. A crisis was caused between England and Russia by the firing of the Baltic Fleet on English fishing vessels in the North Sea, mistaking them for Japanese warships. The matter was, however, happily

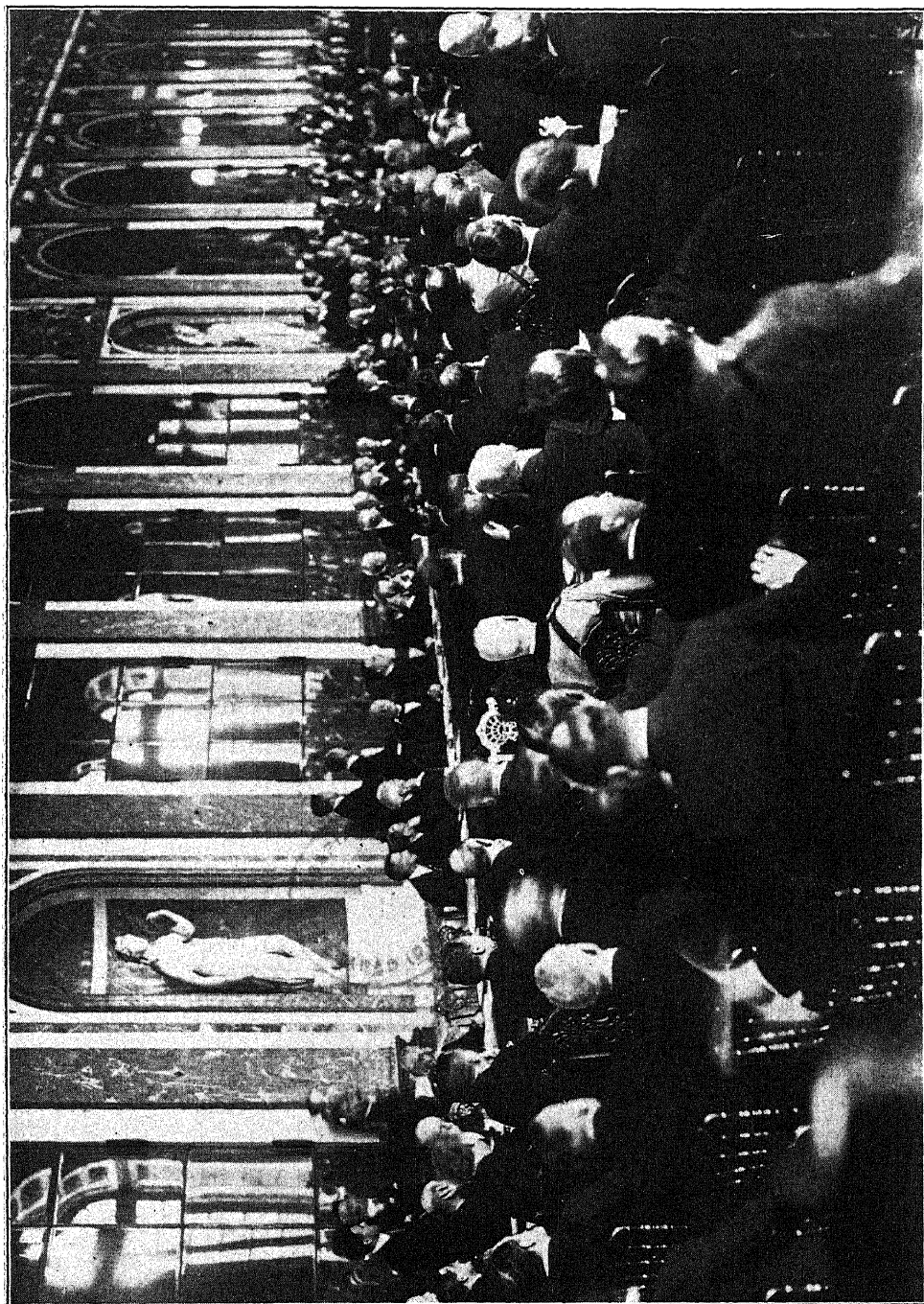
settled by arbitration. A Conference of Colonial Premiers was held in London in May, 1907 (see *Imperial Conferences*); and in 1909 a Bill was passed by the Imperial Parliament for the Union of South Africa. The Duke of Connaught opened the first Parliament of The Union of South Africa in November, 1910. (See *History of South Africa*.) King Edward VII—known as the "Peacemaker"—died on 6th May, 1910.

King George V was crowned on 22nd June, 1911. Royal visits were paid to Wales, Scotland, Ireland and India. In all parts this Sailor-King, with his consort Queen Mary were received with unprecedented loyalty and devotion. One of the first acts of the new reign was the extension of the penny postage to Australia and even the most distant parts of the Empire. Elections in Canada gave the death-blow to the projected commercial treaty between that Dominion and the United States, at the same time emphasising the desire of Canadians for closer bonds with the Motherland. In 1913 serious labour troubles, followed by riots, occurred in South Africa; and on 4th August, 1914, the Great European War broke out. Nearly all the Great Powers were quickly drawn into this, the greatest and most fiercely contested war in the annals of the world, brought about by the unwholesome and Napoleonic ambitions of the Emperor William II and the military party of Germany.

## The Great European War of 1914-21

The titanic nature of this struggle of the democratic Powers against the autocracy of Central Europe, its almost world-wide and encyclopedic effect, and the comparatively recent times in which the events occurred, render it impossible to give here a reliable and dispassionate account of the causes, historical, political, geographical, economical and ethnological, which combined to produce, in the epoch-making year 1914, this great upheaval in the world. It has been more or less officially termed "The War for Civilisation," by which is apparently meant the final passing of the long and ingrained feudal system in its broadest and deepest sense, and the dawn of democratic government. But even this statement, necessarily general and indefinite, is open to serious





THE SIGNING OF THE PEACE TREATY IN THE HALL OF MIRRORS AT VERSAILLES *Photo, Central News*  
Seated at the table immediately in front of the second pillar from the left-hand statue are (right to left) Mr. Lloyd George, M. Clemenceau,  
President Wilson and Signor Orlando

criticism and objection. The truth is that no exact definition will be possible until the lapse of half a century or more has enabled the world to sift the conflicting mass of evidence and view the multifarious events through the large end of the telescope of time.

The volume of literature entirely devoted to this epoch-making world war renders it unnecessary here to do more than briefly review, (1) the direct or final cause of the catastrophe, and (2) the victorious part played by the British and Indian Empires in Armageddon. The British battle-line extended from the Arctic Sea to Australia, crossing oceans and continents. On November 11th, 1918, when the "Cease Fire" sounded from the Grand Fleet at Scapa Flow, the order was carried by British bugles to Basra on the Persian Gulf—a battle line on sea, land and air of over 3,000 miles, held for nearly five years continuously by never less than 4,000,000 men from different parts of the Empire, who suffered casualties to the extent of 980,667 killed and 2,127,067 wounded. Statistics of fleets, air squadrons, batteries and battalions fade into insignificance in face of the human achievement.

### FINAL CAUSE OF WORLD WAR.

On 20th June in the year 1914, the Archduke Francis Ferdinand, heir to the Throne of Austria-Hungary, was murdered at Serajevo, Bosnia. This sad and regrettable event was followed by diplomatic tension between Austria and Serbia—accused of aiding and harbouring the assassins.

The Emperor William II of Germany presided over a Crown Council at Potsdam (Berlin) on July 5th, and war on the side of Austria was there decided upon. Austria was promised the support of the great armies of the German Empire, and was, at the same time, advised to seize the opportunity to crush Serbia.

Mobilisation commenced in Germany, Austria, Serbia, and Russia. Eighteen days later (July 23rd) Austria presented an ultimatum to Serbia demanding the fulfilment of conditions thought by the Allied Powers (then British Empire, France and Belgium) to be unduly severe, and aimed at the sovereignty of Serbia. A lapse of five days,

occurred during which time every effort was made by the Allies, and also by Neutral Powers (U.S.A.) to avert a war which threatened to involve the whole of Europe.

These efforts were without avail, and Austria declared war on Serbia (July 28th). Three days later Germany sent an ultimatum to Russia, owing to the movement of troops in the latter country towards the German and Austrian frontiers. On the following day Germany declared war on Russia, and simultaneously invaded the Grand Duchy of Luxemburg. On August 2nd Germany sent an ultimatum to Belgium demanding the unopposed passage of her armies through Belgian territory, to enable her to invade France. On the following day, Germany, now in the delirium of war fever, declared war on France.

The threatened invasion of peaceful Belgium, whose neutrality had been guaranteed by a treaty signed by all the principal European Powers, including Germany ("a scrap of paper"), caused Great Britain to demand immediate assurance from Germany that this treaty would be honoured. This guarantee was refused, and war was declared by Great Britain against Germany at 11 p.m. on the night of August 4th, 1914. The opening engagement was the sinking of the German minelayer *Konigin Luise* by a British destroyer in the North Sea on the day following the outbreak of war.

### THE GREAT VICTORY.

It would be impossible to give here the hundreds of battles and skirmishes which took place in all parts of the world during the four years and three months of this unprecedented war. On October 28th, 1918, Austria asked for peace, and was followed by Turkey. The Emperor William II abdicated on November 9th, and Germany accepted final defeat on November 11th. Hostilities ceased on this day at 11 a.m. Then came the occupation of the Rhineland by Allied troops, the surrender of the German fleet, and the Peace Treaty of Versailles (1919). The official termination of the War did not take place until August 31st, 1921, when all the Treaties of Peace had been ratified by the respective Governments.

# BRITISH ISLES

## GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF

### ENGLAND AND WALES, SCOTLAND AND IRELAND

#### The United Kingdom

ALTHOUGH commonly called the United Kingdom, since the Union of the three independent States, England, Ireland and Scotland, the British Isles are divided for administrative and other purposes into six divisions, viz.: (1) England and Wales, (2) Scotland, (3) Channel Islands, (4) Isle of Man, (5) Northern Ireland, and (6) Irish Free State. These are subdivided into counties. For the purpose of description each of the main divisions will be treated separately.

#### England and Wales

England and Wales occupy the southern and larger portion of the continental island of Great Britain, which is situated on the Atlantic border of Northern Europe. For most purposes the two countries are treated as one—in a legal sense the word England includes Wales, unless there is an express exclusion—and for commercial purposes no distinction is made. England has an area of 50,850 square miles, and Wales of 7,468 square miles; that is, England and Wales are, together, about one-half of the United Kingdom. The estimated population in 1930 was about 40,000,000. This gives the average density as over 685 to the square mile—45 per square mile higher than pre-war Belgium, then the most densely populated country on the Continent of Europe. England's position is accounted for entirely by the height that she has attained in industry and commerce.

#### COAST LINE.

Considering its area, the coast line of England and Wales is remarkably long, being nearly 2,000 miles, and this fact has had much to do with the position which has been attained in international commerce. There are plenty of excellent natural harbours, and even where nature has not been altogether favourable, science has come to her aid with most beneficial results. The deep indentations in the coast have also brought about this advantage, that no part of the interior of the country is far removed from the sea, and transport is comparatively easy and cheap between the chief manufacturing centres and the principal seaports. This statement will come home to the student more clearly by an examination of the map itself than by a detailed account of the various connections.

#### MOUNTAINS.

The most lofty heights of England and Wales are situated at no great distance from its western shores, and consist not so much of a continuous chain as of a succession of mountains and hills, stretching, with some interruptions, from north to south, and throwing out numerous branches on both sides, but particularly to the west, where all the culminating summits are found. The northern portion of this range has received the name of the Pennine Chain. It is properly a continuation of the Cheviot Hills, and, commencing at the Scottish border, proceeds south for about 270 miles, gradually lowering



LAND'S END, CORNWALL

till, in the counties of Derby and Stafford, it assumes the form of an elevated moorland plateau. Its principal offsets to the east are in Northumberland and Durham, where they stretch, almost without interruption, to the coast, form the moorlands of those counties, and separate the valleys of the Rivers Tyne, Wear and Tees, which all take their rise in the chain. Several minor offsets proceed into the great plain of Yorkshire, and are finally lost in it. The Ouse, and numerous other streams by which this plain is so liberally watered, have also their sources in the chain. But by far the most important offsets are those of the west, more especially if we include in them the lofty mountain masses which, from being most largely developed in Cumberland, are sometimes classed

separately under the name of the Cumbrian Range.

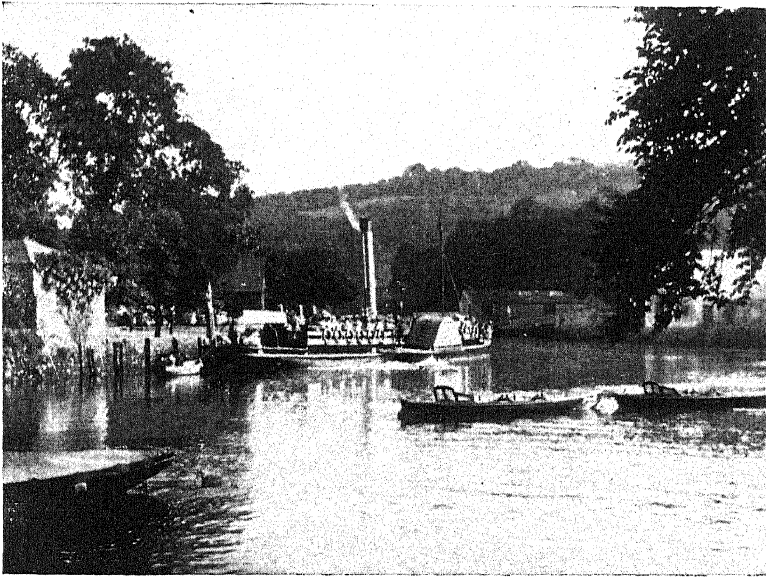
This range, which links with the Pennine Chain, on the eastern borders of Westmorland, covers a considerable part of that county, stretches across it, and, almost immediately after passing its border, attains, in Scafell, the height of 3,166 ft. The heights next to it are Helvellyn, 3,055 ft. and Skiddaw, 3,022 ft., but several others nearly equal them, and usually retain their covering of snow from six to eight months. The proximity of these

mountains to the west coast, and the barrier interposed by the principal Pennine Chain on the east, make it impossible for them to be either the sources or the feeders of any lengthened streams, and hence, perhaps, it is that, having no more immediate outlet for



THE CLIFFS, PORTLAND, DORSET

*Photos, G.W. Rly.*



THE RIVER DART, TOTNES, DEVONSHIRE *Photo, G.W. Rly.*  
Often called "The English Rhine"

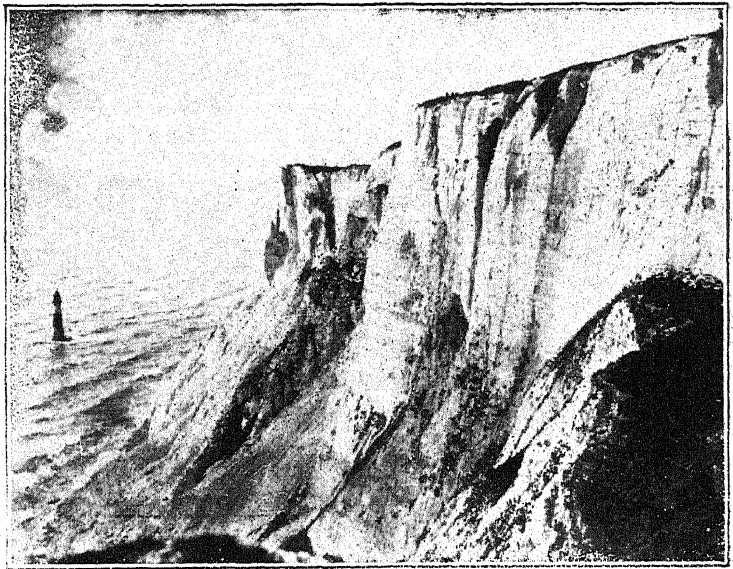
extent of space covered by them. Viewed as the central portion of the great longitudinal chain, it properly begins where the northern portion terminates, in the Derby and Staffordshire moorlands, and proceeds southwards in the line of the Wrekin and other hills of Salop, the Malvern Hills between Hereford and Worcester, and the Cotswold Hills in Gloucester.

The several hills now mentioned are not remarkable for their elevation, but owing partly to their central position, and partly

the vast quantities of moisture which they necessarily attract from the overcharged clouds of the Atlantic, they have accumulated it in a number of magnificent lakes, which give peculiar charm to the romantic scenery of the district.

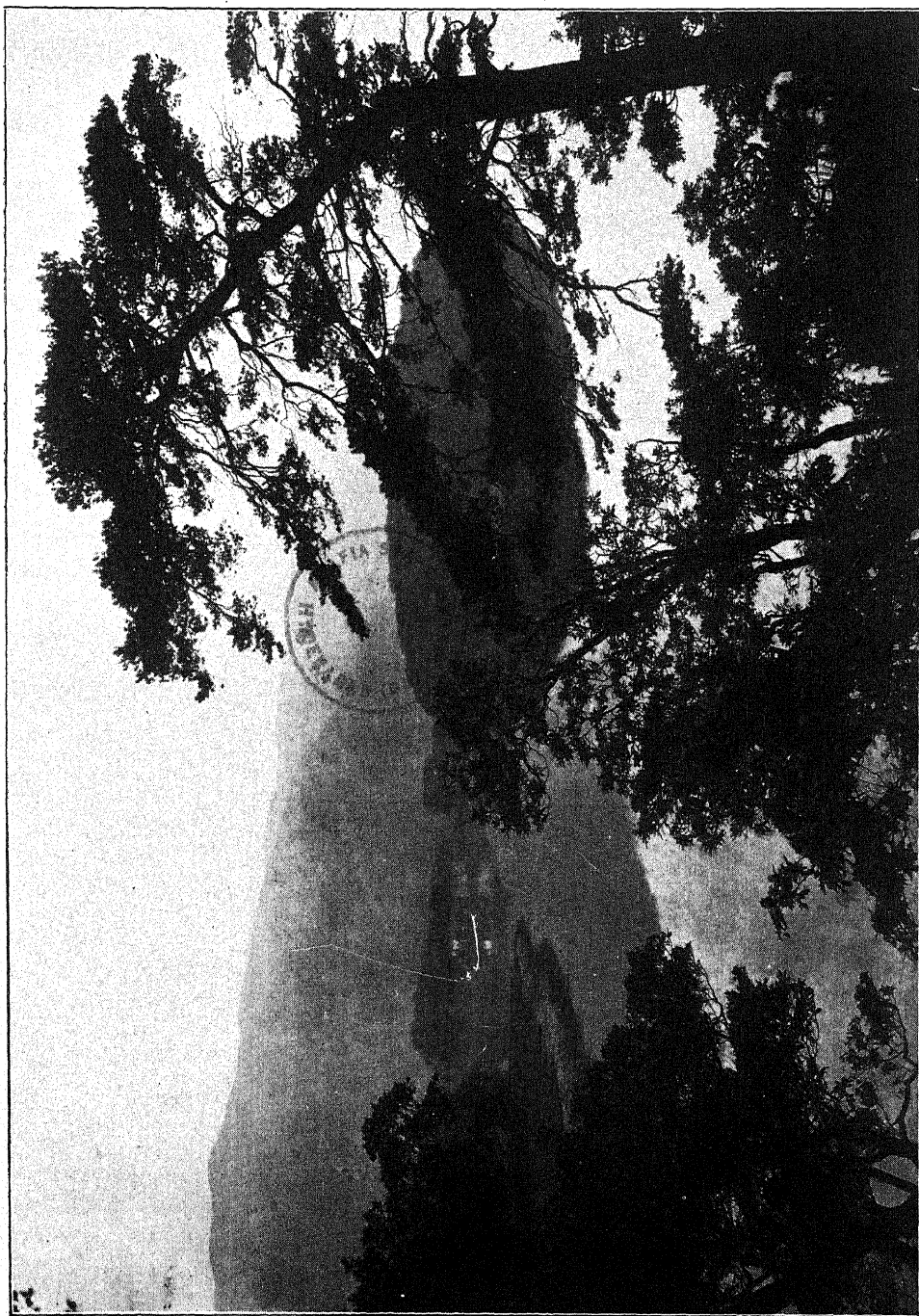
The distance of the Pennine Chain from the west coast, widening considerably, as it proceeds southwards, furnishes space for the course of two important streams—the Ribble, the estuary of which, in early times, before encroaching sands had nearly choked its entrance, formed an admirable roadstead; and the Mersey, at whose mouth an insignificant haven of the last century has rapidly grown up into the second port of the Kingdom (Liverpool). The Pennine Chain, with its appended Cumbrian Range, is succeeded by one which surpasses it, both in the loftiness of its mountains and the

to the extent of surface which they occupy, they constitute one of the most important watersheds of the country, and furnish several of its largest rivers with their supplies. Still, however, the great nucleus of the range must be sought much further to



BEACHY HEAD, EASTBOURNE, SUSSEX *Photo, Southern Rly.*



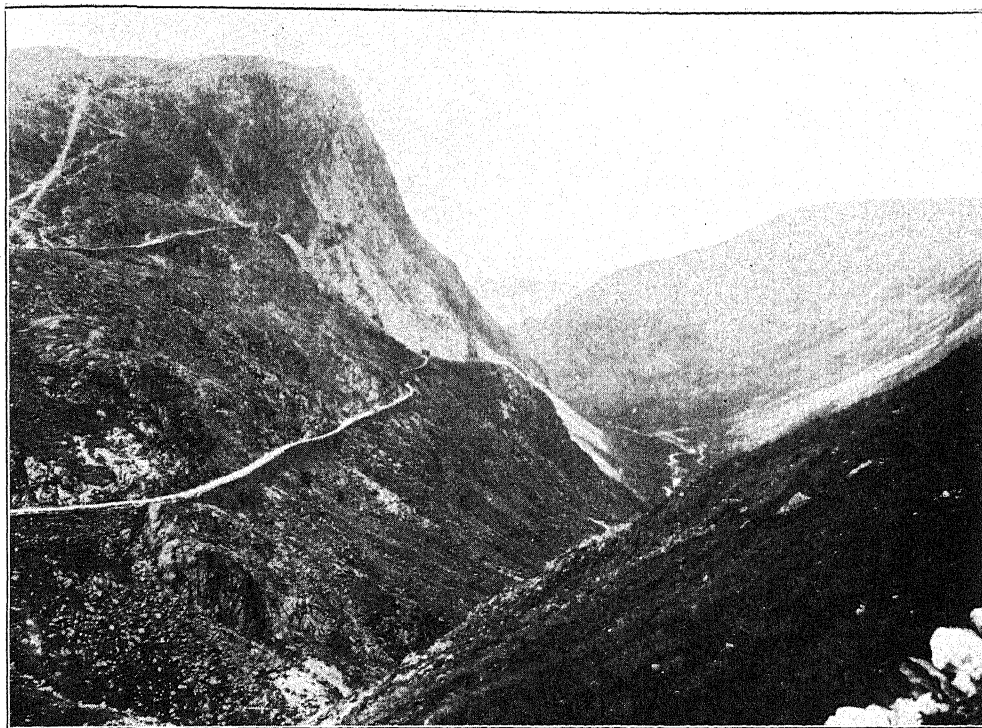


MOUNTAIN AND LAKE  
Derwentwater from Friar's Crag

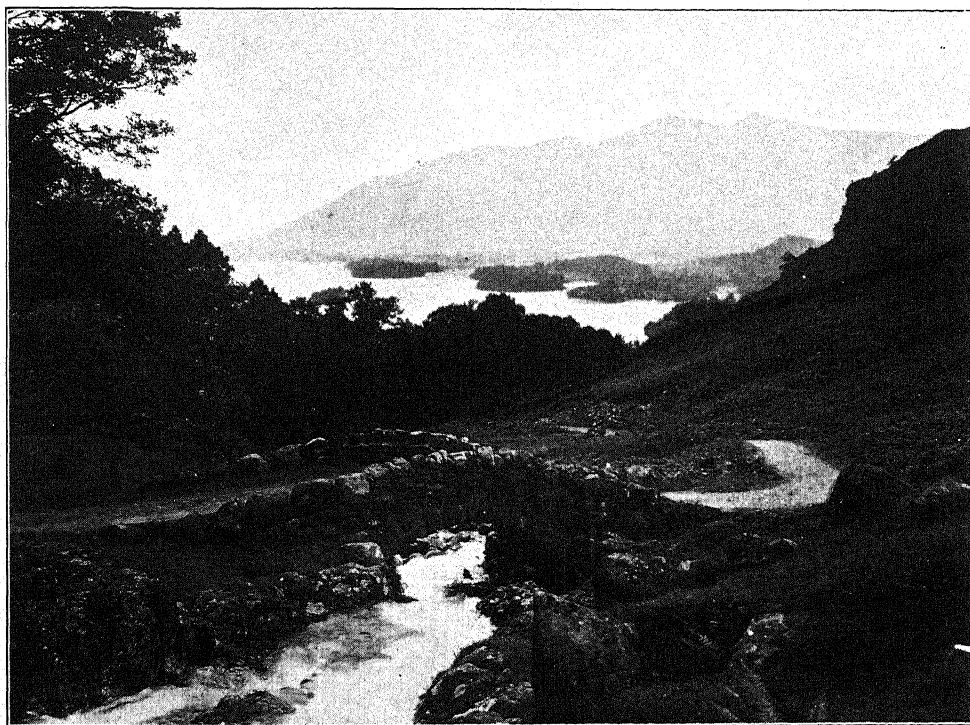
*Photo, L.M.S. Ry.*







HONISTER PASS, CUMBERLAND MOUNTAINS



SKIDDAW, CUMBERLAND MOUNTAINS

*Photos, L.M.S. Rly.*

the west, where it covers the greater part of the principality of Wales, and has been designated, from its ancient name of Cambria, as the Cambrian Range. Its principal ridge stretches through Carnarvonshire, from N.N.E. to S.S.W., ascending gradually from each extremity, till near its centre it attains in Snowdon, 3,590 ft., the culminating point of South Britain. Plinlimmon, in the south-west of Montgomery, is much inferior in height, being only 2,463 ft. In mass, however, it surpasses Snowdon and every other mountain of the range, and may justly claim precedence of them all as the source of the Severn.

The last part of the longitudinal chain has received the name of the Devonian Range. It may be considered as commencing in the Mendip Hills of Somerset, and then pursuing a south-west direction through that county, and the counties of Devon and Cornwall, to Land's End. Its culminating point, Yestor Beacon, near Okehampton, in Devonshire, is 2,077 ft., and the wild and desolate tract of Dartmoor forest, belonging to the

range, and forming one of its most remarkable features, has an elevation of about 1,700 ft. The average height of the range falls far short of this, and cannot be estimated higher than 1,000 ft.

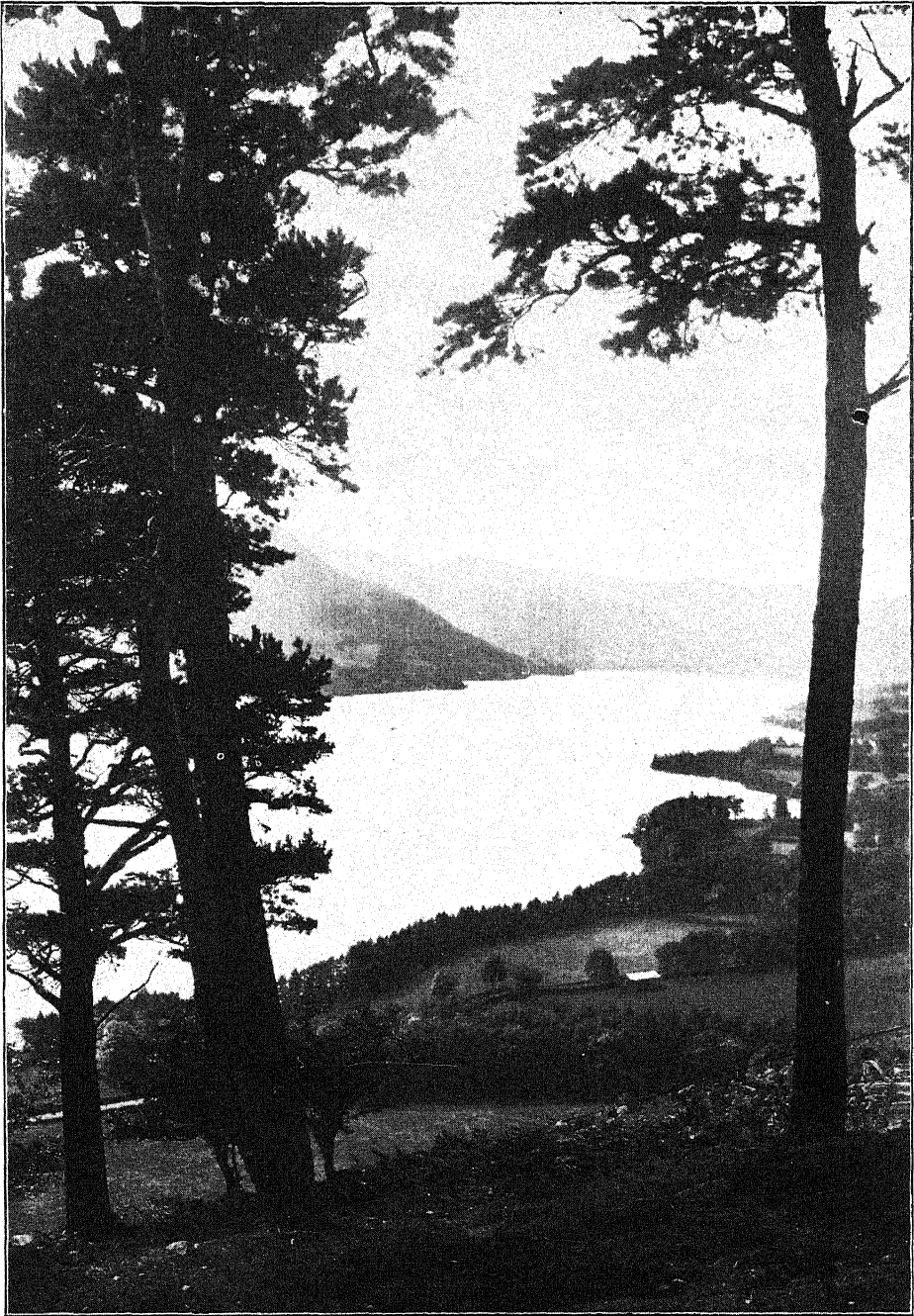
In addition to the principal ranges which have now been mentioned, there are a number of others which, though of inferior elevation, are so distinctly marked, and have so much influence in determining the general features of the country, that a distinct idea of it cannot be obtained without adverting to them. One of these, which may be considered as a continuation of the Cotswold Hills of Gloucester, proceeds in a north-east direction, between the counties of Warwick and Leicester, on the left, and Oxford, Nottingham and Rutland, on the right, forming the principal watershed between the basins of the Wash and the Humber. Most of the other ridges may be considered as having a common point of departure in the county of Wilts. The most southerly, commencing near the city of Salisbury, proceeds eastward through Hampshire and



LAKE WINDERMERE AND THE CUMBERLAND RANGE

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*





ULLSWATER

One of the most beautiful of the English lakes

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*



BUTTERMERE IN ITS CIRCLE OF SUBLIME MOUNTAINS

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

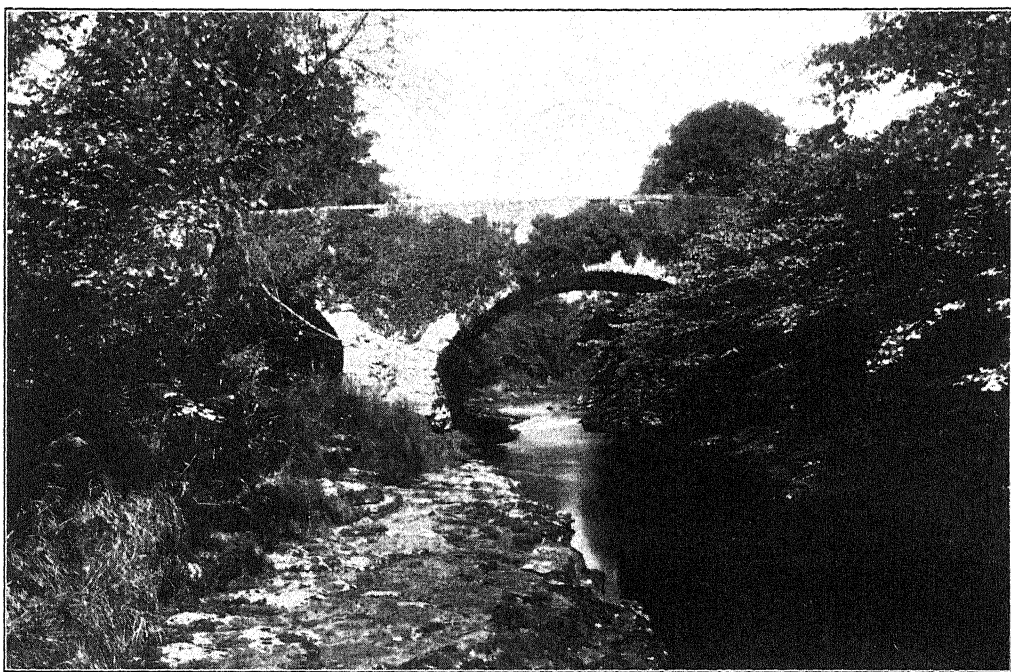
Sussex, inclining gradually to the south till it reaches the coast, near Beachy Head. Another ridge, to the north of the former, takes a direction nearly parallel to it, across the north of Hampshire, and the centres of Surrey and Kent, finally bending round to the south-east and reaching the coast at Folkestone.

The third, and longest ridge of all, is very circuitous. First, describing nearly a semi-circle in the northern part of Wiltshire, it stretches east across the centre of Berkshire, then north-east, through Oxford and Bucks, and between Bedford and Hertford, and Cambridge and Essex. On reaching the west borders of Suffolk, it takes a northerly direction through that county, and the west of Norfolk, till it reaches the south shore of the Wash. Though lost beneath that estuary, the hills, which commence almost opposite to it on the north shore, are evidently its continuation. Its direction is now N.N.E., through the east of Lincoln, to the south bank of the Humber, at Ferriby. Reappearing on the opposite side of the river, it proceeds northwards, through York-

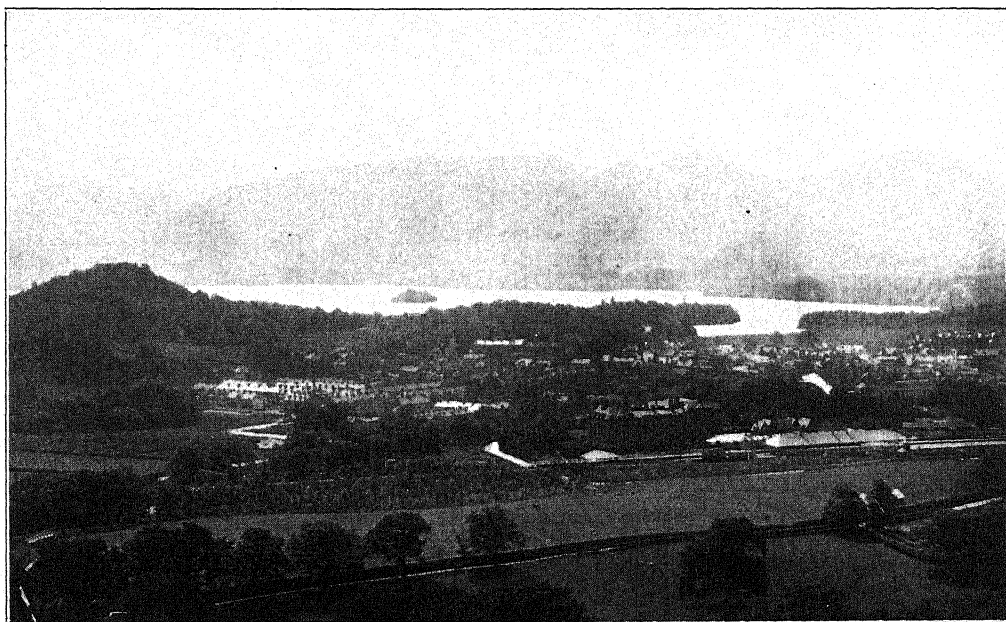
shire, where it takes the name of the Hambleton Hills, and at last spreads out into a large tract of moorlands. The principal and secondary ridges which have been described, forming what may be called the framework of the country, give shape and limits to its valleys and plains, and determine the course of its rivers.

#### VALLEYS, PLAINS AND RIVERS.

Beginning in the north, where, from the extent of surface occupied by mountains and moorlands, and the comparative narrowness of the island, the open space left is very limited, the first valleys which we meet with on the east side are those of the Coquet and Tyne, the former not large, but very fertile, and the latter, though beautiful and romantic in its upper part, more remarkable in its lower for the treasures beneath its surface than for the richness of its soil. To the south of these is the Vale of Stockton, bounded on the north by the highlands of Durham, and on the south by the east moorlands of Yorkshire. Its length, measured by the Tees, which traverses it, is nearly forty



KENDAL, Hawes Bridge



KESWICK  
View from Latrigg

*Photos, L.M.S. Rly.*

miles, and its breadth, where widest, about fifteen miles. On the west side of the island, nearly opposite to it, commences the beautiful valley of the Eden, which, at first hemmed in between the Cambrian Range and the Pennine Chain, gradually widens as it proceeds northwards, and finally spreads out into a wide plain of about 300,000 acres, with the town of Carlisle in its centre. One remarkable circumstance connected with it is the course of the River Eden, which with the exception of the Trent, is the only one of any importance in England which flows in the main northerly.

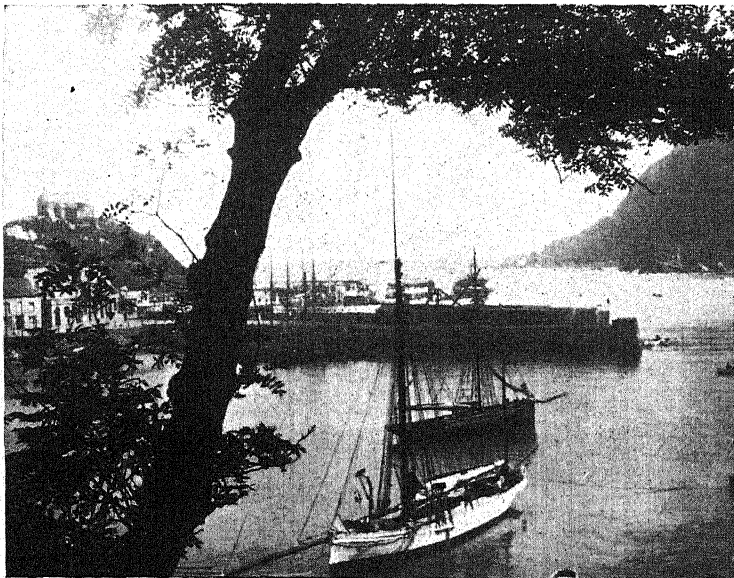
The next valley or plain which attracts notice is in some respects the most important of all. It is known by the name of the Vale of York, and has an area of nearly 1,000



THE NEEDLE'S EYE, WELLINGTON WREKIN

square miles. In the north it unites imperceptibly with the Vale of Stockton, and is skirted by a number of small shallow lakes; moorlands proceeding from the Pennine Chain bound it on the west, and the Hambleton Hills, already mentioned, on the east;

in the south it sinks down into the marsh lands which line the north bank of the Humber. Beyond this vale, on the east is that of Pickering, in the form of an imperfect oval, of which the longer axis is thirty-five miles, and the shorter ten miles, and the area about 190,000 acres. To all appearance it is the bed of an ancient lake. To the south and east of it is the district of Holderness, an extensive flat, bounded on the east by the North Sea, and on the south by the Humber, and generally composed of a rich alluvium, the



ILFRACOMBE, THE HARBOUR

Photos, G.W. Rly.









BUXTON, THE MOUNTAIN SPA  
Near the Peak District of Derbyshire

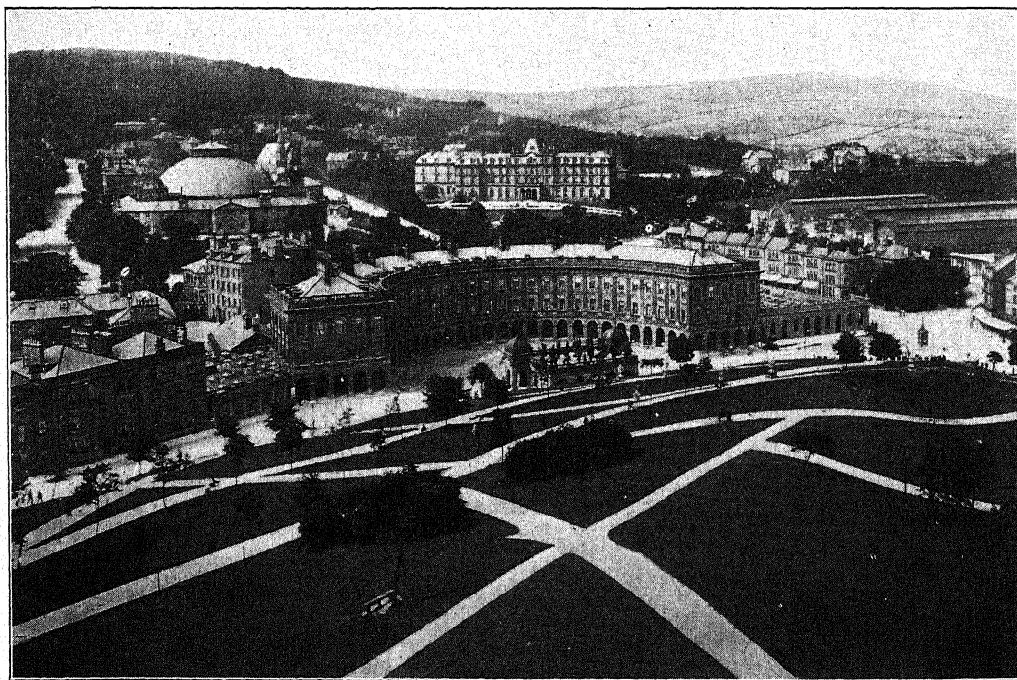
*Photo, L.M.S. Riv.*

productive powers of which appear to be all but inexhaustible. Its area exceeds 400 square miles. The plain is usually considered to stop here, because its continuity is broken by the Humber, but, properly speaking, it is still the same plain which stretches, with scarcely a single interruption, across the counties of Lincoln, Suffolk and Essex, to the mouth of the Thames, and to a considerable distance inland, occupying a large part of several of the counties immediately to the west.

Returning again to the opposite side of the island, we meet with several flat and fertile tracts in Lancashire, particularly along the course of the Ribble, and in the plain which lies between it and the Mersey. This plain, not confined to the north bank of the river, but continued along its south bank into Cheshire, includes in it the rich and beautiful Vale of Warrington. Passing over Cheshire, in which, notwithstanding the ridges which traverse its west, and the heights which bound its east side, there is much level land, we are brought to the confines of Wales. The nature of the country here almost precludes the possibility of extensive plains, and gives

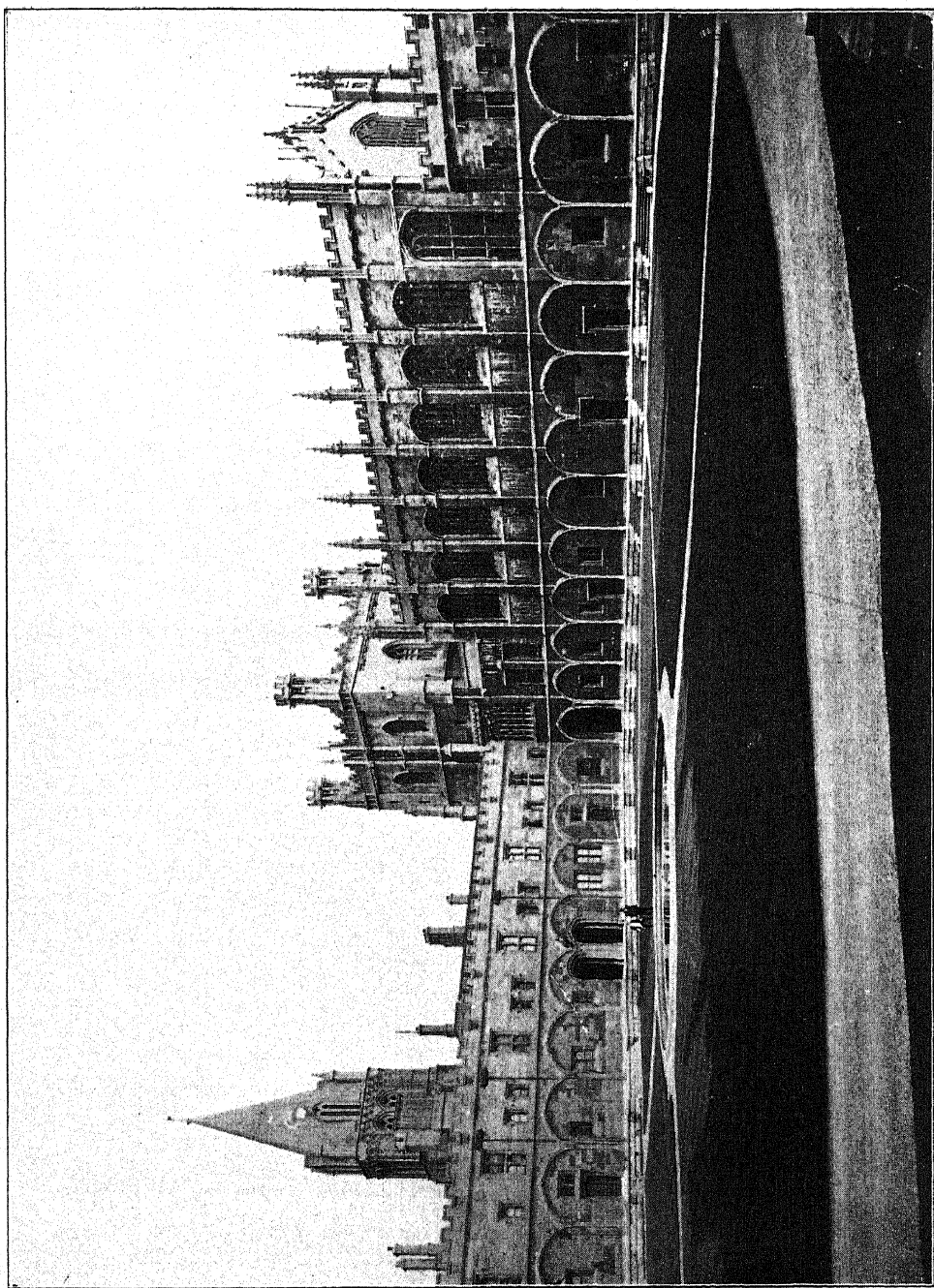
the valleys generally a narrow rugged form which, however favourable to romantic beauty, is not very compatible with great fertility. Still, favoured spots do occur. Among others may be mentioned the Valley of Clwyd, chiefly in Denbigh, but partly also in Flintshire, extending along both sides of the river of its name for about twenty miles, with a varying breadth of eight or nine miles, and so superior in appearance to the general aspect of the surrounding districts, as to have gained the surname of the Eden of North Wales. Nor can the south division of the principality be considered destitute of vales, while it has that of the Towy, in Carmarthenshire, and the rich alluvial vale or flat which lines the shore of Glamorgan in the Bristol Channel, and stretches inland from eight to ten miles. Wales, too, by giving rise to the Severn, can justly claim part in its vale, or series of almost unrivalled vales, along which it pursues its romantic course through the counties of Montgomery, Salop, Worcester and Gloucester.

The chief vales of the west counties, as far as the Bristol Channel, and of the east,



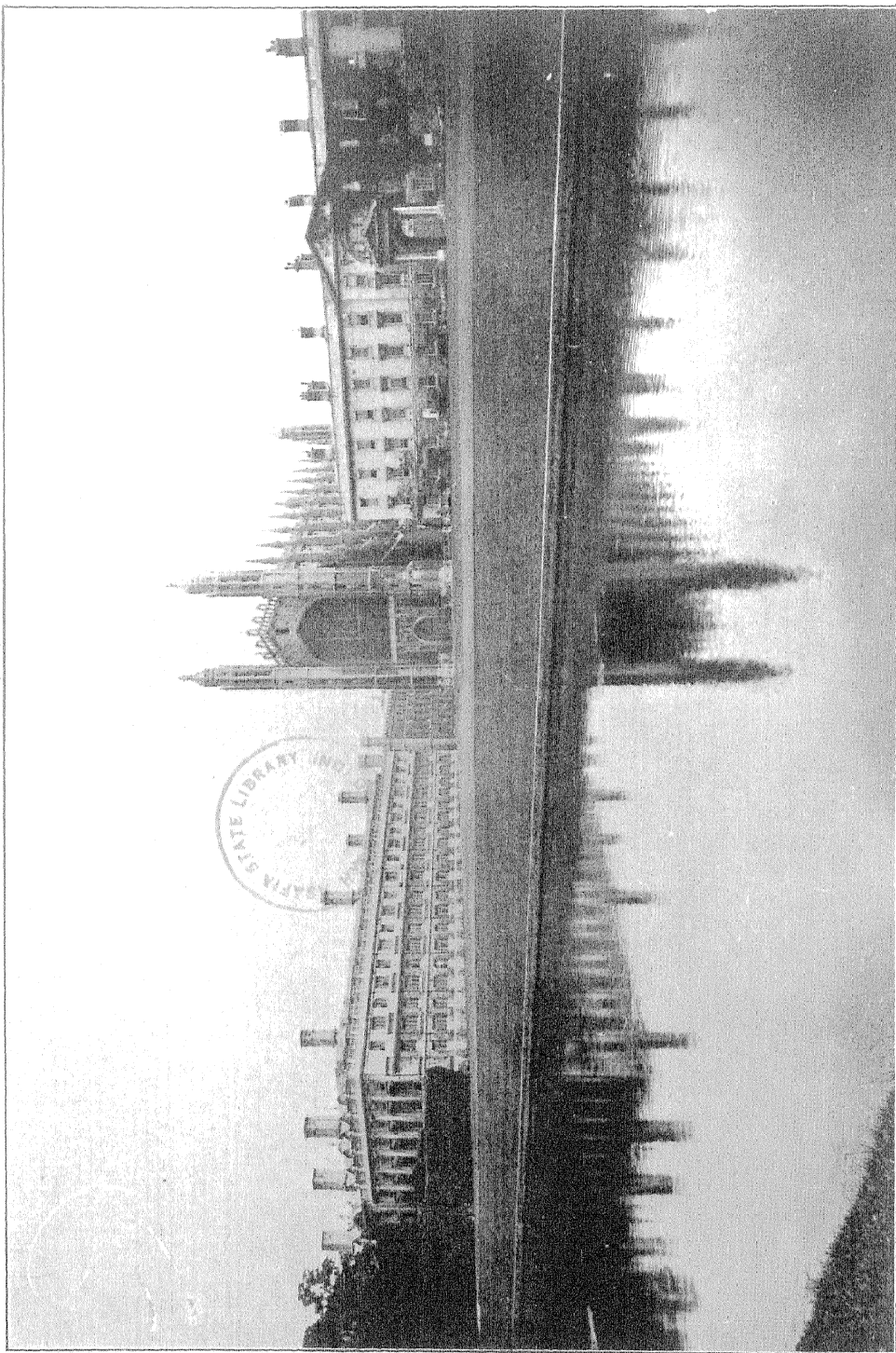
BUXTON

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*



THE QUADRANGLE, CHRIST CHURCH, OXFORD

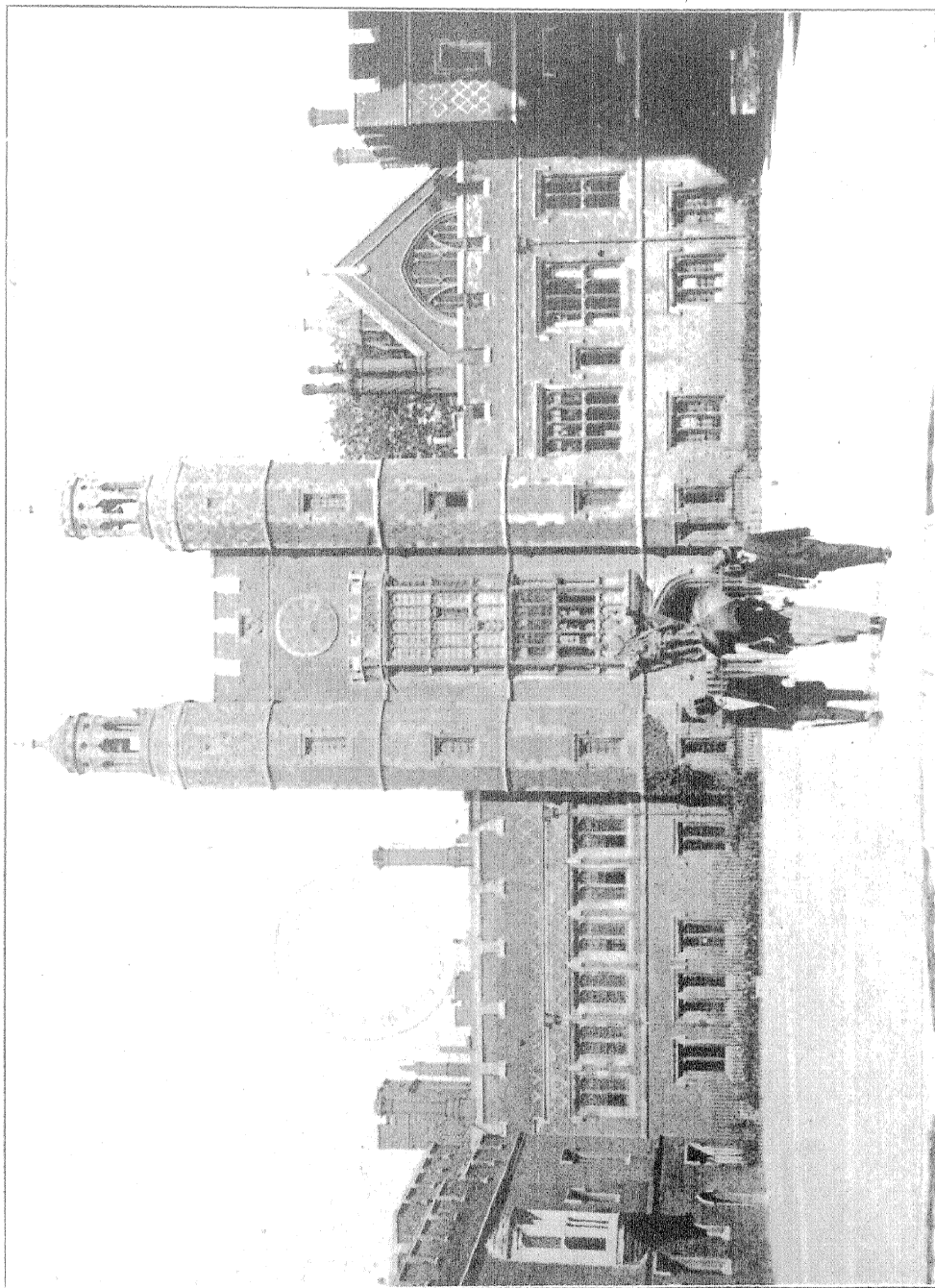
*Photo, W. H. Smith & Son*



CAMBRIDGE, KING'S AND CLARE COLLEGES

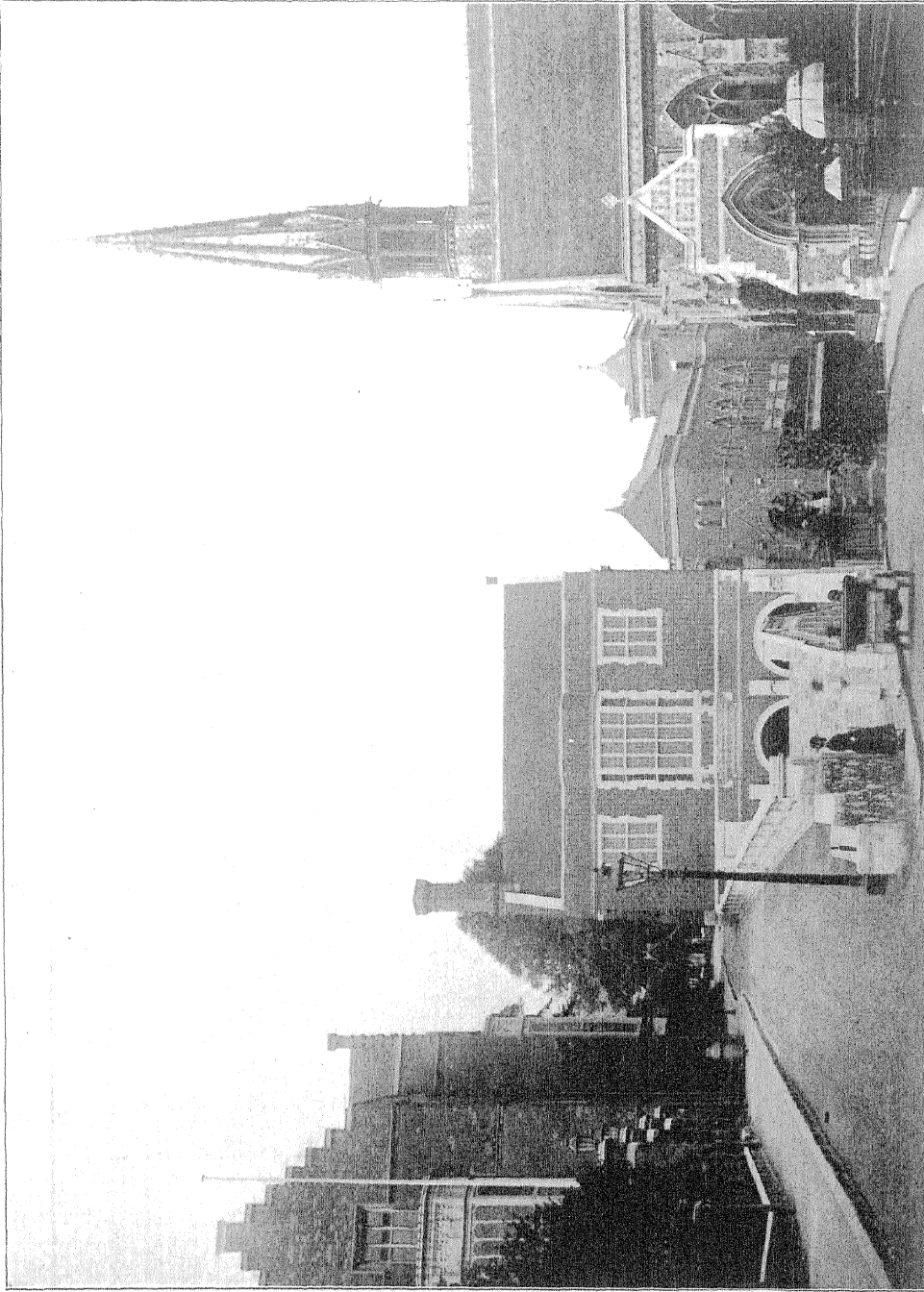
*Photochrome Co., Ltd.*





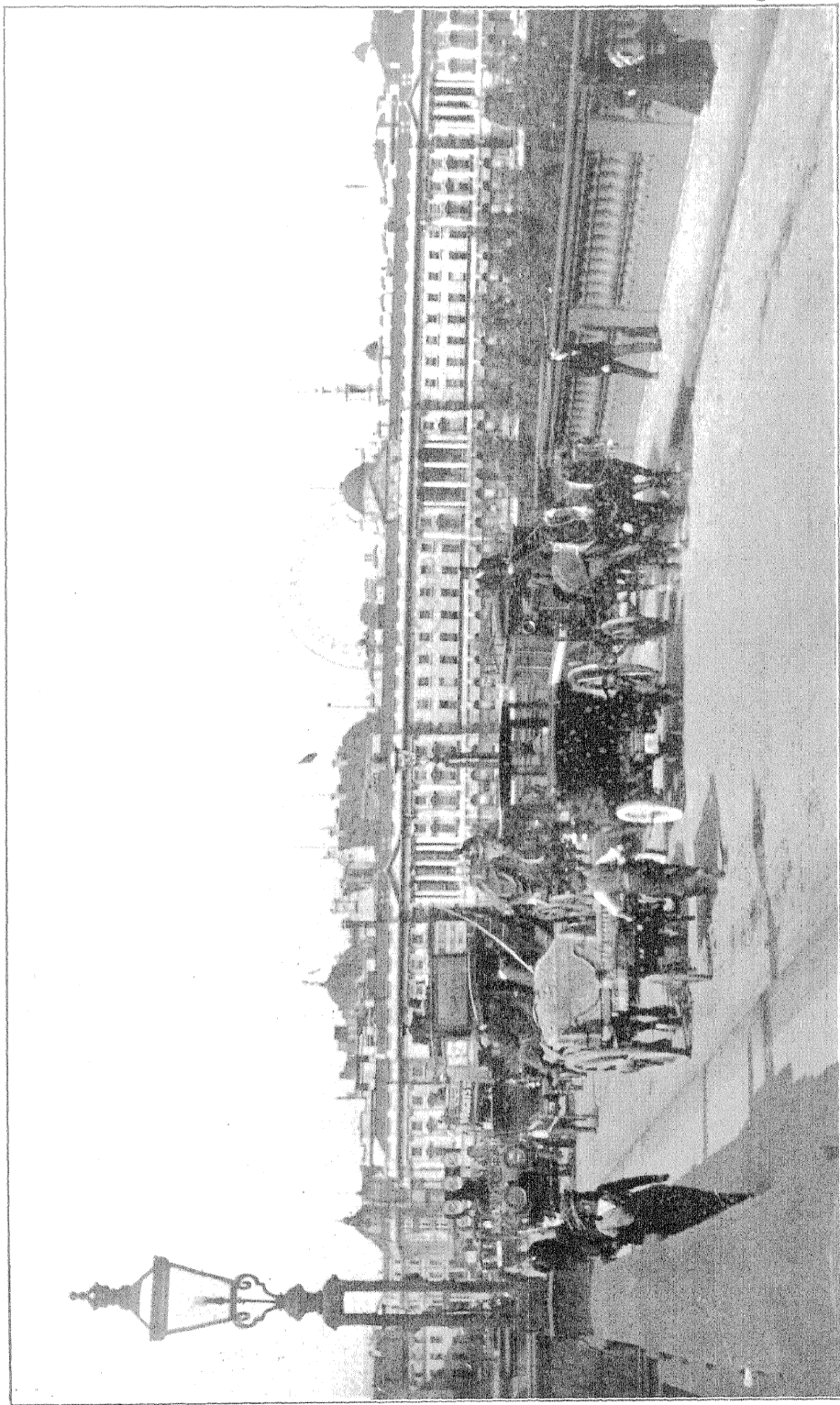
*Photo, Sport and General Press Agency*

THE FOURTH OF JUNE CELEBRATIONS AT ETON  
The College Quadrangle



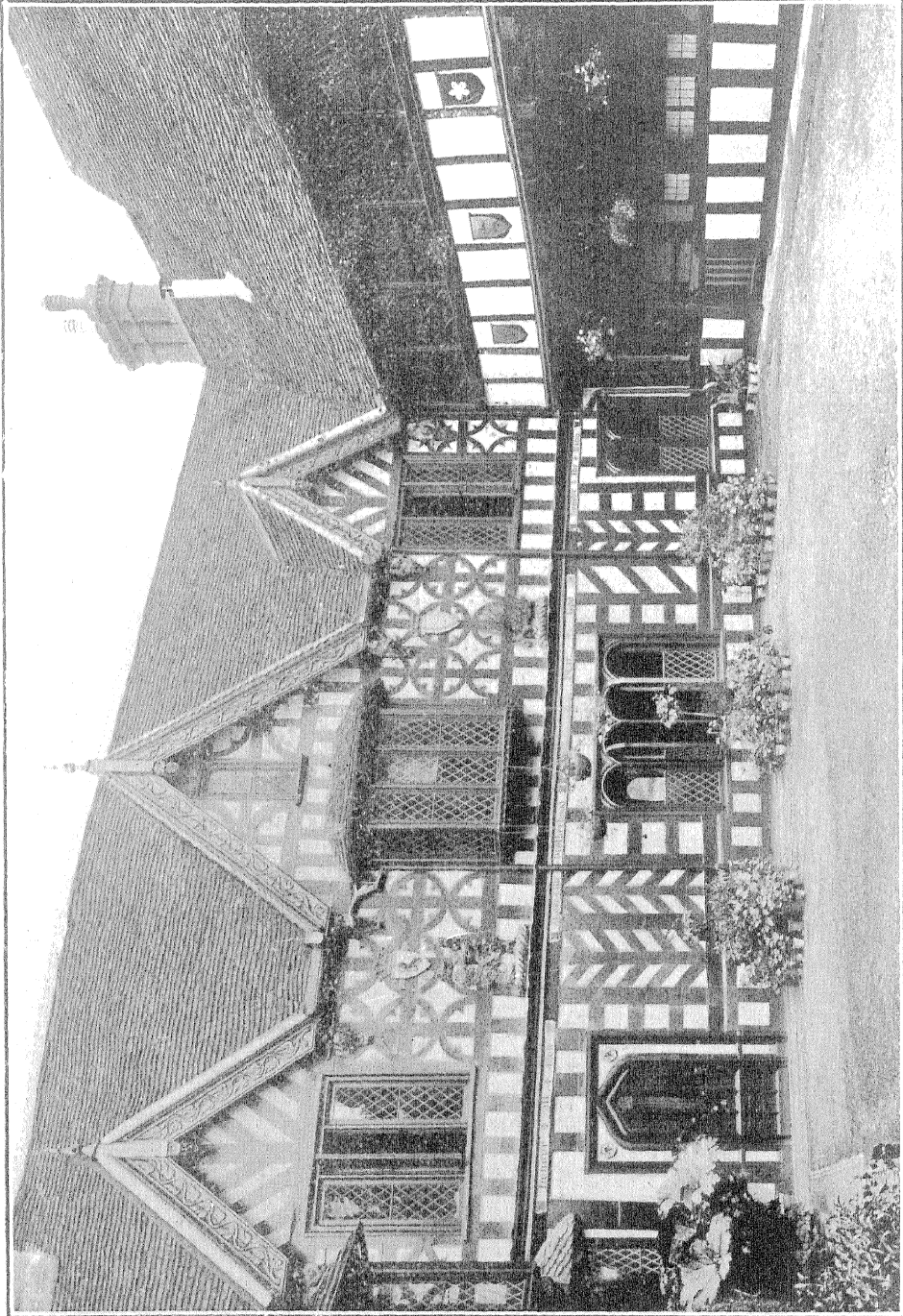
*Photo, Sport and General Press Agency*

A GENERAL VIEW OF HARROW SCHOOL



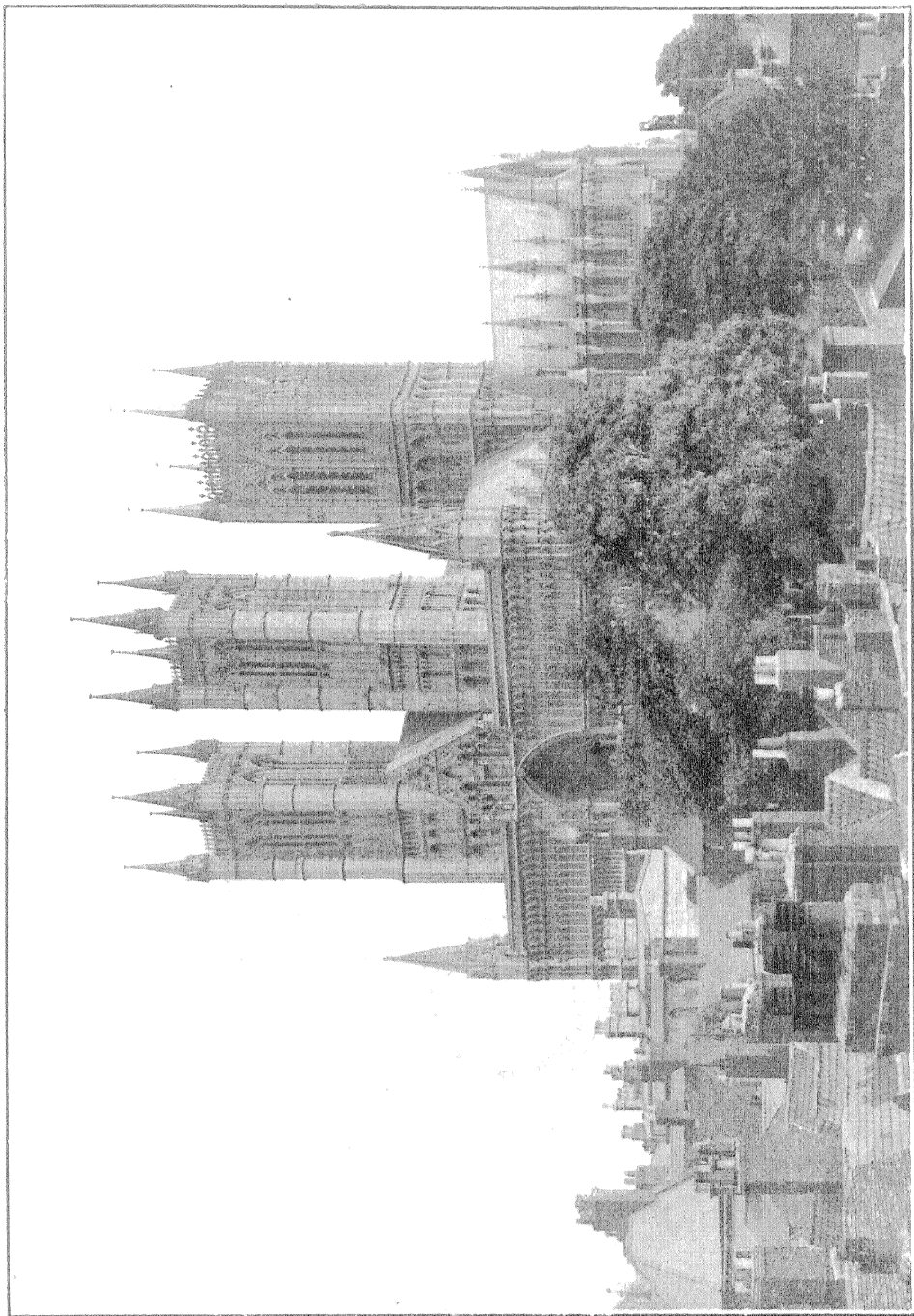
*Photo. Underwood*

SOMERSET HOUSE, FROM WATERLOO BRIDGE, LONDON  
The home of the Inland Revenue. One of the great collecting departments of the Imperial Government



LEYCESTER HOSPITAL, WARWICK, ENGLAND

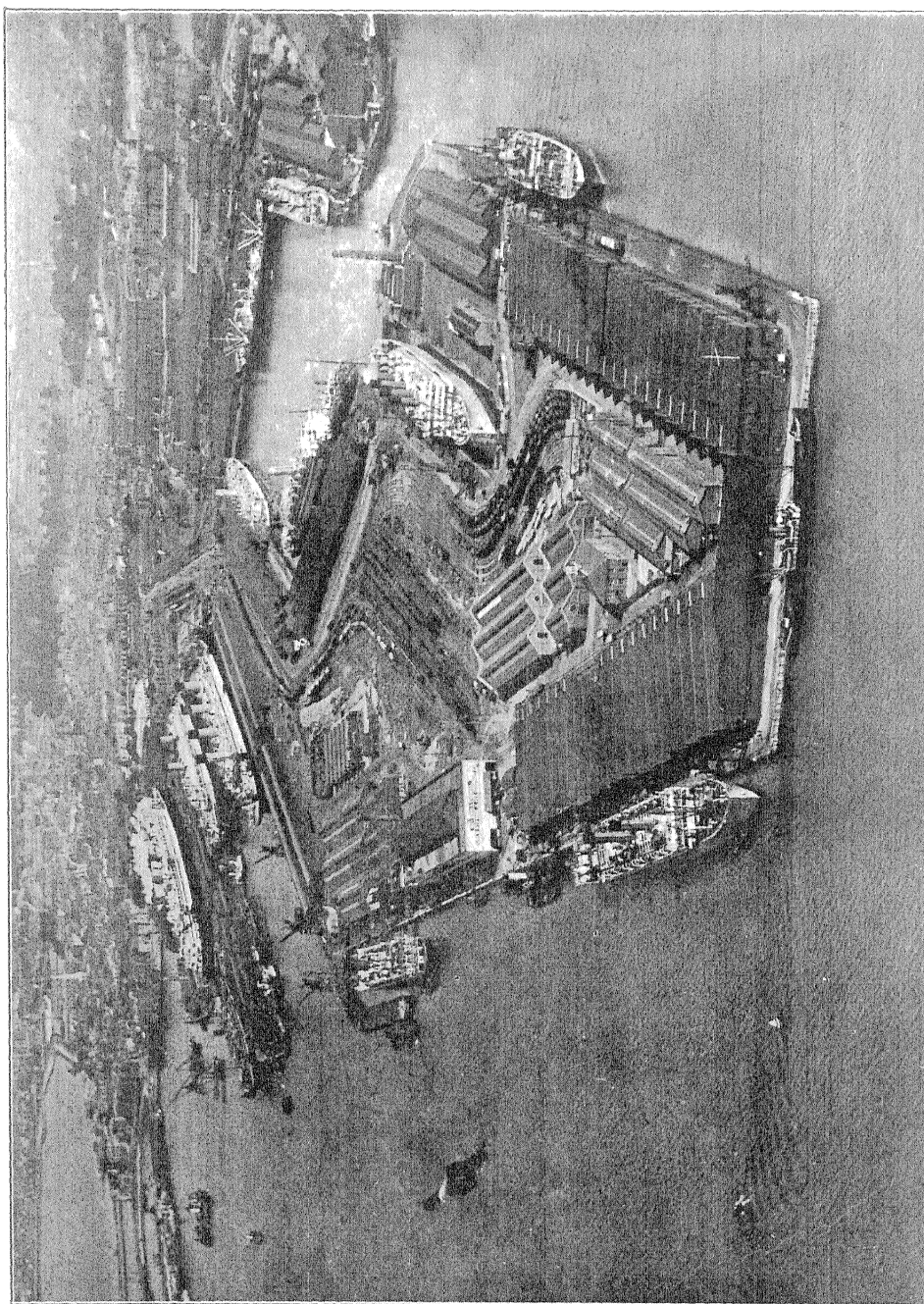
*Photo, L.M.S. Ry*



*Photo, L.M.S. Riv*

LINCOLN CATHEDRAL, ENGLAND





*Photo by kind permission of the Southern Ry.*

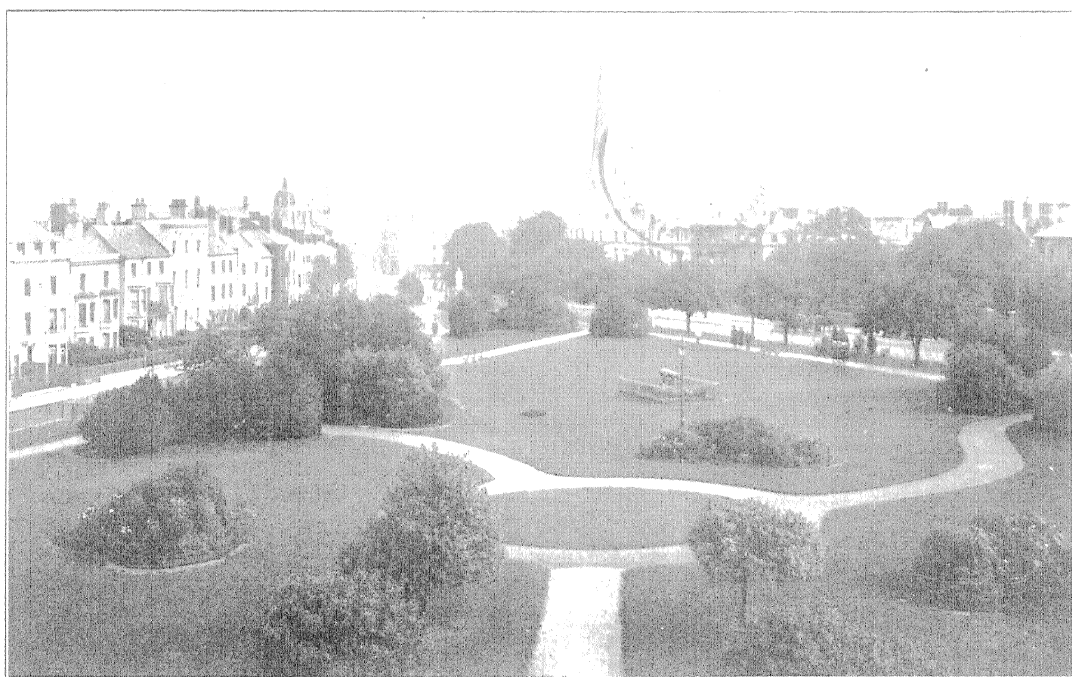
**THE DOCKS, SOUTHAMPTON**

*Aerofilms*

as far as the mouth of the Thames, have now been mentioned. Of those of central England no notice has yet been taken; but though they are numerous, they need not detain us long, as they are in general more remarkable for their fertility than their extent. As specimens, may be noticed: the grassy Vale of Aylesbury, near the centre of Bucks; that of Catmose, forming a considerable part of Rutland; and that of Belvoir, which follows the course of the Trent through Nottingham, to the borders of Leicester and Lincoln.

able features which it presents, must not be forgotten the huge Druidical blocks of Stonehenge. Immediately to the north-east of it, is an extensive tract of similar but rather more rugged appearance called Marlborough Downs. From both tracts a number of streams descend and pursue different directions—north, east and west.

In the south-west, the only vales deserving of notice are those of Taunton, in Somerset, and Exeter, in Devon, the former containing about 100 square miles, and the latter 200 square miles. They lie at no great distance

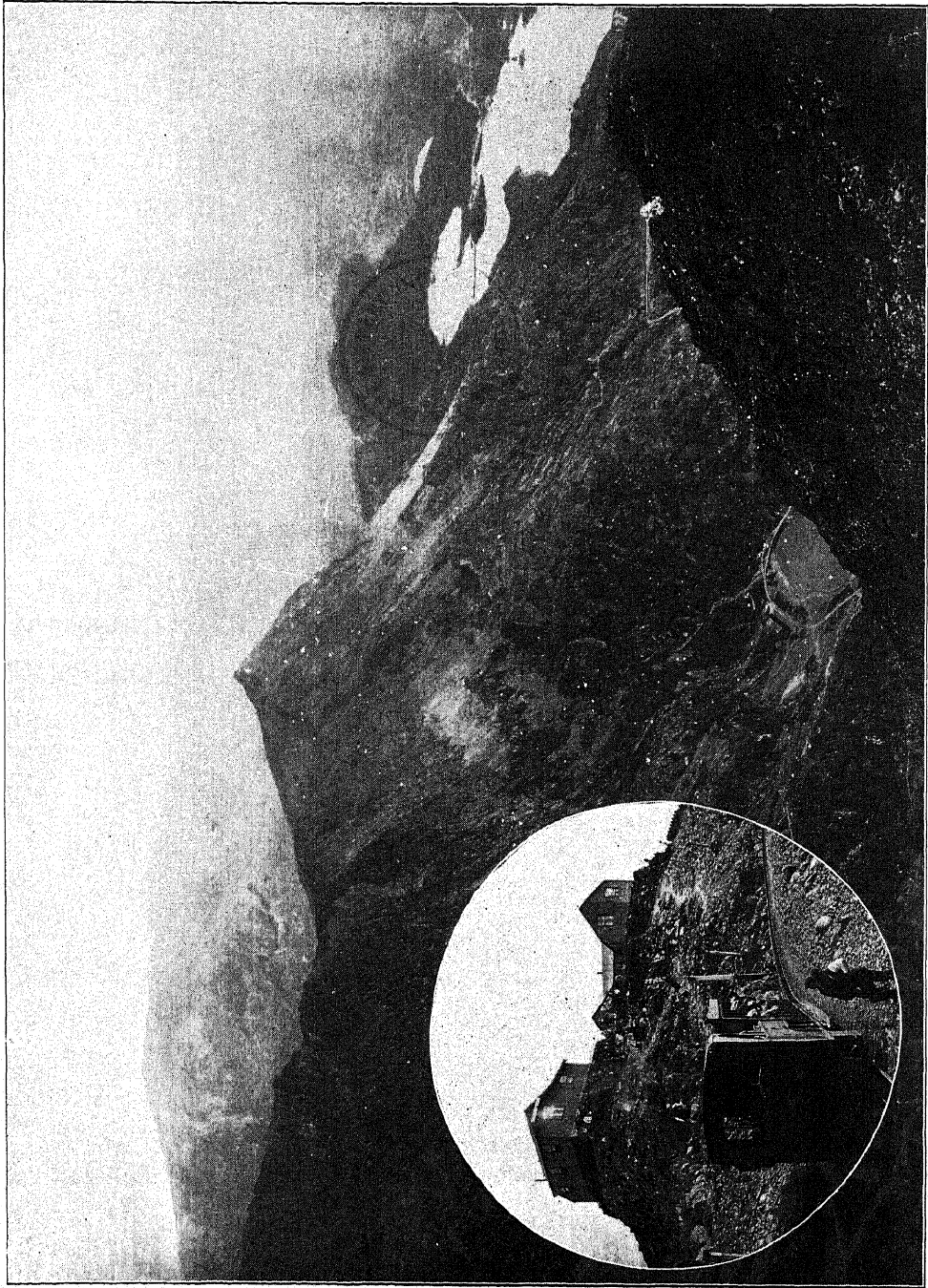


COVENTRY, THE THREE SPIRES]

[Photo, L.M.S. Ry.]

Proceeding south we are first attracted by the name of Salisbury Plain, occupying a large portion of South Wilts. But it is only in name that it can be classed with the other plains and level lands of England, as it has a character peculiarly its own. It is in fact an elevated plateau, of an oval shape, extending about twenty-two miles from east to west, and fifteen miles from south to north, and covered generally with a thin chalky soil, too unsubstantial to reward the labours of the plough. It is largely used as a military training ground (*q.v.*). Among the remark-

from each other, being only separated by the Blackdown Hills, and possess a beauty, and fertility, rendered still more striking by contrast with the rugged hills and barren moors of the neighbouring districts. A large portion of the south-east may be regarded as a continuous plain, consisting of what are called the Wealds of Sussex, Surrey and Kent. It is bounded on the north and north-east by the secondary range of hills above described as terminating near Folkestone; and on the south, for the most part, by the South Downs, and contains an area of about 1,000



VIEW FROM THE SUMMIT OF SNOWDON (3,590 ft.), CAMBRIAN MOUNTAINS (Inset, the Peak) *Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*



ETON COLLEGE, BUCKINGHAMSHIRE

square miles, having a length from west to east of sixty-five miles, and a breadth varying from eight to fifteen miles. As indicated by the Saxon name of Weald, it was originally a forest or hunting ground, occupied chiefly by herds of deer. The soil is not naturally rich, being principally composed of a stiff heavy clay, and occasionally of a sandy and gravelly loam. It is, however, well cultivated, and affords a good specimen of the great and beneficial changes which industry and skill are able to accomplish. The primeval forest has disappeared, but magnificent oaks, for which the soil is well adapted, are still numerous, chiefly in hedgerows or around the enclosures, so as to give the whole district a finely wooded appearance; rich cornfields or luxuriant pastures extend on

every side as far as the eye can reach, while the numerous towns, villages, country-seats, farm houses and hamlets, bear testimony at once to the density of the population.

Few scenes can be imagined more delightful than that which the Wealds exhibit, when overlooked from the adjoining hills. The south-east angle of this district is occupied by the Romney Marsh, an extensive level tract, which, taken by itself, contains 24,000 acres, but with the addition of several other small marshes, which

properly form part of it, is not less than 46,000 acres. The soil is not of equal quality throughout, but is composed, for the most part, of a rich marine deposit, the whole tract having been not so much recovered as conquered from the sea. The



HEREFORD, HIGH TOWN

Photos, G.W. Rly.





DOLGELLEY, THE TORRENT WALK

mention of Romney Marsh reminds us of other extensive tracts of a similar nature, comprehended under the general names of marsh lands and fens. These are situated partly in Somersetshire, on the shores of the Bristol Channel, and the estuary of the Severn; but more especially on the East Coast, in Yorkshire and Lincoln, where they are washed by the Humber; and in the counties which either border the Wash, or, like Northampton, Bedford, Huntingdon and Cambridge, send their drainage into it, by the Nen and the Ouse. Many of these lands are naturally the richest in the Kingdom.

### RIVERS.

The opposite sides of the island, being necessarily on the same level, and its principal watershed consisting of a mountain chain

which extends longitudinally from north to south, it is easy to understand how the general course of the rivers must be in the opposite direction of west or east, according to the slope of the watershed in which they take their rise. In the same way, it is easy to understand how the transverse ridges which branch off from the chain divide the surface into a series of river basins, and by fixing the boundaries, determine the area of each.

In the north the distance between the two shores is so narrow, that there is no room for the formation of an extensive basin, and hence the drainage is effected by a number of comparatively small streams, which, instead of communicating with each other, retain their own independent channels, and proceed directly



BRIXHAM HARBOUR, DEVONSHIRE

*Photos, G.W. Rlv*





*Photo, by kind permission of the Birmingham Corporation*  
**BIRMINGHAM, CORPORATION STREET**



CHELTENHAM, THE PROMENADE

to the sea. The same rule holds in the south, where, by the interposition of transverse ridges, only a very limited tract slopes, so as to send its waters to the English Channel. The extremities of the country being thus excluded, its large basins are necessarily confined to its more central portion. They are four in number—the Thames, Wash, and Humber, belonging to the North Sea; and the Severn, belonging to the Atlantic.

The basin of the Thames has its greatest length from east to west, 130 miles, and its average breadth about fifty miles. It may be considered as commencing west with the river itself, in the Cotswold Hills, and includes on its north side, a considerable part of the north-east of Gloucester, the whole of Oxford, the greater part of Bucks,

the whole of Middlesex, almost the whole of Hertford, and the west and south of Essex. Its south side includes the north of Wilts, the whole of Berks, and a narrow belt across the north of Hampshire, with a very small exception the whole of Surrey, and the larger part of Kent. On the south it is bounded by the narrow tract which forms the north basin of the English Channel, and in which the Avon is the principal stream; on the west by the basin of the Severn, on the north chiefly by the basin of

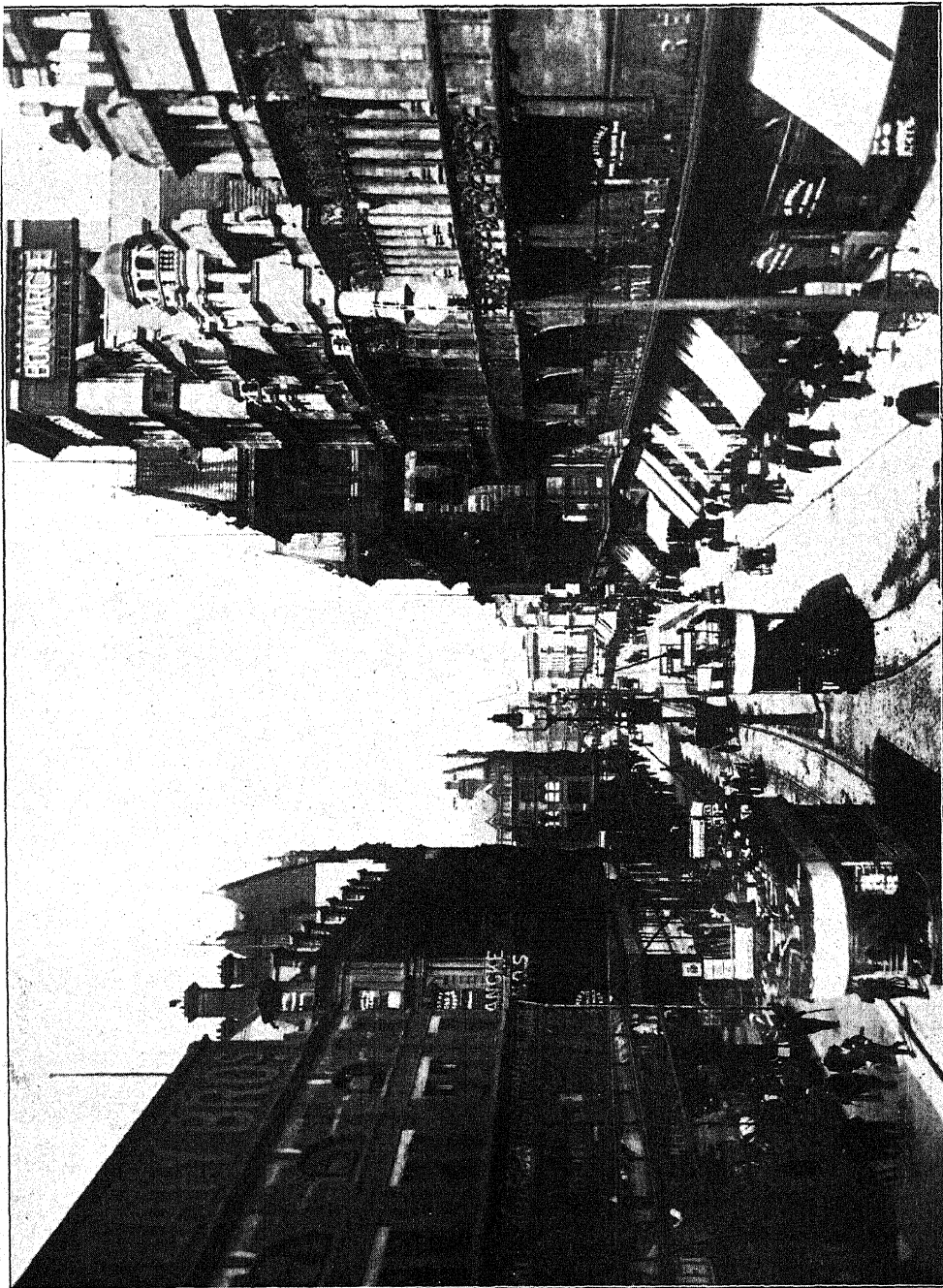
the Wash, but partly also by the small independent basins of the Crouch and Blackwater in the east of Essex. Its area is 6,160 square miles.

The basin of the Wash, consisting of the subordinate basins of the Great Ouse, Nen,



CARDIFF, LAW COURTS

*Photos, G.W. Rly.*



*Photochrom Co. Ltd.*

LIVERPOOL, CHURCH STREET  
One of the main business thoroughfares of this great city and port



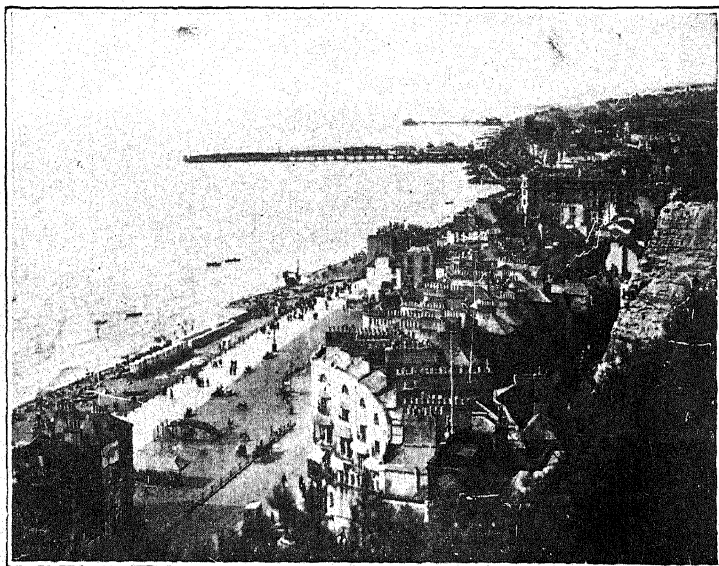
FOLKESTONE, THE CLIFFS

Welland and Witham, which all empty themselves into that estuary, is of an irregular shape. Its south and larger portion, including the whole three first-mentioned basins, is irregularly oval; while the north portion, confined to that of the Witham, is nearly square. It receives the whole drainage of the counties of Huntingdon, Rutland and Cambridge, almost the whole of those of Northampton and Bedford, considerable portions of those of Lincoln and Norfolk, and a small portion of that of Suffolk. It is bounded, south-east by small independent basins, chiefly those of the Stowe and Yare, south by that of the Thames, west by those of the Thames and Severn, and north-west and north by that of the Humber. Its area is computed at 5,850 square miles.

The basin of the Severn consists of two

distinct portions. That on the river-bank is of an irregularly oval shape, and has for its principal tributaries the Teme and the Wye. It commences at Plinlimmon, on the east frontiers of Cardigan, at not more than thirteen miles from the west coast, and includes a large belt on the south and east of Montgomery, the southern half of Shropshire, the western parts of Worcester and Gloucester, the whole of Radnor, Hereford and Monmouth, almost the whole of Brecknock, and the larger

part of Glamorgan. The portion of the Severn basin on the left bank borders, in the north, on the basins of the Dee and Mersey, and in the east, on those of the Humber and Thames, and with the exception of its

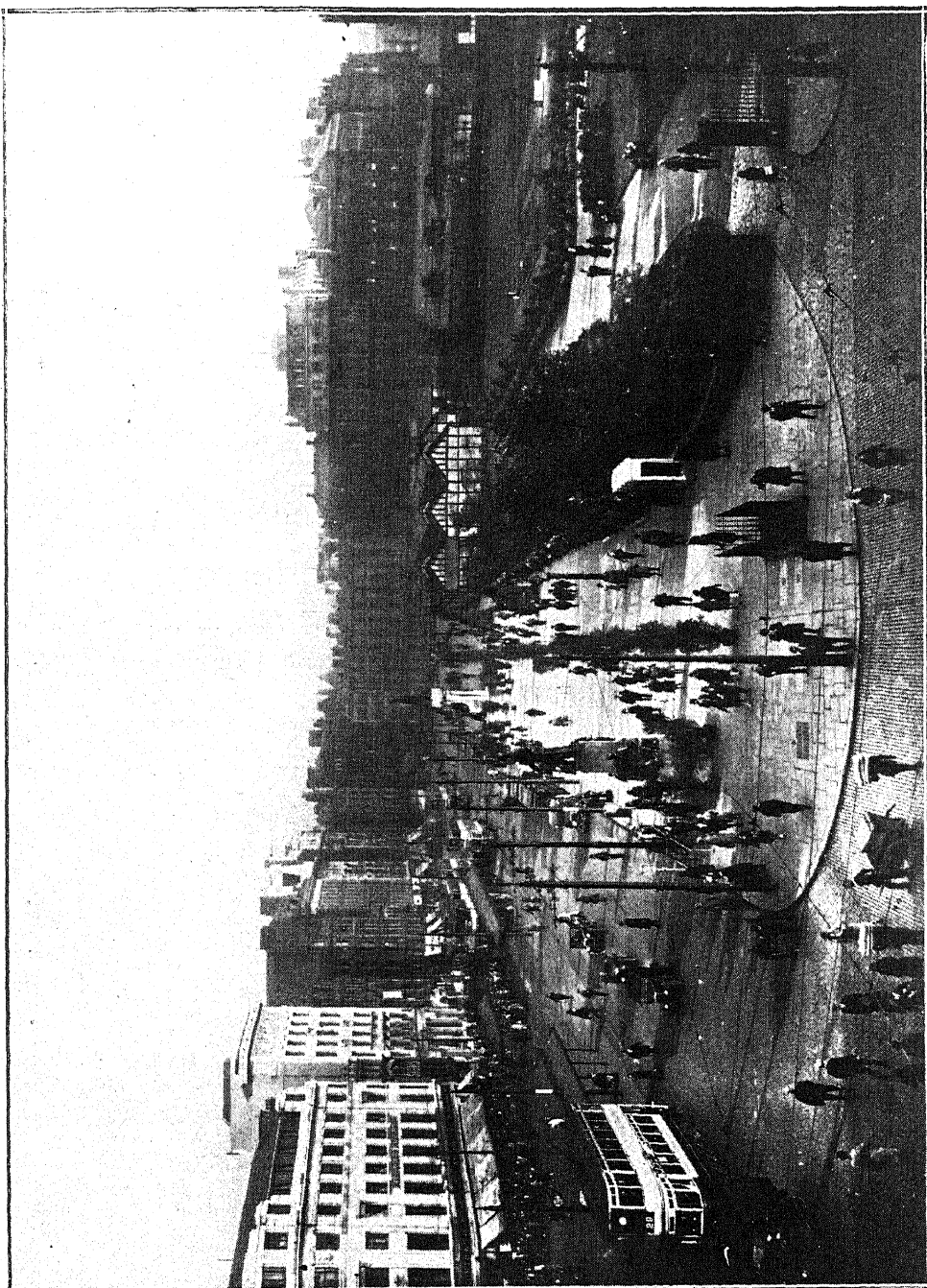


HASTINGS

View over Town and Promenade

Photo, Southern Rly.

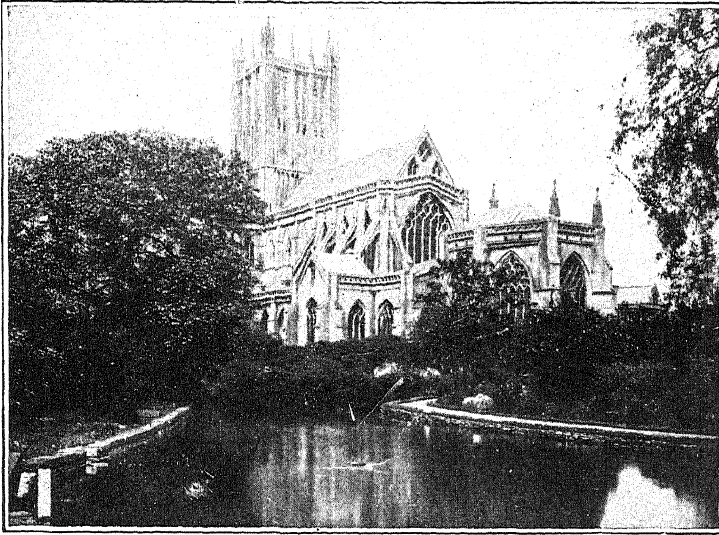




MANCHESTER, PICCADILLY

*Photo, Dennis & Sons Ltd.*





WELLS, SOMERSET  
The Cathedral

eastern part, which projects far between the basins of the Ouse and Humber, and is drained by the Upper Avon, consists of an irregular tract, stretching first from west to east, and then from north to south, and so narrow as not to average above twelve miles, and sometimes not to exceed, even in the lower part of its course, as to the east of Gloucester, seven miles. On this bank, accordingly, the present stream has no tributary of the least consequence, with the exception of the Upper Avon already mentioned and the Lower Avon, which only joins it at its estuary. The counties from which this part of the basin receives its supplies, are a part of Montgomery, the northern part of Shropshire, the larger parts both of Worcester and Warwickshire, a long strip of Gloucester, lying

between the river and the Cotswold Hills, the north-west of Wilts, and part of the north of Somersetshire. The area of the whole Severn basin is 8,580 square miles.

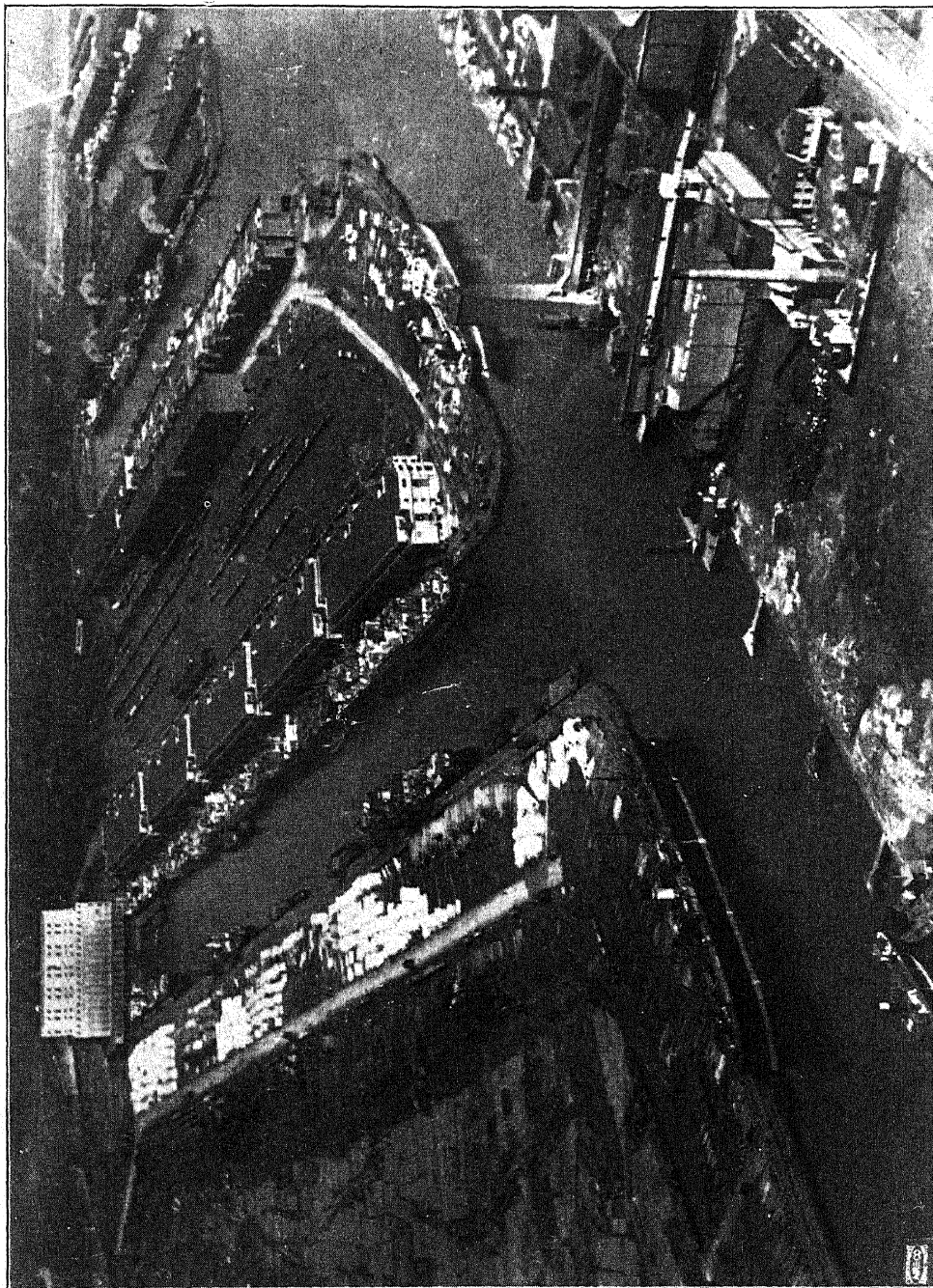
The next basin, that of the Humber, has the largest area of all. It forms a quadrilateral figure, the longest side of which extends from the west of Warwickshire, a little south of the town of Birmingham, to the north frontiers of Yorkshire, beyond the town of Richmond, 145 miles. Its greatest breadth, measured from the Humber

west, is about eighty-five miles. In the north-west, opposite to Morecambe Bay, it approaches within twenty-two miles of the West Coast. It consists of the three basins of the Humber proper, the Ouse, and the Trent, and receives the drainage of at least



HERNE BAY, KENT

*Photos, Southern Rly.*



*Photo, Airco*

THE MANCHESTER SHIP CANAL FROM THE AIR  
*By kind permission of the Manchester Ship Canal Co.*



VENTNOR, ISLE OF WIGHT  
View from East Cliff Gardens

three-fourths of Yorkshire, the larger part of Stafford, a part of Warwick, nearly the whole of Derby and Leicester, the whole of Nottingham, and the northern part of Lincoln. On the north it is bounded by the basin of the Tees; on the west by small independent basins, of which the largest are the Ribble and Mersey; on the south-west and south by that of the Severn; and on the south-east by that of the Wash. Its whole area is 9,550 square miles, being about one-sixth of the whole area of England and Wales.\*

### Capital Cities

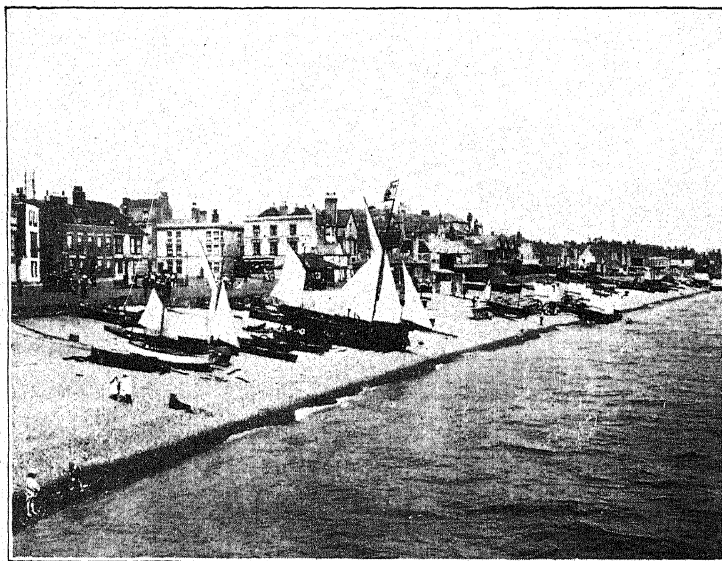
The metropolis of England, and the capital of the whole Empire, is London—the largest city in the world. So interwoven

\* *The Imperial Gazetteer*  
—Messrs. Blackie & Sons  
Ltd.

is its past, and so important is its present welfare to the fabric of Empire, that it is dealt with, in this work, fully and separately in previous pages. The principal city of Wales is Cardiff, situated at the mouth of the River Taff, in Glamorgan.

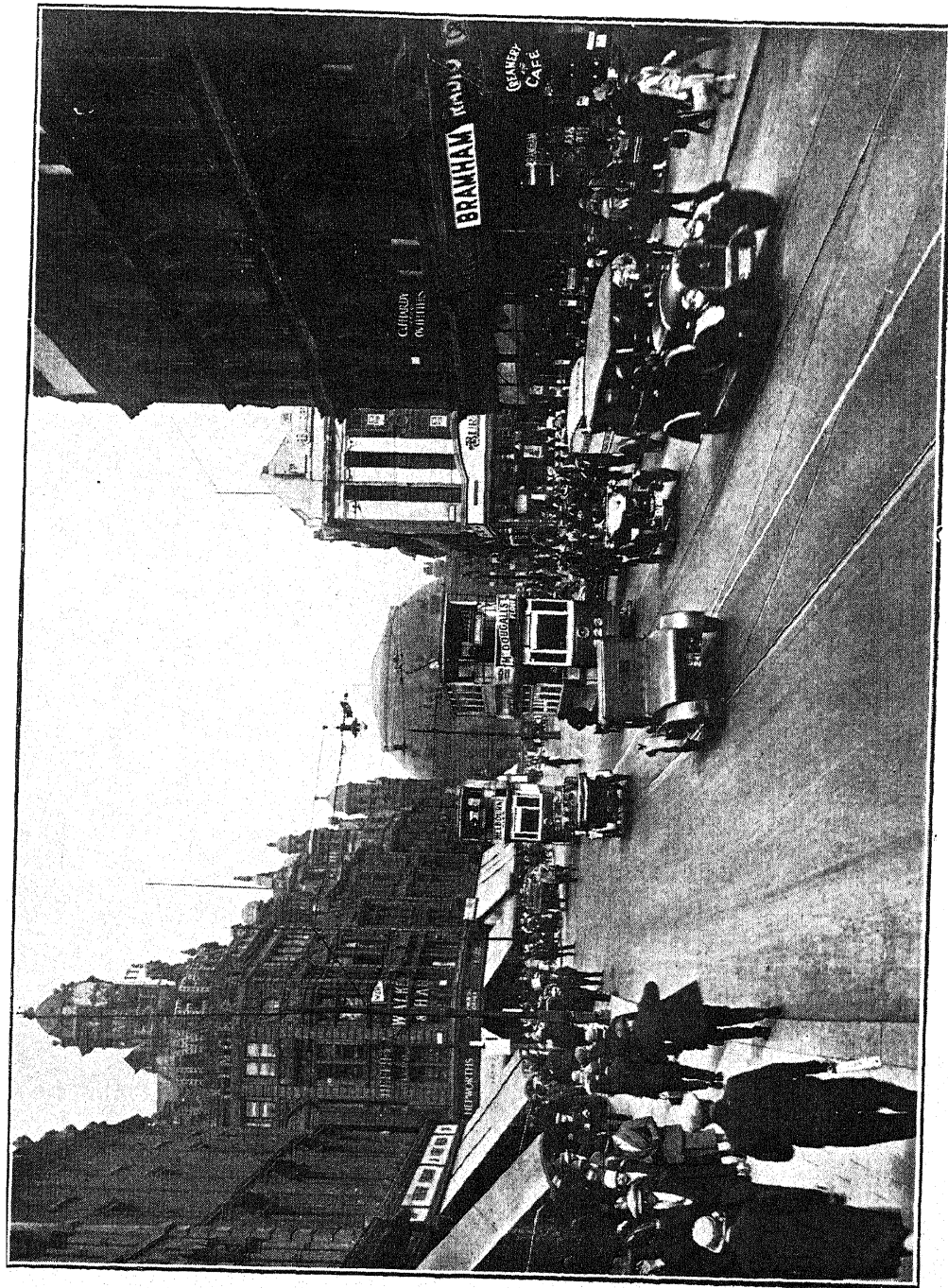
This important industrial and commercial centre is also the chief port of the great South Wales coal-fields. It has a population of about 230,000 (including suburbs), and an average of 15,000,000 tons of shipping enter and clear annually. In ad-

dition to being the leading coal-shipping port of the world, it has many other important industries, such as ship-repairing, iron-foundries, copper, zinc, lead, tin-plate, patent fuel and rope works, flour and paper mills, chemical factories, and engine-wagon works.



DEAL

Photos, Southern Rly.



LEEDS

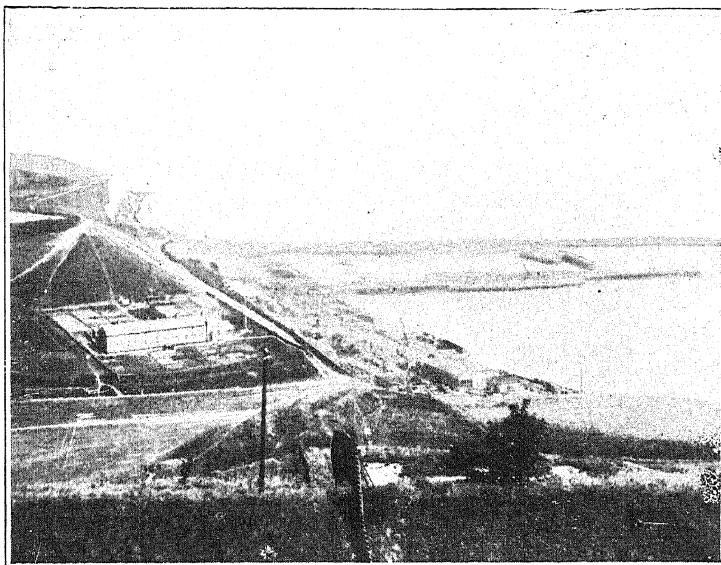
Junction of two of the principal shopping streets

Photo, Chas. R. Pickard, Leeds



Although the history of Cardiff dates back to the Roman occupation, it is, nevertheless, one of the most modern cities in the whole Kingdom. Cardiff Castle, restored in recent times, still retains some of its 11th century features. It was here that Robert Curthose (eldest son of William the Conqueror) was confined for thirty years. Among the principal buildings are the National Museum of Wales (in Cathays Park), the University College of South Wales, the Registry of the University of Wales (*q.v.*), the Law Courts and the Municipal Buildings, with Llandaff Cathedral and Caerphilly Castle in the neighbourhood.

Perhaps the most unique feature of the Welsh metropolis is the fact that although it depends economically very largely on the shipment of coal from the surrounding mines, there is such an entire absence of dust, shafts, trucks, and all the unsightly edifices of a coal-exporting centre, that anyone not particularly interested in this industry, could live in most parts of Cardiff without *seeing* any evidence of its staple product, although it might be more difficult to avoid



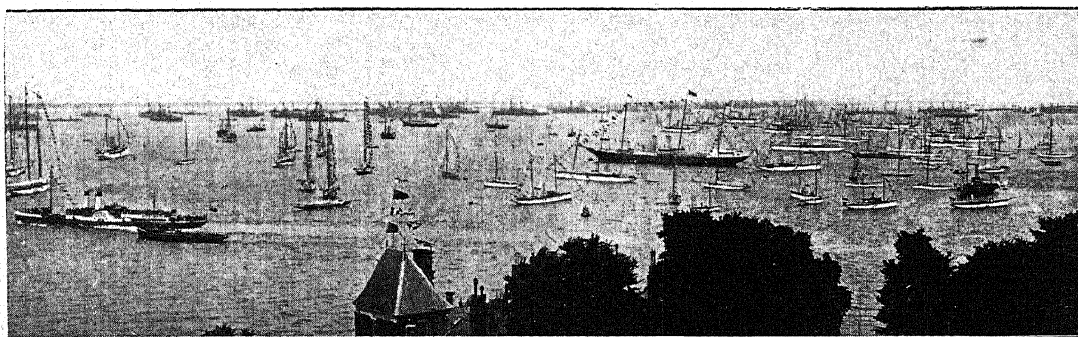
*Photo, Southern Rly.*

#### DOVER, THE HARBOUR FROM CASTLE HILL

hearing this valuable commodity discussed in all its scientific and commercial aspects. The value of the overseas trade of this port averages 31 millions sterling a year.

### Communications

The means of communication, both external and internal, are excellent. The roads are well made and well kept; river navigation has been improved by canalisation; a network of canals exists, especially in the Midlands; railways radiate in all directions,

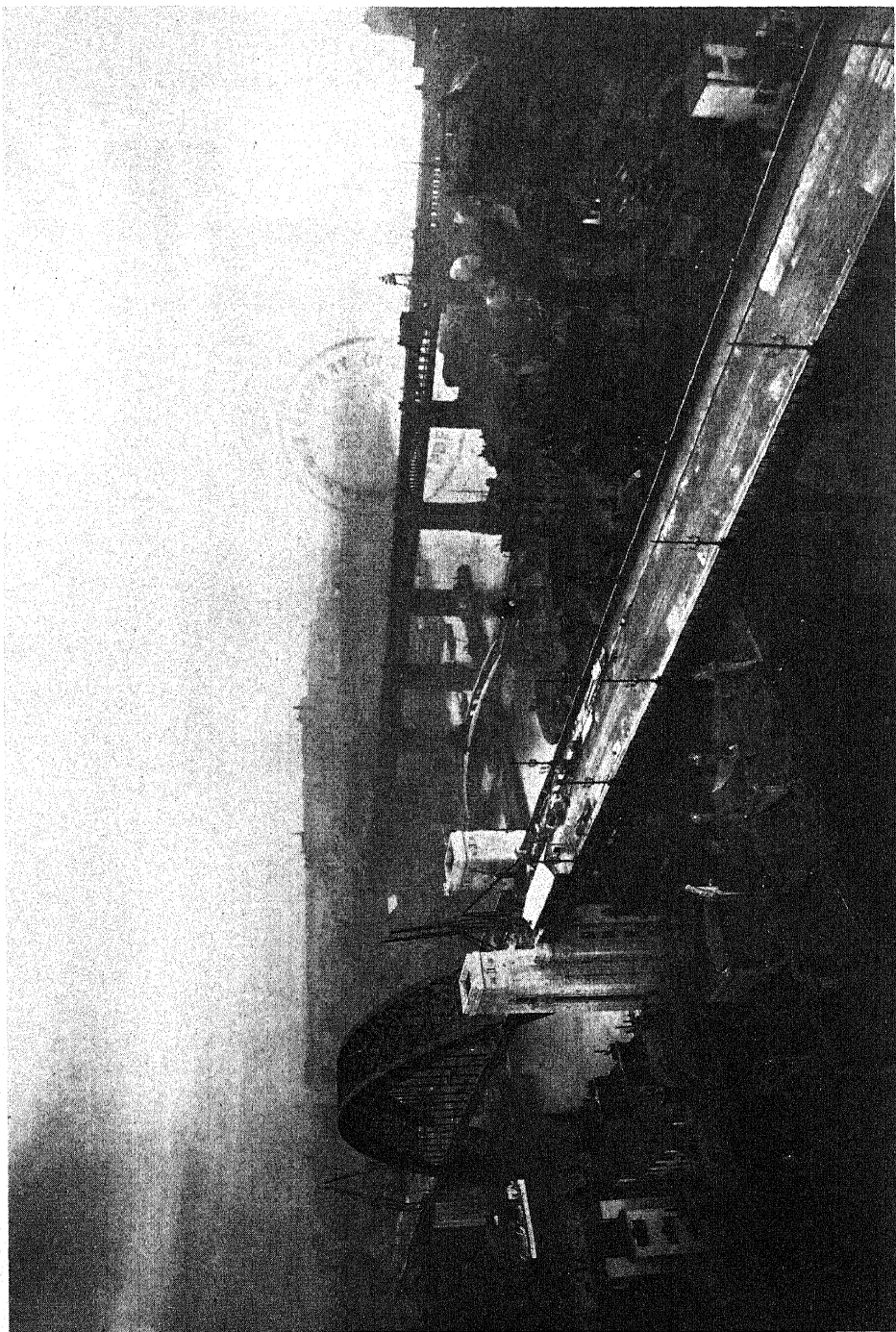


#### THE FAMOUS REGATTA AT COWES, ISLE OF WIGHT

*Photo, Southern Rly.*

The black hull of the King's yacht will be seen among the white fleet





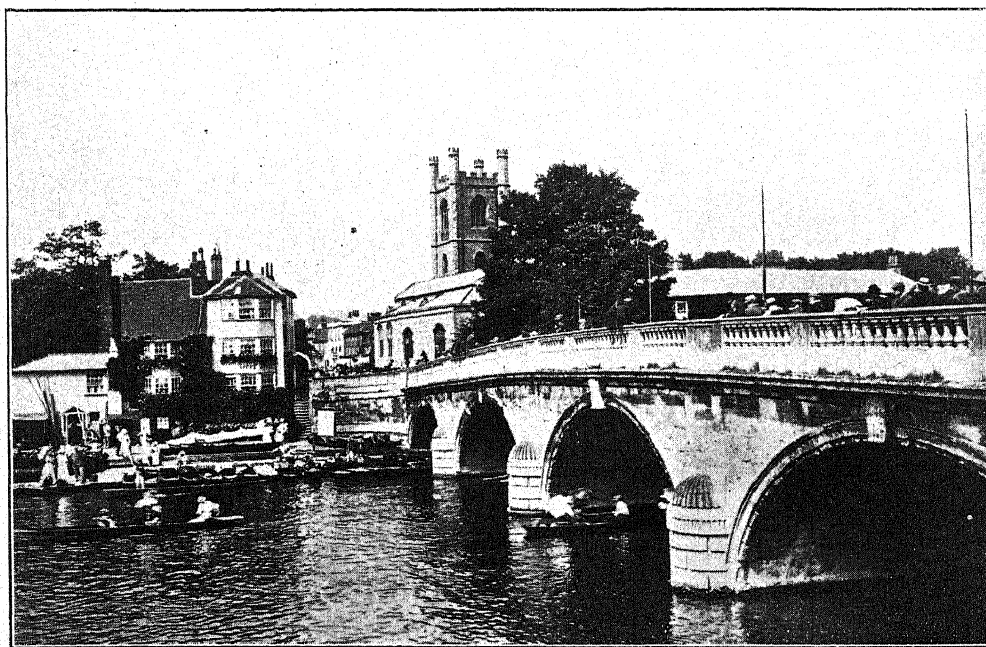
HIGH LEVEL BRIDGE, NEWCASTLE

connecting every commercial centre ; and postal, telegraphic, telephonic and wireless communications are very complete. Motor traffic is also increasing at a great pace. The railway systems can be followed on the map.

Of the navigable rivers it is only necessary to mention the Thames, with the Port of London—probably the most flourishing river, from a financial point of view, of the Old World,—the Trent, the Tyne, the Severn, and the Mersey. The last named is second only in importance to the Thames, its great port of Liverpool giving it a most prominent position. Indeed, the docks of Liverpool are one of the most wonderful things connected with shipping on the face of the globe, and Southampton is now a formidable rival.

The oldest canal in England is the Foss Dyke, from the Trent to the Witham, at Lincoln. Modern canals date from the opening of the Bridgewater Canal in 1761, and their network is densest in the flat Midlands and industrial Lancashire and Yorkshire. It is possible for barges to cross England from east to west and from north-west to south-east by means of the canalised

rivers and canals. The Manchester Ship Canal (opened in 1894) enables large vessels to reach Manchester, thus avoiding "break of bulk." It extends from Eastham on the Mersey, to Manchester, a distance of  $35\frac{1}{2}$  miles, and has a minimum water depth of 28 feet. Gloucester is joined to the navigable part of the Severn by the Gloucester and Berkeley Ship Canal. Other important canals are the Lancaster, connecting Preston with Lancaster and Kendal ; the Leeds and Liverpool ; the Aire and Calder, connecting Goole with Leeds ; the Grand Junction, stretching from the Trent to the Thames ; the Trent and Mersey ; the Shropshire Union connecting the Severn and the Dee with Birmingham ; the Thames and Severn ; the Kennet-Avon ; the Oxford Canal ; the Great Western, connecting Bridgwater with Tiverton ; the Bude and Launceston ; the Wey and Arun ; the Bedford River ; the Royal Military (Rye to Hythe) ; and the Bridgewater. Barges are the cheapest and most commodious means of transport (inland) for heavy and bulky goods not needing quick transit ; and there is certainly urgent need of deeper and wider canals.



HENLEY, OXFORDSHIRE  
Henley Bridge

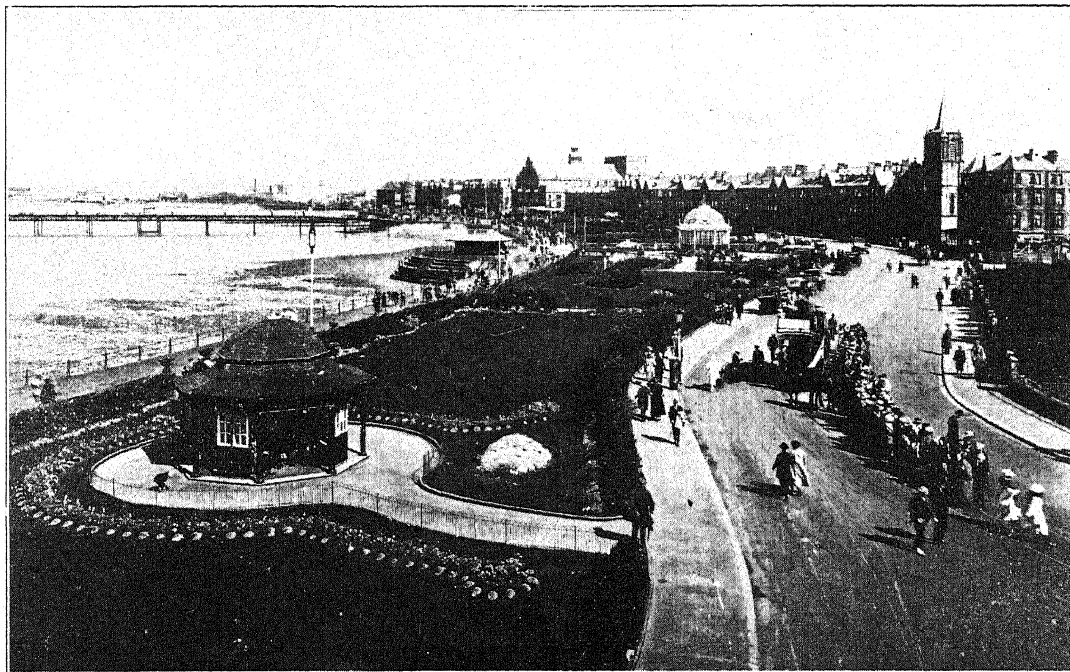
*Photo, G.W. Rly.*



*Photo, Robinson*

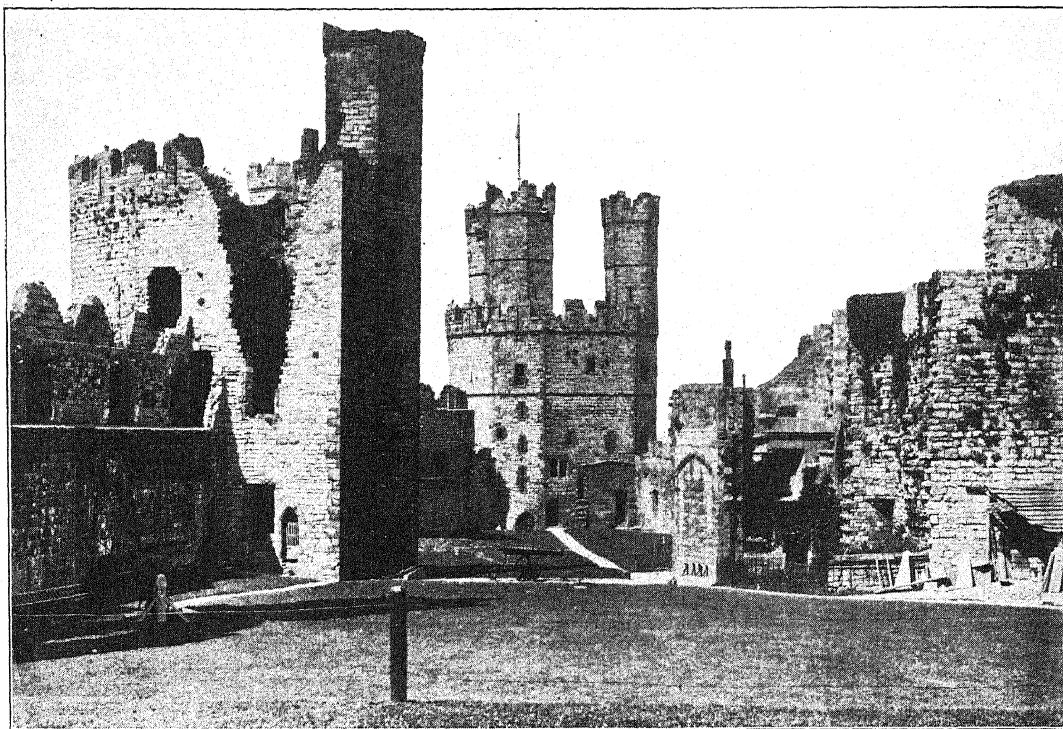
**LOWESTOFT, SUFFOLK**  
Esplanade and Beach

*[Courtesy Lowestoft Publicity Committee]*



**MORECAMBE, LANCASHIRE**  
Western Promenade

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*



CARNARVON CASTLE

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*



TAUNTON, SOMERSET  
Gerrard's Cross

*Photos, G.W. Rly.*



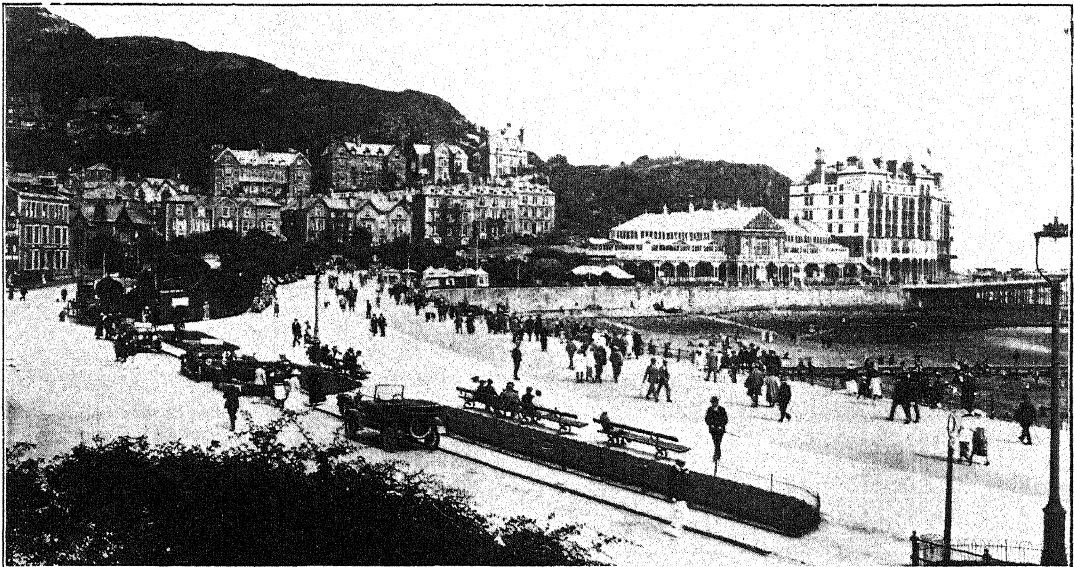
Important cross-Channel routes are Dover to Calais (22 miles), Folkestone to Boulogne (26 miles), Newhaven to Dieppe (67 miles), Southampton to Havre (112 miles), Cherbourg and the Channel Islands; and Weymouth to the Channel Islands. The chief North Sea routes are Hull to Stavanger, Bergen, Copenhagen, Hamburg, Rotterdam, Antwerp, and Zeebrügge; Newcastle to Bergen, Copenhagen, and Hamburg; Harwich to the Hook of Holland, Rotterdam, Antwerp, and Esbjerg for Denmark; and Dover to Ostend. To Ireland the chief routes are Bristol to Cork (228 miles) and Waterford; Fishguard to Rosslare; Holyhead to Dublin (61 miles) and Greenore (70 miles); and Liverpool to Dublin (121 miles) and Belfast; while Liverpool, Barrow, Fleetwood, and Heysham maintain communication with Douglas (Isle of Man). Liverpool, facing America, has great American and Irish trade; Bristol and Avonmouth's trade is largely Irish and West Indian; Southampton is a modern rival of Liverpool, and trades very largely with France, Channel Islands, Mediterranean, South Africa, the United States, South America, and the Far East; London has a large entrepôt and passenger trade with all parts of the world;

Hull, Grimsby, and Newcastle have important connections with the northern capitals and ports of the Continent of Europe; and Cardiff, Swansea, Newcastle, and Blyth are the great coal ports.

### Fishing and Mining

The seas around Great Britain are prolific in many kinds of fish, and the industry is pursued with great success by a vast army of fishermen, certainly not less than 50,000. There are many well-known fishing ports in various parts of the United Kingdom, particularly Hull, Grimsby, Yarmouth, Harwich, Lowestoft, Ramsgate, Penzance, Plymouth, and St. Ives; but the greatest centre is Billingsgate Market, in London, the largest fish market in the world. Mention must also be made of the fishing grounds of the Isle of Man. The principal North Sea fishing grounds are on the Dogger Bank and in the seas around Iceland. The average annual value of the fish landed in the British Isles each year is about £18,000,000.

England's position in the commercial world is largely due to her great mineral wealth. Coal was utilised at an early stage, and this fact gave the country an enormous lead over the nations of the Continent, for it brought



LLANDUDNO, CARNARVONSHIRE  
The Promenade and Pavilion

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

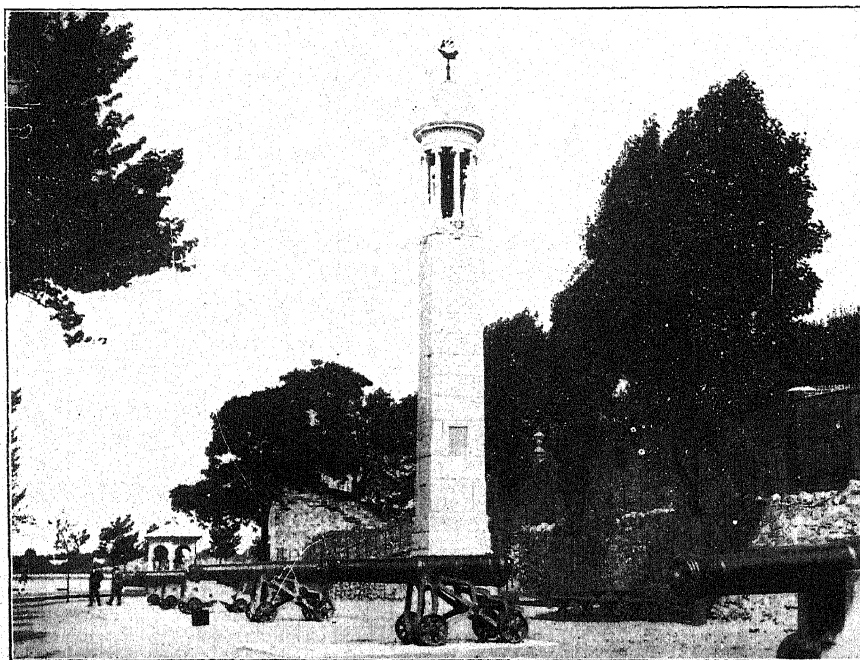


about the localisation of industries, better communications, expanding markets, and the acquisition of colonies. Between 200,000,000 and 300,000,000 tons of coal are raised annually. The principal fields are Northumberland and Durham; Whitehaven; Lancashire and North-east Cheshire; York, Derby, and Nottingham; North and South Staffordshire; Warwickshire; Worcestershire; Coalbrookdale; Ashby-de-la-Zouch; North Wales (Flint and Denbigh); South Wales (Taff and Rhondda Valleys); Forest of Dean; Bristol and Somerset. Coal exists in Kent, and is now being worked. Iron is second only to coal in importance. The quantity of ore produced each year is about 10,000,000 tons. The chief iron fields are the Cleveland District of Yorkshire, with Middlesbrough as the centre; the Furness District of Lancashire, with Barrow as the centre; South Wales; Sheffield, Rotherham and Lowmoor; Staffordshire; North Wales; Northampton; Lincolnshire; and Forest of Dean. The other minerals obtained are tin (in Cornwall), lead, slate, granite, salt, china-

clay, marble, mill-stone grit, building stone, limestone, sandstone, and zinc. The average annual value of the total mineral production is £220 millions. (See also *Agriculture, Mining, Finance and Commerce.*)

## Tourist Centres

The pleasure and tourist resorts of England and Wales are far too numerous to even give here a list of them. Broadly outlined, they include: (1) the chief seaside towns on the South, East and West Coasts, the position, names and interesting features of which can be seen by referring to the *maps*; (2) the Lake District; (3) the Peak District of Derbyshire; (4) the Upper Reaches of the Thames; (5) the historic University towns, such as Oxford and Cambridge; (6) Dartmoor and Exmoor; (7) the Norfolk Broads; (8) Stratford-on-Avon and Shakespeare's Country; (9) North Wales and the Snowdon Range; (10) the Isle of Wight; (11) the Isle of Man; (12) the Channel Islands; (13) the Surrey



SOUTHAMPTON, HAMPSHIRE

*Photo, Southern Rly.*

The Mayflower Monument, where the Pilgrim Fathers embarked for America

**BRIGHTON***Photo, Southern Rly.*

One of the principal seaside resorts on the South Coast

Hills, near London; and (14) the historic Castles, Cathedrals and Abbeys in all parts of the Kingdom. Many of the gems of English, Welsh (as well as Irish and Scottish) scenery can, however, be seen in the illustrations.

### Isle of Wight

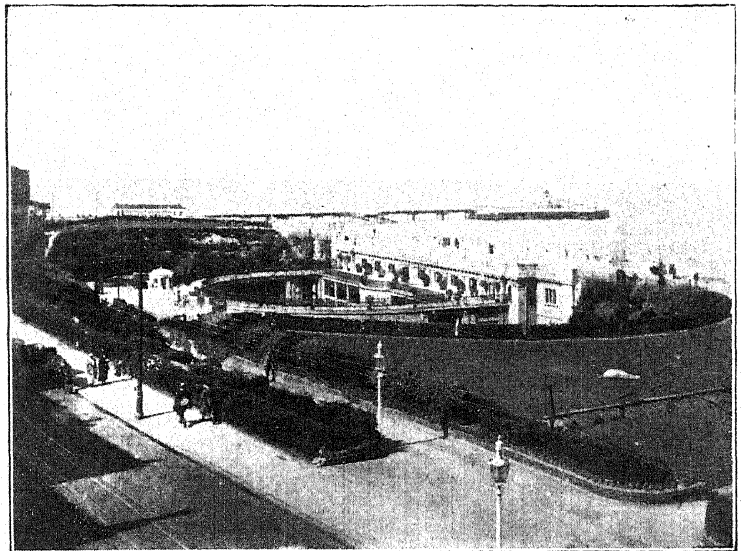
This island, which has an area of 147 square miles and a population of about 99,000, is situated off the south coast of England, and is divided from Hampshire by the Solent and Spithead. It stands at the entrance to Southampton Water and opposite to Portsmouth, the principal Naval Base of the Empire (*q.v.*). It is an Administrative County of England, and is famous for its beautiful scenery, climate, the great Regatta and Yachting Week held each year at Cowes, and for its small, but picturesque and modern, seaside resorts. The capital is Newport,

in the interior of the Island, while Cowes, at the mouth of the Medina, is the chief port. The seaside resorts are Ryde (the principal commercial town), Sandown, Shanklin, Ventnor, Freshwater, Yarmouth, Totland Bay, Bembridge, and Seaview (*q.v.*).

### Scilly Isles

This small group of islands forms a dependency of Cornwall. They are distant about 27 miles from Land's End. The group consists of 40 islets, with a total area of 4,000 acres. The five inhabited islands are St. Mary's, St. Martin's, St. Agnes, Tresco, and Bryher. The capital is Hugh Town, St. Mary's. The total population of the group is between 1,800 and 2,000, according to season.

These islands were known to the Greeks as the Hesperides, and to the Romans as

**MARGATE***Photo, Southern Rly.*

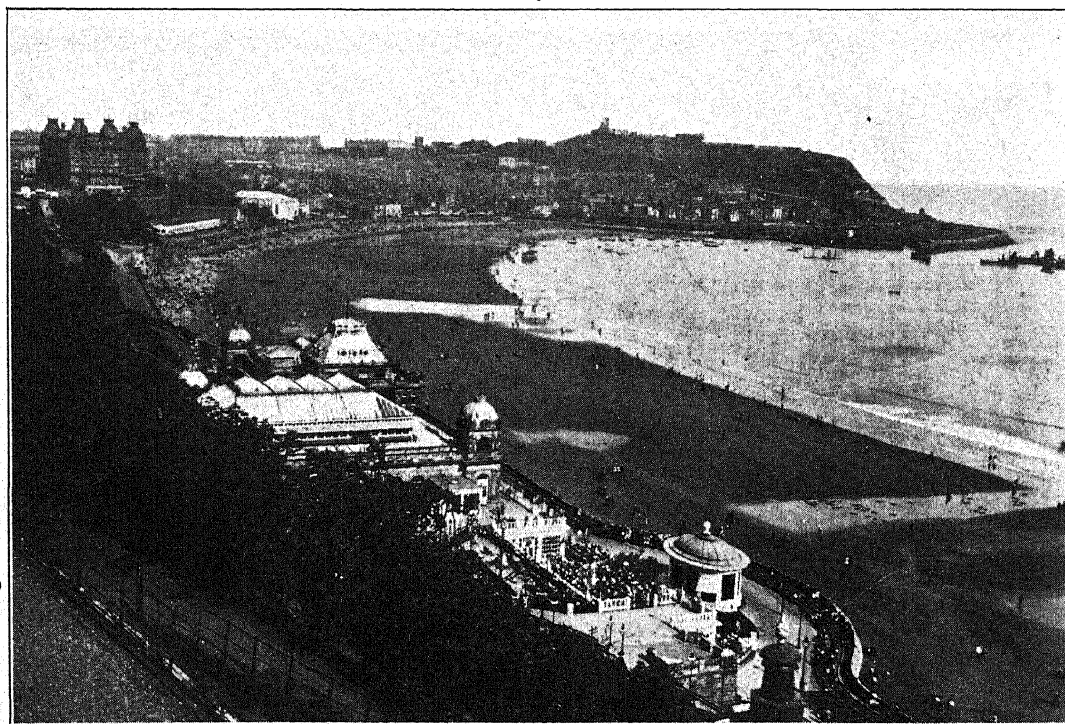
One of the favourite resorts on the South-east Coast

the *Silures Insulae*. Their climate is moist and warm, with a mean annual temperature of 52 deg. F. Many kinds of sub-tropical flowers and plants flourish. The scenery is exceptionally picturesque, several of the larger islands being covered with cultivated flowers during the early spring. The principal industry is flower culture, and many hundred of tons of blooms, bulbs and seeds are annually shipped to Penzance for transport by rail to the London and provincial markets.

### Channel Islands

This group of islands, which forms one of the separate divisions of the Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, lie in the English Channel, in latitude 49° N., and longitude 2° W. The principal islands are Jersey, Guernsey, Alderney and Great Sark; but there are several small adjoining islets, notable among which are Herm, Little Sark, Jethou, Brechou, and Lithou, the last being inhabited by a single family. The Channel Islands now form the last remnant of the

large Norman Provinces once subject to the Crown of England. They came with the Conquest, and have remained under British rule ever since. The total area of these islands is 73 square miles, and the population numbers about 95,000. They are administered by a Lieutenant-Governor, representing the King (Duke of Normandy), and have local Legislatures, called States. There is also a Royal Court, or judicial body, presided over by the Bailiff, appointed by the Crown. Although French is the official language of the local Legislatures, English is permitted in the Legislative Assembly. These islands are almost exempt from Imperial taxation, and enjoy a relatively large trade. Many of the people still speak the old Norman dialect. The principal English ports for the steamboat lines running to and from these islands are Southampton and Weymouth (summer service). The former is 119 miles distant from Guernsey, and 149 miles (*via* Guernsey) from the principal island of Jersey. They are distant from the French coast 15-30 miles.



Photo, G. F. Cuttle

SCARBOROUGH, SOUTH BAY

Scarborough Corporation

One of the chief seaside resorts on the North-east Coast



**BRIDLINGTON**  
Royal Princes Parade

*Photo, Bridlington Corporation*

### **JERSEY.**

This is the principal island of the group, and has an area of about 28,717 statute acres. It is 12 miles long and 7 miles broad ; and is about 15 miles from the coast of France. The population numbers about 53,000. It is well-wooded and most picturesque in appearance. The coast line is deeply indented and extremely rugged, especially in the north. There are several beautiful bays—St. Clement's, Grouville, St. Catherine's, Bouley, St. Ouen's, St. Brelade's, and St. Aubin's. The interior is highly fertile, and is intersected by deep and beautiful valleys.

Jersey offers a pretty combination of French and English colouring, with quaint old world customs, side by side with the most modern conveniences and amusements. The climate is peculiarly mild and equable ; the mean annual temperature being about 53 deg. F. Many varieties of sub-tropical plants and palms grow luxuriantly in the open. In addition to the charm of its scenery, Jersey has much of historical interest. There are primitive and Druidic remains, and several old castles. It was

here, on 6th January, 1781, that the last battle on English soil was fought. The tomb of the gallant defender of the island, Major Francis Pierson, and that of his French adversary, Baron de Rullecourt, can be seen in the church and churchyard at St. Helier, the capital.

The principal agricultural products of this island are wheat, potatoes and tomatoes ; and the total area under cultivation is approximately 23,000 acres. There are about 2,080 horses, 9,600 cattle, 127 sheep, and 2,883 pigs in the island. The Jersey and Guernsey breed of cows are famous the world over. The exports from the Channel Islands to the United Kingdom amount in average annual value to about £3,500,000 per annum, and consist principally of potatoes, tomatoes, grapes and flowers. The imports from the United Kingdom are valued at £3,900,000 per annum, and consist almost entirely of manufactured goods. The revenue of Jersey amounts to about £240,000 per annum, and the expenditure to £250,000. The Public Debt is approximately £490,000.



TUNBRIDGE WELLS  
The Common

The capital is St. Helier, a busy, modern little town, with a good harbour, fine shops, hotels, a theatre, clubs, a promenade, bathing facilities, and other up-to-date conveniences and attractions. It stands in a sheltered bay on the south side of the island. There is no lack of amusements in this bright little town, which has its annual battle of flowers, and other fêtes. As a tourist centre for the Channel Islands and the neighbouring French coast it is unrivalled, regular steamboat communication being maintained not only with Southampton, Weymouth, Guernsey, Alderney and Sark, but also with St. Malo and Granville. The main roads of the island are excellent for motoring and cycling; and the railway facilities are good. Jersey has long been known as the "Happy Land of Fruit and Flowers," and much of its scenery is inimitable. It also provides an object lesson in self-government. Pauperism and crime are of rare occurrence. The famous medical authority, Sir Benjamin Brodie, once wrote: "If you want health for the body, rest for the mind, pure air and splendid scenery—all of God's gifts which go to make a terrestrial Paradise—I emphati-

cally advise you to go to Jersey."

### GUERNSEY.

Situated about seventeen miles north-west of Jersey, and the most westerly of the Channel Islands, Guernsey is 9 miles long, about 5 miles broad, and has an area of 15,650 acres. It abounds in sandy bays enclosed by bold and precipitous rocks. Ranking second among the Channel Islands in point

of size, its climate is exceedingly mild and equable; the winters are especially favourable to invalids—the frosts only averaging two a year. Good bathing may be had from the fine beaches and sands. The drives through the many water-lanes of the island, rich with luxuriant flora, are most charming, and many rocks and caves along the coast are also of interest.

A peculiarity of the formation of the island is that the south coast consists of a bold cliff, rising to a height of about 270 ft., and from this elevation the land slopes gently down to the flat beach on the north side of the island.

St. Peter's (or St. Pierre Port), the principal town, which is built in terraces upon a slope, has good hotels; and bands, concerts, carnivals and *al fresco* entertainments are



GUERNSEY, A COAST SCENE

Photos, Southern Rly.



held during the summer season. There is an 18-hole golf course. The Gothic church is an important specimen of mediæval architecture. At Hauteville House, Victor Hugo lived for many years. Castle Cornet, standing on an island in the harbour, is the old residence of the Governors. In 1672 it was partially destroyed by an explosion of gunpowder, and on the following day the infant daughter of the Governor was discovered asleep among the ruins, unhurt.\* The principal agricultural productions of Guernsey are green crops, oats, tomatoes and fruit. The area under cultivation is 14,000 acres; and there were 1,675 horses, 6,288 cattle, 280 sheep, and 2,510 pigs in the island at the last agricultural census.

\* *Holiday Haunts.* G.W.R.



TRESCO ABBEY RUINS, SCILLY ISLANDS

The revenue averages £300,000, and the expenditure £260,000, with a Public Debt of over £660,000. For administrative purposes the smaller islands, including Alderney and Sark, form dependencies of Guernsey.

#### ALDERNEY AND SARK.

About these two islands little can be said for they are both very small. Alderney, which is the most northerly of the group, and is distant only ten miles due west from Cape La Hogue, in France, is 4 miles long,  $1\frac{1}{4}$  miles broad, and has an area of 1,962 statute acres. The coast line is bold and rocky, rising in many parts to a height of 100–200ft. The soil of the narrow interior is fertile, and good crops of corn and potatoes are obtained. Much of this little island is composed of



ST. AUBIN'S, JERSEY, CHANNEL ISLANDS *Photos, G.W. Rly.*

grass lands for the famous Alderney cows. The population numbers over 2,500. There is a town in the centre of the island, and a harbour for vessels at Crabley. The French language and customs prevail. About six miles north-west of Alderney are the dangerous Casket rocks.

The Island of Great Sark is distant about six miles east of Guernsey, and is 3 miles long, and varies in breadth from a few yards to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles. It has a total area of 1,035 acres. The coast line is formed by abrupt cliffs, rising to a height of 300 ft., deep valleys intersect the high ground.

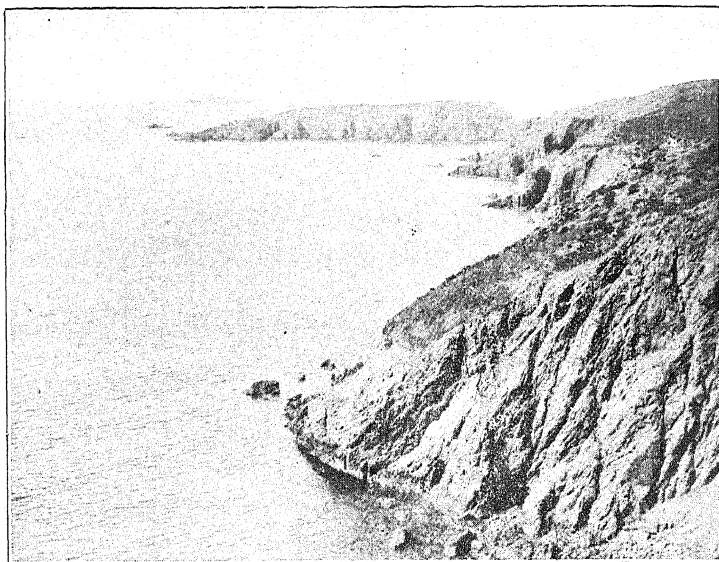
The soil is fertile and apples and vegetables are grown. The steamer from Guernsey lands passengers at Creux Harbour, whence a tunnel leads through the high cliffs to the interior of the island. The coupee, a natural causeway 100 yards long but only from 10 to 15 feet wide, has a precipitous descent of about 290 feet on either side. The Gouliot Caves are remarkable for their wonderfully coloured Zoophites. Dixcart Bay, the Creux Derrible, and the Seigneuric, or Manor of the Lord of Sark, are also points of interest.

The population of this picturesque little island with that of the islets of Brechou (74 acres), Little Sark (239 acres), Herm (320 acres), Jethou (44 acres) and Lithou (38 acres) numbers about 600.\*

### Isle of Man

The fourth division into which Great Britain is divided for general administrative purposes is formed by the Isle of Man, which is situated in the Irish Sea (latitude  $54^{\circ} 4' N.$ , and longitude  $4^{\circ} 36' W.$ ), midway between England and Ireland. It is approximately 34 miles in length and from 7 to 12 miles in breadth, and has an area of 227 square miles, with a population of 50,000.

\* The names of some of these smaller islands are sometimes spelt—Lihou, Burhou, etc.

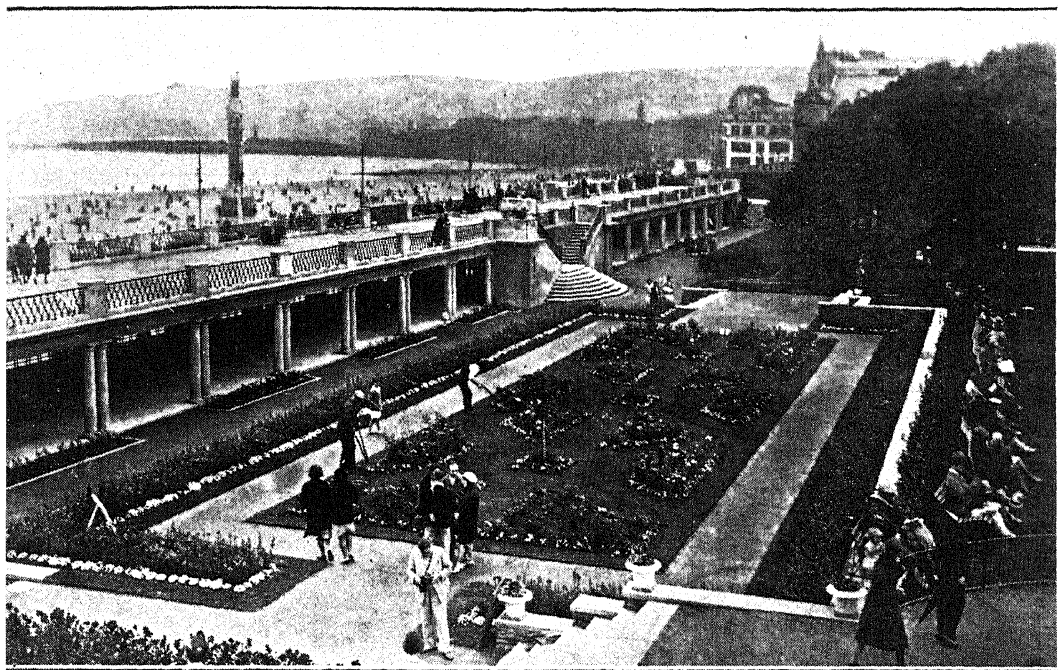


VIEW FROM THE ISLAND OF SARK, SHOWING BRECHOU, HERM AND JETHOU

*Photo, Southern Rly.*

Early in the ninth century it was inhabited by Norwegians who had emigrated from Norway to the Western Islands of Scotland. They grew prosperous and incurred the envy and displeasure of Harold, King of Norway, who despatched a powerful expedition which conquered the Scottish Islands (Orkneys, Shetlands, Western Isles, and Man) in 870. All of these islands remained under Norwegian rule for fully three centuries; but the victory of the Scottish King, Alexander III, over the Norwegian Haco, at the famous battle of Largs (1263), caused all these islands to come under Scottish rule. Henry IV, of England, seized the Isle of Man and presented it to the Stanley family, from whom it passed to the Duke of Atholl in 1736, and later to his daughter Charlotte. It was partly purchased by the British Parliament in 1765 for the sum of £70,000; and in 1827 it was finally sold to the Crown for £417,144. It is rich in both mineral and agricultural land. The cultivated area is about 82,612 acres.

The Isle of Man is governed by a Legislature, called the Tynwald, which is divided into "The Governor and Council," and the "House of Keys." Bills must pass both Houses before being sent to London for the Royal Assent, and must be signed by the legal quorum of each House, which, in the



DOUGLAS, ISLE OF MAN



DOUGLAS HARBOUR, ISLE OF MAN

*Photo, Manx Government*

case of the Upper House, consists of the Governor and two members, and in the Lower House of thirteen members, being the majority out of the total membership of twenty-four. Even after these stages have been passed a Bill does not become law until it has been promulgated on Tynwald Hill in both the English and Manx languages. A certificate of promulgation must be signed by the Governor and the Speaker of the House of Keys.

The natives of Man are Celtic and Norwegian in origin, and in the language, which is known as Manx, Celtic is predominant. English is, however, spoken all over the island.

The northern coast is composed of low-lying sand dunes, while in the south magnificent cliffs rise abruptly from the sea to a height of over 1,000 ft. "But the chief glory of Manx scenery is to be found in its lovely glens, which are everywhere in evidence. The Isle of Man railways run to Ramsey, embosomed in delightful hills, and furnished with a magnificent stretch of sand; Peel, the old-world and picturesque fishing

port; Port St. Mary, the delight of the artist; Castletown, with its grand castle, the most perfect of feudal stronghold palaces in the British Isles; and Port Erin, famed for its beautiful bay. Scattered all over the island are pretty and secluded hamlets, such as Dalby, Ballasalla, Kirk Michael, Ballaugh, and Soulby. The electric railway opens up many of the most charming of the glens of Manxland. The sea-water surrounding this pretty island is of exceptional purity and marvellously clear, the sea-bed being clearly discernable at a depth of 60 ft."\*

Douglas, the capital, has a resident population of just under 21,000, which is very largely increased by visitors during the summer months.

Among the many points of interest in this island must be mentioned Laxey, with its beautiful glens, its silver-lead mines, and the electric mountain railway to the summit of Snaefell; the highest point in the island (about 2,000 ft.).

\* *Isle of Man.* L.M.S.R. Co.



COLWYN BAY, WALES  
Promenade and Sands

Photo, L.M.S. Rly.

# SCOTLAND

THE Kingdom of Scotland comprises the northern part of the island of Great Britain, and has an area of 31,510 square miles, that is, over one-fourth of the area of the United Kingdom. The population at the census in 1921 was 4,882,288, and, in 1930, it was estimated that this had increased to just under five millions. The islands of Scotland are very numerous, and are treated separately in this article. Except for fishing and the production of home-spun tweeds, they are not of much commercial importance, and their agricultural possibilities are diminished by the strong winds from the North Atlantic which sweep over them.

## COAST LINE.

The coast line of Scotland is deeply indented in all parts, and there is no place in the whole country which is more than forty miles distant from the sea. Even the boundary line between England and Scotland, from the Solway Firth to the mouth of the Tweed, is only seventy miles across. The proportion of sea coast to area is one mile of coast to 11 square miles of area. This fact would be of enormous advantage to the country if there were manufacturing districts in the north; but the conditions are such that this seems very unlikely to happen. The result is that harbours are not numerous. On the west the only important one is where the Clyde estuary stretches into the Lowlands. On the east coast the good harbours are only to be found where the Tay and the Forth reach into the heart of the Lowlands, and at the mouth of the Dee in Aberdeenshire.

For the purpose of topographical description Scotland must be divided into three regions—Southern, Central and Northern—

which more or less correspond with the popular designation of Borderlands, Lowlands and Highlands.

## THE BORDERLANDS.

This includes the country lying along the English border and stretching northwards to the Lammermuir and Pentland Hills. It embraces the counties of Berwick, Roxburgh, Selkirk, Peebles, Dumfries, parts of South Lanarkshire and Ayrshire, and small portions of the East and Mid-Lothians. These borderlands are decidedly mountainous, presenting many ranges and isolated mountains over 2,000 ft. high. In the extreme south-east are the Cheviot Hills, famous in border romance. They consist principally of grassy uplands affording excellent pasture. The principal heights are the Cheviot (2,676 ft.), Carter Bar and Peel Fell (1,975 ft.). When the centre of this region is reached the country assumes a more truly mountainous character, presenting Queensbury Hill, the Lowthers, Cutler's Fell, White Combe, and Dollar Law, which attain the respective heights of 2,285 ft., 2,403 ft., 2,454 ft., 2,695 ft., and 2,680 ft. Among the curious isolated mountains are Cairnsmuir (2,612 ft.), and Criffel (1,866 ft.), both in Kirkcudbrightshire; and Tinto Hill in Lanarkshire. Many of these mountains have rounded summits, gentle slopes, and are grass covered, thus being deficient in the grander features of mountain scenery. Between the ridges and isolated groups are broad fertile, undulating and even level plains, also the famous border dales, such as Annandale, Nithdale and Teviotdale, which take their names from the rivers which flow through them. The general aspect of the country is one of undulating





uplands, culminating here and there in lofty round-topped mountains, with rich pasture lands, broad open plains, and well-watered and wooded dales.

Geologically, nearly three-quarters of Scotland's southern region belongs to the Silurian system, and is composed of slate. Valuable lead mines have long been worked at Wanlockhead and Leadhills, on the borders of Lanarkshire and Dumfriesshire. The Cheviots

Dumbarton, Stirling, Perth, Fife, Forfar, and the largest part of Kincardine. Although the smallest of the three regions, occupying about one-sixth of the whole of Scotland, it contains nearly three-fifths of the total population, and is by far the richest zone, both in minerals, industry and historical romance. It embraces the valleys of the Clyde, Forth and Tay; and possesses many of the principal cities, towns and harbours



GLASGOW, SAUCHIEHALL STREET (Looking West)

*Photochrom Co. Ltd.*

are principally composed of porphyry, and granite is found in Kirkcudbrightshire and Ayrshire. Limestone and coal have been worked in the east of Dumfriesshire.

### THE LOWLANDS.

This zone begins where its name implies—at the termination of the Southern Region—and extends northwards to the foot of the Grampians. It includes the Lothians, nearly all Lanarkshire and Ayrshire, Renfrewshire,

of Scotland, including Edinburgh, Glasgow, Perth, Dundee, St. Andrew's, Leith, and Stirling. Although taken generally this central region is less elevated than many other parts of Scotland, it is devoid of monotony, and possesses many beauty spots. The principal hills are the Campsie Fells, the Ochil Hills, and the Sidlaw Hills. Coal and iron are worked over a large area, especially in Fife and Lanark, and exist in a number of separate fields over an area of about 1,000 square miles.



HELENSBURGH, SCOTLAND  
Sands and Promenade

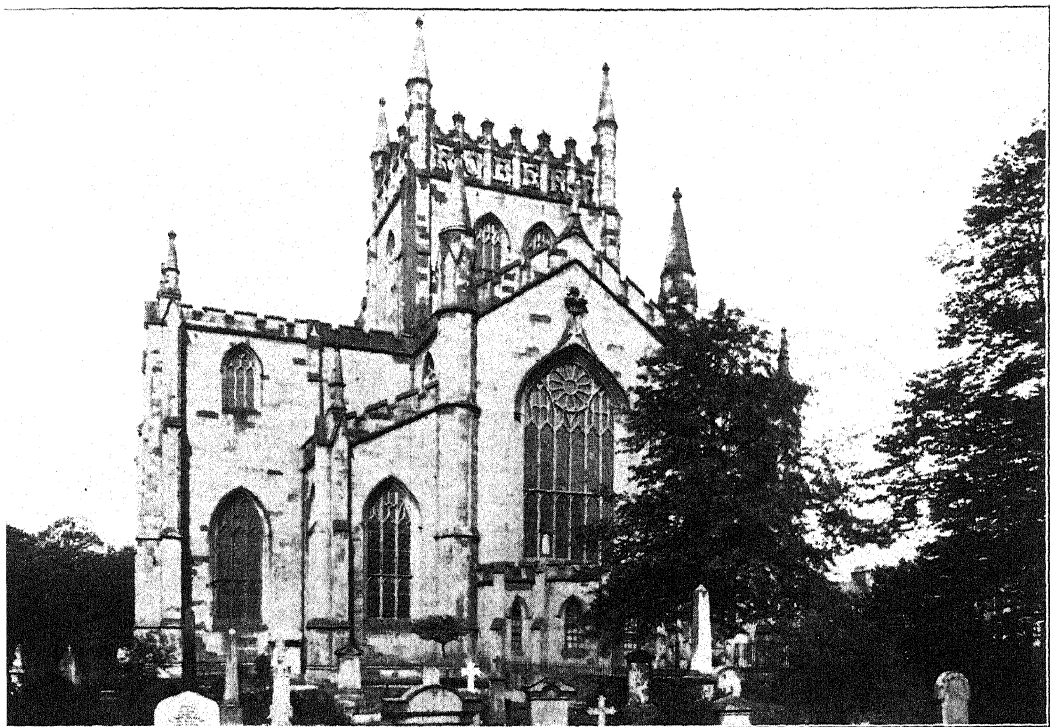
### THE HIGHLANDS.

This comprises by far the largest portion of Scotland, and includes the whole country north of a line drawn from the Firth of Clyde to a point just south of Aberdeen. It is traversed by many mountain ranges, the principal of which is the Grampians. This area is divided into a northern and a southern region by the Great Glen. So irregularly grouped are the mountains in the Highlands that it would be impossible to point to any particular ridge as the axis of the various systems. The Grampians are, however, the loftiest chain in the British Isles, and have many summits over 4,000 ft. high. The culminating point is Ben Nevis (4,406 ft.); and Ben Macdhui is 4,296 ft. The latter is one of a curious cluster of mountains on the borders of Aberdeen, Banff and Inverness. Among the principal peaks in the Western Highlands are: Ben Arthur (The Cobbler) (2,891 ft.), Ben Lomond (3,192 ft.), Ben Voirlich (3,092 ft.), Ben More (3,843 ft.), Ben Stobinanan (3,827 ft.), Ben Cruachan (3,540 ft.), Ben Achallader (3,400 ft.), Ben Doran (3,523 ft.), Schielhallion (3,547 ft.),

Ben Alder (3,757 ft.), Ben Stob Essan (3,658 ft.), and Ben Arnach More (4,060 ft.).

In many parts of the Grampians the scenery is grand but desolate, the lower slopes being covered by a coarse grass or heath which disappears towards the more lofty summits. Many of the peaks are rounded in form, but others terminate in fantastic pinnacles and have sides formed by almost perpendicular precipices, many hundreds of feet deep. On one side of Ben Nevis is a precipice of 1,500 ft., and on Ben Macdhui another of over 1,000 ft. The scenery among the Grampians—lofty, cloud or snow capped, wild and bare—is grand and often awe-inspiring.

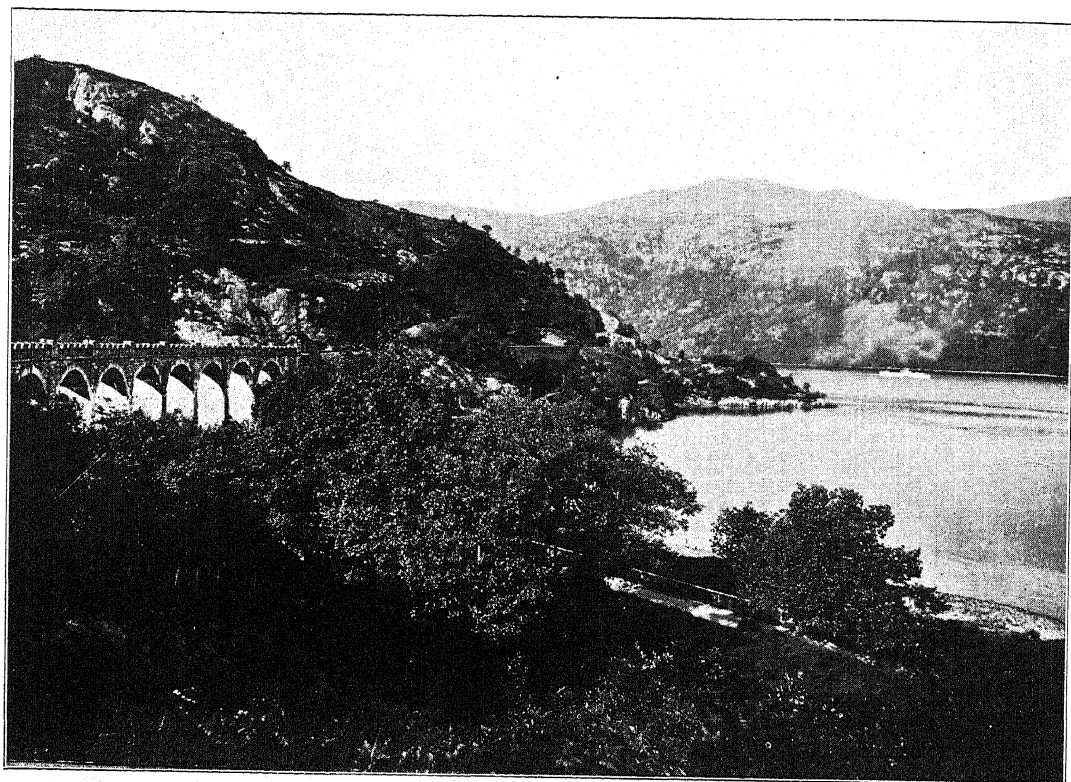
Lying to the north-west of the beautiful valley of Glenmore, with its chain of lakes connected by the Caledonian Canal is another series of lofty mountain ridges, which, however, rise from lofty tablelands destroying the appearance of great height. The principal peak in this system is Ben Wyvis, Ross-shire, which is 3,429 ft. high. Much of the extreme north of Scotland is formed by lofty tablelands and barren



DUNFERMLINE ABBEY



MELROSE, ROXBURGH  
The Abbey



ARDLUI, LOCH LOMOND

valleys, covered with stunted heath, which from the distance appears fertile and undulating.

Geologically, the northern region is formed by chlorite and mica-schists on its southern border. Gneiss is developed in the centre, and granite in Aberdeen. In the islands of Skye and Mull, trap is the principal formation; while the Orkneys are composed principally of old red sandstone. There is an absence of any important carboniferous system. It should be noted that the area of coast land situated between the Moray Firth and Aberdeen, and generally known as Buchan, presents entirely different characteristics, both topographically and ethnologically, to the true or Western Highlands of Scotland. It is neither mountainous, nor exceptionally picturesque, but is, in parts, somewhat wild and rugged, and, taken generally, is inhabited by an industrious seafaring, especially fishing, population.

### RIVERS AND LOCHS.

The principal hydrographical features are the lochs, but owing to the configuration of Scotland the lakes and rivers, which are numerous, are unevenly distributed. Nearly all the lakes of size or beauty are situated in the west, while the important rivers, with the exception of the Clyde, are situated in the east. The following are the principal rivers, nearly all of which are celebrated for their salmon fisheries; the Tweed, which has an approximate length of about 100 miles; the Forth, which has its sources in Ben Lomond, and on the broad estuary of which stands Leith, Rosyth, Grangemouth and Granton (140 miles); the Tay, which has a very rapid current, and discharges into the sea more water—derived from the cloudy-mountain regions—than any other river in Great Britain, and is famous for its salmon fisheries (111 miles). Dundee is its principal town.





LOCH KATRINE AND THE TROSSACHS

*Photo, L.M.S. Riv.*

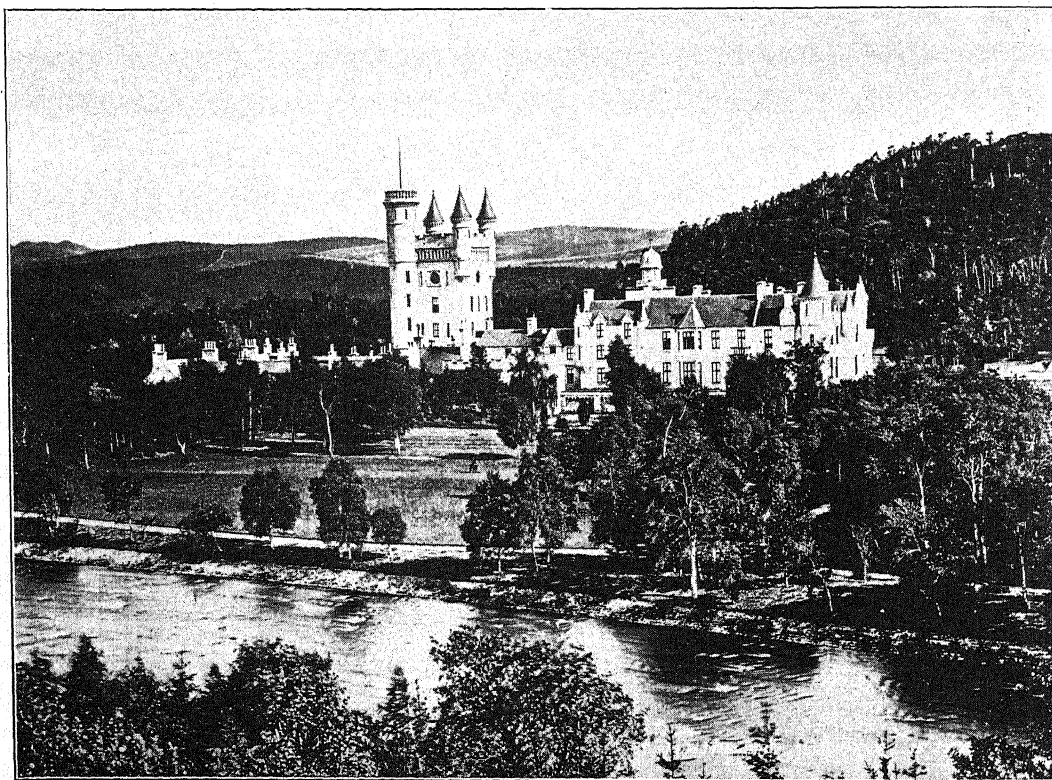
North of the Tay a number of small streams cross the country from the mountains to the sea, the principal of which is the South Esk. Next comes the Dee, originating in the loftiest summits of the Grampians (80 miles), and with the City and Port of Aberdeen at its mouth. The Don (60 miles). Continuing round the bend of the coast at Kinnaird's Head, the rivers flowing in a northerly direction are the Deveron, the Spey (which has an exceptionally rapid current), and the Findhorn, rising in the Monadhliath mountains and flowing into the Moray Firth (50 miles). This latter is prone to overflow its banks, and in 1829 caused what is known as the Moray Floods.

The north and west coasts have no rivers of importance, until the Clyde gives to the latter coast the finest and most navigable river in Scotland. It rises in the highest part of the southern region and for many

miles dashes along in the form of a mountain torrent, with a series of beautiful falls near the town of Lanark. It broadens and becomes navigable at Glasgow, and is about 80 miles in length. On the south coast of Scotland three rivers, the Dee, Nith and Annan, flow into the Solway Firth.

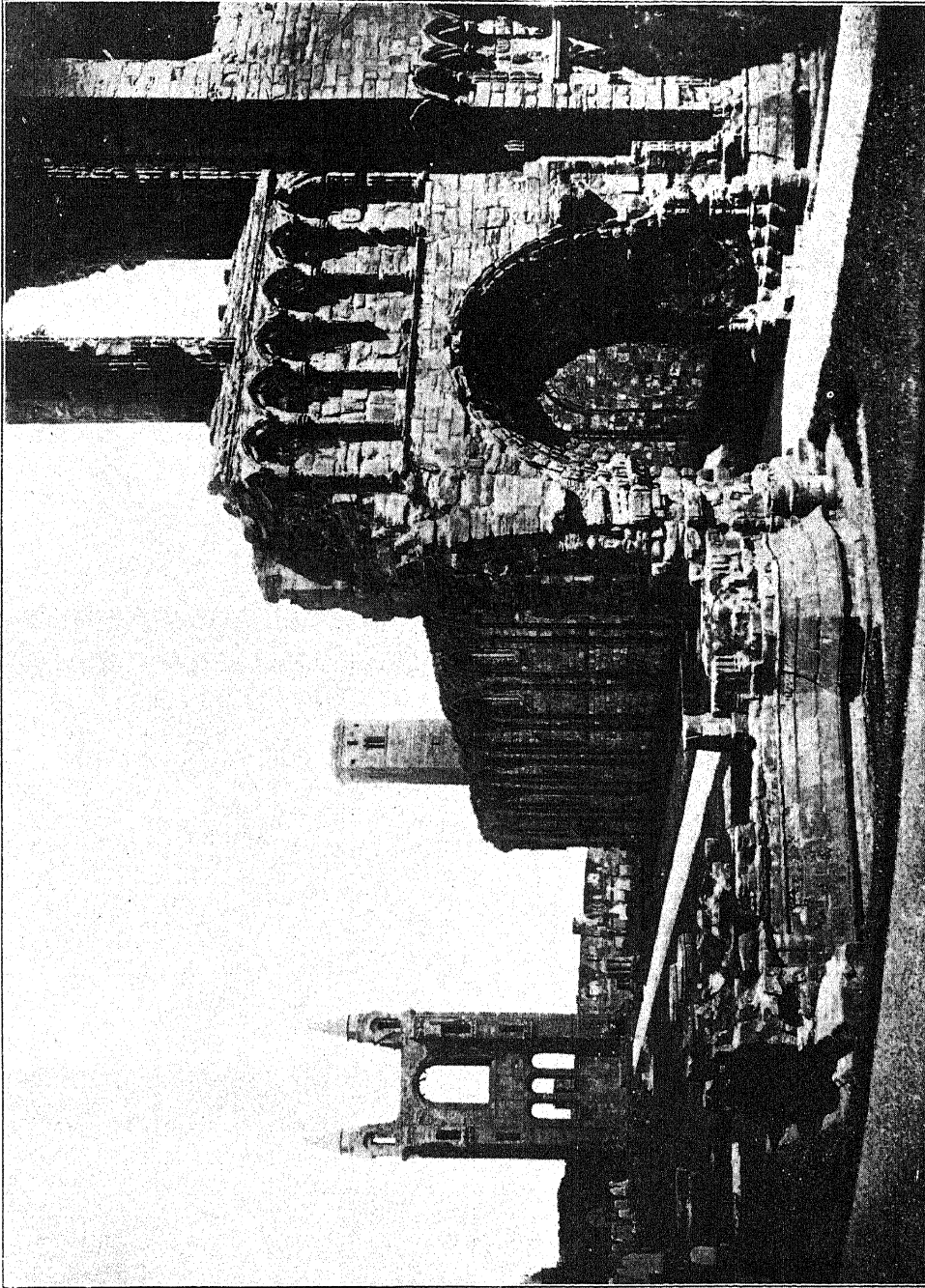
The lochs of Scotland are mostly situated in mountain glens, and are famous for their beauty and grandeur. In shape they are mostly long and narrow. Loch Lomond is one of the finest lakes in the British Isles. It is 24 miles long, and has an area of about 45 square miles. Loch Awe, in Argyllshire, has an area of over 30 square miles. The principal Scottish lakes are as follows: Loch Katrine, Gareloch, Loch Lomond, Loch Awe, Loch Long, Loch Goil, Loch Ossian, Loch Rannoch, Loch Treig, Loch Lochy, Loch Oich, Loch Ness, Loch Linnhe, Loch Leven,\* Loch Eil, Loch Shiel, Loch Fyne

\* The only large and important lake in the Lowlands.



BALMORAL CASTLE

The Scottish residence of their Majesties, the King and Queen



RUINS OF THE FAMOUS CATHEDRAL, ST. ANDREW'S, FIFE

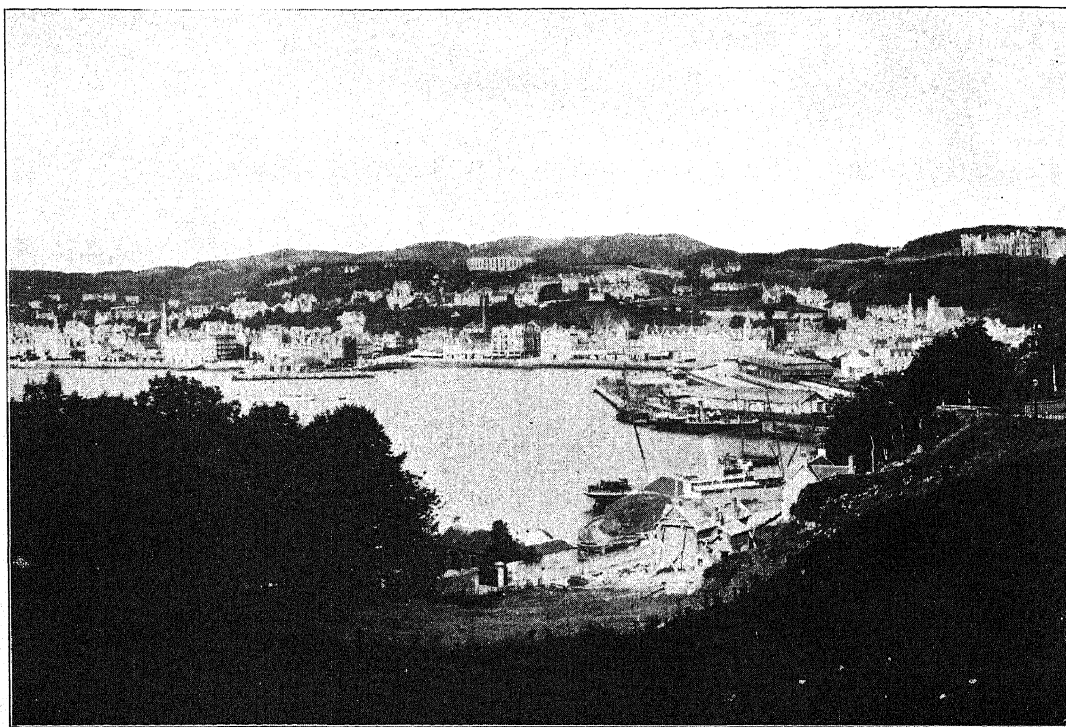
Loch Tay, Loch-nan-Uamh, and Loch Morar. In Inverness-shire Lochs Ness, Oich and Lochy, form the curious chain of lakes which help to form the Caledonian Canal.

### WESTERN ISLANDS.

There are over 510 islands and small islets situated off the west coast of Scotland, between Sutherland and Argyll, but of this number only 105 are inhabited. The total area of these scattered groups is 2,815 square

In later years this was latinised to *Sudor-ensis*, which name is still used for the Anglican bishopric of "Sodor and Man."

The principal groups are the Inner and the Outer Hebrides. The largest island in the former is Skye, which has an area of about 643 square miles, and forms a dependency of Inverness. It is separated from the mainland by the Sound of Sleat and Kyle Hea, which vary in breadth from 15 to 24 miles.



OBAN AND BAY  
The Key to the Western Highlands

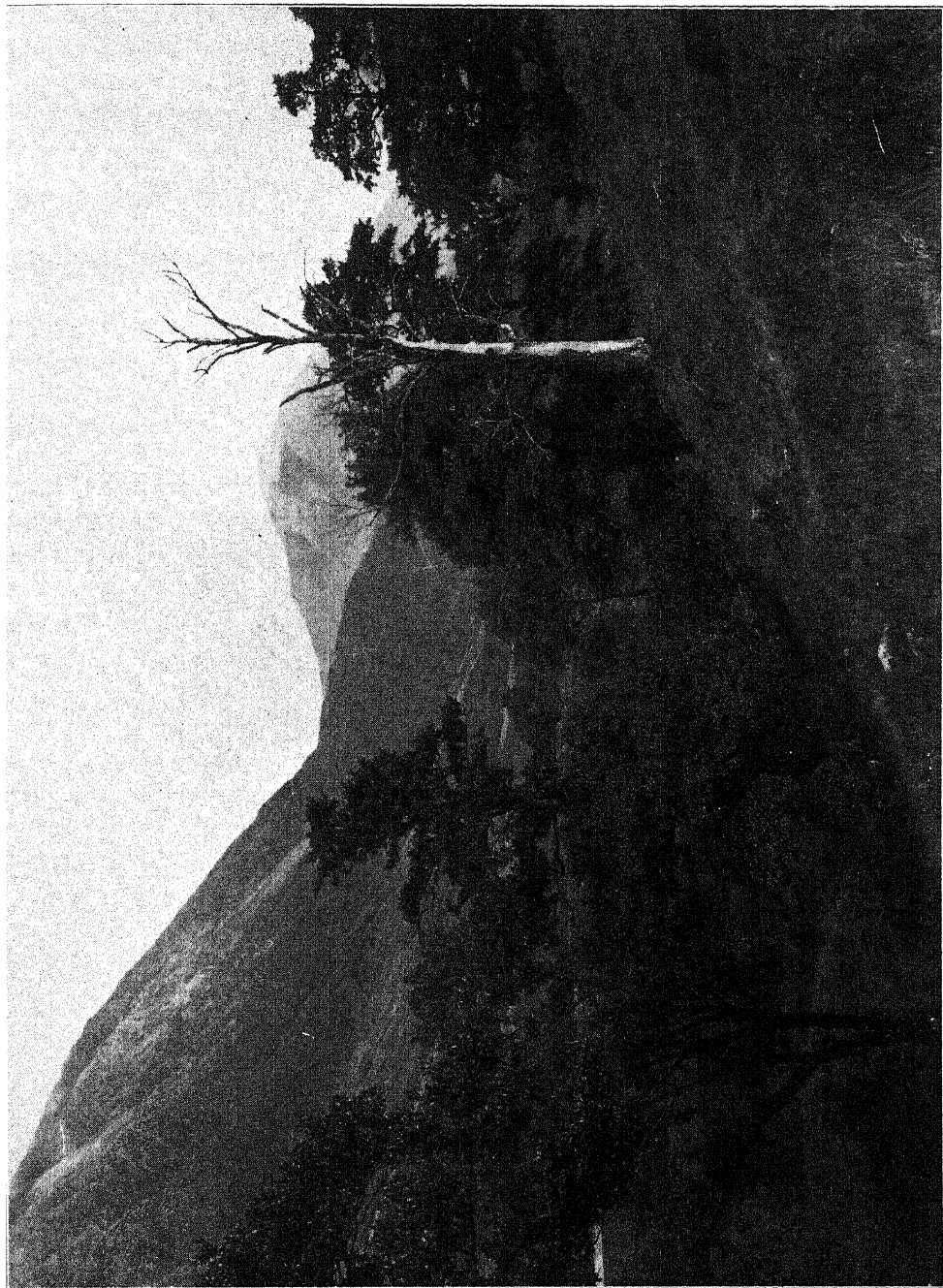
Photochrom Co. Ltd.

miles, and the population about 82,000. So mountainous are these islands that only about 300 square miles of land is suitable for cultivation. The principal industries are fishing and the hand weaving of the famous Scotch tweeds.

Up to the end of the 13th Century the "Hebrides" included all these islands as well as those in the Firth of Clyde, the Isle of Man, and the Irish Isle of Rathlin. The Norwegian name for this widely scattered group was *Sudreyjar* (Southern Islands).

Portree is the chief town. The coast line is rocky, much indented, and extremely picturesque. Bold cliffs of basaltic rock rise up from the sea. The interior of the island is a mountainous moorland. There are several ridges rising to a height of about 3,000 ft. The climate of Skye is extremely changeable and mists are frequent, but the scenery in many parts is decidedly grand. There are places of historic interest. The banner of King Haco floated over its lochs, and Prince Charles Edward wandered over





**VIEW OF BEN NEVIS FROM THE GLEN**  
This is the highest mountain in the British Isles (4,406 ft.)

*Photo, L.M.S. Ry.*



its heaths. It has been said that "to visit the island is to turn your back on the present and walk into antiquity. . . . The precipices of Storr tower grandly over the sea; the eagle has yet its eyrie on the ledges of the Cuchullins. The sound of the sea is continually in your ears; the silent armies of mist and vapour perpetually deploy; the wind is gusty on the moor; and ever and anon the hills are obscured by swirls of fiercely blown rain. . . ."\* Such is a true pen-picture of the wilderness of Skye.

Among the other islands of the Inner Hebrides is Mull (367 square miles) dominated by the picturesque and lofty Ben More (3,185 ft.), Ben Buy (2,354 ft.), and Ben Creach (2,289 ft.); Islay (238 square miles); and Jura (160 square miles); with its range of mountains known as the Paps of Jura (2,571 ft.).

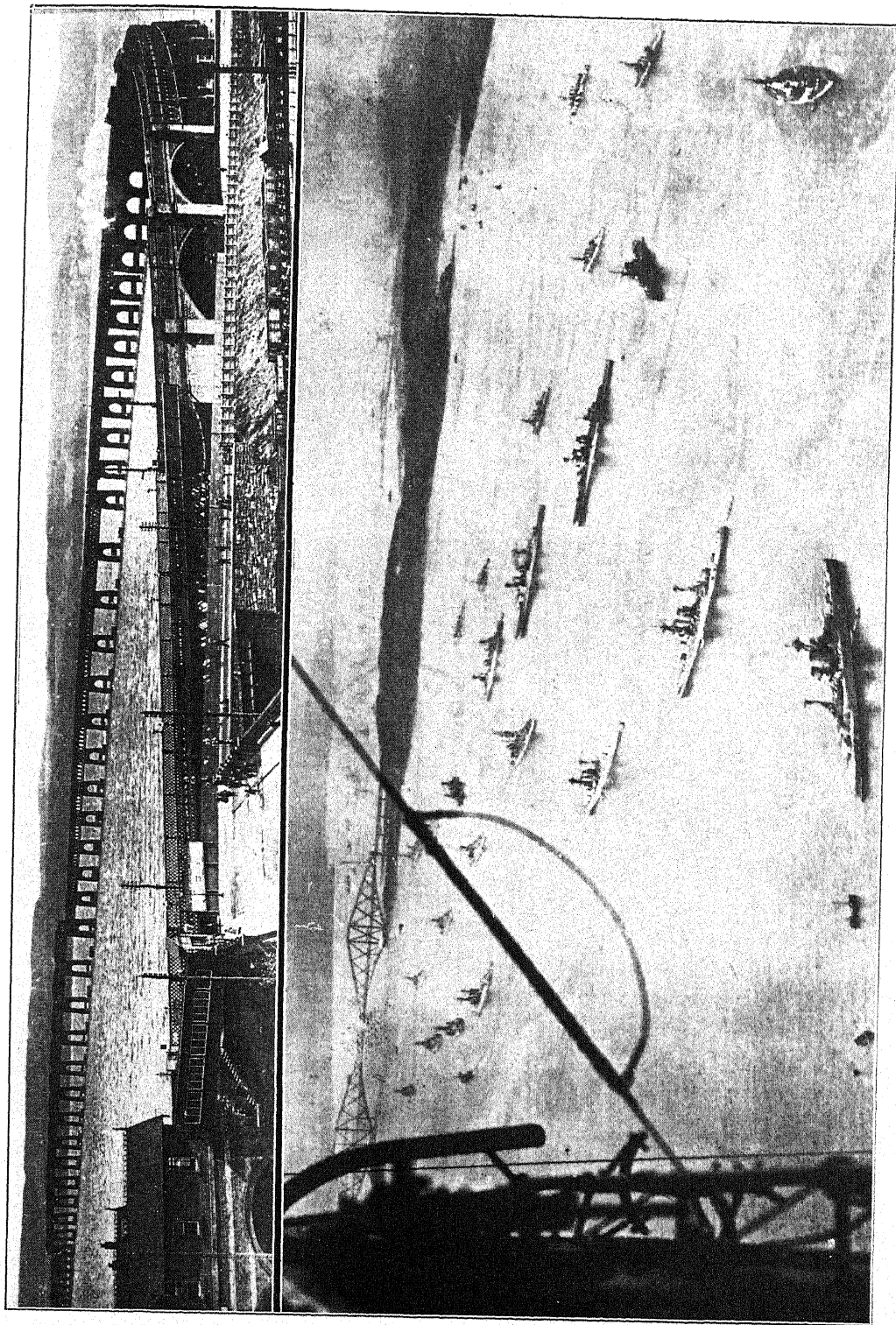
The Island of Lewis, which is about 52 miles in length and varies from 28 to 7 miles in breadth, is divided from the mainland of

Scotland by the North Minch, an arm of the Atlantic, which is from 28 to 36 miles wide. It is the principal island of the Outer Hebrides and is divided into two portions, the northern half being known as Lewis and the southern half as Harris. The former is included in the county of Ross and Cromarty and the latter in the county of Inverness. Stornoway is the town of Lewis and Tarbert the only populous centre in Harris. The coast of Lewis is low and rocky. It is much indented, and there are many fine lochs and inlets. There are quite a number of small islets dispersed along the coast. The interior is somewhat bleak and desolate in appearance, and there are numerous small lakes and bogs. About 14 miles west of Stornoway there are some monolithic circles, or Druidical remains. Considered as a whole the island is comparatively flat, but there are several peaks rising 3,000 ft. above sea-level. Fishing and making "home-spun" tweeds are the principal industries of the few thousand

\* "A Summer in Skye," by Alexander Smith. (From *The Beauties of Scotland*.)



UNION STREET, ABERDEEN  
Often called "The City of Granite"



(1) The Tay Bridge, just over two miles in length

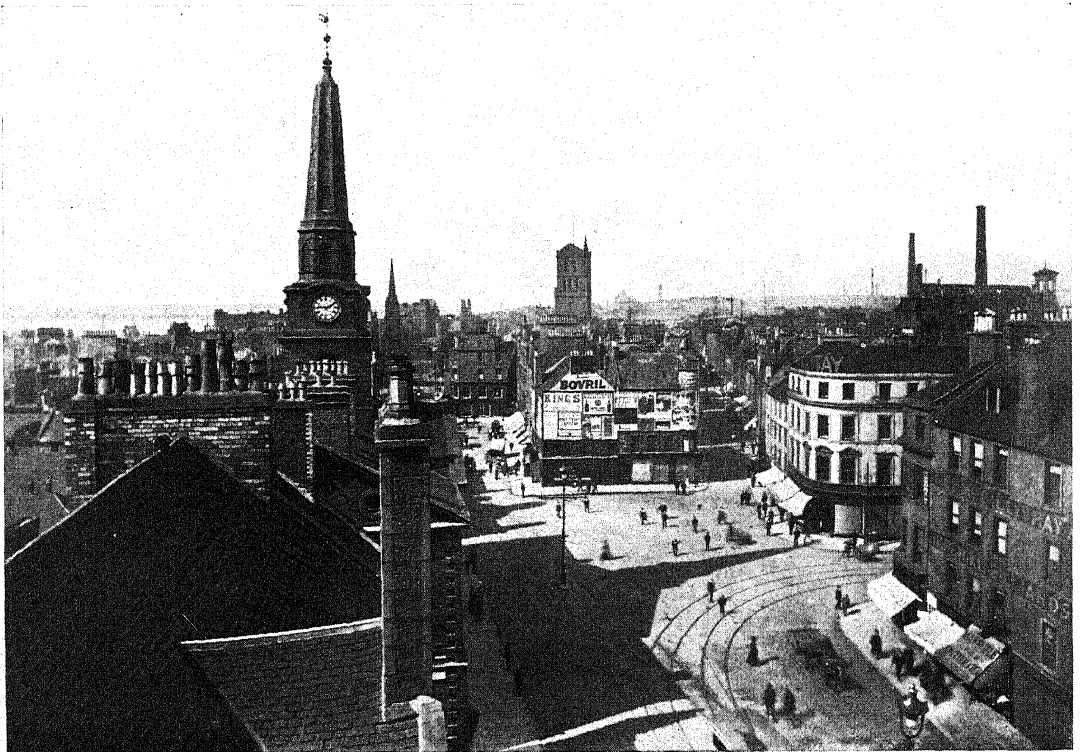
(2) The Firth of Forth, from an airship, showing Sir David Beatty's Battle Cruiser Fleet assembled for War in the year 1914. (The Forth Bridge in the distance)

inhabitants. In winter this island is often cut off from communication with the mainland by the heavy seas running through the Minch. The other islands of the Outer Hebrides include North Uist, South Uist, and Barra.

### ORKNEY ISLANDS.

This group of about 85 islands is situated off the north coast of Scotland, from which it is separated by a channel called the Pentland Firth, about eight miles wide. These

interesting ruins. The principal industries of these islands are fishing, agriculture and woollen work. The area under cultivation is approximately 85,000 acres. The coast line of the Orkneys is very irregular, and the shore, in some places, is flat and sandy, and in others bold and rocky. None of these islands can be considered mountainous. Hoy has, however, a small group of hills attaining a height of about 1,700 ft. The coast of this little island rises in parts over 1,000 ft. above

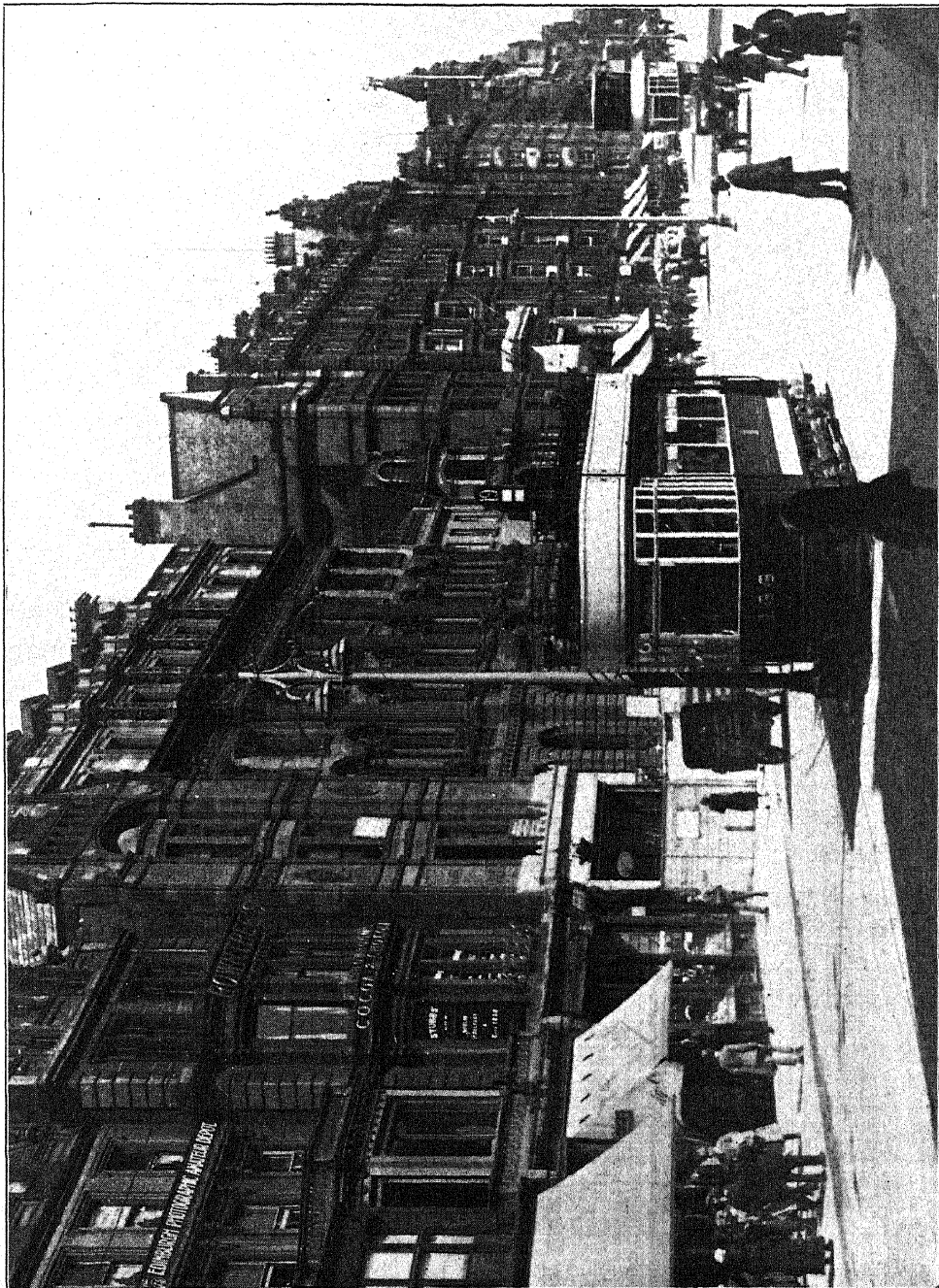


HIGH STREET, DUNDEE

islands form a separate Scottish county, with an area of 375 square miles, and a population of just over 26,000. The group consists of a number of tiny islets and about nine larger islands, the principal of which are Mainland, Westray, Sandy, Eday, Stronsay, Ronsay, Shapensay, and Hoy S. and Ronaldshay N.

The capital town of the Orkneys is Kirkwall, on the island of Mainland. It is a quaint, old-fashioned seaport with an extensive fishing industry. It has a main street over a mile in length and some very

the Atlantic surge. There are several lakes in these islands, but few rivers, and the climate is moist and cold, except in mid-summer, when a continuance of bright weather may be expected. There are but few trees in the Orkneys, and, although quaint, these islands cannot be considered picturesque. There are *brochs*, or Pictish towers, on many of these islands; and between Mainland and Hoy lies Scapa Flow, the famous War Base of the Grand Fleet (1914-19), and the scene, on June 21st, 1919,



*Photo, Photogram Co. Ltd.*

EDINBURGH, PRINCES STREET



of the scuttling of the German High Seas Fleet after its surrender at the conclusion of the Great European War.

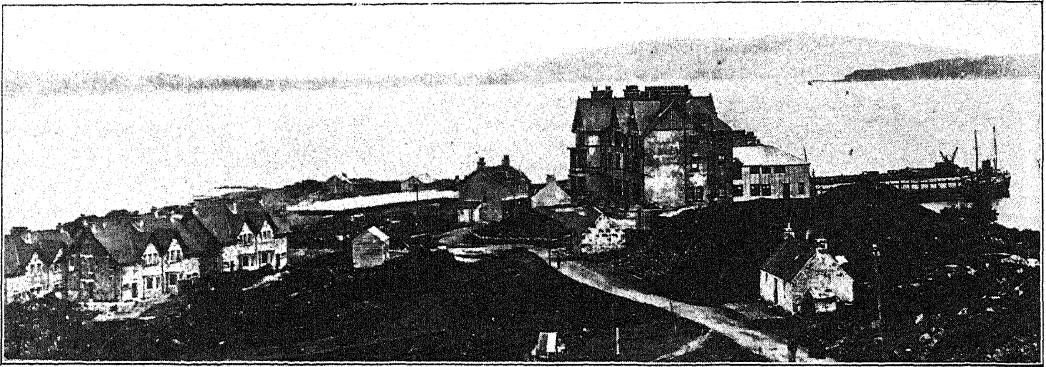
### SHETLAND ISLANDS.

This group is situated about fifty miles off the north-east coast of Scotland. They number about ninety, only a few of which are inhabited. Taken collectively the Shetlands have a total area of about 551 square miles, and a population of approximately 29,000. The principal islands are Mainland, Unst, Bressa, Whalsey, Fetlar, Burra, Yell, Foula, Fair-Isle, Papa-Stour, and Muckle-Roe. The first of these comprises about three-quarters of the total area of the group, and on it is situated Lerwick, the only town

situated in latitude  $60^{\circ} 51' N$ . The area under cultivation is approximately 51,800 acres. The Shetlands form a separate Scottish county.

### EDINBURGH.

The capital of Scotland in 1921 had a population of 420,281, and in 1930 this was estimated to have increased to about 450,000. It is inherently a show city. "Nature itself made absolute this decree when, with virile hand, the site on which it stands was hewn." "History and romance followed in Nature's train, illuminating the town with a wizard touch, until to-day it lives as a miracle of old memories, grim and gay, sad and inspiring, fraught with the destinies of a proud race.



MALLAIG AND THE ISLE OF SKYE

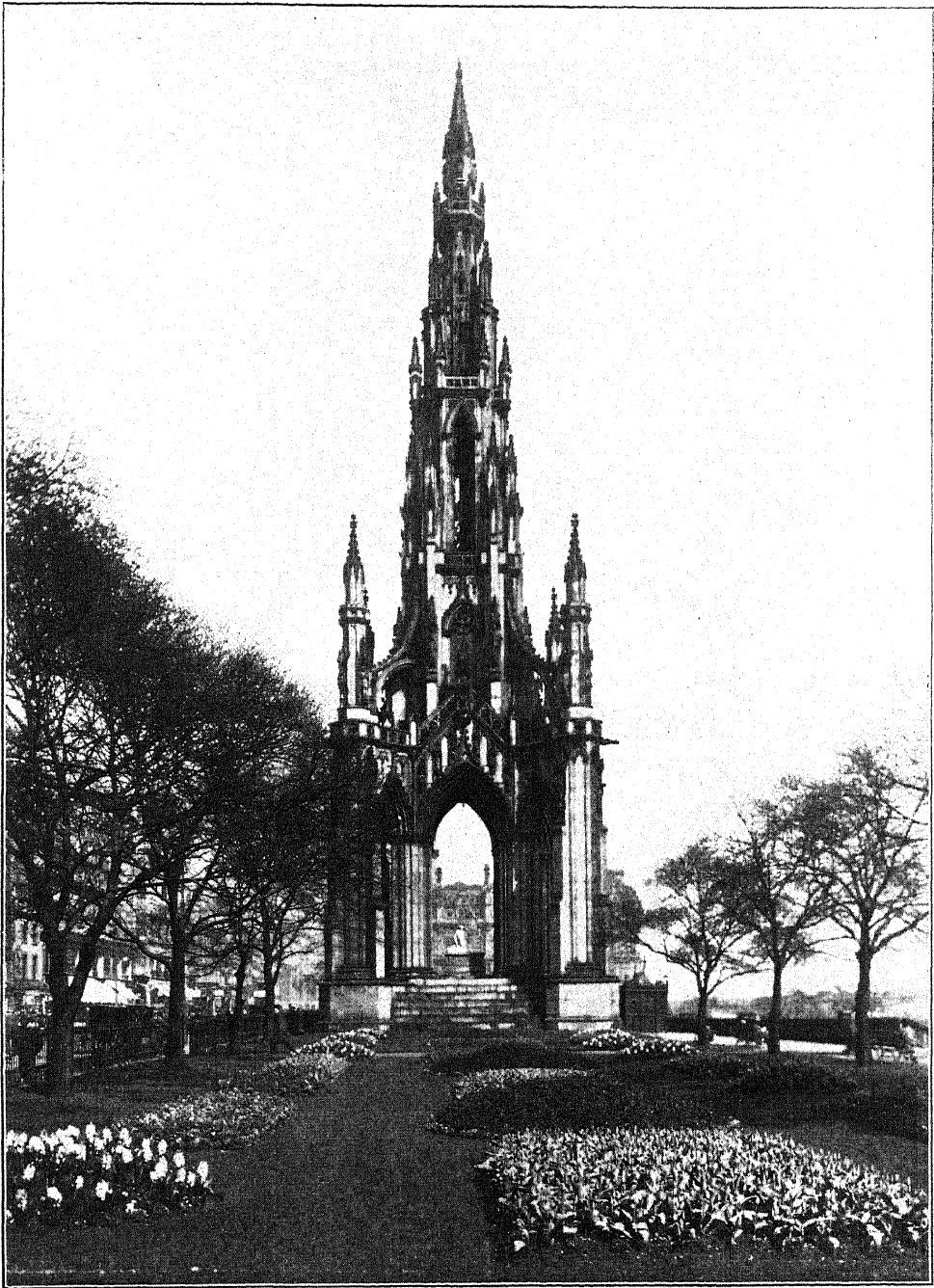
Skye is one of the principal of the Western Islands of Scotland, and is separated from the mainland by the Sound of Sleat

in the Shetland Islands. The coast lines are much indented and are very bold and rocky, having an average height of about 400 ft. The precipice of Foula attains a height of over 1,100 ft. above sea-level. The interior of all these islands is very wild and rugged, but there is only one mountain, in Mainland, which attains a height of over 1,500 ft. (Rooneess Hill). The almost entire absence of trees, with the exception of a few mountain ash, willow and birch, greatly detracts from the beauty of the wild and rugged scenery. The principal industries are fishing, agriculture, and the breeding of the small-sized Shetland ponies, cattle and sheep. Fair-Isle produces hand-knitted hosiery, and Unst fine Shetland woollen work. Muckle-Roe (or Flugga) is the most northerly point of the British Isles, being

"Curiously enough it has become a habit to allow the historic past almost to overwhelm all its other attractions when writing of Edinburgh, yet it still contributes its quota to the gaiety of nations. The chief promenade is Princes Street. This magnificent thoroughfare, so picturesquely situated, with its broad, clean pavements and wide roadway, its stately monuments, its noble buildings, its splendid shops and pretty gardens, has few rivals in the world.

"The Scott monument has claims to special notice. Its spire tapers 200 feet high, and in its base is a small museum. The statuettes on the exterior represent outstanding characters in 'The Waverley Novels.' The Castle Rock is still 'Time's Hoary Sentinel,' and from its heights the throat of cannon sounds the passing of time.





*Photo, L.M.S. Ry.*

**SIR WALTER SCOTT MEMORIAL, PRINCES STREET, EDINBURGH**

On the broad esplanade that leads to the entrance of the castle one may see the garrison troops at drill, giving a note of modern military colour to the picture. Here, also, are the memorials to brave men who, in striving to uphold the honour of their country, have added lustre to their own.

"Grouped at the outer gateway, the pensioned veterans, who act as guides, are interesting. From them something may be learned of the Scottish Arms carved on the archway of 'the Castle's seven gates,' of the chamber in which a luckless Argyll was imprisoned prior to his execution, and of other historic sites. The Barracks, hard by, were erected in 1796, when Napoleon cast the shadow of invasion across the channel, and beyond lies the old sally port with memories of the good Queen Margaret and the despotic Claverhouse.

"On the plateau of the King's Bastion stands Mons Meg, the Woolwich Infant of the earlier centuries, forged at Mons by a Galloway blacksmith, carried triumphantly to the sieges of Norham and Dumbarton, and burst in its almost obsolete old age in honouring the Duke of York with a Royal salute in 1682. Passing by way of St. Margaret's Chapel, the smallest church in the Kingdom, and visiting the Half-Moon Battery, from whence is fired the daily time gun, one may enter Queen Mary's rooms, learning the tradition of the birth of her son, the infant King James VI, and look through the window from which he was lowered in a basket to the Grassmarket below, to the keeping of the swift couriers who sought for him the safety of Stirling Castle.

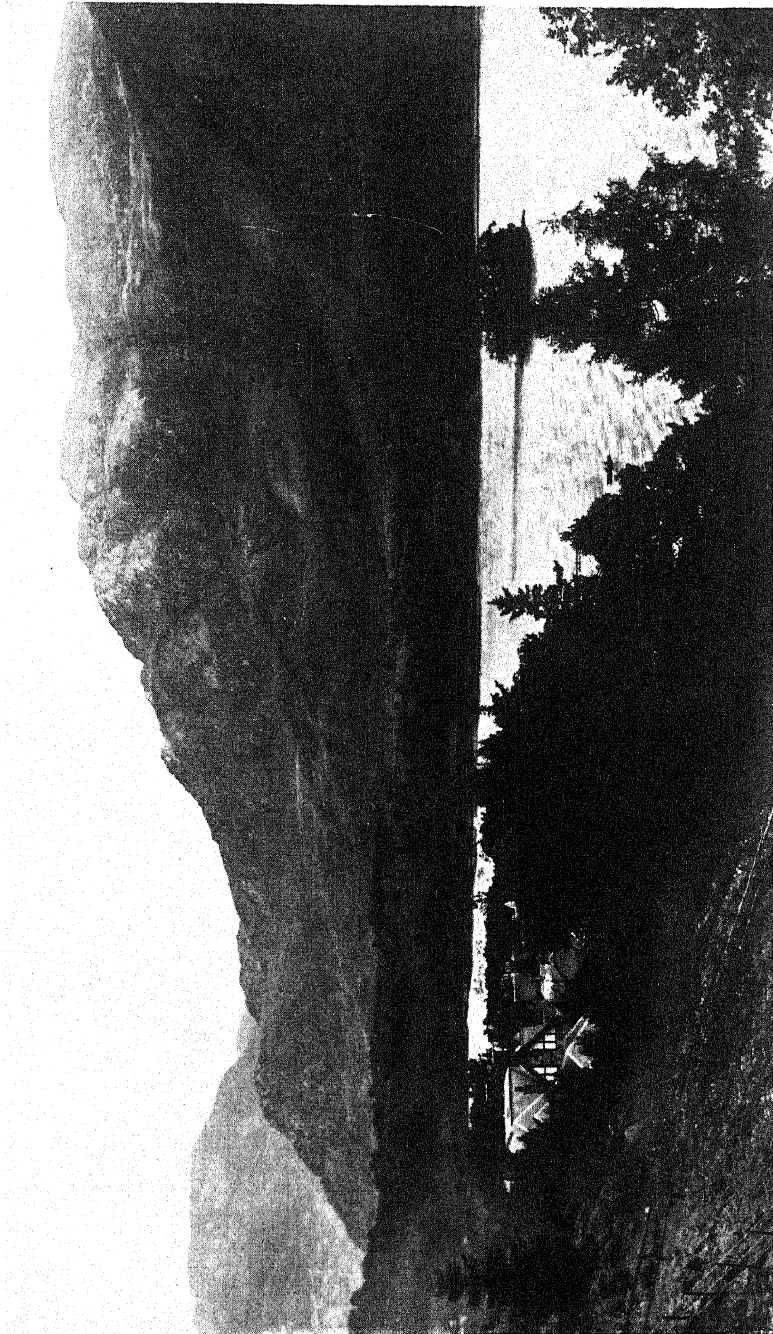
"Finally, you enter the Armoury—Old Parliament Hall, the Westminster for Scottish Parliamentarians, who gathered under its arched roof to discuss the affairs of State. The treasures in this Hall, as it is to-day, form part of the nation's richest possession—her historic renown. There is not a tattered flag, a suit of mail, a halberd, nor a broadsword, but has a secret in its keeping eternally locked.

"Out from the Esplanade is Castlehill, the oldest part of the city. Here the Assembly Halls of the Church of Scotland and the United Free Church attract notice. Both buildings have connection with the dim past, one occupying the site of the early dwellings of the Marquis of Argyll and the Earl of

Cassillis, while the site of the other was in part occupied by the palace of Mary of Guise, the mother of Mary Queen of Scots. The University Hall, on the slopes of the hill, is a picturesque building that, with its red roof and original style, is particularly prominent. It was established as a residence for students. The New College, the house of the poet Allan Ramsay, the first Ragged School, where Dr. Guthrie laboured so faithfully among the waifs and strays, and the statue of John Knox in the United Free Church College Quadrangle may be noted before steps are turned toward the Grassmarket and Lawnmarket.

"There is something attractively old-fashioned about the names of these places—the Lawnmarket, so called from its original institution as a market place for the sale of cloth; the Grassmarket, also named from the obvious nature of its commercial use. The latter area was the scene of the Porteous Riots in 1736, when Captain Porteous, the chief of the city guard, was hung by the mob to a barber's pole. In the centre of the roadway the scaffold for the execution of criminals was wont to be erected, and the morbid crowds gathered to see the end of cut-purses, highwaymen and murderers. Lawnmarket has one centre of particularly grim memory in Brodie's Close, the home of Deacon Brodie, a cabinet maker by profession but a burglar by trade. His story formed the theme of a drama written in collaboration by W. E. Henley and Robert Louis Stevenson. He was executed on the town's gallows, to the equipment of which his invention had added many cunning additions. In James Court, Dr. Johnson and Bothwell sojourned before setting out on their tour in the Western Isles, and other closes in the vicinity lay claim to historic association.

"The Lawnmarket is a continuation of the old High Street—'the one fierce street' which was the Edinburgh of the long ago. Princes Street has been the centre of much pomp and circumstance in modern pageantry, but the dream halo of High Street are the tales of chivalry and romance in peaceful and turbulent times. The old closes in High Street outbid each other in interesting associations. We read of Writer's Close in *Guy Mannering*. We learn that in Dunbar Close Cromwell's soldiers were quartered after their victory at Dunbar; that in



LOCHEARNHEAD, PERTSHIRE

*Photo, L.M.S. Riv.*

Covenant Close stood the house where the Solemn League and Covenant (first signed on a flat tombstone in Greyfriars Churchyard) was heroically renewed; that in Craig's Close were printed the first editions of the *Waverley Novels*. Anchor Close was known to the poet Burns as the meeting-place of the Crochallan Club, while the old Post Office Close held the town residence of the Eglintons, among them the Countess Susan, famous for her grace and beauty, and numbering Bonnie Prince Charlie among her conquests.

"Then there is John Knox's House and many other centres. Part of the old building of St. Giles dates back to the twelfth century. At the Reformation it was divided into four churches, and at a later period into three. It stands to-day in something like its pre-Reformation form. It contains the tombs of the Houses of Montrose and Argyll. The tattered flags and other military relics are testimony to the part Scotland has played on the battlefields of the world. At the east end of St. Giles stands the Mercat Cross, from which Royal proclamations are still ceremoniously made. Parliament House now forms part of Scotland's Court House. It was built in 1640; the façade and arcade, however, only date from the early part of the nineteenth century. Here, too, is the Advocates' Hall, with its fine windows, its antique portraits and high oaken roof. Adjoining this are the Advocates' Library and the Signet Library. 'Bluidy Mackenzie,' the infamous advocate, was the founder of the former, now containing some 300,000 volumes and 2,000 manuscripts, including the original script of Sir Walter Scott's *Waverley*. In Parliament Square is set a flagstone with the inscription, 'J. K. 1572,' marking the traditional tomb of the Reformer Knox. The County Buildings stand to the west of the square, while on the north side of High Street is the Royal Exchange, fulfilling a new purpose in housing various departments of the Municipal Government.

"Holyrood is the thank-offering of a Scottish king. Back in the misty ages, when Royal hunters twanged the lively horn and, with spear at rest, followed the lordly stag to the death, King David I met the adventure

that prefaced the story of the old place. Attacked by an infuriated white hart while hunting hard by, he luckily escaped with his life, and in the fulness of joy at his deliverance erected the Abbey as a monument of gratitude. The Palace was an inspiration of King James V four hundred years later.

"Subsequent history relates how both Abbey and Palace were sacked and burned by the English in 1544, reinstated in the semblance of their former glory only to suffer again at the hands of Cromwell's soldiery. Many Royal names are writ in the history of the grey old pile, but the nimbus of romance encircles especially the memory of three—Queen Mary, Lord Darnley, and Rizzio (see *History*). Association with the ill-fated house of Stuart is seared on the heart of Holyrood. Among the most interesting chambers of this old palace are Queen Mary's audience chamber, Darnley's apartment with its relics and tapestries, the Queen's bed-chamber, and the supper-room—the scene of the murder of Rizzio.

"Among the other sights of Edinburgh must be mentioned the fine views from Arthur's Seat, Carlton Hill, and the top of the Nelson Monument (102 ft.); the King's Park, the Lincoln Monument erected to the memory of Scottish-American soldiers who fell in the American Civil War, the University, standing where Darnley, the husband of Queen Mary, was murdered, and, adjoining it, the Royal Scottish Museum, the Royal Infirmary, down by the Meadows, George Heriot's Hospital (now a day school), George Watson's College, the New Medical School, the M'Ewan Hall, the Royal Institution, and the National Gallery—the last two on the Mound, within a couple of minutes' walk from Waverley Station. Then there are the Botanical Gardens, St. Mary's Cathedral, Merchiston School, Fettes College, Donaldson's Hospital, the Dean Bridge and the Cemetery, where the ill-fated Sir Hector Macdonald lies buried. Turn where you may in the old or new town, in the centre of the city or the suburbs, you are ever in touch with some link in bygone Scottish history or evidence of the history which Scotland is writing for herself to-day."\*

\* *The Beauties of Scotland.*

**COMMUNICATIONS.**

The majority of the roads of Scotland are excellent. The chief navigable rivers are the Clyde, the Forth and the Tay ; these provide convenient outlets for the products of the Central Valley of Scotland. The rivers of the north are too rapid to be of use for commercial purposes, and they flow through regions which are very thinly populated, and where the towns are of no particular commercial importance. The trade of Glasgow and the traffic of the Clyde generally have been increased by the deepening of the Clyde itself from Dumbarton to Glasgow, so that large vessels are able to reach the latter city. Canals are numerous, but their depth is not sufficient to permit of their being navigated by any but small vessels. The principal are the Forth and Clyde Canal, which connects the two rivers from which it takes its name ; the Crinan Canal, cut through the Mull of Kintyre or Cantyre, which shortens the voyage from the Clyde to the

Hebrides and the north-west coast ; and the Caledonian Canal, which utilises Lochs Ness, Oich and Lochy, giving a complete waterway for a distance of over fifty miles from the west to the east coast of Scotland.

**AGRICULTURE.**

Natural conditions have a great effect upon the state of affairs in Scotland so far as agriculture is concerned. Much of the country is mountainous, a great portion suffers from a thin soil, and then the heavy rainfall of the west exercises a powerful influence. As a result the growth of agricultural products is confined to the coastal regions, the lowland districts, and some of the sheltered valleys of the Highlands. Speaking generally, 42° F. is approximately the lowest temperature for food products of the temperate zone, and they require many summer days with higher temperatures to reach maturity. No portion of the British Isles has a large margin of climatic



THE CORRA LYNN FALLS

A beautiful fall on the Upper Clyde, near Lanark

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*



influences available for cereals, and Scotland, in particular, has few tracts which are suitable for the growth of wheat. Consequently the cereals of Scotland are mainly oats and barley, each of which is hardier than wheat, and more capable of resisting moisture. The most productive counties are Fife and the Lothians, wheat being confined in the main to the Lothians and Berwick. Root crops are very important, especially in the south of Scotland, where they are required for the winter feeding of cattle. Fruit-growing is increasing in the south, and more and more attention is being paid to dairy-farming, a branch of agricultural industry which ought to prove increasingly profitable.

Still it is the pastoral part of farming which is, after all, of the greatest importance to Scotland. About 75 per cent. of the country is covered with grass of some kind, and all the hilly and mountainous districts are more or less pastoral regions.

### FISHERIES.

The fisheries of Scotland may be divided into three parts, namely, the West Coast, the Orkneys and Shetlands, and the East Coast.

The fish caught include cod, herring, mackerel, lobster and turbot. Stornoway in Lewis, and Portree in Skye are the centres of the Hebrides fisheries. Being remote from the populous Midland Valley, the Hebrides have laboured under a disadvantage as regards transport; but railways, aided by Government subsidies, have been constructed through the Scottish Highlands, and thus provide quick transit. The Clyde ports are also engaged in the Western fisheries. Lerwick is the centre of the northern fisheries, and as the fish are largely salted for the markets of the Continent, quick transit is not here so necessary. The chief centres of the Eastern fisheries are Wick, Aberdeen, Peterhead, Stonehaven, Fraserburgh and the Forth ports. From Aberdeen and Leith trawlers go eastwards to the North Sea banks. The whale fishing in the Arctic seas, from the eastern ports, formerly important, has now greatly declined. Salmon are caught in the Tweed, Tay, Spey, Don and other rivers. About 30,000 men are engaged in the fishing industry. The average annual value of the fishing industry is £4,250,000.

### MINING.

The Midland Valley of Scotland is rich in minerals, and the mining industry is chiefly centred in this region. Coal and iron are the most important minerals. The chief coalfields of Scotland are four in number, and are all situated in the Midland Valley: (1) the Ayrshire coalfield; (2) the Central coalfield in Lanark, Linlithgow, and Stirling; (3) the Edinburgh or Midlothian coalfield; and (4) the Clackmannan and Fife coalfield. They produce about one-sixth of the coal supply of Britain, or slightly less than that of the South Wales coalfields. Oil shale is an important mineral product of the Midland Valley, especially in Midlothian, West Lothian, and Fife; from it are obtained by distillation, oil, wax, and ammonium sulphate. The chief iron centres of Scotland are Glasgow, Coatbridge, Motherwell and Kilmarnock. Excellent material, suitable for the construction of bridges, reservoirs and large buildings is provided by the granite of Aberdeenshire; and the red sandstones of Caithness, when cut into slabs, are excellent for pavements. Blue, green and grey slates are found in Perthshire and Argyllshire, at Easdale and Ballachulish. Peat is found in many parts of the Highlands, where it is cut and dried for fuel. In the Lowther Hills, lead, associated with a small percentage of silver, is found, and both metals are extracted.\*

### COMMERCE.

The foreign trade of Scotland is carried on mainly through Glasgow, which has excellent communication with America. The ports of the east coast have very good communication with the chief centres of the Baltic, and North Sea countries of the continent of Europe. Owing to the cheapness of transit, there is a large coasting traffic between England and Scotland, regular sailings taking place from London to Leith, Aberdeen and Glasgow. The sea routes between Scotland and Ireland are Glasgow and Greenock to Londonderry, Belfast and Dublin; Ardrossan and Troon to Belfast; and Stranraer to Larne (the shortest sea-passage between Great Britain and Ireland).

\* Pitman's Commercial Atlas.

# IRELAND

## THE FREE STATE AND NORTHERN IRELAND

**T**HE island of Ireland is divided, for administrative purposes, into two self-governing Dominions. The southern half forms the Irish Free State (Saorstát Éireann), and the Province of Ulster has become the State of Northern Ireland. They are both co-equal partners in the British Commonwealth of Nations.

### KINGDOM OF TARA.

Although the story of this island is given in the section describing the numerous and closely interwoven events forming the history of the British Isles, it is, perhaps, advisable to briefly review here the past and present of these new Dominions. About the earliest inhabitants of Ireland little is definitely known, although in several parts of the island there are traces of the Stone Age. According to legend a Milesian race, who came from Scythia, established the Kingdom of Tara in 500 B.C. The country was divided into five principalities under the five sons of the *Ardrí*, or King. The basalt columns on the Antrim coast, called the Giant's Causeway, are ascribed, in these legends, to the remnants of a bridge which was intended to join Ireland and Scotland!

From discoveries made recently in the West of Ireland it appears that bronze implements must have been known in the 17th Century B.C. Early in the Iron Age Britons from the south-west coast of England appear to have crossed the narrow intervening sea and settled in the south-east. At the same time Picts from the far north of Britain formed similar settlements on the north-east coast.

### ST. PATRICK.

The Roman occupation of Britain did not extend to Ireland, but this island was nevertheless known to the world conquerors, who referred to the chief tribe therein as the *Scoti*. Although Christianity did not become general until St. Patrick, who was born in England, and who spent many years as a slave in Ireland and in Gaul, eventually returned to the island as Bishop of Auxerre in 432, it was nevertheless known to a considerable number of the people at least a century earlier. St. Patrick landed on the coast of Wicklow and succeeded in establishing Christianity throughout Ireland.

Relatively little is known regarding the history of Ireland previous to the invasion of the Danes and Norwegians about 798 A.D. It is said that the name of the island was derived from the Scandinavian *Ira-land* (or land of the Irish). The Provinces of Munster, Ulster and Leinster also obtained their names in a similar way.

### SCANDINAVIAN INVASION.

The principal event of the Scandinavian Invasion, which came very largely from the Hebrides (*q.v.*), was their defeat at the Battle of Tara in 980, and the final breaking of their power at the Battle of Clontarf in 1014. After the withdrawal of the Northmen, continual disputes occurred between the rival chiefs of Munster, Leinster, Connaught and Ulster.

In 1152 the deposed Leinster chief appealed to King Henry II of England for aid. This was granted and Richard de Clare, the Norman Earl of Pembroke (Strongbow),

English Miles

10 20 30 40 50

## Railways



landed on the coast of Waterford, with an army of 1,200 horse and foot, in the year 1170. Two years later Henry II landed with a large army and received the submission of the Irish Chiefs. For nearly 300 years the Anglo-Norman rule in Ireland was confined to an area of 600 square miles, which was called the English "Pale."

### IN THE MIDDLE AGES.

From this period onward the detailed history of Ireland can be followed through the pages of English history (*q.v.*). It is sufficient to say that in the reign of Henry VII English rule was extended. Robert Poyning, the Lord Deputy of Ireland, summoned the famous Parliament of Drogheda (1494). It was here that the Statutes were enacted which made the Irish Legislature subordinate to that of England. This was known as *Poyning's Law*. The title of King of Ireland was conferred upon Henry VIII by a later parliament.

The conquest of the whole island was accomplished during the reign of Queen Elizabeth, and it was in the time of James I that the potato was introduced. This caused undue dependence upon this one form of food, and several severe famines in the long ago caused widespread starvation.

### FOUNDING OF ULSTER.

In the days of James I the failure of a small rebellion in the north of Ireland caused many of the leading families, who were implicated, to leave the country, and their lands were given to English and Scottish colonists. This was the founding of Ulster (*q.v.*). These immigrants were adherents of the Reformed Church, and in subsequent years they populated the whole north of Ireland. In 1920 Ulster became a separate Dominion under the title of the State of "Northern Ireland."

The part played by Ireland during the Commonwealth and succeeding years, up to the Rebellion of 1798, will be found elsewhere. In that year, however, after the suppression of the rising, the Act of Union was passed combining the English and Irish Parliaments. Then came the Catholic Emancipation in 1829, and the establishment of big relief works to mitigate the effects of the potato famines between the years 1831-47.

### HOME RULE.

The first Irish politician at Westminster to put forward a demand for Home Rule, or a separate parliament for Ireland, was Isaac Butt (1813-79). Then came Charles Stewart Parnell (1846-91), who succeeded in getting the English Liberal Party to adopt the policy of giving a measure of Home Rule to Ireland.

Years of failure to pass this measure through both Houses of the English Parliament embittered the extremists in Ireland, and a movement known as Sinn Fein ("Ourselves Alone") was started. However, in 1914 the Home Rule Bill was passed, but, owing to the outbreak of the Great European War, a suspensory clause was added to cover this period of world-wide turmoil.

The Sinn Fein movement then became an elaborate and warlike organisation. The result was open rebellion at a critical period in the history of the Empire and of civilisation. Much bad feeling was engendered on both sides of the Irish Sea by the casualties caused by the guerilla warfare adopted by the extremists with the aid of foreign arms, money and men. Sinn Fein demanded the recognition of an Irish Republic.

Efforts were made by the British Government to find a solution to the problem, which was complicated by (1) the position of loyal Ulster in the north, which did not want either a separate legislature or to enter an All-Ireland Parliament; (2) the Protestant minority in the south; and (3) the large section of loyal Catholic Irish. There were, thus, religious as well as political problems.

The final solution of the Irish question—the events of which are of too recent occurrence to be dispassionately sifted and docketed for historical reference—reflects no small measure of credit on the able negotiators of both sides who effected, and subsequently maintained in the face of considerable opposition, the Peace Treaty of December 6th, 1921, which was an honourable settlement from all the divergent points of view.

### IRISH FREE STATE.

The constitution of this new Dominion, which has an area of 26,592 square miles and a population of about 3,139,688, was

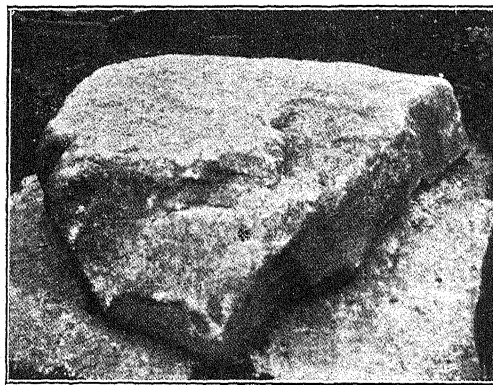
established by the British Parliament in 1922. The Irish Free State (Agreement) Act provides for the co-equality of the new Imperial entity with the other self-governing Dominions; the power of the Government to be derived from the people; the national language to be Irish, with English as an official language; for the freedom of conscience and the illegality of any law prohibiting the practice of any religion; the creation of a Legislature, comprising, the King, a Senate (*Seanad Éireann*), and a Chamber of Deputies (*Dail Éireann*), members of the Upper House to be chosen from those who have rendered useful public service, and members of the Lower House to be elected by secret ballot and by the direct vote of all citizens above the age of 21 years; the representation to be not less than one member for every 30,000 of the population; each member is required to take the oath of—"true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of the Irish Free State as by law established, and that I will be faithful to His Majesty King George V, his heirs and successors by law in virtue of the common citizenship of Ireland with Great Britain and her adherence to and membership of the group of nations forming the British Commonwealth of Nations."

Other clauses of the Act, which was accepted and ratified by both Governments, provided for the creation of a limited Army, and its employment in foreign wars only by the consent of the Irish Parliament; the investment of the executive authority in the King, and its employment, in accordance with the customary practice, through a Representative of the Crown (as in the case of Canada); the creation of an Executive Council (*Aireacht*), responsible to the Chamber, and consisting of not more than 12 Ministers (*Airi*), appointed by the Representative of the Crown, of whom four Ministers shall be members of the Chamber, and a number not exceeding eight shall be chosen from all citizens eligible for election to the Chamber who shall not be members of Parliament during their term of office. The remaining sections of the Act establish a Judiciary, with the right of appeal to the King-in-Council.

Among the Dominion Premiers at the Imperial Conference in 1922 was the Representative of this young member of the British Commonwealth of Nations.

### NORTHERN IRELAND.

This new State consists of six counties in the old Province of Ulster together with the Parliamentary Boroughs of Belfast and Derry. The counties are Antrim, Armagh, Down, Fermanagh, Tyrone and Londonderry. The total area is 5,263 square miles and the population about 1,300,000. Responsible Government was given to Northern Ireland by the Act of 1920. The Executive power is vested in the King and the Parliament of the new State. There is a Senate of 26 members with the Lord Mayor of Belfast and the Mayor of Derry as ex-officio members, and 24 other Senators elected by the House of Commons of Northern Ireland. This Lower House consists of 52 elected members. It is provided that although this State is a



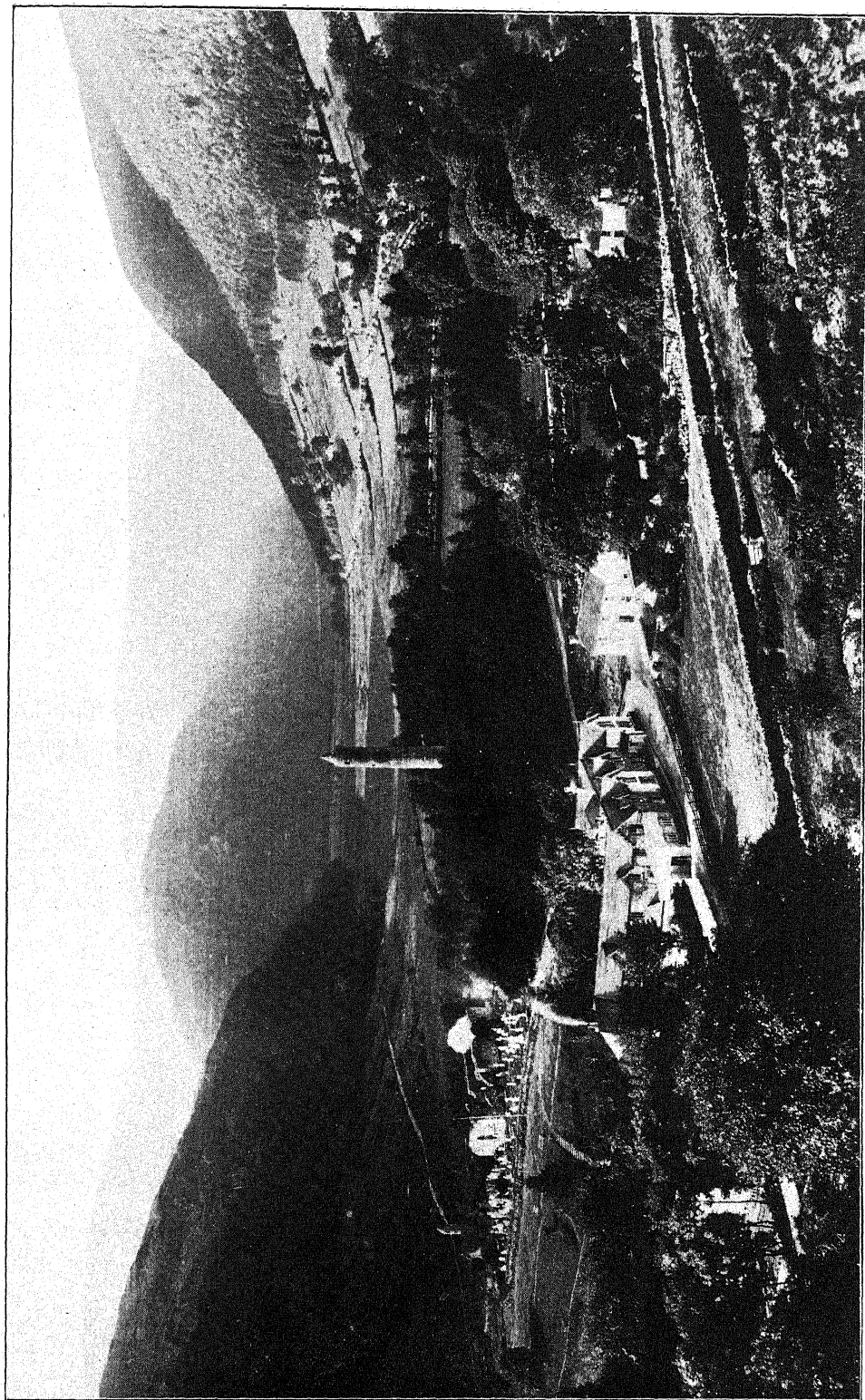
THE GRAVE OF ST. PATRICK, DOWNPATRICK

separate Imperial entity it shall be represented in the British Parliament by 13 members.

The Legislature possesses full powers except over matters relating to the Crown, the Navy, Army, Air Force, and Territorial Army, the making of war or peace, foreign treaties, titles, treason, alienage and naturalisation, foreign trade, submarine cables, wireless, aerial navigation, coastal navigation marks and lights, coinage, trade marks and patents.

Special Courts of Justice have been established, together with an Exchequer into which the proceeds of all taxes and revenues are paid. The contribution of Northern Ireland to the expenditure of Great Britain (on Defence, etc.), is temporarily fixed at £8,920,000 a year, but a certain





GLENDALOUGH AND "SEVEN CHURCHES"  
One of the beauty spots of Ireland

*Photochrome Co. Ltd.*

repayment is to be made out of the Consolidated Fund of the United Kingdom as a residuary share of the reserved taxes.

### IRELAND TO-DAY.

It has not been found possible thus early in the lives of the new States of Ireland to divide what is non-politically homogeneous territory into two distinct halves for geographic and economic description. For centuries the activities and communications of both North and South have been closely interwoven, and any disassociation here would mean a complete absence of both facts and figures.

It should be remembered that no arbitrary political boundary will affect the topography of Ireland, or materially alter its principal communications and industries, although it may, in the years to come, tend to gradually divert the channels through which the latter passes at the present time. For these reasons Ireland will be described here as a homogeneous island, in the same way as the Federation of Australian States and the separate political entities forming British North Borneo.

Ireland is divided from Great Britain by the Irish Sea, the St. George's Channel, and the North Channel. The total area of the country, including the few island adjacent to its coasts, is 32,586 square miles, or a little more than the area of Scotland and just under one-quarter of the total area of the United Kingdom. For many years the population of Ireland has been declining. In 1801 it has 5,500,000 inhabitants, in 1841 the number had risen to 8,000,000, in 1871 it had declined to 5,400,000, in 1911 it had fallen to 4,381,951, and in 1930 it was estimated at 4,270,000. Much of this decline in the population has been due to the emigration of Irish people to the United States and Canada during the years preceding the Great European War.

### COAST LINE.

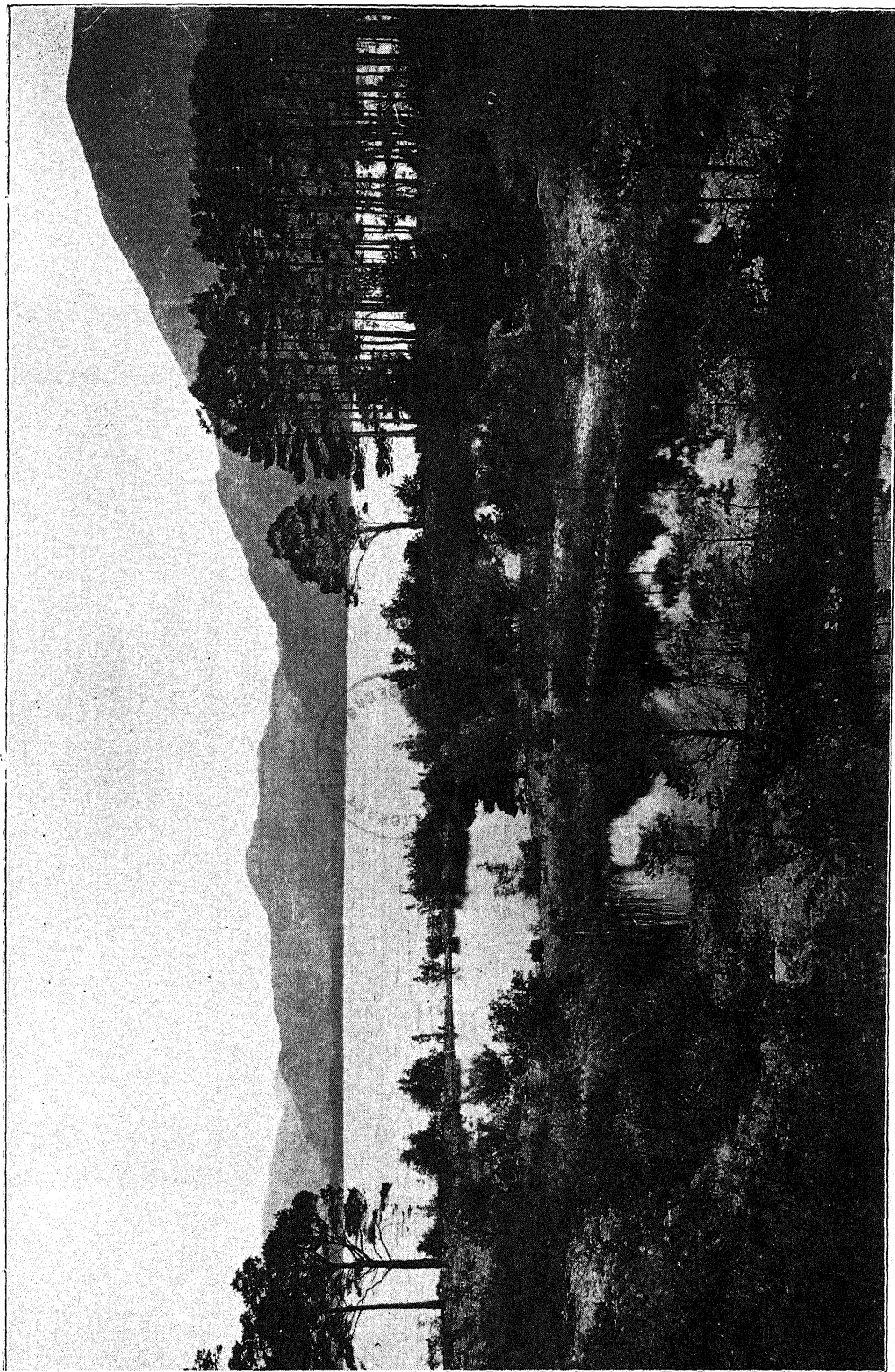
Ireland has an extensive coast line, and presents a bold front to the Atlantic Ocean. The majority of the harbours on the east are poor, although they are those which are most utilised, and they have had to be improved artificially. Those on the west, on the contrary, are particularly fine, and were it not for the peculiar circumstances which

have militated so much against Irish advancement, this country might now, with the modern advantages of science, occupy a more important position in the commercial world. It is useful to see how some of the Irish ports are utilised at present, and the advantage that is taken of them in connection with the traffic to America.

As is well known, Ireland lies between the most important ports of Great Britain and North America, and the quickest routes connecting these pass through Ireland to Queenstown in Cork Harbour. From London and the South of England, the most direct route is *via* Fishguard, in Pembrokeshire, and Rosslare, in County Wexford. This is a comparatively new route. But the major portion of the traffic goes *via* Holyhead and Dublin, which is the most direct route for the Midlands. From Scotland the shortest route lies through Stranraer and Port Patrick, in Wigtonshire, to Larne, in Antrim. Steamers to Canada from the Mersey and the Clyde pass round the north of Ireland, and for these the mail port is Moville on Lough Foyle. For the Canadian ports, especially those of the St. Lawrence, Galway on the west coast offers very considerable advantages, and there have been proposals on foot for converting one or other of its natural harbours into a port for the American traffic. Such a change would not only shorten the sea voyage from America but it would also shorten the railway journey, as the present mail route between Dublin and Cork is extremely circuitous. The harbours of the south-west, especially those of Cork and Kerry, are well known, and Bantry Bay, in the former county, is often utilised as a base for the British Navy.

### MOUNTAINS.

The coast line of Ireland is very rugged. In the west and north-west it is much indented, but in the east the only important inlets are the Loughs of Belfast, Strangford, and Carlingford, and the bays of Dundrum, Dundalk and Dublin. On the north coast are Loughs Foyle and Swilley, Skeep Haven, Donegal Bay, Sligo Bay and Killala Bay. On the west coast are Clew Bay, Galway Bay, Shannon Mouth and the Bays of Dingle, Bantry and Dunmanus. The south coast has the harbours of Cork, Waterford and Wexford. Many of these indentations of the coast line furnish natural deep-water



KILLARNEY  
Lough Leane from Ross Island

*Photo, L.M.S. Ry.*

harbours which it would be difficult to surpass. The shores in most parts are rocky and picturesque.

The mountain ranges of Ireland mostly run parallel to the coasts; the only two ridges which traverse the interior are the Devil's Bit and Sliebh Bloom, in the counties of Munster and Leinster, attaining, in the Keeper, a height of over 2,300 ft. This arrangement of the mountain systems causes the interior to be composed of an elevated plain surrounded by lofty mountains sloping gently down to the coasts. The highest mountain in Ireland is Carrantual (3,414 ft.), situated in County Kerry. Among other Irish peaks must be mentioned Lungaquilla (3,040 ft.), in County Wicklow; Milrea (2,733 ft.), and Nephin (2,640 ft.), in County Mayo; Brandon (3,122 ft.), in County Kerry; Mona Vallagh (2,600 ft.), in County Waterford; Kippure (2,474 ft.), in Dublin County; Sliebh Dinard (2,796 ft.), in County Down; and the famous cliff mountain Slieve League (1,972 ft.), which rises precipitously out of the sea on the coast of County Donegal.

The mountains of Antrim are less famous for their height than for their termination in the Giant's Causeway—a veritable chaos of rocks, caves and crystalline columns, of unsurpassed grandeur in both sunshine and storm. The interior of Ireland is composed of rich green undulating country, in many parts highly fertile and well-wooded, and in others, owing to the encircling coast ranges, very wet and boggy.

#### RIVERS AND LAKES.

The principal rivers of Ireland are the Shannon (navigable for a distance of 220 miles), the Brandon, Lee, and Blackwater (principally in County Cork); the Suir and the Barron (which unite to form Waterford Harbour); the Slaney (the broad mouth of which forms Wexford Haven); the Liffey (running through Dublin); the Boyne, the Bann and the Foyle.

In addition to the sea-coast loughs there are many beautiful inland lakes, in the "Emerald Isle." Lough Neagh, which is 17 miles long and 10 miles broad, and is situated principally in County Antrim, is the largest lake in the British Isles. It is, however, not renowned for its beauty, as its banks are low-lying and marshy. Lough Erne, when its basin is full, forms a sheet of

water about 30 miles in length, and possesses many pretty little islands and well-wooded shores. Lough Corrib is 24 miles long and varies from 1 to 14 miles in breadth. Loughs Mask, Allen, Ree, Derg, Conn and Collin, are all large and picturesque inland lakes.

#### LAKES OF KILLARNEY.

Among the smaller lakes, whose beauty more than compensates for their lack of size, must be mentioned the famous Lakes of Killarney. "Their great charm lies in their position in the midst of majestic and lofty mountains, whose sides—often rocky, ragged and steep—are covered with a wonderful succession of luxuriant vegetation. Tree-crowned islets dot the lakes, and cataracts of every description abound. The lakes, which follow each other in an irregular line, are three in number—the Upper Lake, two and a half miles in length and half a mile in breadth; the Middle Lake, known also as the Torc Lake, and the Muckross Lake, two miles long and one mile broad; and the Lower Lake or Lough Leane, five miles in length and three miles broad, near one end of which the town of Killarney stands. As all the lakes have a connection by rivers or channels, boats can pass from one end to the other. Perhaps the abiding impressions of Killarney are the rich colouring, the profusion of the vegetation and the extraordinary purple haze on the mountains at certain times and hours. Many of the roads bordering the lakes consist entirely of thick avenues, and some of them are smothered in shrubbery and undergrowth."

The climate of Ireland is generally mild and humid. The winter, although long, is seldom accompanied by prolonged frosts. In summer the average temperature is lower than that of England, and, owing to the superfluity of moisture, the air is often misty. But the dampness has its compensation in the peculiarly rich verdure it conjures from the soil, which has given to Ireland the name of the Emerald Isle.

#### DUBLIN.

The capital of the Irish Free State possesses all the graces and distinctions incidental to a modern metropolis, with a population (including suburbs) of about 318,000. This city has an indefinable old-world flavour and charm which is denied to the other capitals.





THE UPPER LAKE, KILLARNEY

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

of the British Isles. "Its modernity is not quite that of the present age, although in the matter of public improvements and comforts it is completely up-to-date. Yet with all its magnificent buildings, its splendid shops, its extensive parks, and its unrivalled railway and electric tramcar facilities, Dublin gives the impression of belonging to a period much antecedent to the present one. Dublin, too, has quite another character of its own. It has little real affinity, except a surface one, with either an English or a Scottish city, outside the matter of language, and is more akin in appearance, in people, and in thought to the south of France. London may be more cosmopolitan, but Dublin is more continental, especially as regards its Sundays.

"The Sunday, throughout Ireland—except in parts of Northern Ireland—is regarded as a day of recreation. Dublin's splendid position

tells much in its favour. Standing on the shores of a great bay, it is so built that no part can be more than three miles away from a pleasant countryside, and the mountains on the south frontier come so close that they form a background for some of the streets. The River Liffey divides the city into two compact parts, and the numerous bridges constitute some of the pleasantest 'view places.' Sackville Street, renamed O'Connell Street, which has been rebuilt, may be re-regarded as the real centre. Not only most of the tram lines, which extend into the suburbs for several miles, radiate from it, but it is only a short distance in a straight line from the North Wall, Westland Row, Amiens Street and Tara Street Railway Stations.

"The walk along the quays to O'Connell Street affords an interesting glimpse of the maritime activities of the city, and the road



passes the Custom House, usually regarded externally as the finest public building in Dublin. It was built in 1794 at a cost of half a million sterling, and its graceful dome and four decorated fronts give it a most distinguished appearance.\* Passing the Custom House along Eden Quay—on the opposite side of the river are two theatres—the visitor arrives at the O'Connell Bridge, which unites that street and Westmorland Street, and sees on the other side of the Liffey the tower of Christ Church Cathedral and the spires of St. Patrick's Cathedral.

"O'Connell Street, previous to the rebellion of 1916, did not measure half a mile in length, but its width, its line of monuments, its lofty buildings, and its contraction at both ends gave it the appearance of a square. Among the monuments the tall and graceful column known as Nelson's Pillar impresses by its height, and the memorial to O'Connell—which contains some fifty figures—by its beauty. The General Post Office, with a portico supported by six columns, and the Rotunda, a collection of concert and public rooms, mark the more important architectural features, which also comprise several first-class hotels. Round the Rotunda Gardens the road leads to Broadstone Station. Close by the 'Pillar,' rises the Roman Catholic Pro-Cathedral, in Marlborough Street, a domed building in the Doric style, surmounted by statues. Many of the Roman Catholic churches in Dublin and throughout Ireland are built in this style—without spire or steeple. In Abbey Street is the Irish National Theatre.

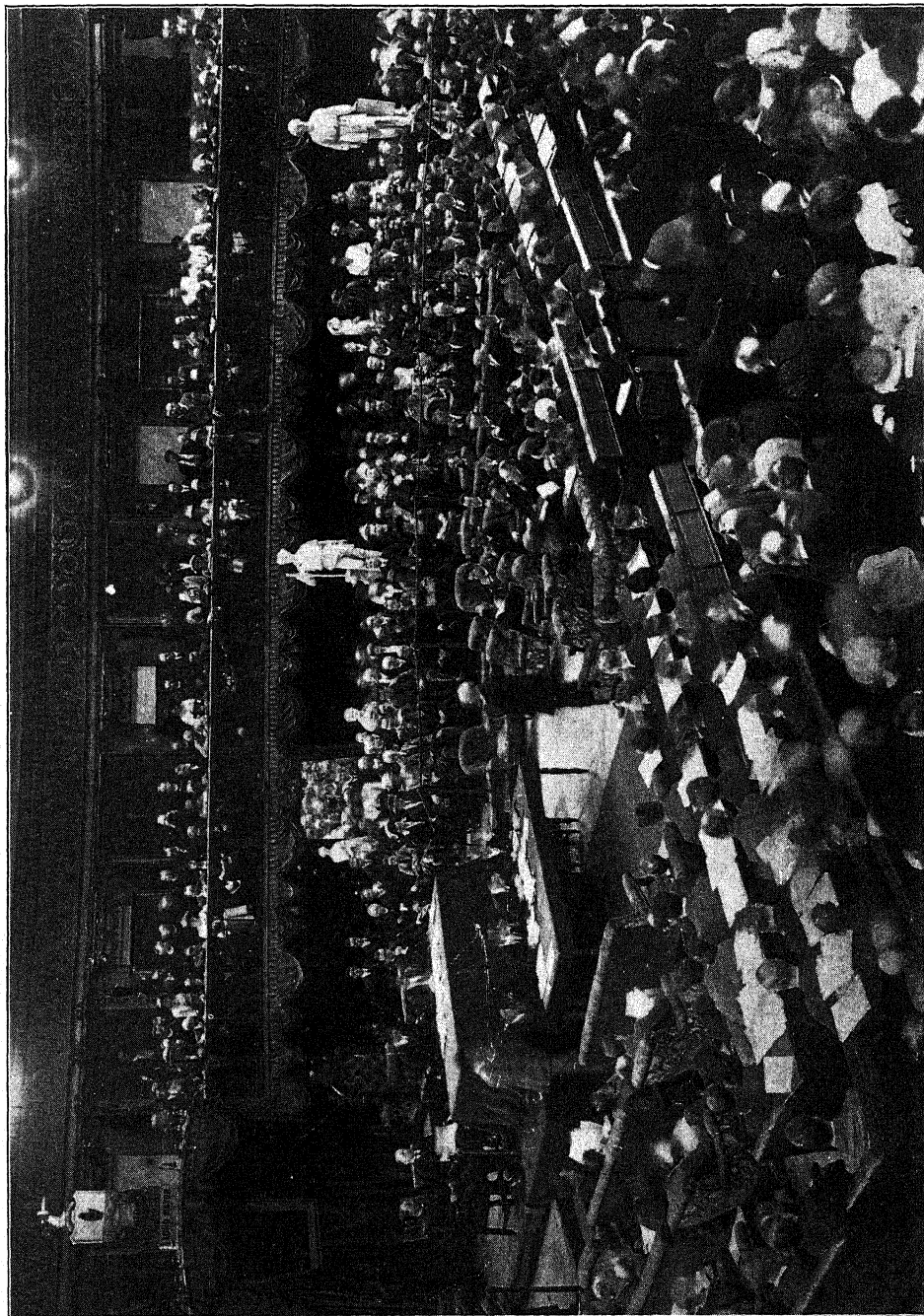
"Over O'Connell Bridge or past the Bank of Ireland, the old Irish Houses of Parliament, there comes into view, opposite, Trinity College. The Bank was built between 1729 and 1790, the front facing College Green being the earliest, and it occupies a space of about an acre and a half. The principal side consists of a colonnade of the Ionic order, extending around three sides of a quadrangular recess, and the east front has a portico containing six columns, statues surmounting the ends. Internally, the House of Lords still remains intact with its tapestries, but the House of Commons has been deprived of its gallery. Trinity College, opposite, fronted by statues of Burke and Goldsmith, stands in extensive

grounds, there being a park of twenty acres attached. The library contains a copy of all books published in the Kingdom, and among its manuscript treasures is the *Book of Kells*, a copy of the Gospel dating from the end of the sixth century.

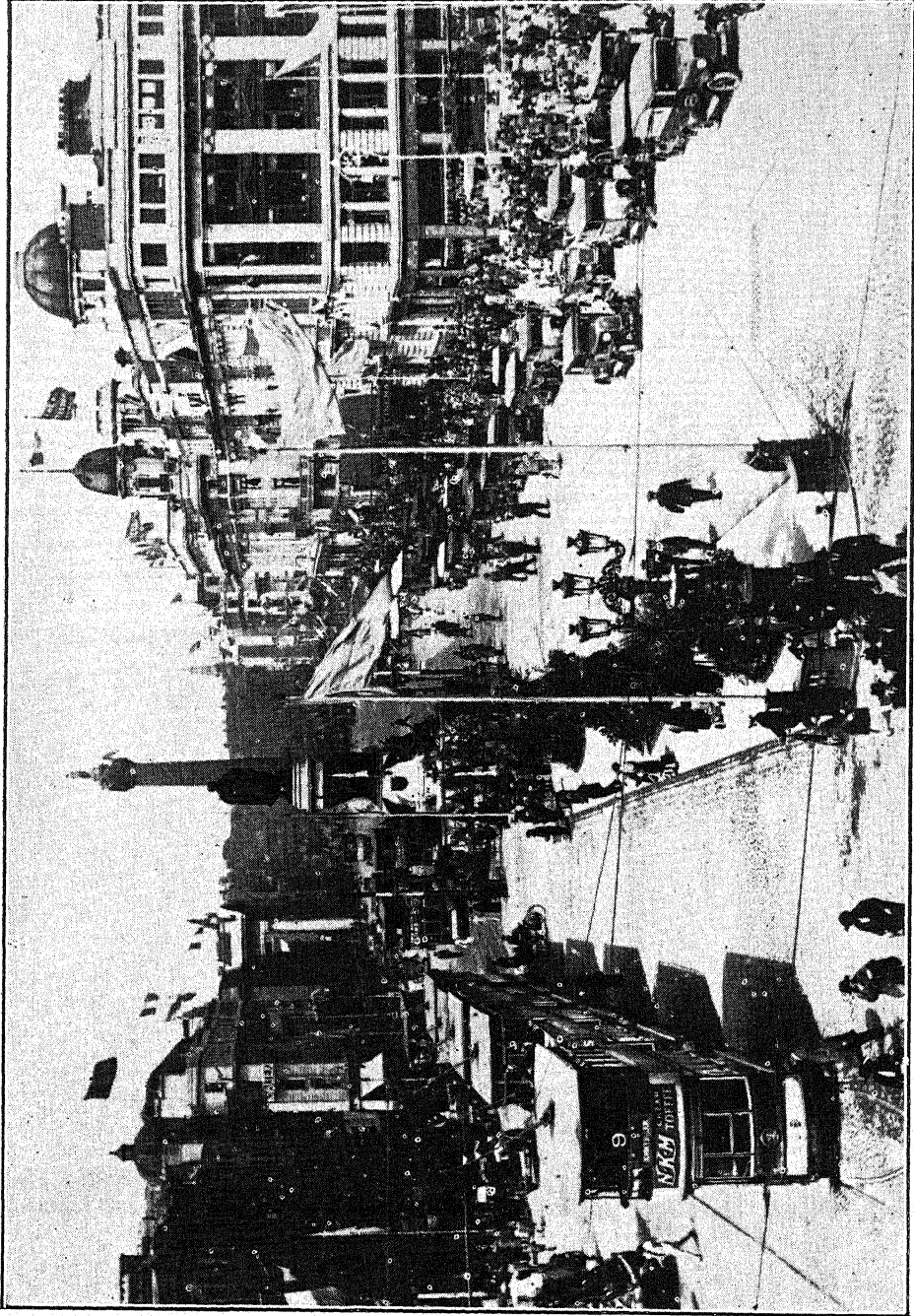
"College Green, which is a paved space, offers a choice of ways. Following the Grafton Street continuation of Westmorland Street, perhaps the most fashionable shopping part of the capital, the end comes in less than half a mile with the beautiful and spacious park and square known as St. Stephen's Green, which merits special attention for its lake and fine collection of birds, and for a number of public buildings around. In the adjoining Merrion Square stand the National Gallery and the National History Museum."†

Dublin Castle, once the official residence of the Viceroy, is a somewhat disappointing building, near to which stands Christ Church, or the Cathedral of the Holy Trinity, founded in 1038 and rebuilt in 1170. St. Patrick's Cathedral, situated in one of the poorer parts of the city, was originally built in 1230 and 1255, but was restored in 1864. The famous Phoenix Park embraces an area of 1,760 acres, and is seven miles in circumference. In it there are a "People's Park," zoological gardens, playing grounds, official residence of the Governor-General, and the old Hibernian Military School. The chief suburbs of Dublin are Clontarf (three miles), the scene of the great battle in which King Brian Boru crushed the Danes (1014); Sutton, a pretty little seaside residential suburb; Howth, a seaside suburb with the famous Hill of Howth; Malahide, with an old castle and Gothic abbey; Swords, with its round tower and other historic remains; Dundrum, the Three Rock Mountain and Leopardstown Racecourse; Carrickmines, with its famous gorge, called the Scalp; Kingstown (six miles), with its fine harbour and English-Irish passenger and mail steamboat service with Holyhead; Dalkey, an extremely picturesque suburb; Killiney Bay, with its glorious sands and scenery; Lucan, with its sulphur springs; Maynooth and its Roman Catholic College; Taghadoc and the round tower; Blessington and Poulaphouca in the romantic Wicklow mountains; Newbridge, the station for the old Curragh Irish military camp, race-course

\* Damaged in the Rebellion. † In Ireland.



**DAIL ÉIREANN**      *Photo, Topical Press*  
The historic session of the Irish Free State at which it was decided to ratify the Agreement with Great Britain



O'CONNELL STREET, DUBLIN

*Photo by courtesy of "I.T.A."*



DUBLIN, THE OLD BANK

*Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

and golf links; and Kildare, with its cathedral, round tower and Carmelite Abbey.

## NORTHERN IRELAND.

### BELFAST.

The capital of the State of Northern Ireland is the city of Belfast, which has a population of about 430,000, and is the chief industrial centre of the whole of Ireland. In number of population it exceeds that of the City of Dublin, the capital of the Free State, lying 101 miles to the south, although a hundred years ago the inhabitants numbered only a little over 12,000.

The position of the city, which stands about 15 miles from the open sea, on the river Lagan, at the head of Belfast Lough, which is, however, about 3 or 4 miles broad, is decidedly favourable to both manufacturing industry and maritime commerce. The traditional industry of this Ulster city is the making of linen, and not only does this industry continue, but it has been developed upon a vast scale, the average annual exports being valued at £17,000,000. Next in importance comes shipbuilding, and the largest battleships and liners find their way to the sea from the yards of Belfast, the average

annual output being 260,000 tons. Rope and cable making, tobacco manufacture, and distilling, also give employment to several thousand people.

The principal shopping thoroughfares are Royal Avenue, Donegall Place, Castle Place, and High Street. Among the many fine buildings must be mentioned the City Hall, built at a cost of £300,000. It is an imposing, almost square building, with a central dome 173 feet high. The pillars and walls of the interior are of rare marble. Near by is the fine library of the Linen Hall, which includes a valuable collection of books dealing with the life and works of Robert Burns.

Standing in extensive grounds close to University Square are the Gothic buildings of Queen's University, which was established in 1849, and is one of the finest educational institutions in Ireland. Almost opposite are the Royal Botanical Gardens, which contain the most beautiful fernery in the British Isles. Among other fine structures are the Cathedral, the Methodist College, the Ulster and Orange Halls, the Belfast Royal Academy, and the Public Library, Art Gallery and Museum.

Perhaps the most unique features of Belfast are the Cave Hill (1,188 ft.), with its beautiful mountain park, which seems

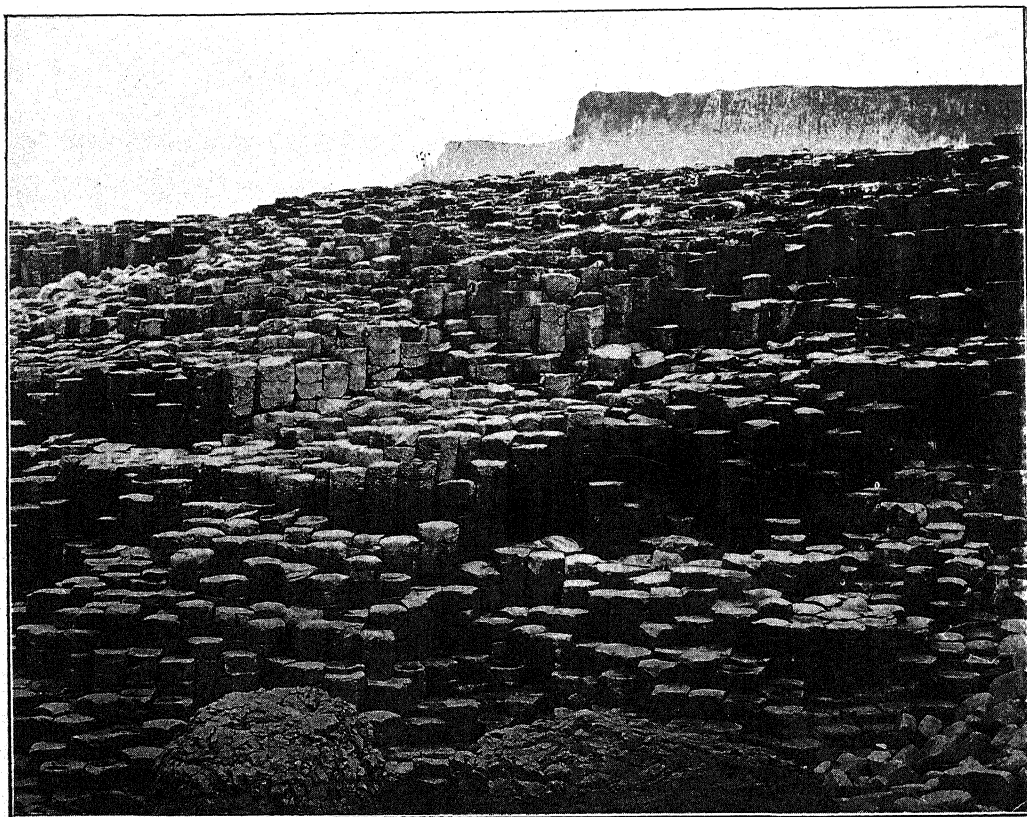


to overhang the city—"and silhouettes against the sky a strange likeness of Napoleon's profile"—and "The Giant's Ring," an immense earthwork rampart surrounding the remains of what was once an imposing *cromlech*.

### CANALS.

The roads in Ireland are, on the whole, excellent, considering to what a limited extent they are required or utilised for heavy commercial motor vehicles except in the neighbourhood of the big cities. The rivers are more or less navigable, and have ports at their mouths, but the longest of all, the Shannon, is impeded by rapids. Owing to the low watersheds between several of the rivers, there are connections established between them by means of canals, and in

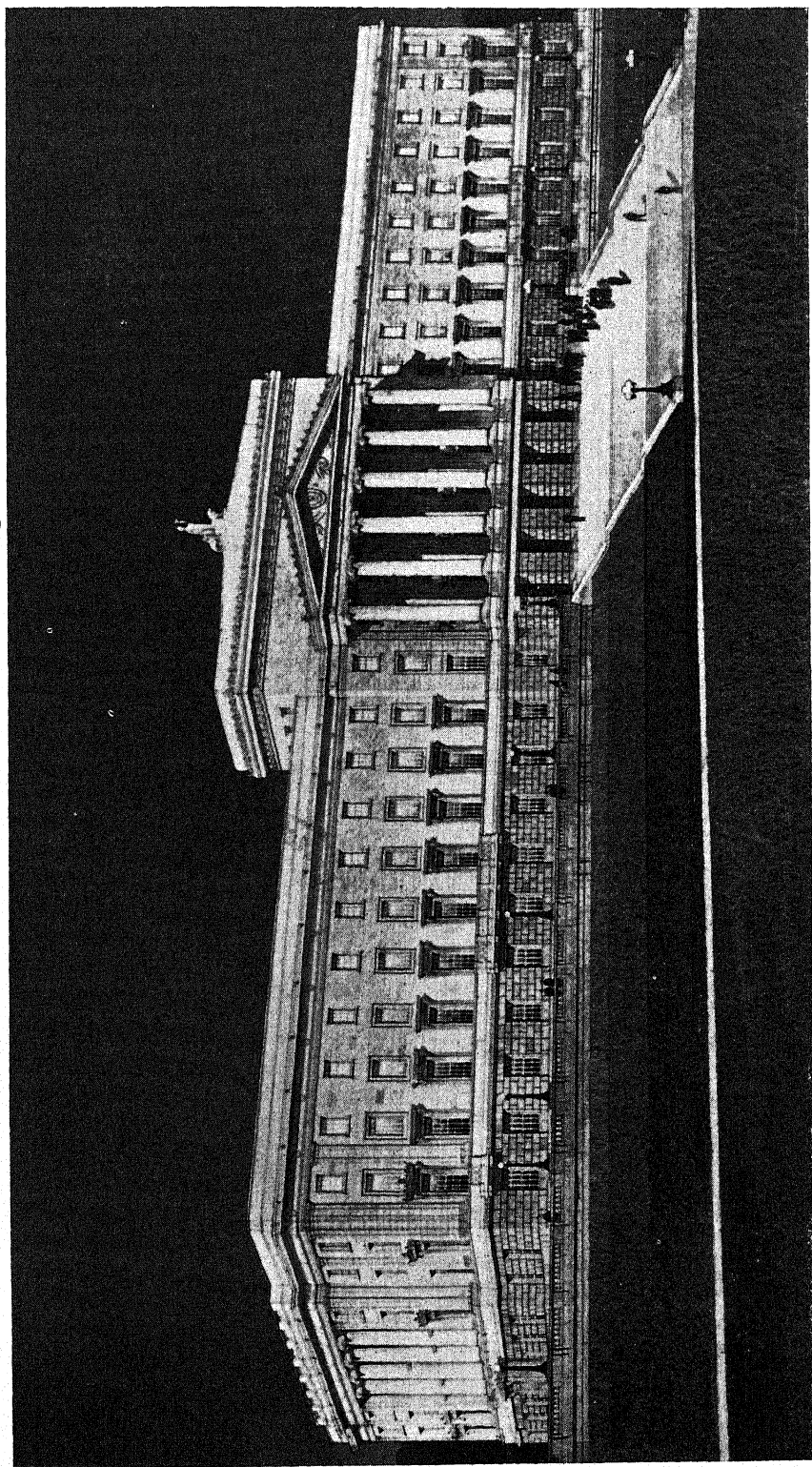
all there are 848 miles of canals in the country, of which ninety-five miles are controlled by railways. The principal canals are: (1) The Royal Canal. This is ninety-eight miles long, and runs from Dublin, north of the Liffey, *via* Maynooth, to the Shannon, with a branch to Longford. (2) The Grand Canal. This is 166 miles long, and, starting from Dublin, south of the Liffey, runs, *via* Philipstown and Tullamore, to the Shannon, across which it passes to Ballinasloe. A branch from this connects it with Athy on the Barrow. (3) The Erne and Shannon Canal. This runs from Leitrim on the Shannon to the Upper Lake. The lakes of Ireland are fairly considerable for the size of the country, but they play practically no part in the commercial life of the people. The rectangular Lough Neagh, in



Photo, L.M.S. Rly.

THE GIANT'S CAUSEWAY COUNTY ANTRIM, STATE OF NORTHERN IRELAND  
"Forty thousand crystalline columns split with remarkable regularity by the forces of nature"





THE NEW GOVERNMENT BUILDING, NORTHERN IRELAND

Northern Ireland, which is 56 ft. deep, and has an area of 152 square miles, forms a part of the River Bann. It is the largest lake in the United Kingdom.

### RAILWAYS.

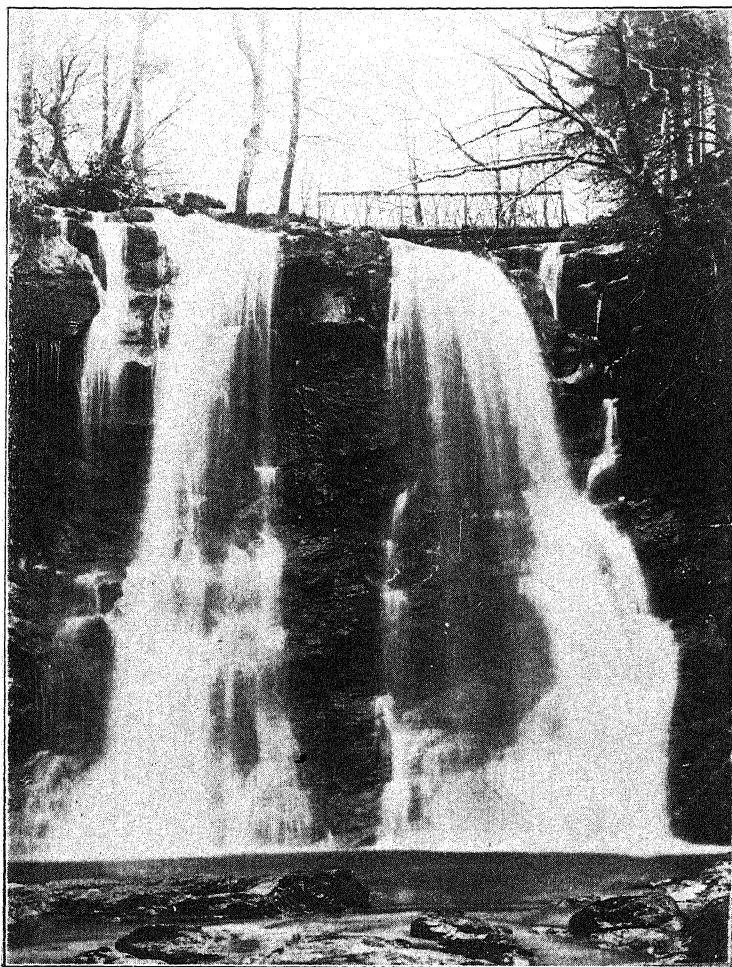
The railways require a fuller notice, especially as some of them are utilised so

about 1,120 miles. The main line starts from Dublin, and as its name indicates, runs towards the south-west of the country although serving other parts of the south-west of Ireland, especially Killarney, Valencia Harbour and Kenmare. From Limerick Junction it branches in a northerly direction as far as Sligo, *via* Limerick, Tuam and Clare-

morris. The great importance of this railway arises from the fact that it is the chief mail route to Queens-town (Cobh), whence there is shipping communication with the most important ports of the world. (2) The Great Northern. This serves practically the whole of the north of Ireland, and its importance as a great highway is derived from the fact that it runs to Moville, already mentioned, where the late mails from England are shipped for Canada. It is the main line from Dublin to Belfast. (3) The Midland Great Western. This railway starting from Dublin serves the west of Ireland, with its main line from Dublin to Galway. (4) The Dublin and South Eastern. This railway is of small extent, and runs from Dublin to the south-eastern counties.

The communication between Great Britain and Ireland is excellent. For several years

the chief route has been *via* Liverpool and Belfast (for Northern Ireland) and Liverpool and Kingstown (for the Free State). By means of the great L.M.S. system, London is placed in excellent communication with Belfast and Dublin. There are regular ser-



THE ESS-NA-CRUB (FALL) IN THE BEAUTIFUL VALE OF GLENARIFF, COUNTY ANTRIM, NORTHERN IRELAND *Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

much in connecting some of the ports of England with the ports which have a vitality of their own by reason of the traffic passing over them on its way to America. The principal lines are : (1) The Great Southern and Western. The length of this line is

CITY HALL, BELFAST, CAPITAL OF NORTHERN IRELAND *Photo, L.M.S. Rly.*

vices, in addition to the above, between Liverpool and the different ports of Ireland, Bristol and the south of Ireland, Fleetwood and Belfast, and Glasgow and the east coast.

### AGRICULTURE.

Ireland is essentially given over to agriculture, but there are many circumstances which prevent it from being so productive in this respect as otherwise it might be. Leaving altogether out of account the political factor, which has hitherto played an important part, the position of the country has to be carefully considered. Being exposed to the prevailing winds of the Atlantic, there is an excess of rain. This, naturally, does not advance the growth of certain products, but at the same time it gives a peculiar freshness to the pasture lands, and the mildness of the climate during the winter has an important economic result, for the grass continues to grow then, so that it is suitable for cattle all the year round, while in England, especially in the eastern counties, roots for winter food are an absolute necessity.

The area under cultivation in Northern Ireland is approximately 1,000,000 acres. The production of agricultural produce averages : oats, 280,000 tons ; potatoes, 1,200,000 tons ; turnips, 860,000 tons ; hay, 1,000,000 tons ; flax 6,000 tons. The live stock includes 670,000 cattle ; 490,000 sheep ; 120,000 pigs and 112,000 horses.

In the Irish Free State the area under cultivation totals 3,800,000 acres, and the average annual production of the staple crops is as follows : oats, 640,000 tons ; potatoes, 2,000,000 tons ; turnips, 3,800,000 tons ; hay, 5,300,000 tons. The number of live stock is approximately : cattle, 4,000,000 ; sheep, 3,000,000 ; pigs, 890,000 ; horses 400,000.

Flax is extensively grown, and is required for the linen manufactures of the north. This is raised almost exclusively in the north-eastern section of Ireland, and about 40,000 acres are devoted to it. Flax is produced in hardly any other part of the British Isles. Upon this flax, produced in the neighbourhood, much of the prosperity of Belfast depends.

With such excellent pasture land it is not surprising that the raising of live stock has been for many years one of the principal, if not the principal, of Irish industries, and cattle are reared in large numbers, especially for the English market. Sheep and pigs are also very numerous. Horse-breeding is also profitably carried on, whilst dairy-farming is on the increase.

### FISHING.

If the herring fishery was prosecuted off the Irish south coast with anything like the energy shown by the Scottish fishermen, it is probable that it would prove highly remunerative to those engaged in it. Unfortunately the fish could not be brought to the English markets in a fresh state, and the only method would be to set up curing establishments, where fish could be prepared for the foreign markets. Under present conditions this seems a very unlikely thing to happen, and consequently the fisheries are only utilised for the supply of local or individual needs. Again, there is no doubt that a great pilchard fishery might also be established on the south coast, if energy and capital were at hand. The most valuable yield is that of the salmon fisheries, the rivers of Ireland being well stocked. These fisheries attract a large number of visitors every year, and the money thus obtained is a very appreciable source of income to the people of the west.

### MINING.

The most valuable mineral worked in Ireland is building stone of various kinds. The quarries in different parts produce a variety of beautiful limestones. There are the black marbles of Kilkenny, the red ones of Cork, the green ones of Galway, and the variegated ones of Fermanagh. The quarries of Killaloe and Valentia afford large-sized, excellent slates, and an almost inexhaustible supply of granite is found in the hills to the south of Dublin.

Coal is mined to the extent of a little over 100,000 tons per annum, the principal deposits being the anthracite near Castlecomer, on the borders of Queen's County and Kilkenny.

Iron is mined in Antrim, and, to a small extent, in Donegal. Lead, silver, copper, zinc and gold are all found in small quantities among the hills, especially those of Wicklow, but there is no regular output. Antrim has beds of rock salt in the south, and also deposits of bauxite, the only ore of aluminium to be found in the United Kingdom.

### MANUFACTURES.

The chief manufactures are linens and woollens, but these are confined to the north and east. Belfast is the centre of the linen industry, and owes its importance and its very existence to the growth of flax in the immediate neighbourhood, its situation near the sea, and the quality of the water of the River Lagan for bleaching and dyeing. Belfast does, in fact, produce more linen than any other city in the world, and has to import large quantities of flax in addition to that which is grown locally. Other towns engaged in the linen trade are Londonderry, Coleraine, Carrickfergus, Lisburn, Lurgan, Portadown, Newry and Larne.

The woollen trade is carried on in several small towns, the only one of any size thus engaged being Kilkenny. The purely agricultural industries, such as ham and bacon curing, are common throughout the country, and it is not necessary to do more than refer to the minor industries, such as tobacco manufacture, flour-milling, brewing, tanning, leather manufacture, and biscuit making.

The importance of the shipbuilding of Belfast requires special notice. It is, in fact, as far as the city itself is concerned, the leading industry. Nearly 30,000 men and boys are employed by Harland and Wolff, the great firm on Queen's Island, and it is here that some of the largest ships in the world are built. The industry depends largely upon coal obtained from Scotland and Cumberland, and iron and steel from Barrow.

DOMINIONS  
OF THE  
BRITISH EMPIRE





# CANADA

THE Dominion of Canada, extending westward from the Atlantic Ocean to the Pacific Ocean, and northward from the United States boundary into the Arctic Circle, embraces a total area computed at 3,684,723 square miles. This area is divided into nine Provinces, and the Yukon and North-West Territories.

The following table shows the total area of the Dominion in land and water, and the political division into provinces and territories :—

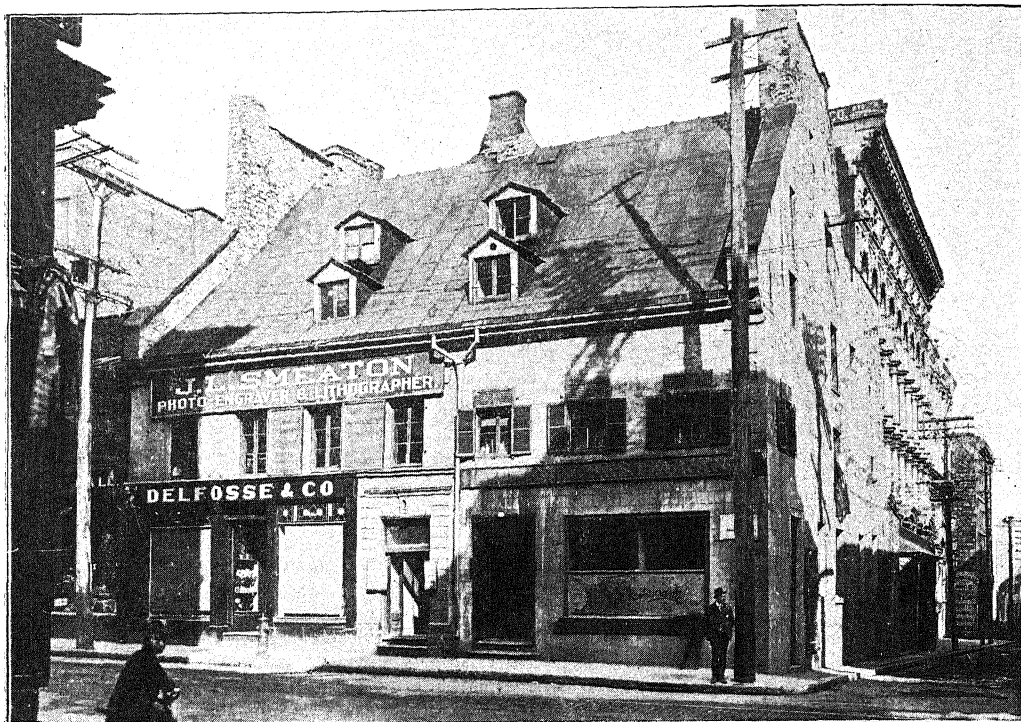
southern jagged outline borders the United States. Its population of 9,796,800 averages just over two persons to each of its 3,684,723 square miles of area. This does not preclude dense massing of its people in certain sections of the country, but vast stretches of uninhabited territory in the north equalise the population. The United States (continental) contains 658,000 square miles less than Canada, while Europe can lay claim to but few more, and it is no less than thirty-one times larger than the United Kingdom.

LAND AND WATER AREA OF CANADA BY PROVINCES AND TERRITORIES.

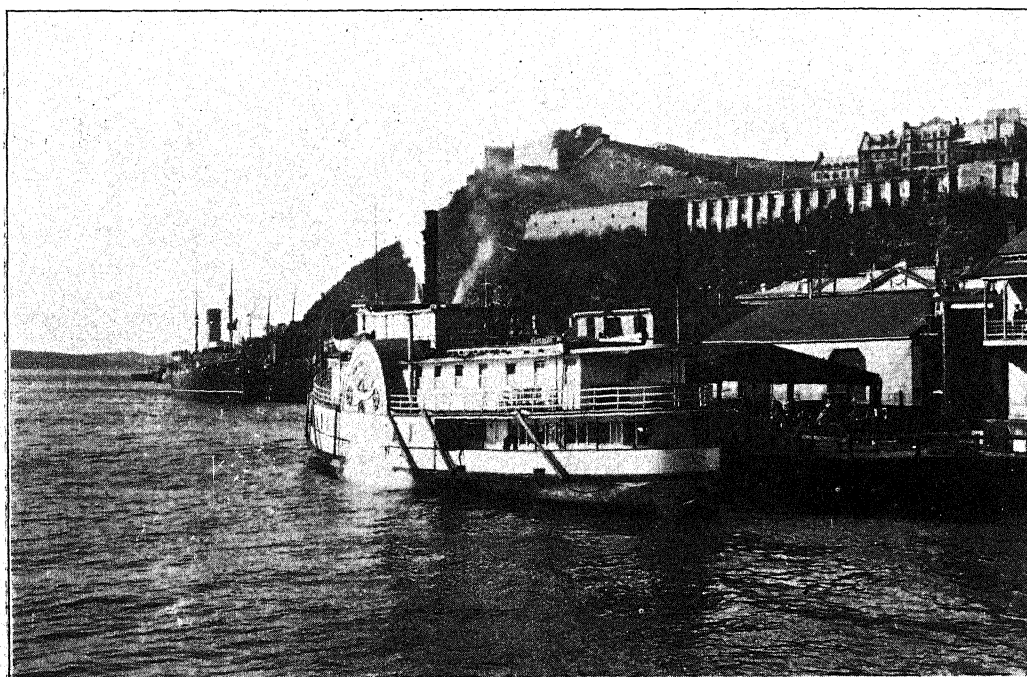
Provinces and Territories.	Land.	Water.	Total.
	Square Miles.	Square Miles.	Square Miles.
Prince Edward Island - - - - -	2,184	—	2,184
Nova Scotia - - - - -	20,743	685	21,428
New Brunswick - - - - -	27,710	275	27,985
Quebec - - - - -	571,004	23,430	594,434
Ontario - - - - -	357,962	49,300	407,262
Manitoba - - - - -	224,777	27,055	251,832
Saskatchewan - - - - -	237,975	13,725	251,700
Alberta - - - - -	248,800	6,485	255,285
British Columbia - - - - -	349,970	5,885	355,855
Yukon - - - - -	205,346	1,730	207,076
North-West Territories—			
Franklin - - - - -	546,532	7,500	554,032
Keewatin - - - - -	218,460	9,700	228,160
Mackenzie - - - - -	493,225	34,265	527,490
	3,504,688	180,035	3,684,723

With the exception of Alaska—the United States' rich possession in the far north-west—Denmark's icy Greenland on the extreme north-east, and on the south-east the Empire's separately governed territory of Newfoundland, which includes the Labrador coast, the Dominion of Canada comprises the entire northern part of the continent of North America. On west, north and east three great oceans—the Pacific, the Arctic, and the Atlantic—form its boundaries, while its

Canada is a land of irregular outline and enormous distances, with a mainland varying from the latitude of Spain and Italy to that of Northern Norway. From Victoria on the Pacific, to Dawson on the Yukon River, is 1,550 miles by water and rail, while from the city of Quebec to the Straits of Belle Isle on Atlantic, is 850 miles. From Halifax, on the east coast, to Vancouver, on the west, is 3,772 miles by rail, and though on both Atlantic and Pacific shores the coast line is



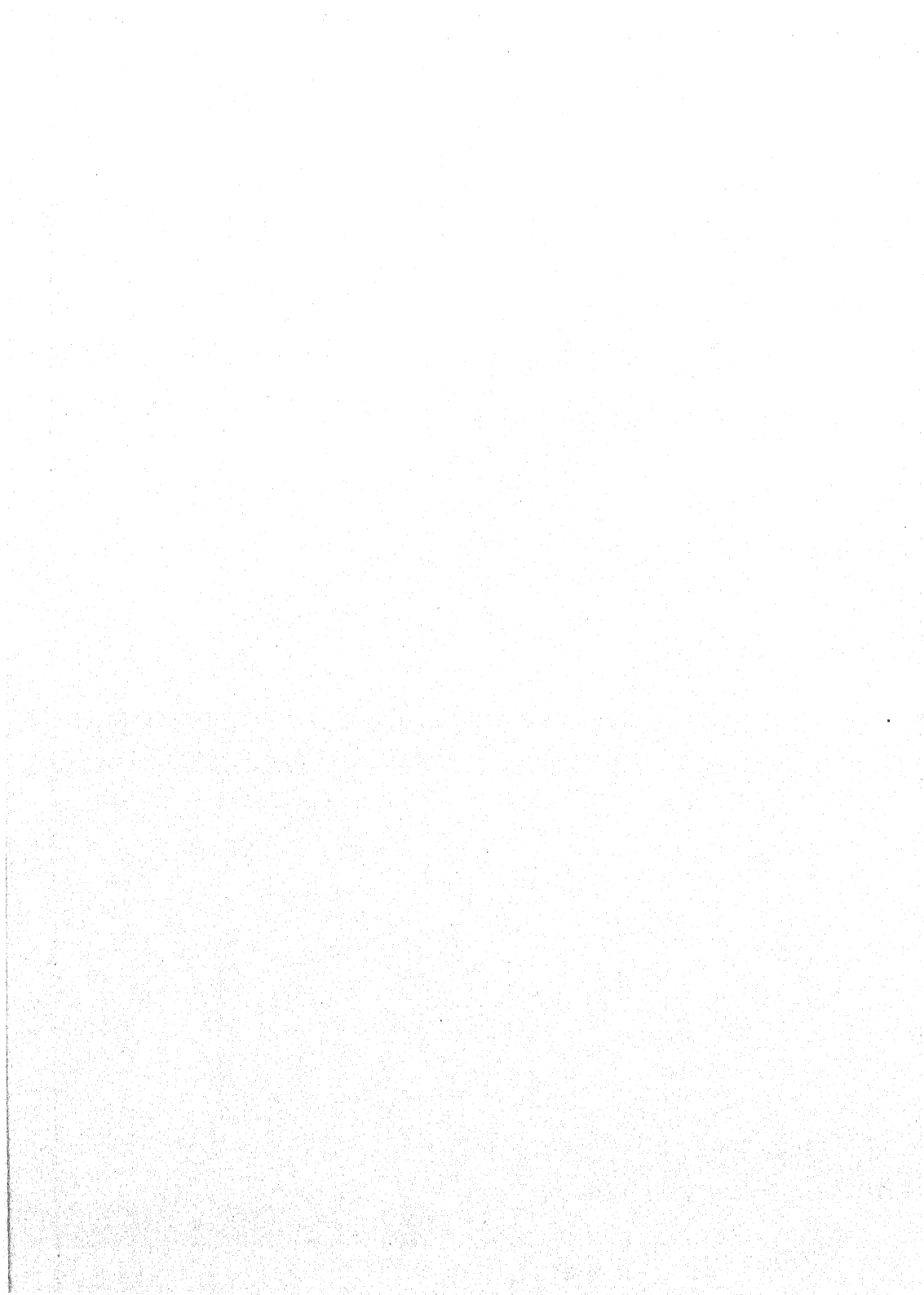
OLD HOUSE IN MONTREAL, WHERE THE GOVERNORS-GENERAL OF CANADA  
RESIDED IN BY-GONE TIMES *Photo, Canadian Government*



THE CITADEL, QUEBEC

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*







largely cut off by restrictions of Nature's own making, there is no lack of admirable harbours on either side of the continent. From the United States boundary (the 49th parallel of latitude) to the Arctic Ocean is 1,600 miles, and the frigid region approaching the North Pole is a perfect network of islands, peninsulas, inlets, channels, straits, sounds, and gulfs. Nature and man have conspired to make Northern Canada a land most difficult to survey. Canada is computed to have a greater length of coast line than Great Britain and Germany combined, and some 3,000 miles of navigable lakes and rivers.

### HISTORY.

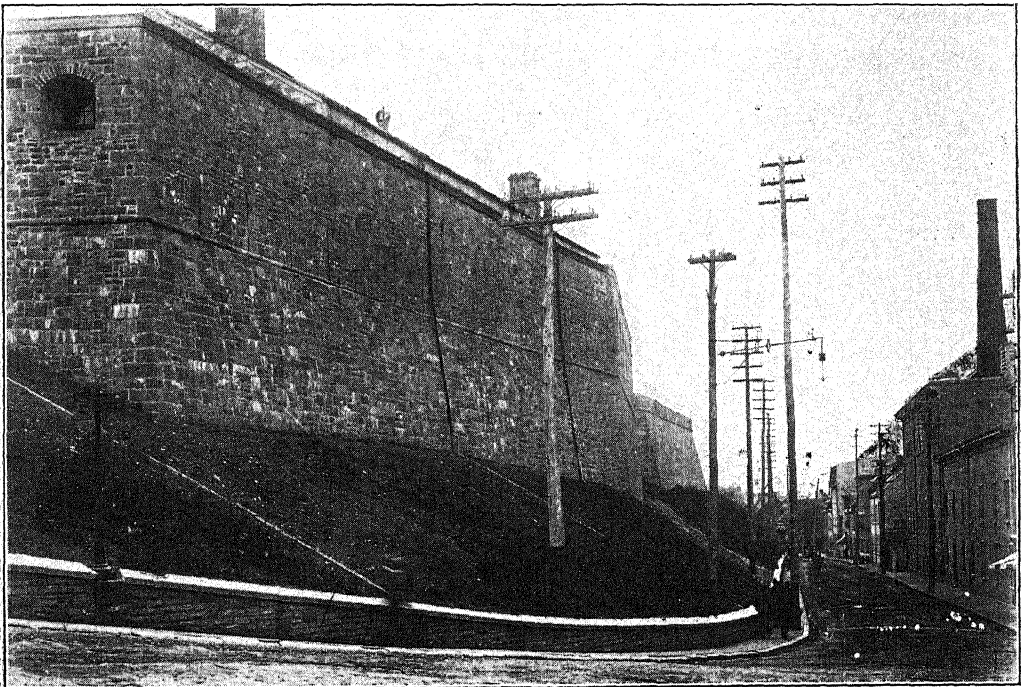
It is generally believed that Columbus was the first European to set foot in the New World; such, however, has recently been proved not to have been the case. The discovery on the coast of New England of conclusive evidences of a Norse settlement seems to substantiate the claim of Norwegians that Seif Ericson and an adventurous band of

Norsemen landed on the American coast during the eleventh century. It was, however, the re-discovery by Christopher Columbus in the year 1492 which commenced the period of exploration, war, settlement and exploitation resulting in the formation of the Great States of the New World nearly four and a half centuries later.

The emissaries of Spain were early at work annexing the territories of the south, followed quickly by the Jesuit Fathers, who commenced the gigantic task of pacification and colonisation in the vast areas which now compose the rapidly growing nations of South America. French explorers went to the north of the Continent, and settled mainly around Quebec; and Englishmen to the Atlantic coast of what now forms the United States.

### THE BEGINNING OF CANADA.

The first English navigator to land in the New World was John Cabot, who sailed from Bristol and reached Cape Breton, Nova Scotia, in the year 1497—five years after the famous voyage of Christopher Columbus. It was



*Photo, Canadian Government*

PART OF THE OLD WALL OF THE CITY OF QUEBEC

generally supposed at this time that the land discovered was only a group of islands on the route to China and the Indies, and no settlers went to Nova Scotia until 107 years later (1604), although French explorers actually took possession of the country in 1534. The first colonists in this portion of Canada, as in most other parts, were Frenchmen; but the land was claimed by the Kings of both England and France. At this time, Nova Scotia was called L'Acadie, and many fierce encounters took place some years later between the French settlers in the north and the English in the south.

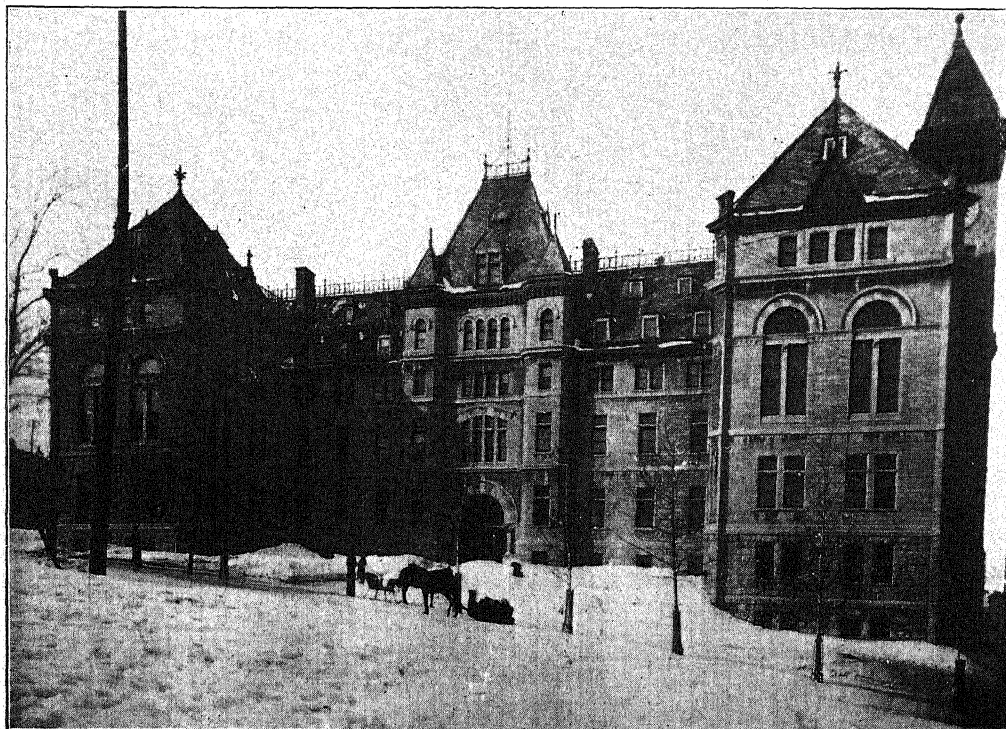
On the 3rd July, 1608, the French explorer, Samuel de Champlain, landed from his little ship, *The Gift of God*, under the shadow of the great rock on which the citadel of Quebec now stands, after having sailed up the mighty St. Lawrence River that Cartier had discovered seventy-four years earlier. Champlain laid the foundations of Quebec and opened the history of Canada as a white man's land.

Champlain had great ideas; but the colony that he founded was still no more than a little

hamlet when, in 1629, its garrison of ten men surrendered to an English fleet. The English King, having no notion of the value of his conquest, returned Quebec to the Crown of France, and for 130 years more the French shared Canada with the aboriginal Indians. With some of the tribesmen, the Hurons and the Algonquins, Champlain made friends; but by doing so he made enemies of the more powerful Iroquois, who raided the colony unmercifully and wrote its history in letters of blood by the light of torture fires.

### THE FIRST SETTLERS.

Of the earliest colonists, many were simple farmers, who painfully cleared fields for themselves out of the forest then covering the whole St. Lawrence valley. The rest of the new-comers were chiefly traders, tempted across the Atlantic by the high profits to be made in the one and only form of commerce for which Canada was supposed to give opportunity—the fur trade. In 1642, however, a second town was founded about 200 miles further up the river than Quebec, not as a seat of commerce but as an outpost of



THE CITY HALL, QUEBEC

Photo, High Commissioner for Canada.

religion—though this little town, called by its founders Ville Marie, has since become the commercial metropolis of the Dominion, the city of Montreal. The missionaries who went out to Christianise the degraded Hurons and savage Iroquois, the soldiers who came over from France to defend their fellow-countrymen, and the explorers who penetrated the west, and even sailed down the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico—yes, and the farmers going to till their fields with a musket slung over the shoulder—all took their lives in their hands and did heroic deeds, of which the British Empire and their French motherland alike are proud.

### ENGLAND AND FRANCE IN NORTH AMERICA.

For nearly three centuries France and England struggled for possession of this portion of the continent. Wars took place in 1689-97, 1692-1713, 1741-48, and in 1754-60.

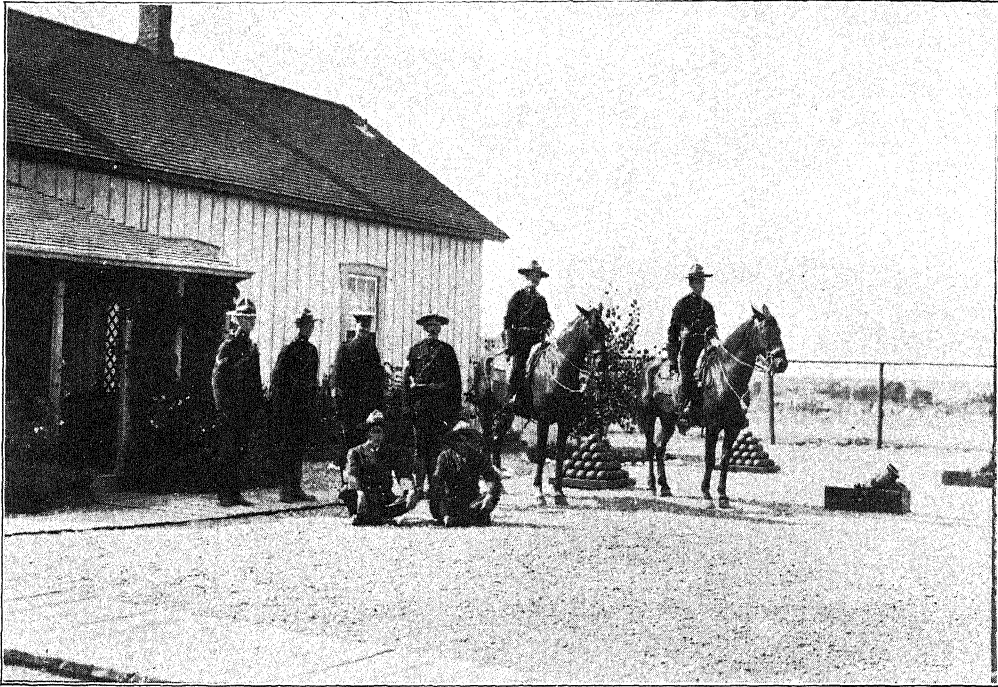
"It was not till 1713, in the reign of Queen Anne, that the mainland part of Nova Scotia became finally British, and the first British settlers began to arrive. Even then the troubles of the country were not over. We have all been moved by Longfellow's pathetic story of Evangeline; and the real story was sad enough—for the French folk living on the shores of the Bay of Fundy, stirred up by their military kinsmen who still held the island of Cape Breton, encouraged the wild Indians to raid the British settlements; and the British authorities could think of no less drastic way of protecting their people than by forcibly removing the French population and scattering them among the British colonies further south. When these colonists themselves threw off allegiance to King George, the loyalists among them, refusing to live under the Republican flag of the new United States, fled northward, thousands of them making their new homes in Nova Scotia.

"By this time, the whole of the Province now called by that name was British; for General Wolfe and his comrades, before sailing up the St. Lawrence to take Quebec, laid siege to the powerful French fortress of Louisbourg, and, with its capture, became masters of the whole island, Cape Breton, on which it stood."

Quebec, which was then the capital of New France, fell to the British forces under General Wolfe in 1759. By the Treaty of Utrecht, Nova Scotia, which included the present provinces of New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island, was ceded to Great Britain; and in 1763, by the Treaty of



*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*  
STRATHCONA MONUMENT, MONTREAL



**RIDERS OF THE PLAINS** *Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*  
A Post of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police. The native trackers will be seen in the foreground

Paris, England established her Canadian dominions.

"The French Canadians, like their fellow-countrymen at home, had been strictly deprived of political rights. They had been ruled by officials, and by seigneurs among whom their King had divided the land in Canada in his attempt to graft the feudal system on the New World. The people were not very much concerned, therefore, when one set of officials was replaced by another; especially as the British Government wisely guaranteed them the free exercise of their religious and other customs. When the British colonists, further south, themselves rose in rebellion against King George, the French Canadians refused to join them, and helped the British troops to repel the American invasion in 1775. Again, during the war of 1812, the American army overrunning the St. Lawrence valley, was driven back by the united force of British soldiers and French Canadians"—and the part so gallantly played by the modern representatives of the original French settlers in the great European War

of 1914-18 is too recent an event to need comment here.

Some few years after the establishment of her sovereignty in Canada, Great Britain lost her more southern possessions on the American Atlantic seaboard, the rebellion of the colonists against King George in 1775-83 terminating in the separation of the New England colonies, and eventually, the formation of the United States of America.

#### **UNITED EMPIRE LOYALISTS.**

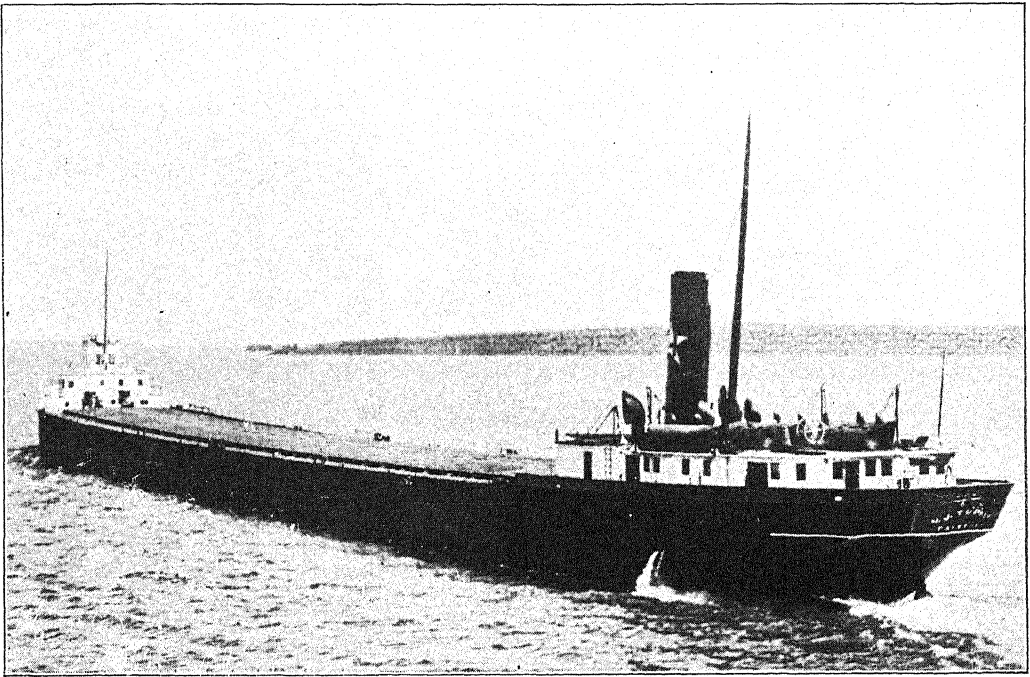
The solid and lasting foundation of New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island and Ontario, was laid by men of British stock, the same exiled loyal race whose coming we have heard of in the maritime provinces. "These people, who neither could nor would live under an alien flag, were followed by a crowd of folk who abandoned the new Republic after a little experience of it. Then, before many years had passed, a great wave of emigration swept over the Atlantic; and though many settled at the very gates

of Canada, in the maritime Provinces, thousands more flowed up the St. Lawrence, and even the lakes, thence striking north into the woods and settling down irrevocably as the ancestors of a Canadian race.

"The end of our wars with Napoleon, sending into civil life a multitude of soldiers who had no trade beyond that of arms; the eviction or voluntary departure of Scottish Highlanders from their poor but loved hill-sides; the depression of trade, with ruin

#### EXTENSION INLAND.

After the change in Quebec and the settlement of the maritime Provinces, Ontario began to feel the influx of settlers. Previously however, "bold runners of the woods, snapping their fingers at the King in Paris and his Governors in Canada, penetrated the forest wilderness far up the St. Lawrence and Ottawa valleys, while the colony was still very young, trading with the Indians for the skins of the beaver and other fur-bearing



GRAIN STEAMER ON THE CANADIAN LAKES

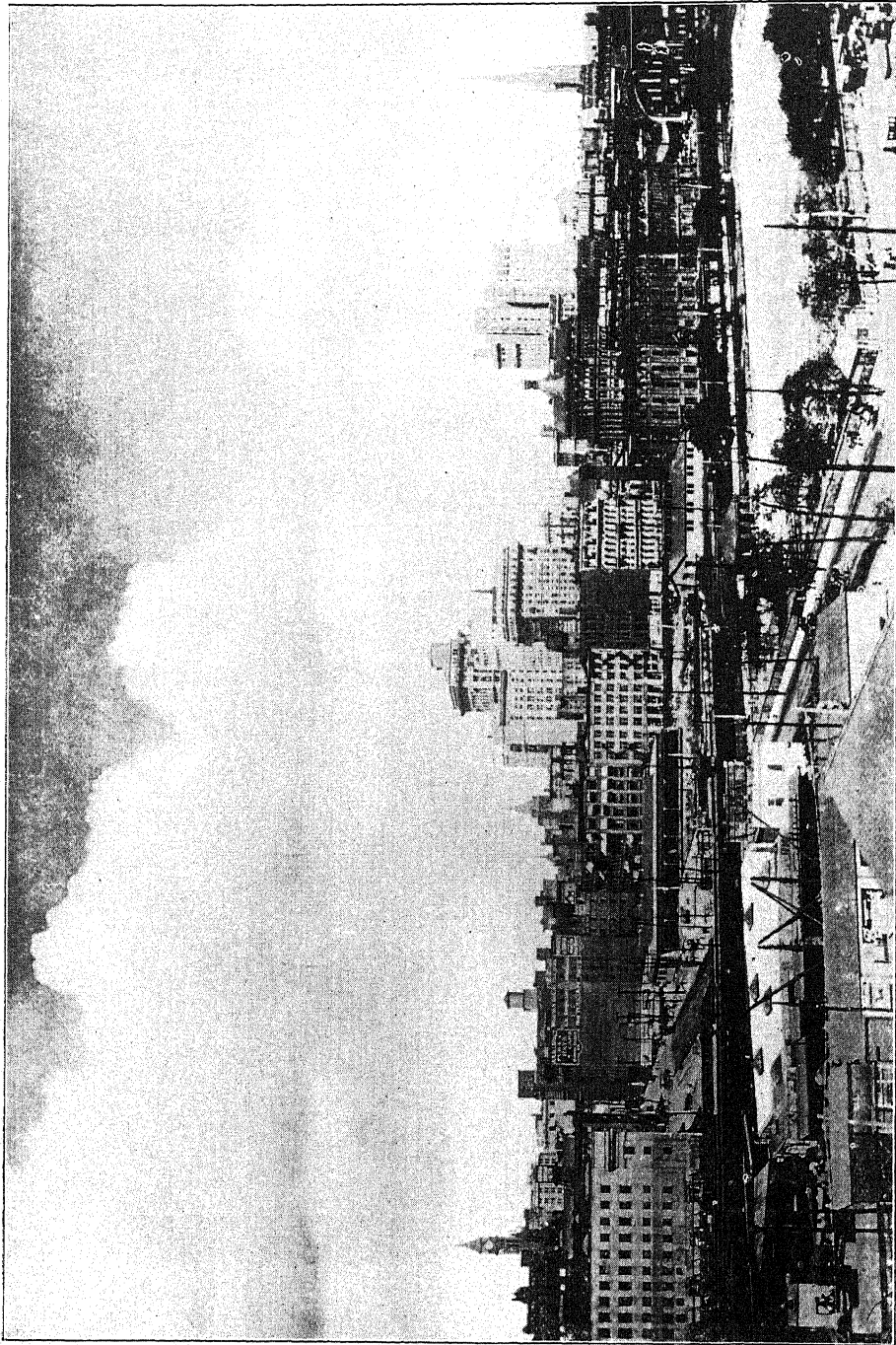
*Photo, C. P. Rly.*

falling on gentle and simple alike; these were among the winds, not all of them ill winds, that filled the sails of the emigrant ships. To Canada these varying influences, good and bad, worked unmixed good; and the emigrants themselves before long allowed that their troubles had been blessings in disguise. Most of the Nova Scotians, and many of the inhabitants of the other Provinces, can trace their ancestry back to the United Empire Loyalists, who came from the revolted States, and suffered so much hardship for the sake of the Flag."

creatures—though this trade had been conferred on monopolists, and ferocious punishment fell on infringers of the monopoly when they could be caught. Brave missionaries, too, pressed up to the very shores of far Lake Huron in the west, resolved to convert the friendly but barbarous Huron Indians; which they had only done imperfectly when the Hurons' hereditary foe, the implacable Iroquois, stole down upon them and swept off white and red men alike to a cruel death."

"The great explorers and empire-builders—Champlain, founder of Canada; Joliet,





GENERAL VIEW OF TORONTO  
One of the largest cities in Canada

*Photo, C.N. Ry.*

discoverer of the Mississippi ; La Salle, who navigated that wonderful river to its mouth in the Gulf of Mexico ; these were they who also helped to let in the light upon the darkness of untracked Ontario."

### THE HUDSON BAY COMPANY.

When James the First was King, Henry Hudson sailed across the Atlantic, rounded the northern coast of Labrador, and found his way down into the great land-locked sea which now conceals his bones and bears his name. Sixty years later an English company, with Prince Rupert at its head, obtained from Charles the Second, a territorial grant of the whole country round Hudson Bay at an annual rental of "two elks and two black beavers," which was not an exorbitant rent for 2,500,000 square miles of territory. The company first planted forts only on the shores of the Bay, where they bartered English manufactures for the furs brought down by Indians. Presently, however, under stress of competition, the company's traders moved inland and built stockaded forts at many points along the great rivers which formed the highways of the west. The company's chief post was Fort Garry, some miles south of the great Lake Winnipeg.

A few settlers were brought in by one of the company's leaders, Lord Selkirk, in 1811, but otherwise the country was left to the Indians, the fur traders, and the wild animals who furnished the profits of both. The Federal Government of Canada, however, had scarcely come into existence, when it bought out the company's monopoly, and added the "North-west" to the Dominion. Settlers began to come in, and in 1870 the Red River district was organised into a province, with Fort Garry, now Winnipeg, as its capital.

### RED RIVER REBELLION.

The transference of the country to the new Government was not accomplished without trouble. The little community of half-breeds, descendants of French fur traders and their Indian wives, disturbed by the appearance of Federal surveyors drawing their mysterious chains across the land, rose in rebellion ; but on the approach of Colonel Wolseley with a British Force from the east, the rising suppressed itself. Manitoba was now fairly launched on a history of almost prosaic prosperity.

### SASKATCHEWAN AND ALBERTA.

Until 1905, the huge area lying between Manitoba and the Rocky Mountains was simply known as the North-West Territories ; and though there was a little legislative body, its powers were limited, and the Federal Government at Ottawa controlled the situation. When Manitoba was formed, scarcely anyone lived on the prairie further west, except wild Indians, wild animals, and a scattering of traders, hunters, half-breeds, missionaries and Mounted Police. The territories were thought of little value, except by the few who had been in there and knew better ; but knowledge spread, and settlers began to come in. The arrival of these white men, and of the officers surveying the land for homesteads, alarmed the little half-breed community living near the junction of the North and South Saskatchewan Rivers. The early trouble of Manitoba was repeated ; and the disturbance was far worse.

Louis Riel, the leader of the Red River Rebellion, came back from exile in the United States in 1884 ; and early in the following year, the French half-breeds, failing to obtain attention or satisfaction for their grievances and fears, took up arms. Riel proclaimed himself President of a Saskatchewan Republic. He even adopted the name of "David," and declared that he was a Messiah sent to drive out the white man and restore the whole land to the red man. A little force of Mounted Police and volunteers from the village of Prince Albert, sallying out to recover stores which the rebels had captured, was caught and defeated.

Two hundred miles further west, a particularly wild band of Cree Indians swooped down upon the infant settlement of Frog Lake, took the people captive, and killed nearly all of them. Most of the tribes resisted all temptation to rise, but enough of them went on the war-path to throw the Territory into confusion. The village of Battleford, where all the settlers for many miles round had taken refuge, was closely besieged. The Dominion had no regular army, but regiments of volunteers were sent from Eastern Canada and Manitoba, and after several tough fights the rebellion was put down. It was only an incident, though an unpleasant one, in the development of the country. The inflow of white population since then has been so large that the whites

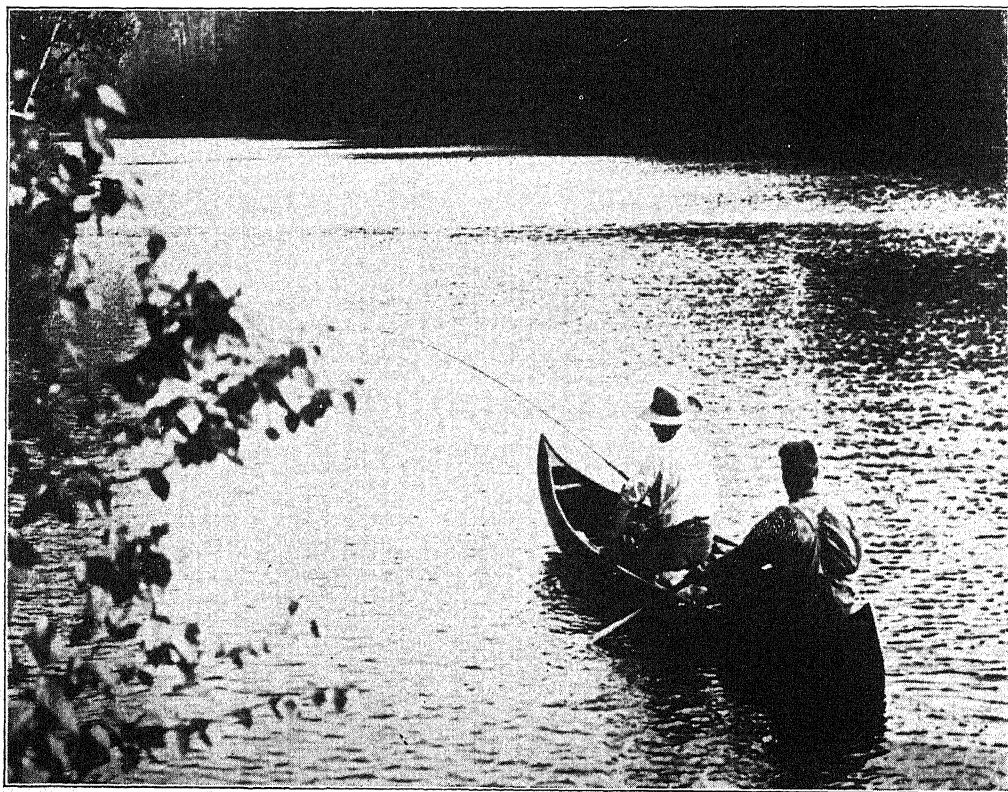
now form an enormous majority of the population, and trouble of that kind would now be impossible.

The Indians are just holding their own; and they are becoming civilised. The Indian population of Canada numbers about 121,000, with 4,180 Eskimos in the far north. The men who laid siege to Battleford are now raising large crops of wheat on their reserves, as well as gathering the prairie hay for their

Accordingly, Saskatchewan and Alberta were brought into existence.

### ESTABLISHMENT OF THE DOMINION.

Reverting back to the Eastern Provinces, and to the period before federation, we find a series of separate countries. "It is true they owed allegiance to the same monarch, but that was all. They acknowledged no



IN THE BEAUTIFUL LAURENTIAN MOUNTAINS

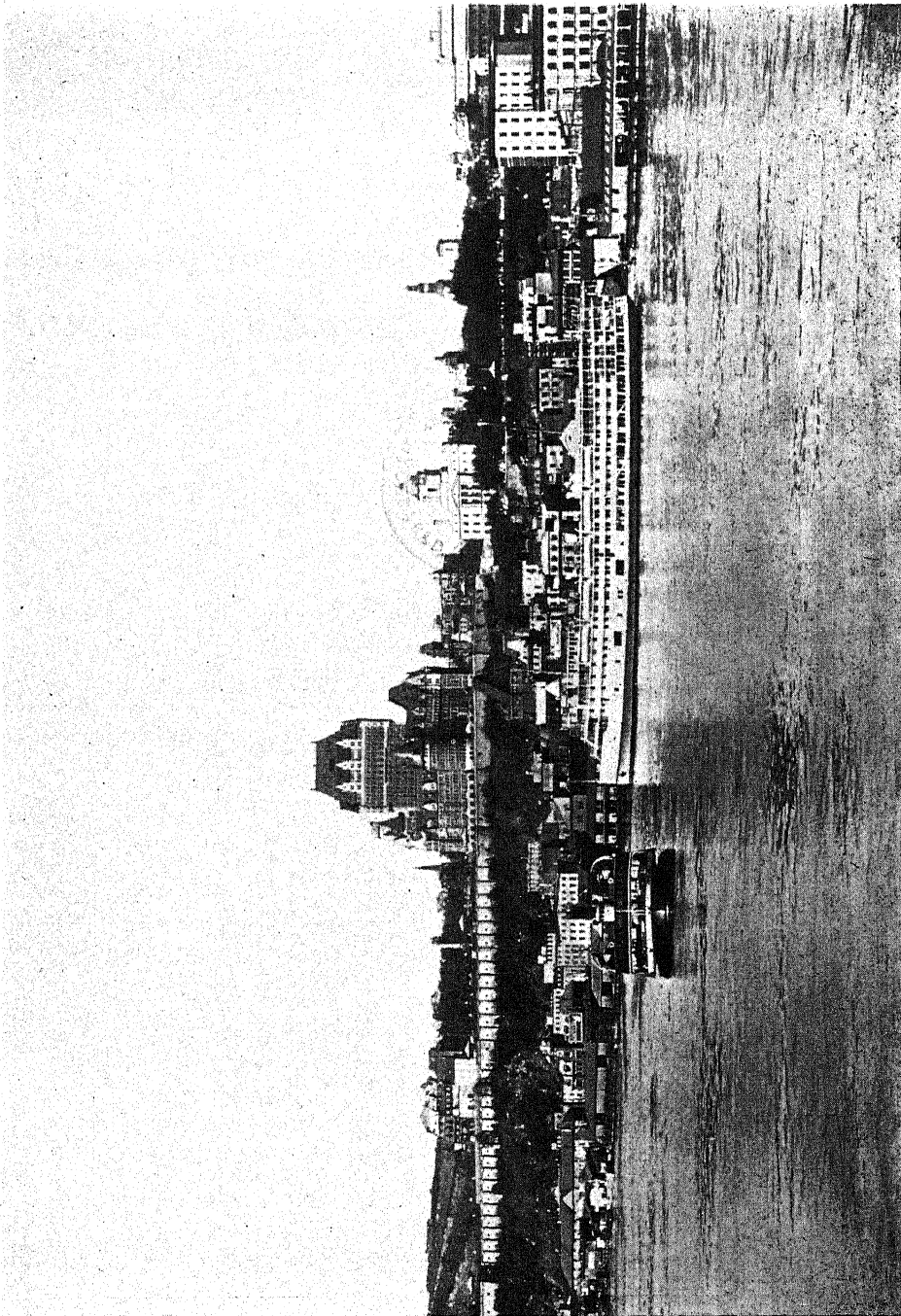
*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

white neighbours. Their children are going to school; crime is very rare among them, the law forbidding any man to supply them with liquor; and in course of time, if they can be protected from consumption and other diseases, they are likely to form a very valuable section of the community.

By the year 1905, so many settlers had made their homes on the prairie, that the Dominion Government thought it was time to organise that country into two Provinces.

allegiance to each other. Each did what it thought best in its own interest, regardless of the interests of the others; even levying customs duties on what the other sent in.

"At the extreme east, looking out on the Atlantic and the Gulf of St. Lawrence, there were three of these countries, called Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island. Then came two others, bearing the name Canada—this being an Indian title originally applied to the region in the St.



THE ROMANTIC CITY OF QUEBEC FROM THE ST. LAWRENCE RIVER, SHOWING  
THE CHATEAU FRONTENAC IN THE CENTRE

*Photo, C. P. Ry.*



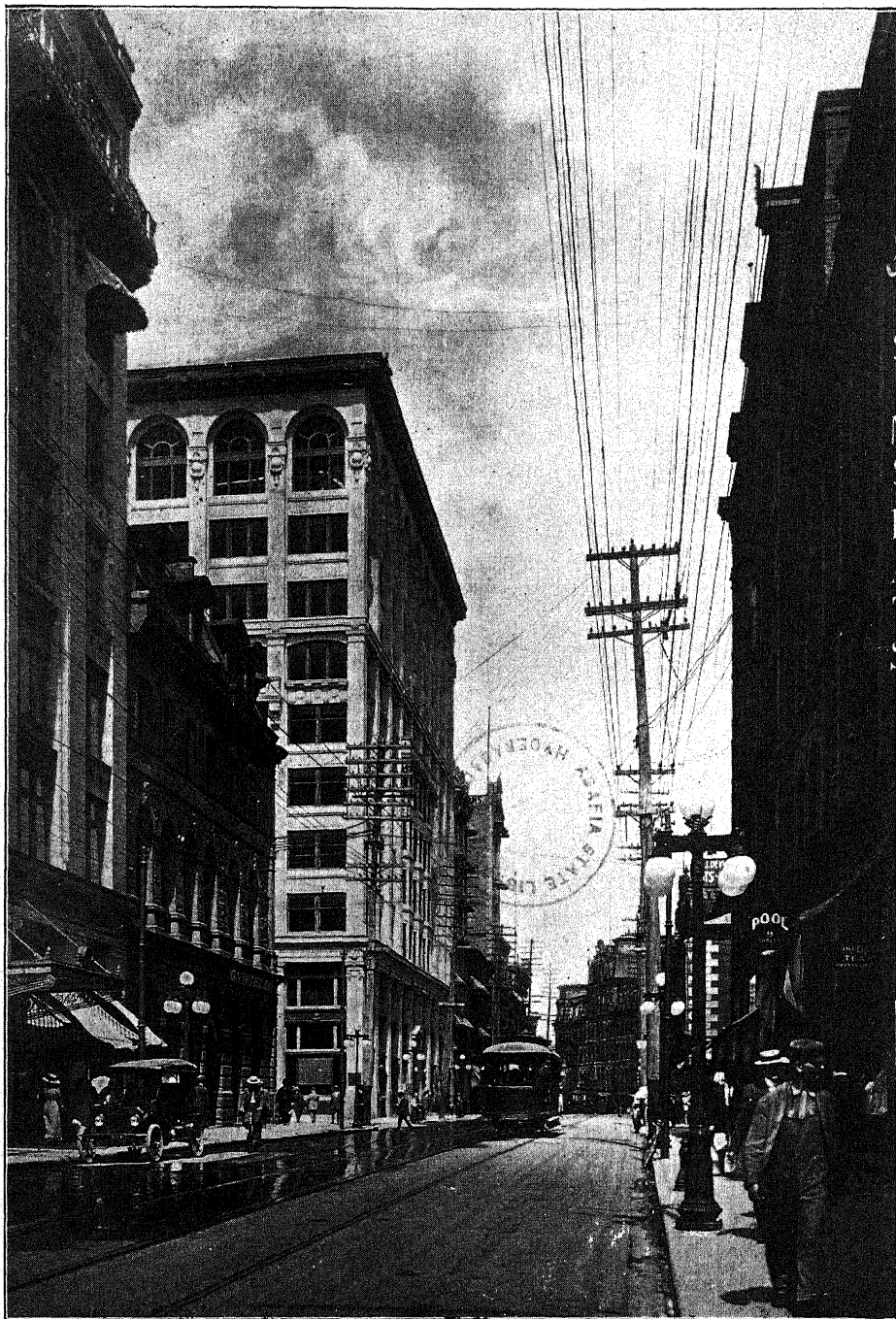


**HASTINGS STREET, VANCOUVER**

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

This fine city is situated on the mainland of the Pacific coast of British Columbia. It is the commercial metropolis of the Province, and has a population of 117,000





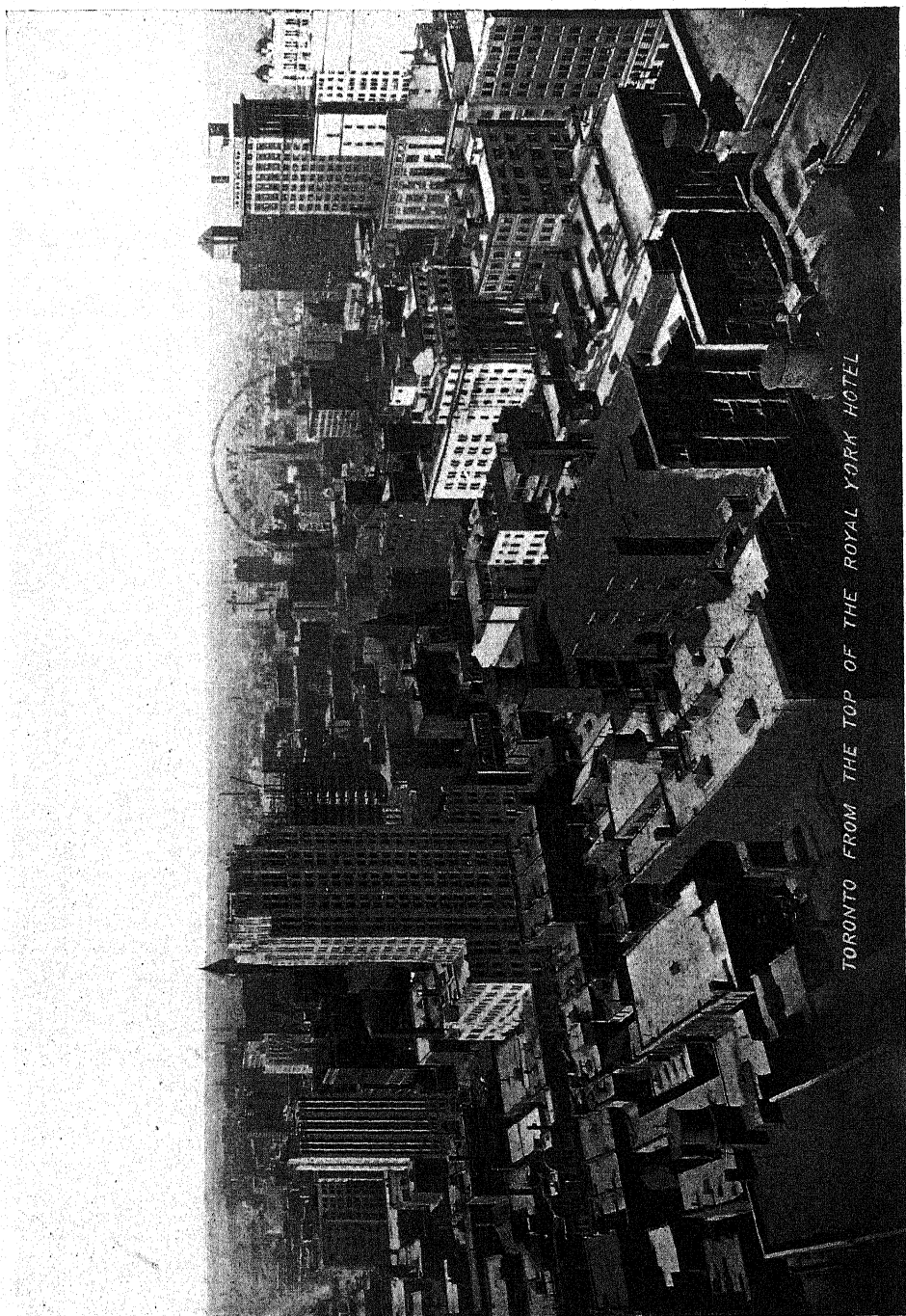
**SPARKS STREET, OTTAWA**  
One of the main business thoroughfares of the Canadian Capital

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*



YONGE STREET, TORONTO  
Sky-scrapers are everywhere making their appearance in Canadian cities

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*



TORONTO FROM THE TOP OF THE ROYAL YORK HOTEL

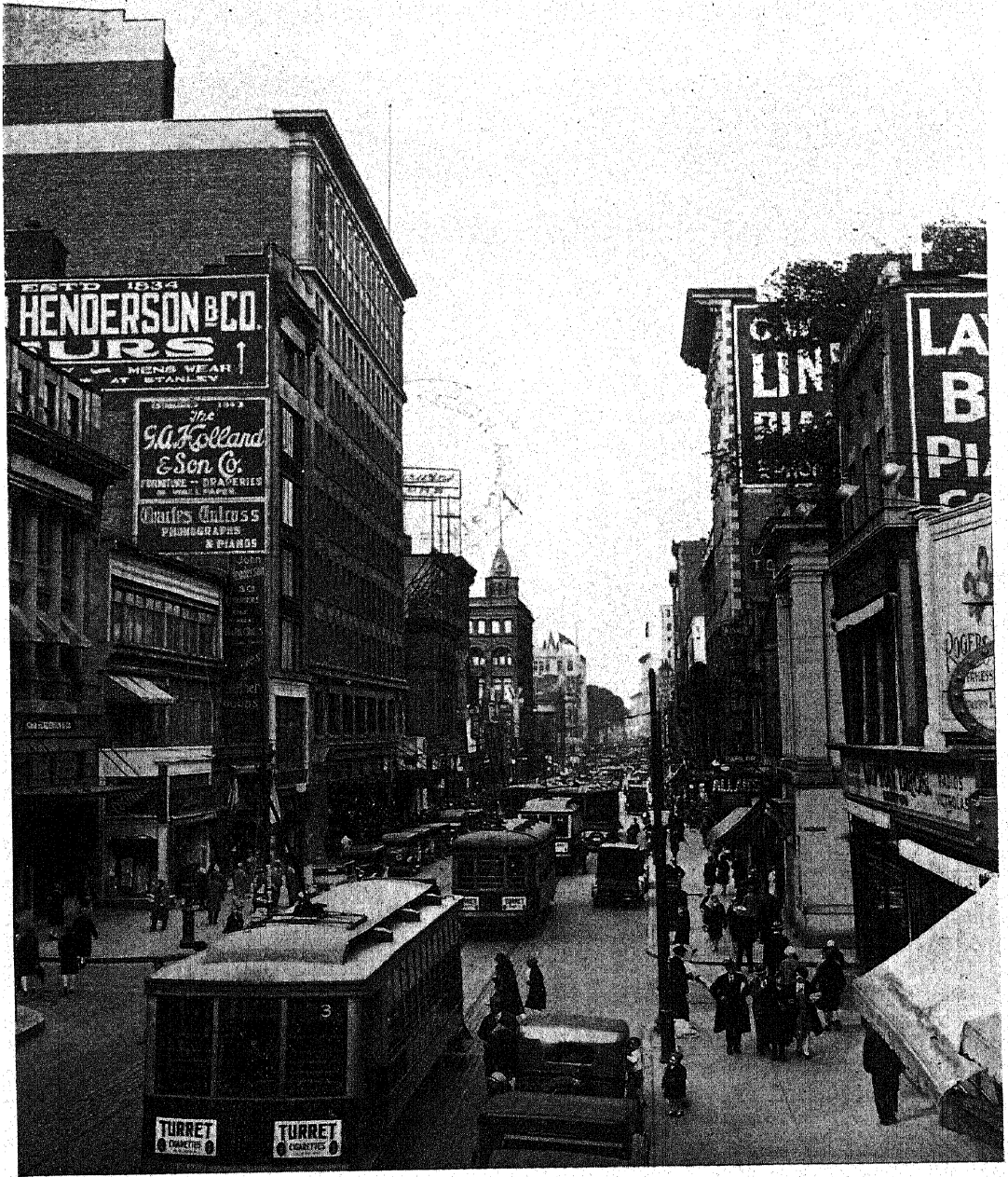
VIEW OVER TORONTO-CANADA'S "QUEEN CITY"





NEAR KICKING HORSE PASS, ON THE CANADIAN PACIFIC RAILWAY THROUGH  
THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

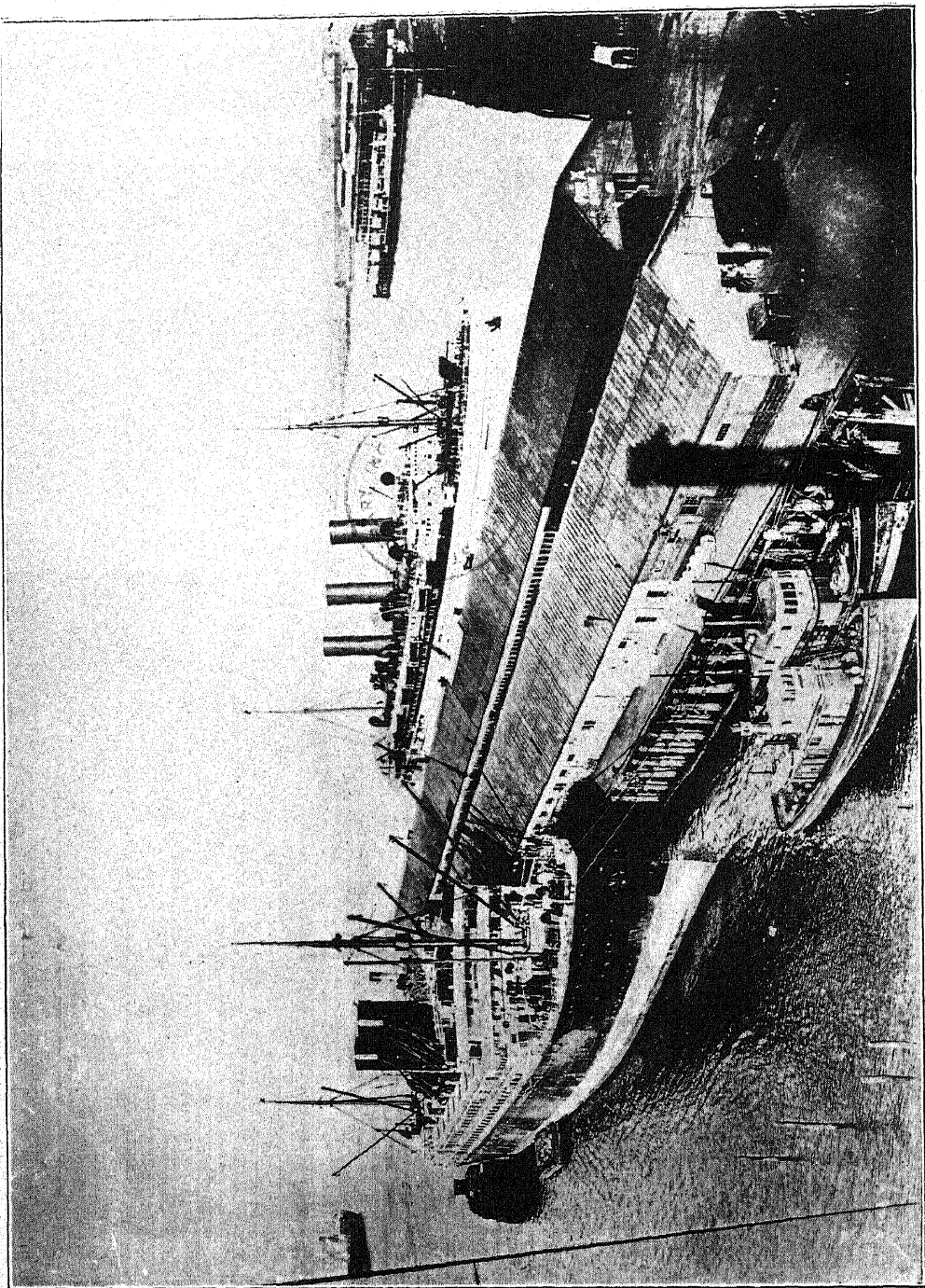
*Photo, C.P. Ry.*



ST. CATHERINE STREET, MONTREAL

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*





*Photo, C.P. Ry.*  
**THE HARBOUR, VANCOUVER, BRITISH COLUMBIA**  
Terminus of the trans-continental C.P.R. The liners lying alongside the quays are engaged in the trans-Pacific trade to China and Japan

The principal port on the Pacific Coast.

Lawrence valley where the first French settlers made their home. These two countries, known as Upper Canada and Lower Canada, and united for a time under a single Parliament, are now the Provinces of Ontario and Quebec. The vast unsettled territory beyond the borders of the two Canadas—stretching northwards and westwards to the Arctic Ocean and the Rocky Mountains—belonged to the Hudson Bay Company; few white folk ever set foot in its forests or on its prairies with the exception of the Company's men, who traded with the Indians for furs. Far away in the west, from the Rocky Mountains down to the Pacific Ocean, lay another country, called British Columbia, so completely cut off from Canada that the few people who wanted to go there from England seventy years ago sailed round Cape Horn, and then up the whole west coast of South and North America.

"Just as the seven kingdoms lying to the south of Scotland united long ago to form the Kingdom of England, so the countries just described came together in 1867 to form the Dominion of Canada.

By the beginning of Queen Victoria's reign, the French Canadians in Lower Canada as well as the men of British blood who had settled further west in Upper Canada, had acquired a healthy taste for self-government, and armed revolts occurred in both Provinces. The risings were suppressed, but a Parliament was set up in Montreal in 1840, and Ministers of the Crown were appointed who were responsible to the people's representatives. Among other achievements, this Parliament abolished the feudal system, voting £500,000 to the seigneurs as compensation.

"For twenty-seven years the two Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada made shift with one Parliament; but as the English-speaking population of Upper Canada grew till it outnumbered the Lower Canadians, the experiment of legislative union was found to work badly. In 1867, accordingly, a new system was adopted by which Upper and Lower Canada, henceforth to be known as Ontario and Quebec, each obtained a separate legislature, while the Federal Parliament was set up to deal with affairs common to these two Provinces, and also to Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, which came in at the same time to form the Dominion of Canada."

### BRITISH COLUMBIA.

The Pacific coast of Canada, known as the Colony of British Columbia, did not immediately enter the Canadian Confederation, but waited until 1871. "For generations after white men had settled on the eastern shores of the Dominion, they had not the remotest idea of what the western shore was like, or even where it was to be found. For many years even after Captain Cook and others had mapped the coast line, the land remained uninhabited, except by the Indians. From 1819 till as late as 1846, the whole Pacific coast between California and Alaska was a sort of No-man's Land, or, at any rate, a Two-men's Land—a sort of neutral territory controlled jointly by the British and American Governments. At last, in 1846, the two Powers agreed to divide the territory between them by a line ruled straight across the map along the 49th parallel of latitude from the Great Lakes to the Pacific Ocean. The British Government, however, did not at first take control of its share. The Hudson Bay Company, after ruling the vast territory east of the mountains from the days of Charles II, obtained from George the Fourth's Government an extension of its authority over the whole territory from the watershed down to the Pacific coast."

In 1858, however, the discovery of gold brought in a sudden flood of population; 33,000 men came up from the Californian mining camps in one summer, and plunged into the valley of the Fraser River and its tributaries, in a feverish hunt for the treacherous metal. Most of them went away as suddenly as they had come; for the £100,000 worth of gold they had found was not worth the cost of getting it. But it was now clearly and urgently necessary to provide the country with a regular Government. Accordingly, the new colony of "British Columbia" was formed, and the Company's chief representative became a Royal Governor.

The early history of the Colony was almost wholly one of gold mining. A great find in the mountainous Cariboo district brought the gold hunters rushing in again, not only from California, but from Australia and many other parts of the world. In one old river-bed, nuggets were picked up at the rate of £200 per square foot, and in seven years this Cariboo district, about fifty miles square, yielded gold worth £5,000,000. The lawless-

ness to which the miners had been accustomed further south was sternly repressed by the force of British law and order ; and Mr. H. H. Bancroft, the American historian, declares that " never in the pacification and settlement of any section of America have there been so few disturbances, so few crimes against life and property."

Unlike the older Provinces, British Columbia was still in political leading-strings when the Canadian Confederation was formed, and the first completely elected Provincial Legislature, with a Ministry responsible to it, only came into existence when, in 1871, the Province also became part of the Dominion, with representation in the Senate and House of Commons at Ottawa.

Canada and Newfoundland, an area of about 100,000 square miles, was given to the latter Dominion.

In the year 1912 the boundaries of Manitoba, Ontario and Quebec were extended northward to Hudson Strait, Hudson Bay, and the 60th parallel of north latitude. The islands of the Arctic Ocean, together with the mainland territory north of the 60th parallel, have, for the purposes of administration, been formed into the territories of the Yukon and the North-West Territories (Mackenzie, Keewatin, and Franklin).

(For the detailed history of *each* of the Canadian Provinces, see later articles in the Canadian section.)



PRINCE RUPERT, BRITISH COLUMBIA

Photo, Canadian National Rlys.

One of the conditions on which the Province agreed to link itself with Eastern Canada was that a railway should be built, making the link a tangible reality. It was in the carrying out of this agreement that the Canadian Pacific was constructed.

In 1873, Prince Edward Island joined the Dominion ; and in 1880 all British possessions in North America, except Newfoundland and its dependencies, were, by Imperial Order, annexed to Canada. In this way the Dominion was extended northwards into the Arctic regions.

The negotiations for the inclusion of Newfoundland in the Canadian Confederation finally broke down in 1895 ; and this, the oldest British colony, is now a separate and self-governing Dominion.

By decision of the Privy Council in 1927, that portion of Labrador claimed both by

## IMMIGRATION.

Emigration to Canada goes far back into what may almost be referred to as ancient history. For practical purposes it will suffice to take the year 1900-1 for a starting point. That year saw a total immigration into the Dominion of 49,149, of whom 2,144 went to the Maritime Provinces, 10,216 to Quebec, 11,254 to Manitoba ; Saskatchewan and Alberta absorbed between them 14,160 ; British Columbia secured 2,600 ; while the destination of 2,567 was not shown. In the following year the total rose to 67,379, a figure which was nearly doubled in the succeeding twelve months when the record was 128,364. The aggregate steadily rose till the year 1907-8, when the figure recorded was 262,469. A decline occurred in the two subsequent years owing to the financial stress on the American Continent and elsewhere ;

but in 1910-11 the total jumped up to 311,084. The following year disclosed an aggregate of 354,237; 1912-13 added 402,432 new settlers to the Dominion, and high-water mark was reached in the year 1913-14, when the figure recorded was 418,909. Then followed a drop in the figures almost as remarkable as the increase already quoted. Canada had been enjoying a period of unprecedented prosperity. Those who had settled there had scattered broadcast the story of their achieve-

naturally and advisedly for Canada's sake—to decrease. The effect of this monetary stringency on the industrial situation had been foreseen by the Dominion Government authorities early in the year, and "advice to wait" had been issued to all classes of prospective emigrants except agricultural workers and domestic servants. These were advised first of all as to scarcity of industrial employment, and, after midsummer was past, were finally discouraged from crossing



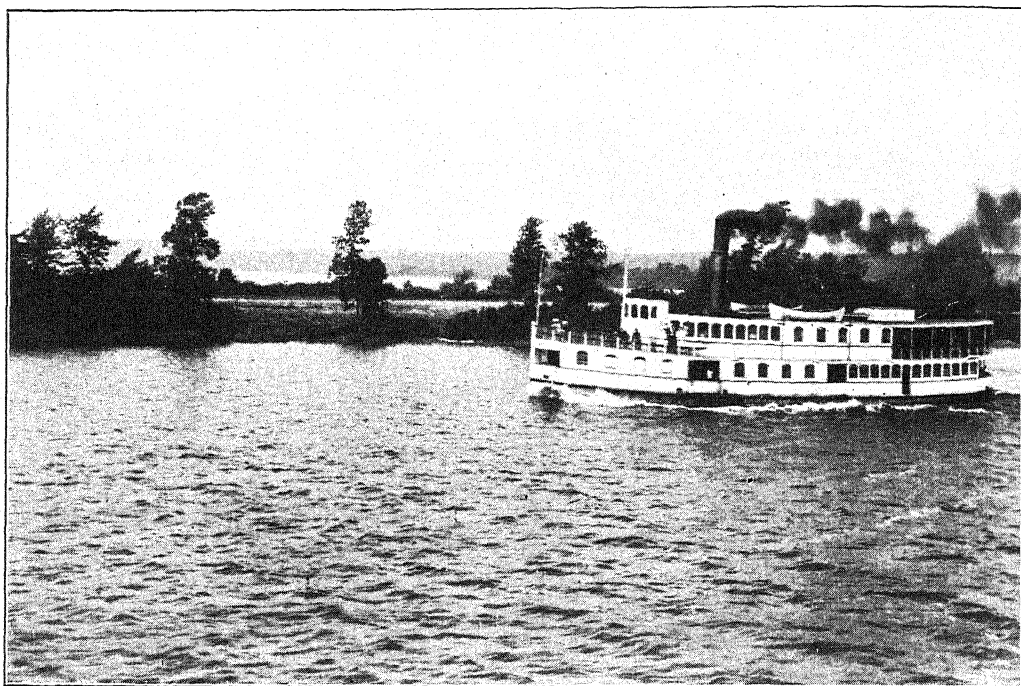
**GRAND MANAN ISLAND, NEW BRUNSWICK**  
*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*  
**Bold rocky cliffs form much of the coast-line of Eastern Canada**

ments, and had encouraged relatives and friends to follow them to the Land of Promise on the other side of the Atlantic.

Again a period of financial stringency appeared, which made its presence severely felt all over the world. Canada, as a new country, developing its enormous wealth, building railways, docks, towns and factories, to a great extent on borrowed money, inevitably suffered. Some unemployment occurred in certain parts of the Dominion, principally in the West, and exaggerated reports of this reaching Europe caused emigration—

the Atlantic for the season. At the same time it was pointed out that there was no diminution in the demand for owners and workers on the land and for female domestic servants. During the height of the busy season on the farms it was stated that work could there be found for every man willing to take it.

Canada did not suffer alone in this respect; other overseas dominions and colonies experienced a similar, or greater falling off in the number of new arrivals on their shores. Nor was the diminution confined to emigrants



*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

**ON THE BEAUTIFUL ST. JOHN RIVER, NEW BRUNSWICK**

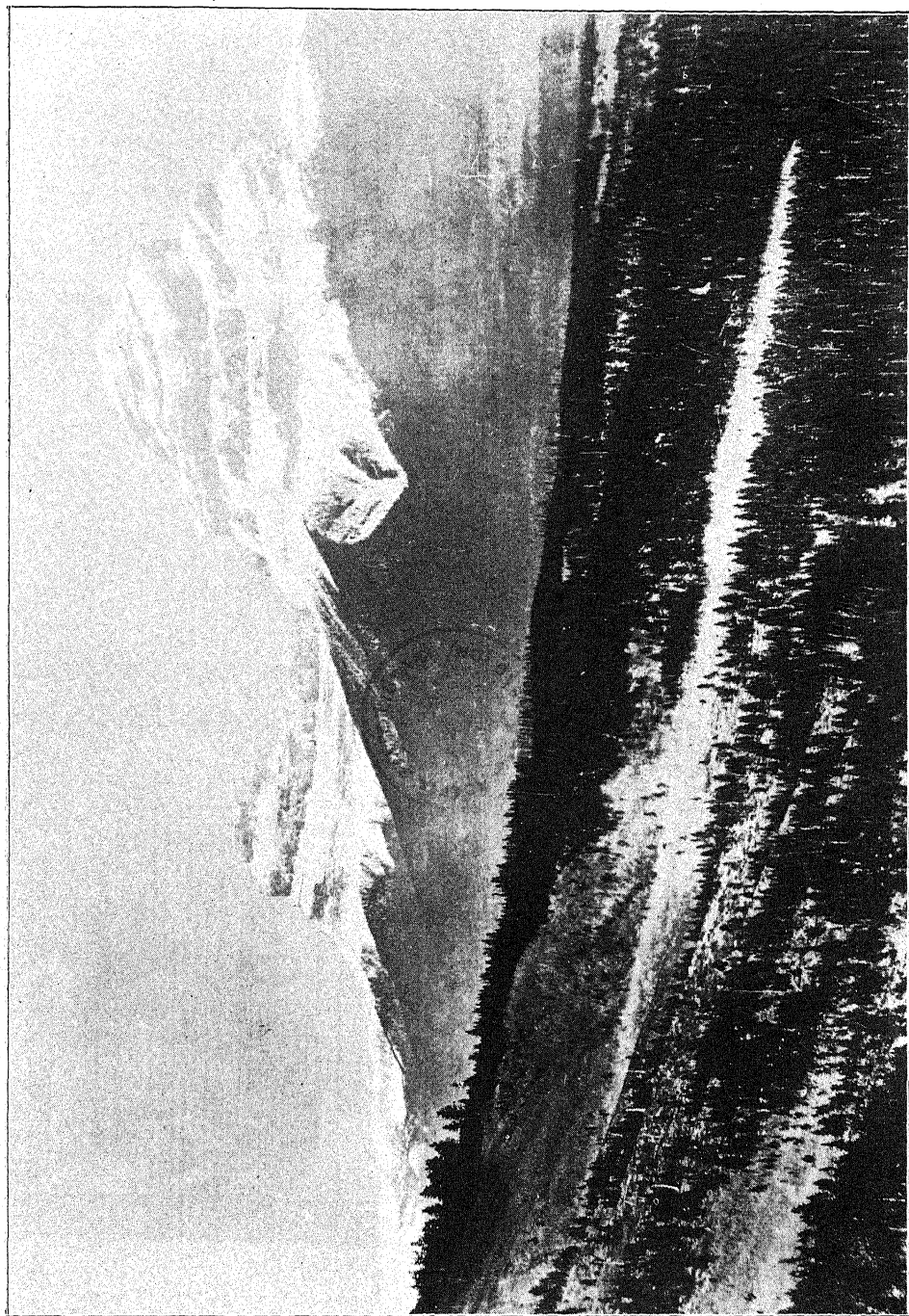
leaving the shores of the British Islands. Apart from the economic war influences at work, the year 1914-15 would seem to be, what may be described as, a "non-emigrating year"; for cycles occur in this as in other directions. Subsequent years, up to 1920, need not be quoted owing to the restrictions on emigration imposed by many countries for war reasons, and to the lack of shipping facilities, combined with the danger from submarines and mines. In 1921 the revival commenced, and the number rose to 148,477. In the succeeding eight years the annual average was about 124,000.

Regarding the destination of the newcomers arriving at Canadian ports, a comparison of the figures brings out some interesting results. With the rapid and remarkable development of Western Canada it was inevitable that a very large proportion of the new arrivals should travel Westward from the port of debarkation to the Prairie Provinces and British Columbia. But many thousands settled nearer home. The way may be said to have been made easier for many to settle in the Eastern Provinces

through "the call to the West" having been heard and responded to by so many of the youth of other parts of Canada. There was thus a "trek" to the newer or central provinces, not merely from Europe and the United States, but also from Quebec, New Brunswick and their neighbours. The result of this was that many thousands took up the free grants of 160 acres each offered in the West by the Dominion Government; the established, or, as they are called, "improved" farms became purchaseable in the older provinces at a price equal to only a few years' rent of similar farms in the British Islands, and this for a freehold.

Simultaneously with the emigration from Europe, there has been going on a remarkable transfer, chiefly of agriculturists from the United States to Canada, and principally to the Western Provinces. To such an extent has this movement developed that in the year ending March, 1914, no fewer than 115,751 American citizens (many thousands of whom were of British parentage), crossed the International boundary for settlement in the Dominion, as contrasted with 2,412 in





CROW'S NEST PASS, ROCKY MOUNTAINS

*Photo, C.P. Ry.*

the year 1897 and 17,987 in the year 1900-1. Very many of these were farmers who had sold out their holdings in the United States and were therefore in possession of capital with which to start operations in Canada, and buy three acres there for every one they held in the States. It is officially stated that the American farmers who thus migrated in the year 1913-14 alone took with them to Canada more than 23,255,347 dollars. This influx from across the border has been steadily going on ever since. In 1921 no less than 48,859 transferred themselves, their activities and their capital to the Canadian side. In the same year 47,687 immigrants came from England, 19,248 from Scotland, 6,384 from Ireland, 943 from Wales, and 26,156 from other countries. In 1926-7 over 20,000 immigrants from the United States came to settle in Canada, together with 50,000 from the British Isles.

Between the years 1901-2 and 1912-13 Japanese immigrants numbered 14,617, while in the same period China was represented by a total of 25,016. Of Italians entering Canada over this period there were 88,006,

most of whom were temporary railway builders; Germany sent 30,762; France, 21,085; and Austria-Hungary no fewer than 164,527; mostly peasant farmers preferring the new land to the old. There has been no more remarkable movement of population in the whole history of the world than this which has been peopling the fertile Northern half of the North American Continent with virile representatives of every civilised race. To what extent they will unite and blend has yet to be seen; but none can withstand the ultimate domination of the Anglo-Saxon Race. For the present the fact remains that thousands who in their former surroundings found life the reverse of congenial and progressive are flourishing and prosperous on the rich lands of Canada.

In order to correct the impression which the above statistics might appear to give, that Canada is largely inhabited by foreigners, here are the figures issued by the Dominion Bureau of Statistics showing that out of the total population of Canada at the last complete census in 1921 (8,412,383) 6,832,747 were Canadian-born; 1,065,454



BRAS D'OR LAKES, CAPE BRETON, NOVA SCOTIA

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

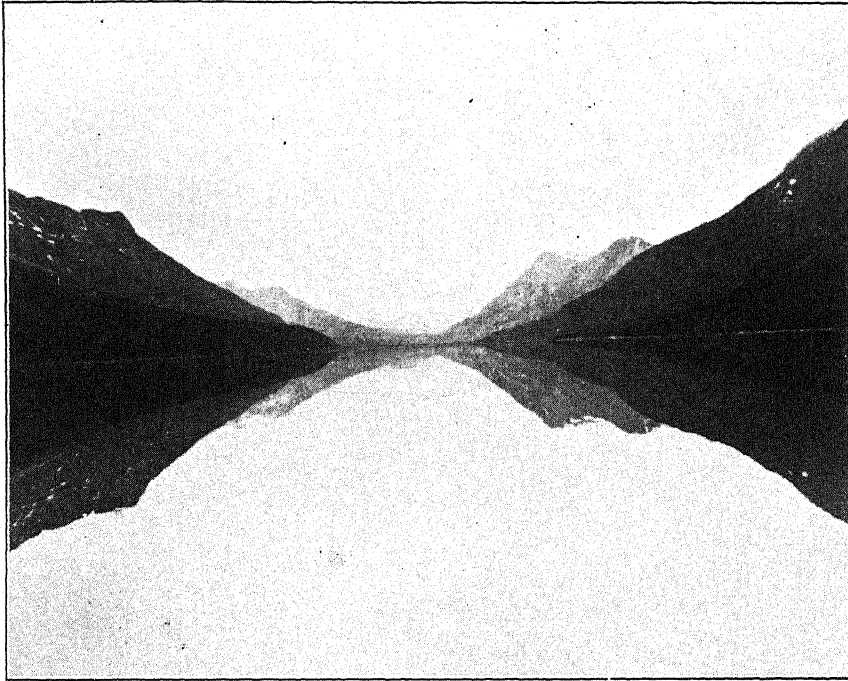
were British-born residents in Canada ; and only 514,182 were foreign-born who had become naturalised, and of these 237,994 had been born in the United States.

In 1871 the Dominion had only 13 cities, 49 towns, and 106 villages ; in 1921 there were 101 cities, 462 towns, and 882 incorporated villages. In Canada, as in the British Isles and Australia, it is the larger cities, however, that have grown the fastest.

### COAST LINE.

The Dominion of Canada has a very extensive coast line, the *exact* length of which

Edward and Anticosti. The Bay of Fundy, an inlet between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, is noted as having the highest tides in the world. There are many excellent harbours, Montreal, St. John's, and Halifax, possessing splendid accommodation for shipping. The Pacific coast is generally high and rocky, and is noteworthy for its extremely irregular outline, its many fiords, and its off-lying islands—Vancouver and Queen Charlotte Islands. Prince Rupert has a magnificent harbour, and promises to be one of the great ports of the future, with the Grand Trunk Pacific Railway using this



A LAKE IN THE BRITISH COLUMBIAN ROCKIES

has never yet been properly ascertained. It is, however, computed to be longer than that of the British Isles and France combined. The northern coast is much indented, but, owing to its latitude, this part of the Dominion is of very little commercial importance though efforts are being made to utilise Hudson Bay. On the east coast, the most conspicuous opening is the Gulf of St. Lawrence, which is bordered by the islands of Newfoundland and Cape Breton, and contains within it the islands of Prince

town as its western terminus. No doubt, also, the Panama Canal will influence its future very considerably.\*

Canada has three great physical divisions—the rocky plateau of Labrador Peninsula, with the hilly, forested lowlands south of it, including the Maritime Provinces, the greater part of which is designated the Acadian Region ; the well-watered, fertile prairies bordering the St. Lawrence River and lying between Hudson Bay and the Rocky Moun-

\* *Pitman's Commercial Atlas.*

tains ; and the Cordilleran Belt, containing the lofty western mountain ranges.

The forest wealth of Canada is accounted the greatest in the world. Except in the northern part of the country, and on the southern central plain, the entire land is densely covered with trees, and the lumber industry is an important one.

### RIVERS, LAKES, AND WATERWAYS.

One-sixth of the surface of Canada is water, and half the principal rivers of North America are found within its borders. Its chief river is the St. Lawrence, which drains the five great lakes and is the highway of Canadian commerce in the east. Owing, however, to the intense cold, the St. Lawrence is blocked by ice from the end of

enormous inland sea, 590 miles in breadth and 1,300 miles in length. It is connected with the Arctic Ocean by the Fox Channel and the Fury and Hecla Strait ; and also with the Atlantic Ocean by the Hudson Strait. The southern portion of this inland sea is named James Bay. According to official reports, both Hudson Bay and Hudson Strait are free from ice for about four out of the twelve months, and during this period ocean navigation is quite safe. The railway running from the prairie region to the shores of this huge bay will facilitate the shipment of wheat from the central Provinces as the distance to Liverpool from the grain centres in these immense wheat-fields is about 1,000 miles less by way of Churchill (Hudson Bay) than by Montreal and the St. Lawrence.



CROSSING THE WAPUTIK ICE FIELD IN THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

November to about the middle of April. The River Yukon is the chief fluvial highway in the extreme north-west ; while the Mackenzie—one of the longest streams of America—the Saskatchewan, the Red, the Fraser, and the Columbia Rivers, all are important water routes.

In addition to the four great lakes which form part of the frontier line with the United States, there are three others, entirely in Canadian territory, ranging in area from 7,000 to 14,000 square miles. These are the Great Slave Lake, Lake Winnipeg, and the Great Bear Lake, which equal in area lakes Erie and Ontario. There are many small lakes dotted all over the surface of Canada, among which must be mentioned the famous Lake Nipigon—the Fisherman's Paradise.

Hudson Bay, in the extreme north, is an

### PRAIRIES.

Southern Manitoba, Saskatchewan and Alberta are included in the Interior Continental Plain, whose rich prairies stretch from the Laurentian range of mountains to the lofty Rockies. There is a great difference in the level of this vast area, the flat prairie near Winnipeg being only 800 ft. above the sea, while parts of Western Alberta rise to 4,500 ft. The fertility of the soil is remarkable, and the productivity of the south-eastern and south-western portions of this territory, watered by the Red, Saskatchewan, Athabasca and Peace Rivers, is very great. This wonderful region—which forms the largest and most productive granary in the whole British Empire—will be described in detail under the Provinces among which it is divided.

### MOUNTAINS.

In the east, the Laurentian range of mountains, whose underlying rocks are rapidly crumbling and disappearing, divides the waters flowing into Hudson Bay from those moving southward to the St. Lawrence, and westward to the Mackenzie River. These hills do not contain coal, but the many streams which have their origin in the Laurentian Range afford unlimited water power, which more than compensates for this lack. This region has, as yet, been little explored, but iron is there in abundance, together with gold, silver, nickel, cobalt, and many other valuable metals.

In the west are parallel ranges, which occupy the Cordilleran Belt from the Pacific coast to the Rocky Mountains, continuing northward to the Arctic Regions the systems which have their beginnings in the United States. The highest of them all, the Rockies, form the western boundary of the great Central Plain, and contain coal deposits of immense value. The scenery throughout their length is magnificent. Precious metals in great quantities, especially gold, are found in the ranges nearer the Pacific shore. The loftiest mountain peaks of this region are near the boundary separating the Yukon from Alaska. Mount Logan, 19,540 ft. in height, and Mount St. Elias, 18,000 ft. are among the number, while between Alberta and British Columbia are many peaks rising from 10,000 to 12,000 ft., Mount Robson's top registering 13,700 ft. From the Rockies westward the height of the various ranges diminishes, the Selkirks having summits which reach 10,000 feet, while the Coast ranges sink to 9,000 and less.

### MARITIME PROVINCES.

The Dominion may be divided geographically into four parts—the Maritime Provinces, Eastern Canada, Central Canada, and the Pacific Province. In addition, there is, however, the great undeveloped North-West and the territory of the Yukon.

The 51,597 square miles included in the Maritime Provinces, which comprise the Provinces of New Brunswick, Nova Scotia and Prince Edward Island, must be multiplied seventy-two times to secure the area of the Dominion, yet this small irregular, sea-girt strip of territory contains, approximately one-eighth of the entire population of

Canada. It occupies a position of the highest importance to the nation, for its harbours are the only Canadian winter ports on the Atlantic.

Its immense coast line, and the high commercial value of its enormous catches of cod, lobster and herring, make its inhabitants largely a seafaring people. The returns from its fisheries annually amount to over £4,000,000. More than 50,000 men are engaged in fishing, not only for the three most important food fishes, but as well for halibut, mackerel, flounders, hake, haddock, alewives, pollock, swordfish, sardines, salmon, and oysters. For many years a bounty of £32,000 has been distributed among these men to encourage the building and equipping of boats for deep-sea fishing. The capital invested in this industry amounts to over twenty million dollars.

The earliest settlements in these Provinces were made by the French, who named the country Acadia. At the present day the French language is almost exclusively used in Eastern Quebec, and to a large extent in the Maritime Provinces, although in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries emigration from the United States and Great Britain contributed a large English-speaking contingent.

The climate in winter is that of the Scandinavian Peninsula, the snowfall being exceedingly heavy. In summer the temperature is that of Northern England and Scotland, and agriculture is, therefore, of considerable importance; grain, apples and potatoes being the chief crops. Fogs are prevalent in certain sections and seasons. Dairying and horse-raising receive considerable attention, and lumbering is an important industry. This entire country was at one time covered with trees, and immense forests still remain. The value of the lumber and pulp industries of Canada can be judged from the average annual value of the output, which amounts to £74,000,000.

The Maritime Provinces are rich in minerals, coal-mining having reached the greatest development. About 8,000,000 tons of coal are yearly taken from the vast deposits. The coal is easily obtained because of the proximity of the mines to the sea, and large quantities of gold, gypsum, manganese, granite and sandstone are also taken from the ground. In Nova Scotia there have been





A HUNTING CAMP NEAR LAKE HURON

*Photo, C. P. Rly.*

recent important discoveries of tungsten ores, and in this province also the iron and steel industries are highly remunerative. The value of the mineral output from the Maritime Provinces averages between 6 and 7 millions sterling a year.

The principal cities are Halifax and Sydney, in Nova Scotia; St. John and Fredericton, in New Brunswick; and Charlottetown, the capital of Prince Edward Island. Moncton, in New Brunswick, is a manufacturing centre, its importance hinging on the fact that it is the connecting link in the Grand Trunk Pacific and Inter-Colonial railway systems.

A well-known writer has described Nova Scotia as fronting the Atlantic with a rocky rampart of defiance and defence. Climbing the hills, sloping upwards from the coast to the interior, there is the forest, and then, descending, there is on the other side as fine a farming country as anywhere in the world. Over in the north-eastern part is a great island, Cape Breton, where lie immense coal

beds, while the centre of the island is a scenic paradise.

A short and pleasant steamboat ride from the northern part of Nova Scotia lands you in another Province, PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, the smallest Province in the Dominion, and strikingly different from all the rest. "The Garden of Canada," it is sometimes called, or "The Million Acre Farm"—cultivated from end to end.

Landing again in Nova Scotia, and travelling westward by the isthmus which joins Nova Scotia to the mainland, you are in the third of what is called the Maritime Provinces—NEW BRUNSWICK. Here, again, you have all the variety you want within the boundaries of a single province. Seaports and fishing villages dot the eastern coast, on the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and the southern coast, too, looking across the Bay of Fundy to Nova Scotia. In the interior, stretches a mighty forest, where the lumberman plies his busy axe, and the hunter tracks the lordly moose; and penetrating this forest in many directions

are smiling valleys of rich land, where the farmer lives in peace and plenty.

### **EASTERN PROVINCES.**

The Eastern Provinces are the original Canada, and include the Province of Quebec, lying on both sides of the St. Lawrence River, and Ontario, a boot-shaped Province stretching west to Manitoba, whose southern boundary is largely formed by the Great Lakes. This section of the Dominion has always stood foremost in population, commerce, manufactures, agriculture and forestry. Until the transfer to England, in 1759, the City of Quebec, then the capital of Canada, and now of the Province of Quebec, dominated the trade of all that part of the United States lying west of the Alleghanies and north of the Ohio and Missouri Rivers, as well as that of the southern part of Eastern and Central Canada as far west as the Rocky Mountains. The only trade during this period was the fur of wild animals.

The inhabitants of Eastern Canada now number about 5,961,700, and its area is about 1,000,000 square miles, by far the greater part of which is covered with dense forests. Because of its vast wooded areas, the cutting of lumber is a leading industry. Some of the finest agricultural country in the world is included in the tract, 700 miles in length and varying in breadth from 100 to 200 miles, lying west of Quebec City, along the shores of the St. Lawrence River and Lakes Huron, Erie, and Ontario. This is the most southern portion of Canada, and its densely-peopled land is well cultivated. The short, hot summer brings to perfection the various grains and small fruits, the southwestern sections being famed the world over for the unrivalled quantity and quality of their pears, peaches and grapes. Good railway facilities make marketing easy, for cities, towns and villages are scattered thickly throughout this district, which about equals in area England, Scotland and Wales.

Of Quebec, it has been said that it contains the two extremes of wildness and civilisation. Its northern region is little visited, scarcely even explored; but through the southern region of the province flows the king of rivers, the St. Lawrence, past towns and cities where white men have dwelt for centuries; and for many miles back from either side of the river stretch the innumerable

farms of French-speaking citizens, whose ancestors laid the foundations of Canada.

Ontario is the largest of all in population, the richest in its development, alike of agricultural and manufacturing industry, and one of the largest even in area. Along the northern shores of the long series of inland seas, known as the Great Lakes—Ontario, Erie, Huron and Superior—there are farms and orchards innumerable. The landscape is dotted with busy manufacturing towns as well as thriving country villages—this is Ontario, until the wilderness is penetrated, lying between the greatest of the lakes and Hudson Bay. At the far western end of Lake Superior you come upon more centres of busy human activity, where ships are loaded with the grain from the distant prairie.

Cattle-raising and dairying also are important and profitable industries of this section of the Dominion, and long-distance trading by way of the St. Lawrence River is carried on most expeditiously from the ports of Montreal and Quebec, their competition with seaports of the United States showing a wonderful increase. Both cities are located in the Province of Quebec, of which Quebec City is the capital and the tidal port of the St. Lawrence.

Montreal is Canada's chief city, and is at the head of ocean navigation on the St. Lawrence. It has a commanding situation on the gently sloping terraces of the triangular island of the same name, formed by the branching of the Ottawa River as it flows into the St. Lawrence. Toronto, the capital of Ontario, is second in point of size among Canadian cities. Hamilton, London, and Kingston are other important towns of the Eastern Provinces.

Ottawa, also in Ontario, has been the capital of the Dominion since Confederation, and is the residence of the Governor-General, who is appointed by the King. During the early fur-trading days, Quebec was the capital city, remaining so until General Wolfe transferred the country to Great Britain.

### **CENTRAL CANADA.**

The Prairie Provinces—Manitoba, Saskatchewan and Alberta—have been aptly styled the world's greatest wheat farm. They contain 758,817 square miles, nearly two-thirds of which have never been surveyed. There

is a large proportion of wooded country, and a bare fraction of the land is at present under cultivation. Yet in one year this limited amount of territory produced millions of bushels of wheat, oats, barley and flax, the long periods of sunshine, in conjunction with the rich, black soil, affording the largest yield per acre of grain known. By comparing the soil now being tilled, and its enormous productivity, with the total area of land which may be brought under cultivation, a

south-western portion of this prairie country has been devoted almost entirely to cattle-raising. The annual returns from the export of cattle are very heavy.

The rapid construction of railways through the prairie belt and the wooded region north and east of it, insures cheap and speedy transportation, not only of crops, but of fuel. Coal deposits, unequalled in area and for economy of working, underlie the whole region along the eastern slope of the Rocky



A LOG CABIN IN THE WILDERNESS

*Photo, C. P. Rly.*

definite idea may be gained of Central Canada's existing opportunities, and of the wealth which must accrue from their sane use. It is a land of untold possibilities, a land that is progressing by leaps and bounds.

About one-third of the area of these Provinces is prairie land, extending east and west some 900 miles, and varying in width from 100 to 400 miles. Homesteads of 160 acres—a quarter section—are given free on condition of settlement. Until recently, the

Mountains, several seams lying within a hundred feet of the surface.

In thirty years the population of these three provinces increased from 400,000 to 2,175,900. Yet these figures mean scarcely three persons to each of the 758,817 square miles of territory. This low average is accounted for by the vast extent of untenanted forest lands, which are open to cultivation, but as yet are uncleared of the dense growth of poplars.

The climate is stimulating and healthful, favourable to hardy bodies and vigorous minds. There is less rain and snow than in other portions of the Dominion, and it is important to note that more than 50 per cent. of the annual rainfall occurs during the summer months, when it is most needed by the farmer. The winters are severe, but in the western and south-western sections they are modified by the "chinook" wind, which carries the warmth and moisture of the Japanese current across the Rocky Mountains and exerts a marked influence on the temperature of the plains.

There are but few districts where water is not abundant, and the sources of the principal streams are already being safeguarded by the establishment of numerous forest reserves, which will protect the rivers and also insure an adequate timber supply for the future.

The chief city of the Central Provinces is Winnipeg, the capital of Manitoba and the commercial doorway to the Canadian North-West. Regina is the capital of Saskatchewan, and Edmonton the capital of Alberta.

#### **PACIFIC PROVINCE.**

The Pacific Province of British Columbia is Canada's western seaboard. It is 760 miles from north to south, and 470 from east to west. Roughly speaking, it lies between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean, and in the same latitude as the British Isles, Northern Germany, Denmark, and Sweden.

Victoria, the capital, on Vancouver Island, is a little south of the latitude of Paris, and has the climate of the Channel Islands.

The whole coast of British Columbia is directly affected by the warm Japanese current, and the climate varies very little from south to north. The harbours are open the year round. The coast climate resembles very closely that of the United Kingdom in warmth and moisture.

The general character of the country is mountainous; parallel to the main chain of the Rocky Mountains, which form the eastern boundary of the Province, are the Gold Range, the Cascades, and the Coast Range.

The mountains are heavily forested with large and valuable timber, but the intervening valleys are generally either lightly timbered or altogether bare. The climate of

the interior valleys is hotter in summer and milder in winter than in the adjoining prairie Provinces.

The Gold Range of mountains gets its name because of the discoveries in it of gold in immense quantities, at various points, extending from the southern to the northern limit of the Province. The discovery of gold, in 1854, was the beginning of development in the Province.

In the southern portion of British Columbia the exhaustion of the placer gold mines was followed by the discovery of mines of silver, copper, lead, gold, zinc, and coal, which have been developed on a very large scale in recent years.

Valuable minerals are found in many other portions of the Province as well. The value of the territory as the western seaboard of Canada is enhanced by reason of the immense deposits of coal on Vancouver Island.

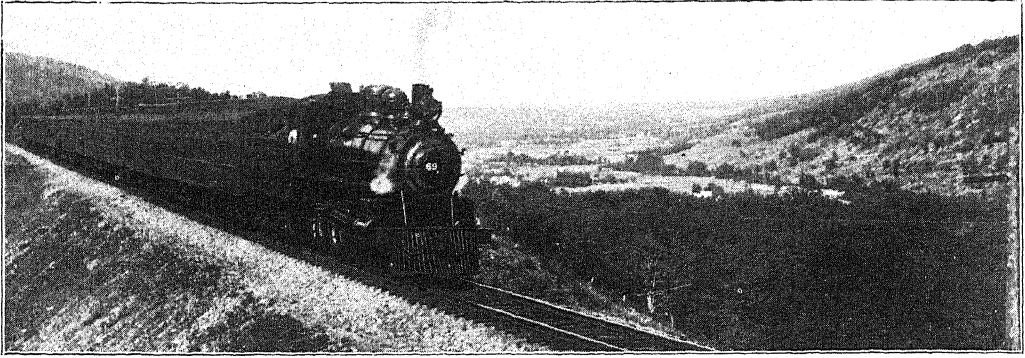
The deep sea fisheries are a source of great wealth, and the salmon fisheries in the rivers are almost as important as mining. The mountainous forested area is of such vast extent that the supply of timber is practically inexhaustible.

While the coast climate is very wet, that of the interior valleys is inclined to be dry. These valleys are very attractive as a place of residence. Where the rainfall is insufficient for agricultural purposes, irrigation is successfully and economically applied. The interior valleys are suited for grain-growing and grazing, but are especially adapted for the growth of apples, plums, cherries, and other hardy fruits, and, in the more favoured sections, of pears, peaches, and grapes.

About this beautiful province, or the Yukon and North-West Territories, nothing further need be said here, for every province in the Dominion, including the two vast Territories, is separately and exhaustively described in later pages.

#### **GOVERNMENT.**

The Dominion of Canada is a confederation of nine Provinces and two Territories. The duties of government are divided between the Dominion and the Provinces, though the law-making power is vested in the King or his representative, and the Dominion Parliament. The Legislature, whose seat and administration buildings are at Ottawa, is composed of an Upper House, or Senate,



THE MAIN LINE THROUGH THE FAMOUS WENTWORTH VALLEY, NOVA SCOTIA

appointed by the Government, and the Lower House, or Commons, elected by the people.

Manhood suffrage prevails in the elections for the House of Commons, though there are some slight property qualifications required by certain of the Provincial Legislatures.

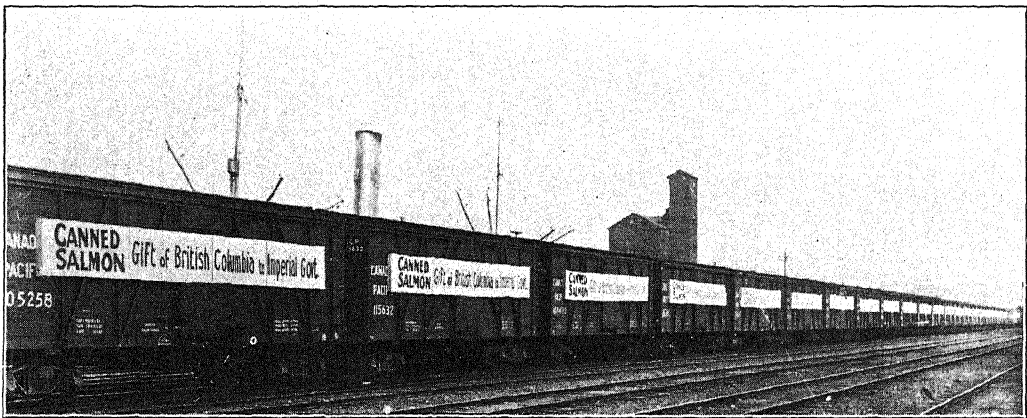
The members of Parliament who compose the Cabinet, or Government, must have the support of a majority of the Commons, or elective branch, in order to hold power to administer the laws passed by Parliament.

The Provincial Governments have full control over local affairs, subject only to considerations which affect the welfare of the country as a whole. The people have the right to hold an election at any time to express their views as to a proposed alteration of policy resulting from change of Government. This system of responsible government gives the people more absolute control than any other form, for every member of

the Government is made directly responsible to the people for every administrative Act.

The Dominion Parliament controls criminal law, the navy, army, post office, railways, indirect taxation by the tariff and excise, trade relations with other countries, and, in general, all matters of national interest.

The Dominion owns and controls the public lands in the three Central Provinces, and in the Yukon and North-West Territories, and is now active in the work of promoting immigration to the many millions of acres of agricultural land as yet unoccupied and only awaiting development to secure rich returns from the soil. The Provinces of Ontario, Quebec and British Columbia have vast areas of public lands, which are administered by the Governments of these Provinces. Prince Edward Island has no remaining public land, and the other Maritime Provinces very little.



A TRAINLOAD OF TINNED SALMON IN TRUCKS AT VANCOUVER, BRITISH COLUMBIA

A gift of British Columbia to the Imperial Government during the Great War Photos, C.P. Rly.



Canada is remarkable for the maintenance of order, respect for law, and for the effectual safeguarding of life and property. Legislatures elected by the people govern the various Provinces. They provide the civil law, administer both civil and criminal laws, plan for free primary and adequate higher education, also for municipal government, and levy taxes for their support. It is their right, but one seldom exercised, to charter and construct railways, and to forward in every way the interests of those under their jurisdiction.

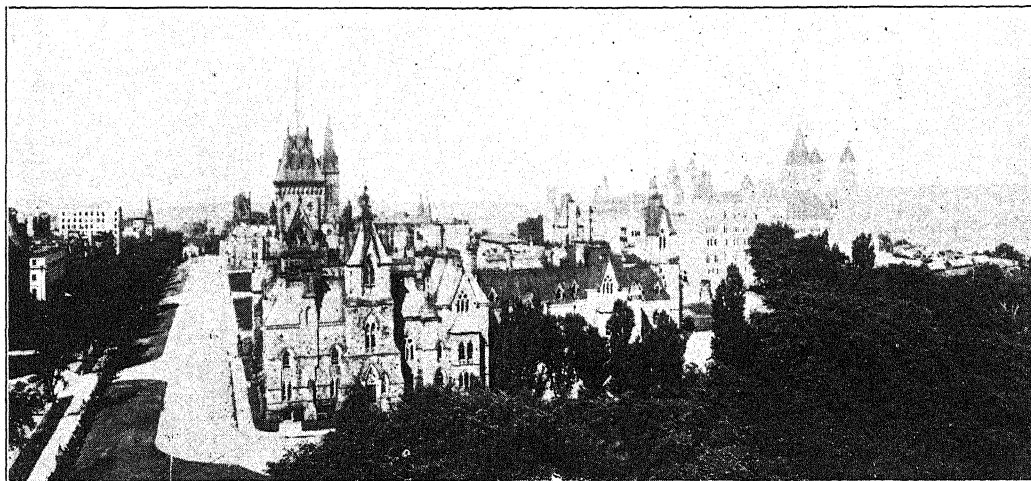
### RAILWAYS.

Transportation is a most important and live problem in Canada, for its interprovincial

between the railways and the public, and to control all charges.

Nation-wide interest centres in the three great transcontinental systems—the Canadian Pacific, the Grand Trunk—with its important connection, the Grand Trunk Pacific—and the Canadian Northern. To these is added a fourth line—the Intercolonial—operated in the Eastern and Maritime Provinces. In 1922 the Canadian Northern Railway, the old Grand Trunk and the Intercolonial, were all consolidated under a single national board, and this Government system now controls over 24,000 miles of railway.

The Intercolonial originally was built as a military road connecting the Maritime Provinces with Quebec and Ontario. It is

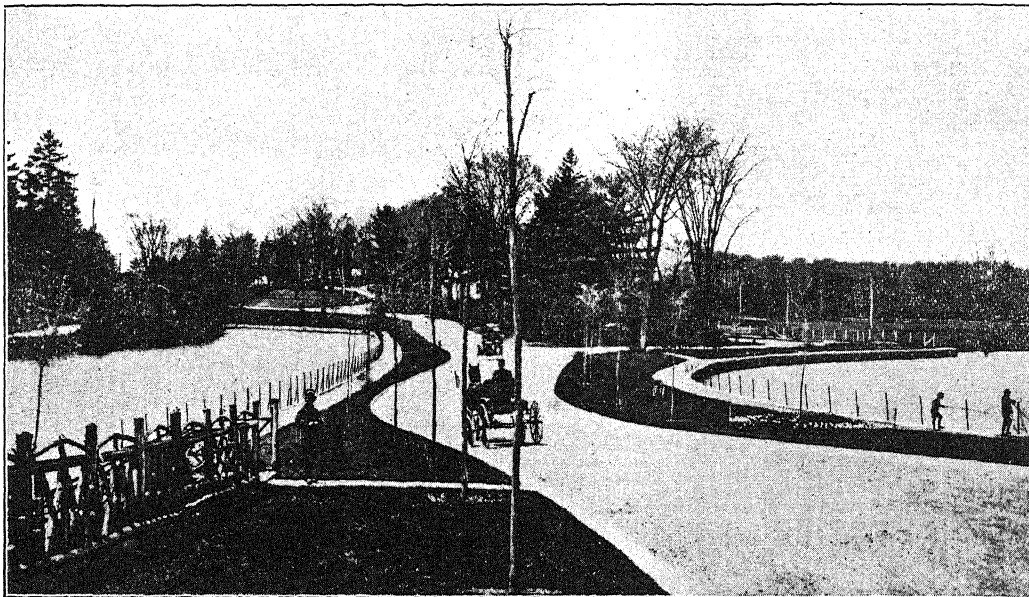


A VIEW OVER OTTAWA, CAPITAL OF THE DOMINION OF CANADA *Photo, C.P. Rly.*

traffic enormously exceeds its foreign, and on its railways depends the very existence of a large proportion of its people. In 1850 there were only 65 miles of railway lines in the whole of Canada. The total length of lines in operation in 1930 was about 42,412 miles, and the capital expended on construction amounted to over three billion dollars. The Dominion has an immense field of undeveloped resources, the products of vast areas being as yet economically unavailable. Therefore, recognising the possibility of abuse of power in the hands of railways engaged in opening up this El Dorado, the Canadian Government has established a Commission with full authority to adjust all disputes

owned by the Government of Canada, and its 1,592 miles of track bring St. John, Sydney and Halifax into communication with Montreal, the largest city and the commercial centre of the Dominion.

The Canadian Pacific, with the exception of the Siberian Road, and the Canadian Government Northern System, is the longest continuous railway line in the world controlled by one management. The total mileage of its main travel and commercial artery, together with its innumerable branches which send the life-awakening current of communication into otherwise isolated districts from one side of the Continent to the other, amounts to nearly 17,000 miles.



ON THE DRIVEWAY, OTTAWA

*Photo, C.P. Ry*

Although these railway systems are of great size and importance, the Canadian Pacific is, historically, the primary system, and a more detailed account of this nation-making undertaking must, therefore, find a place in this publication.

#### CANADIAN-PACIFIC RAILWAY.

One of the greatest transportation and colonising enterprises with which the British race is associated is the Canadian Pacific Railway. Its system consists of over 17,000 miles of railway (including sidings), practically all of which has been constructed within the past forty-five years. But the railway portion of the undertaking—gigantic enough—is but one of the many activities in which the C.P.R. is so busily employed. It controls many steamships, telegraphs, telephones, hotels, and millions of acres of land.

The Canadian Pacific Railway owes its initiation to the desire of the Canadian Government to develop the immense districts between Ontario and the Pacific coast, and to provide an "all British" route across the North American Continent. The total length of the original transcontinental line was 2,547 miles, of which the Canadian Government built two sections, having a length of 614 miles, and the Company con-

structed 1,933 miles. The Canadian Government subsidised the Canadian Pacific Railway by a money grant of about £5,000,000 and a land grant of 25,000,000 acres. The line was to have been completed by 1st May, 1891, ten years after operations commenced, but such remarkable progress was made with the construction that, upon the Canadian Government advancing a further four and a half million pounds in 1884, the Canadian Pacific Railway administration undertook to complete the line by 1st May, 1886, or five years earlier than was originally contemplated. This meant that the average rate of construction would be 500 miles a year, mostly through an unsurveyed country, and included the crossing of the Rocky Mountains. This range rises to about 12,000 ft. in Canada, and the railway, after climbing to an altitude of about 5,000 ft. at Lake Louise, pierces the range. Although the line then falls all the way to Vancouver, a distance of 350 miles, where sea-level is reached, the fall in the first 150 miles—from Lake Louise to Revelstoke—is no less than 3,500 ft.

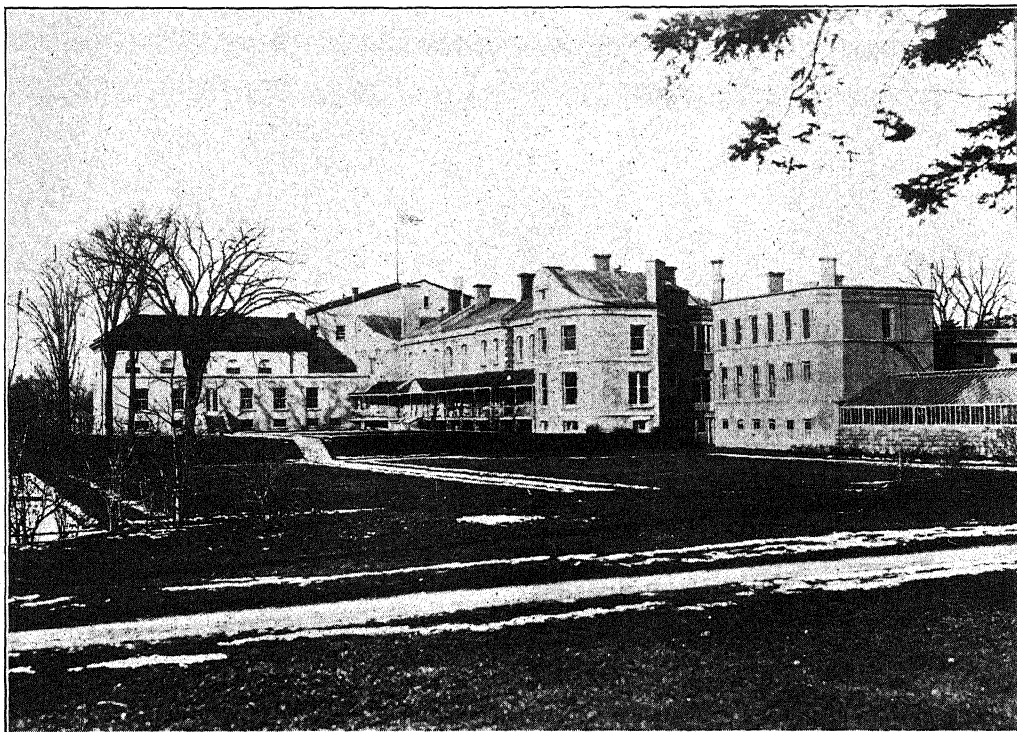
Even greater progress than that contemplated by the amended scheme was made, the whole length of railway being completed on 7th November, 1885, when (the late Lord Strathcona (then Sir Donald A. Smith)

drove the last spike at Craigellachie, British Columbia, thus finishing the "all British" railway across the North American Continent.

By a supplementary agreement made with the Canadian Government in 1886, the Canadian Pacific Railway became under obligation to improve its line through the Rockies when called upon to do so by the Government. During recent years much work has been carried out in improving the gradients of the railway on the section where the gradients are most severe, the engineering achievements being of so remarkable a character that they call for reference here. The incline of one in twenty-two and a half for a distance of over four miles has given place to a line in which the worst gradient is one in forty-five and a half, but the length of this section has been more than doubled. Several tunnels have been constructed on the new line. These are of cork-screw shape, so that the train enters a tunnel at one end and emerges at the other at almost the same spot, but on a level 40 feet or so lower. By

means such as these the gradients have been improved. The cost of the new line was about £300,000 for the eight miles, but two engines can now haul a 700-ton train at a speed of twenty-five miles an hour over this section, whereas previously four locomotives would have been required for the load, and the speed would not have exceeded six miles an hour. By this one improvement the saving in time is, therefore, twenty minutes for each train, without reckoning the 50 per cent. reduction in the locomotive power employed.

The Canadian Pacific Railway, when originally constructed, was, like most American railways, but a single line. The traffic has, however, increased so greatly that already long stretches of the railway have been double-tracked. Work has been completed on a tunnel through Mount McDonald, in the Selkirk Range, and it is now the most stupendous engineering feat of its kind on the North American Continent. The Selkirk Tunnel is about five miles in length, and



RIDEAU HALL, NEAR OTTAWA  
The residence of the Governor-General of Canada

*Photo, C. P. Riv.*

lowers the old gradient of the railroad to a very considerable extent. It took over four years to complete, and during that time 500 men were almost constantly employed.

As can be gathered from the fact that the Canadian Pacific Railway received a considerable subsidy in the shape of ground from the Canadian Government, a large part of its income is derived from the sale of farms along its route. In this connection it must not be forgotten that each sale means the planting of an industry along the course of the railway which will produce traffic for the line for all future time, as when the Canadian Pacific Railway sells a parcel of land to a good farmer-settler, it is just beginning its profitable relations with him. For he will, in all probability, be a heavy shipper of grain outward over its lines in future years, and will occasion the shipment of much merchandise inward as well. So it is not to be wondered at that the greatest importance is attached to the land asset.

At the present time the Canadian Pacific Railway owns over 6,000,000 acres of land in Manitoba, Saskatchewan and Alberta, and about 1,500,000 acres in British Columbia. In addition to the original grant from the Government, the Company acquired lands through purchasing other railways which possessed land grants. The interesting feature about these lands is their steady rise in value. In 1905 the sales were 509,386 acres at an average of 4.80 dollars per acre. In 1909 the sales of similar lands were 306,083 acres at an average of 10.96 dollars. And finally, during the last year previous to the economic upheaval caused by the World War, the sales averaged 474,798 acres at an average of 15.77 dollars. This progressive rise in value is most impressive.

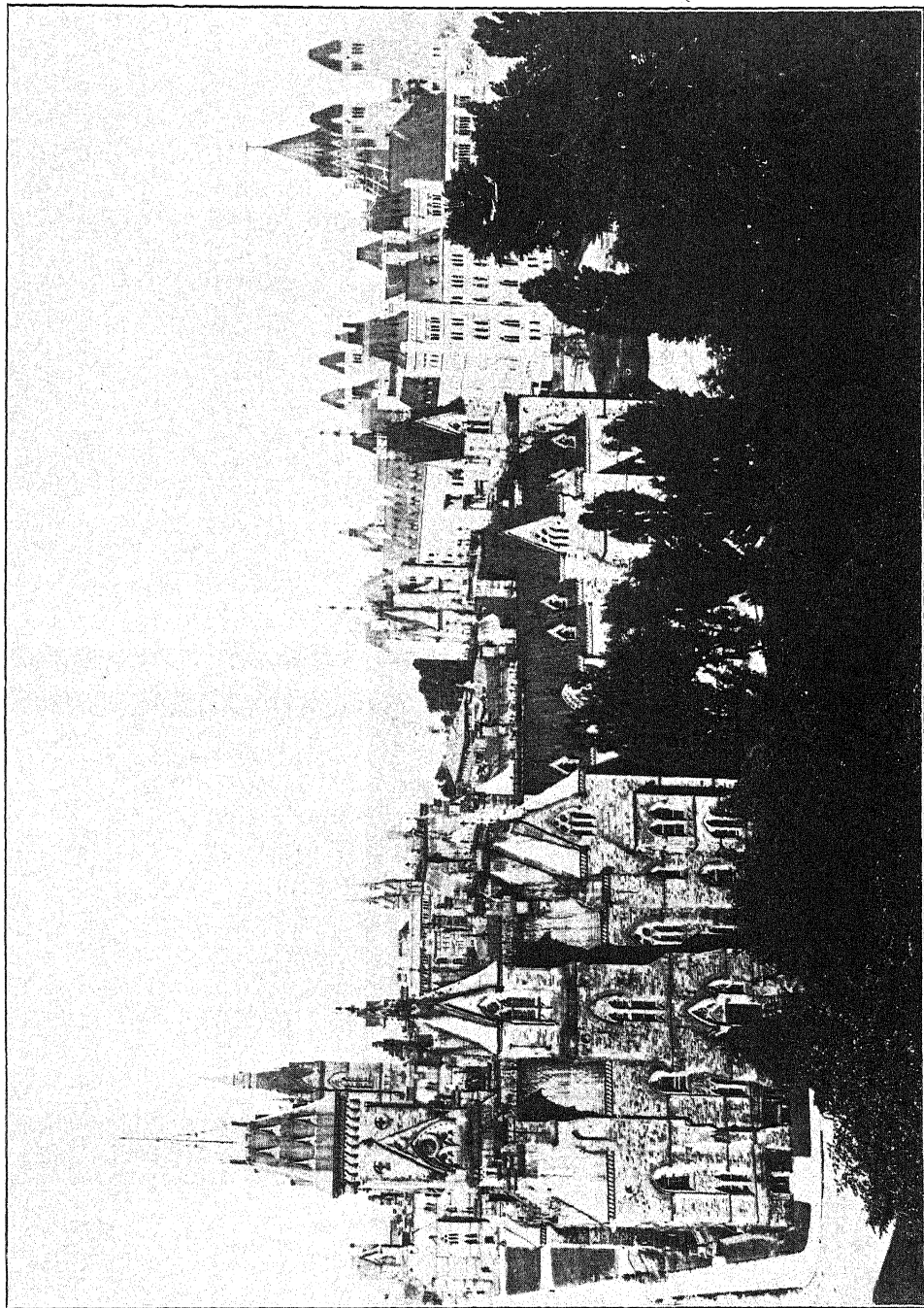
Without an adequate water supply, land is unsuitable for farming, and large areas owned by the Canadian Pacific Railway were found to be of this character; so some years ago the Company determined to improve these tracts by carrying out extensive irrigation schemes. A sum of about 3,000,000 dollars sufficed to irrigate about 350,000 acres, being the irrigable portion of the Western Block of the arid lands in the Province of Alberta belonging to the Railway. These lands were formerly considered to be of little or no value; they were, of course, unsaleable. By this expenditure the

Company was able to sell a little more than one-third of the block for more than 9,000,000 dollars. The Western Block of arid lands contains approximately 995,000 acres, of which 642,000 acres are declared to be non-irrigable. There are two other blocks—the Central and the Eastern—each containing approximately one million acres. The irrigation of the Eastern Block was next taken in hand, and in April, 1914, Sir Thomas Shaughnessy, then President of the Canadian Pacific, opened the great dam at Bassano, which rendered an additional 400,000 acres of irrigable land ready for settlement.

Sir Thomas Shaughnessy's scheme of "Ready Made" Farms has attracted world-wide attention, and many practical farmers have taken advantage of the liberal terms under which a farm may be purchased in the best farming districts of Saskatchewan and Alberta on an instalment basis spread over a period of twenty years. A comfortable house and barns for livestock are erected on these farms, a well dug, the farm fenced, and a portion of the land seeded to crop so that a farmer may go right on to his farm, and is saved all pioneering difficulties. The Company also grants loans to approved settlers for the purchase of live stock. The "Ready Made" farms in the irrigation districts are much sought after by British farmers; each year the Canadian Pacific Railway has more applications than it has farms to sell. At central points the railway administration has established demonstration farms designed to teach the new-comers what the land will do and how it is to be treated. Everything possible to ensure that the land will be worked scientifically and profitably, is done.

An important feature in the Canadian Pacific Railway's progress as regards the Province of British Columbia has been the opening up of the Upper Columbia Valley by the construction of the Kootenay Central Railway. Here, also, the railway is co-operating with the Dominion and Provincial Governments in the construction of an automobile road from Banff to Windermere. The Kootenay Central Railway links the main line of the Canadian Pacific with the Crow's Nest branch, and opens for development a rich agricultural district, into which settlers are already thronging.

No less wonderful than the extension of the railway system has been the growth of



DOMINION HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT OTTAWA, CANADA

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*



the Canadian Pacific Steamship Services, for now, only some forty-five years after it contracted on the Clyde for its first three steamships, the Company owns a very considerable fleet. It operates its own services on the Atlantic and on the Pacific, in addition to maintaining a service on the Great Lakes and the lakes and rivers of British Columbia.

It was early in 1883 that the Company contracted on the Clyde for the construction of three steel screw steamers for service on the Great Lakes, and on this service they now have steamers running. The next development took place soon after the trans-continental railway was linked up from the eastern and western coasts of Canada in 1885, for in 1887 the C.P.R. established its Pacific Service between Vancouver and the Far East. In 1896 the British Columbia Lake and River Service was inaugurated, and in the following year, owing to the gold-seeker's rush to the Klondyke, a new service was begun on the British Columbian Coast which has since proved so popular that it has been considerably augmented. The C.P.R. Atlantic Service was established as recently as 1903, when the Company bought from the Elder Dempster Line fifteen of their finest steamships and established the Atlantic Service from Liverpool, Bristol and London, extending it the following year to include Antwerp. Nineteen hundred and thirteen witnessed a further expansion in the sphere of operations, for in April an additional service was begun from Trieste, on the Adriatic, to Canada.

Considerable development has also taken place in the other industries in which the Canadian Pacific is interested. Over 120,000 miles of telegraph wires are in operation; and nineteen first-class hotels have been opened to the public.

### DOMINION LANDS.

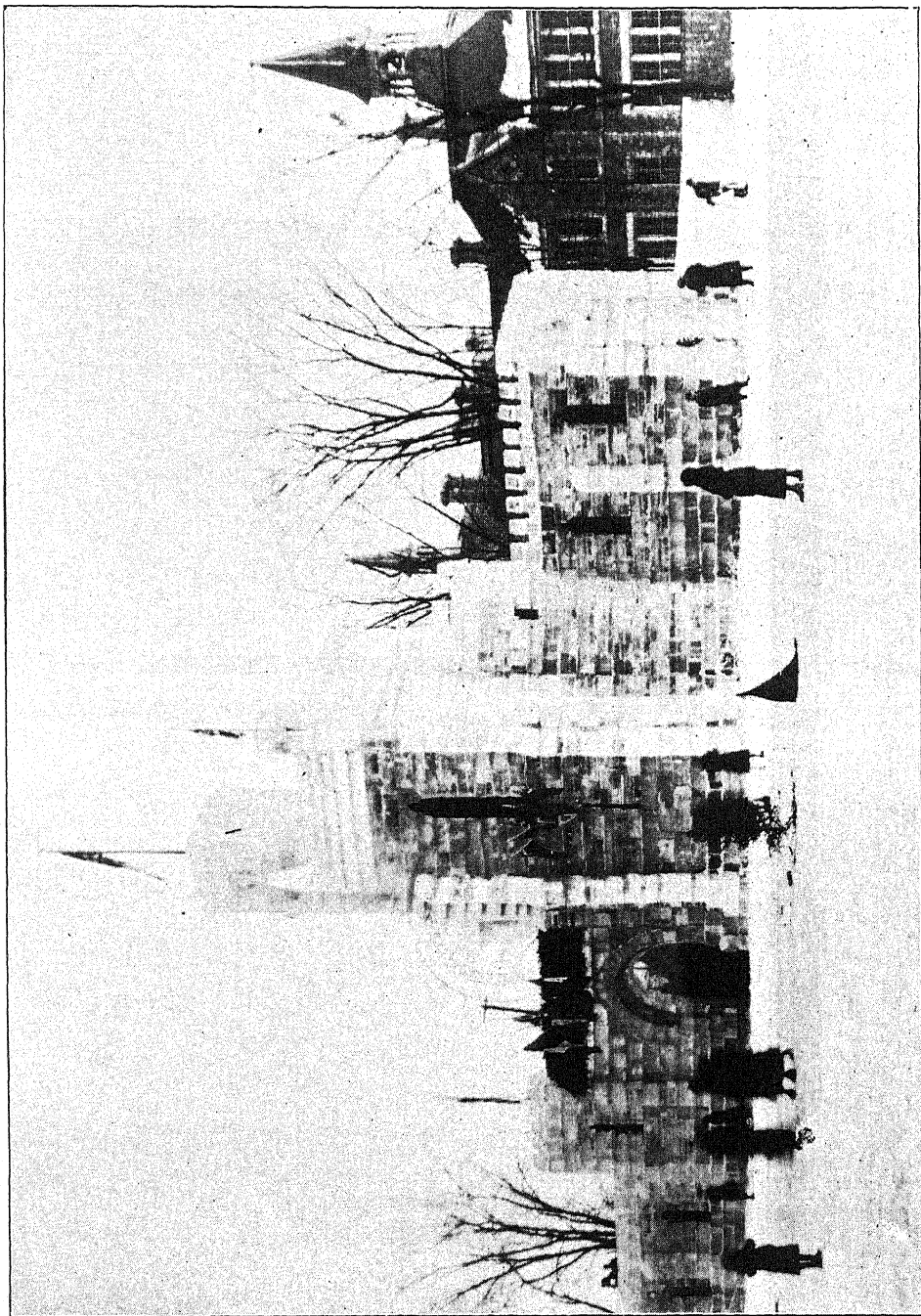
The Crown Lands of the Dominion of Canada are situated in the North-West Provinces, and in the Railway Belt of British Columbia (*q.v.*). Of these lands, large areas are offered in free grants as homesteads for settlers. The lands are laid out in townships of thirty-six sections. Each section contains 640 acres, and is divided into quarter sections of 160 acres. A quarter section of

160 acres may be obtained by a settler on payment of an entry fee of 10 dollars and fulfilment of certain conditions of residence and cultivation. To qualify for the issue of the patent for his homestead, a settler must have resided upon his homestead for at least six months in each of three years; must have erected a habitable house thereon; must have at least 30 acres of his holding broken, of which 20 acres must be cropped, and must be a British subject. According to recent figures, a total area of 124,399,608 acres of Dominion Lands has been alienated, this area being equal to 5,400 townships, or to 194,400 square miles. As the number of acres *surveyed* is about 154,552,067 acres, equal to 6,708 townships, or to 241,488 square miles, there remains still for disposal a *surveyed* area of over 30,000,000 acres. It should, however, be pointed out here that the statistics of a new country change rapidly, and are therefore only approximately correct.

In the Maritime Provinces, in Quebec and in Ontario, the public lands are administered by the Provincial Governments. In Prince Edward Island all the land is settled. In Nova Scotia there are now no free grants of land. In New Brunswick the virgin lands are practically free. In Quebec the area of the public lands, subdivided and available for alienation by sale or free grants, was 7,066,756 acres. In Ontario, almost all the free grant land in the Province, exclusive of the new district of Patricia, has been taken up, but there are vast areas still available. In British Columbia, any British subject, being the head of a family, a widow, a *femme sole* who is over 18 years of age and self-supporting, a woman deserted by her husband, a woman whose husband has not contributed to her support for two years, a bachelor over 18 years of age, or any alien on his making a declaration of his intention to become a British subject, may pre-empt out of the unoccupied and unreserved Crown Lands, not being an Indian settlement, 160 acres at the price of one dollar per acre, to be paid in four equal instalments.

### ROADS.

It is unnecessary to emphasize the importance of public highways in a vast country like Canada, and it may therefore



**AN ICE PALACE IN THE OTTAWA CARNIVAL**  
This palace is built entirely of blocks of ice and is the centre of a wonderful carnival, held each year in the Dominion Capital. It usually culminates in a spectacular assault upon the glittering ice palace with fireworks and coloured lights

*Photo, Canadian National Rlys.*



to the handsome stipends of Judges in England. A dissatisfied suitor in Canada can appeal from a Canadian Court to the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council in England. There is also, however, a Supreme Court of Canada sitting at Ottawa for the same purpose of hearing appeals, and for the decision of important questions concerning the Provinces and the Dominion. Another great Ottawa institution we must not fail to mention—a Roman Catholic University.”\*

and different athletic grounds. By it the suburbs, particularly Hull, are placed in convenient communication with the city.

“The magnificent water power at Ottawa has afforded special facilities for electric development. Ottawa has become the centre of what bids fair to be a radiating system of electric railways, which will one day connect the capital with all the surrounding towns and villages. For scenic beauty and picturesqueness the Canadian capital is not surpassed by any capital in



CARTIER SQUARE, OTTAWA, DURING THE ICE CARNIVAL Photo, Canadian National Rlys.

“The electric railway system of Ottawa has always been famous. It sprang into existence in an almost perfect condition, and has always been looked upon by experts as a model. It affords easy access to every quarter of the city, and to remote points such as Rockcliffe Park, Victoria Park, in exactly the opposite direction, and other important parks, as well as the exhibition

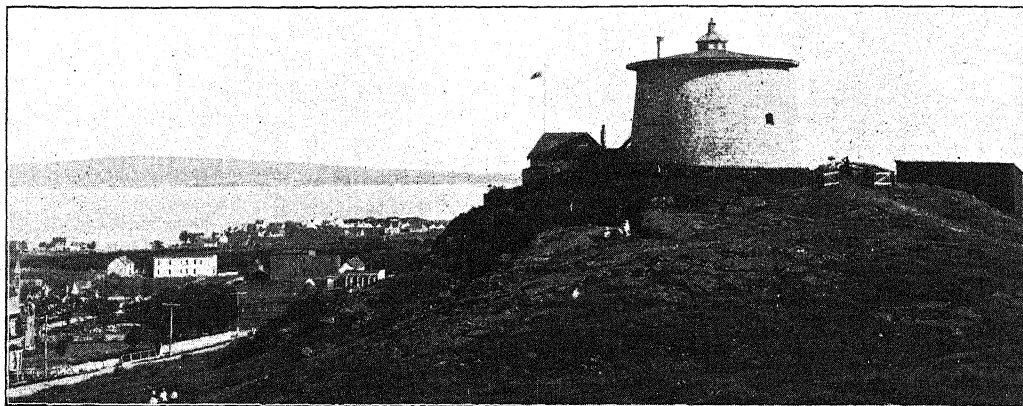
\* *The Country Called Canada.*

the world. The Houses of Parliament and surrounding Government buildings stand upon the high bank of the beautiful Ottawa River, just below the great Chaudière Falls. Through the heart of the city runs the Rideau Canal. Beside the canal the Grand Trunk Railway has built a handsome station, and a little further along, just opposite the Parliament Building, the same Company has constructed the ‘Chateau Laurier.’ This is one

of the handsomest hotels on the American Continent. It is all 'front.' From the south, the view is over the deep cañon through which the canal drops to the level of the Ottawa. West, the view is over the native trees of a beautiful park, beyond which flows the Ottawa, the inter-provincial bridge reaching over to Hull, an important lumber and manufacturing town. Away to the north spreads the growing city. That way, also, lies Government House, the home of the Governor-General. Miles upon miles of splendid driveways have been constructed about the capital within the past decade."\*

between the mouth of the Miramichi and the Bay of Chaleur. On 24th June, 1604, Samuel de Champlain entered the mouth of the River St. John and explored the river and coast line. The first French settlement on the continent was on the Island of St. Croix, where Poutrincourt and his party spent the winter of 1604-5.

The Province of New Brunswick formed a part of ancient Acadia, and the site of the present city of St. John was a mission station of the Jesuits as early as 1606. In 1630 Charles La Tour built a fort on the west side of the harbour of St. John, which became



*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

**A MARTELLO TOWER, ST. JOHN, NEW BRUNSWICK**

## Province of New Brunswick

New Brunswick lies mainly between 45° and 48° N. latitude, and 64° and 68° W. longitude. It is bounded on the south by the Bay of Fundy, on the east by the Straits of Northumberland and Gulf of St. Lawrence, on the north by the Bay of Chaleur and the Province of Quebec, and on the west by the State of Maine. The length of the Province from north to south is 230 miles, its greatest breadth is 190 miles, and it has an area of 27,985 square miles, and a sea coast of about 600 miles.

### EARLY HISTORY.

When Jacques Cartier made his first voyage of discovery, he landed, on 1st July, 1534, on New Brunswick soil, somewhere

the scene of the conflicts which took place between him and D'Aulnay between 1640 and 1645. It was in the latter year that Fort La Tour was taken by D'Aulnay, notwithstanding the heroic defence made by Lady La Tour. In 1650 D'Aulnay died and La Tour recovered possession of his fort, but it was captured by an expedition sent out by Cromwell in 1654.

New Brunswick remained in possession of the English until 1670, when it was restored to the French under the provisions of the Treaty of Breda. A few Seigneurs obtained large grants on the River St. John during the latter part of the seventeenth century, but very little was done in the way of developing the resources of the country; their chief business was trading with the Indians.

\* *Montreal, Quebec, and Ottawa.* Published by The Grand Trunk Railway.



In 1692 Fort Nashwaak, near the site of the present city of Fredericton, was the seat of government in Acadia. It was unsuccessfully besieged in 1696 by a force from New England under Colonel Church. In 1698 old Fort LaTour at the mouth of the River St. John was rebuilt and became the seat of government, but it was abandoned in 1700. From that time the French settlements on the River St. John declined, and did not assume any importance until after the expulsion of the Acadians from the peninsula of Nova Scotia in 1755. In 1758 the French were driven away from the St. John River by an expedition under Col. Monckton, the fortress, which the French had built on the Chignecto peninsula, having been captured by the English three years before.

#### FIRST ENGLISH SETTLEMENT.

In 1762 settlers came into the Province from New England and founded the settlements of Maugerville, Sheffield and Gagetown, and, at a somewhat later period, colonies began to be formed in the counties of Westmorland and Albert, and on the territory along the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Bay of Chaleur. The coming of the Loyalists in 1783 added largely to the population of the Province, and in the following year it was separated from Nova Scotia, when Thomas Carleton was appointed its governor. The first Legislature met in St. John in 1786, but two years afterwards the seat of government was removed to Fredericton, where it has since remained.

The history of New Brunswick since that time has been uneventful, except for the conflicts over responsible government, which was carried on for many years, and which resulted in the province obtaining a constitution as liberal as that of any part of the British Empire. In 1867 New Brunswick became a part of the Canadian Confederation. The population of the province is now over 420,000. About 90,000 of the inhabitants are of French origin, descendants of the Acadians, who settled in the country in 1634. The others are chiefly of British descent.

#### GOVERNMENT AND SOCIAL CONDITIONS.

The system of government in New Brunswick is based on that of Great Britain, except that there is but one legislative body of forty-eight members, the upper house having been abolished in 1892. Every male resident is a voter, and responsible government prevails to the fullest extent. The Lieutenant-Governor is appointed by the Government of Canada, but all power rests in the Executive Council, which depends for its existence on having a majority in the Legislature. Of the seven members of the Executive Council, six are heads of departments and the other its president. The term of the Legislature is five years, but it may be dissolved at any time by the



*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

ROAD THROUGH A NEW BRUNSWICK FOREST



*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

**PAPINEAU FALLS, BATHURST, NEW BRUNSWICK**

Lieutenant-Governor. Churches and schools in great numbers are scattered throughout the province—all religions enjoying equal rights, and there is no State Church. An admirable educational system prevails, comprising common, superior and grammar schools, a normal school or training college for teachers, an agricultural school, and a University maintained by the Local Government. There are about 1,700 elementary schools. Education is free, the cost of maintaining the schools being raised by taxation on property and by Government grants.

**RAILWAYS.**

The Intercolonial Railway (a portion of the Canadian Government system which still retains its old name), connecting New Brunswick with the rest of Canada in the west and with Nova Scotia in the east, comes in from Quebec in the far north, runs along the shore of Chaleur Bay, then cuts south to Moncton in the south-east corner of the province, before passing out into the

Nova Scotia peninsula. Another section of this line runs west from Moncton to the commercial capital and great seaport, St. John, whence another line continues west along the shore to St. Stephen, on the St. Croix River, which there forms the boundary between Canadian and United States territory. St. John is also the Atlantic terminus of the Canadian Pacific Railway, which cuts across the State of Maine in order to reach Montreal and the west. The C.P.R. also has a line running north, and serving practically the whole of the St. John River valley. From the mouth of the Miramichi in the north-east, a branch of the Intercolonial railway crosses the heart of the province to Fredericton, the political capital; and the transcontinental line of the Federal Government, the Grand Trunk Pacific, has to cross the province in another direction, from Moncton in the south-east to the north-west corner on its way to Quebec and the west. The summers in New Brunswick are clear and cool; the winters cold and bracing,

especially in the interior, and free from sudden changes. In the growing season there are frequent showers, mostly at night. Sunny days are the rule. In seventeen years the average hours of bright sunshine at Fredericton varied from 94 in November to 238 in July.

### INDUSTRIES.

The leading industry in New Brunswick is agriculture, a large proportion of its people being farmers. The Province contains much excellent land, the marshes at the head of the Bay of Fundy, the intervals of the St. John and other large rivers, and the uplands of the northern portion being very fertile. The fruit farmer, too, finds in New Brunswick particularly suitable conditions to hand. Fruit has been grown for a good many years in considerable quantities along the valley of the St. John River, and in portions of the counties of Charlotte, Albert and Westmorland, and the Provincial Government has made every effort to foster the industry by giving information as to the best varieties in the different districts.

Next in importance to agriculture is

lumbering. A large portion of the territory is still covered by forests. On the 7,000,000 acres of Crown lands about 200,000,000 superficial feet of lumber is cut annually. The lumber business gives employment to thousands of men. From the very beginning of the history of New Brunswick this industry has been an important one.

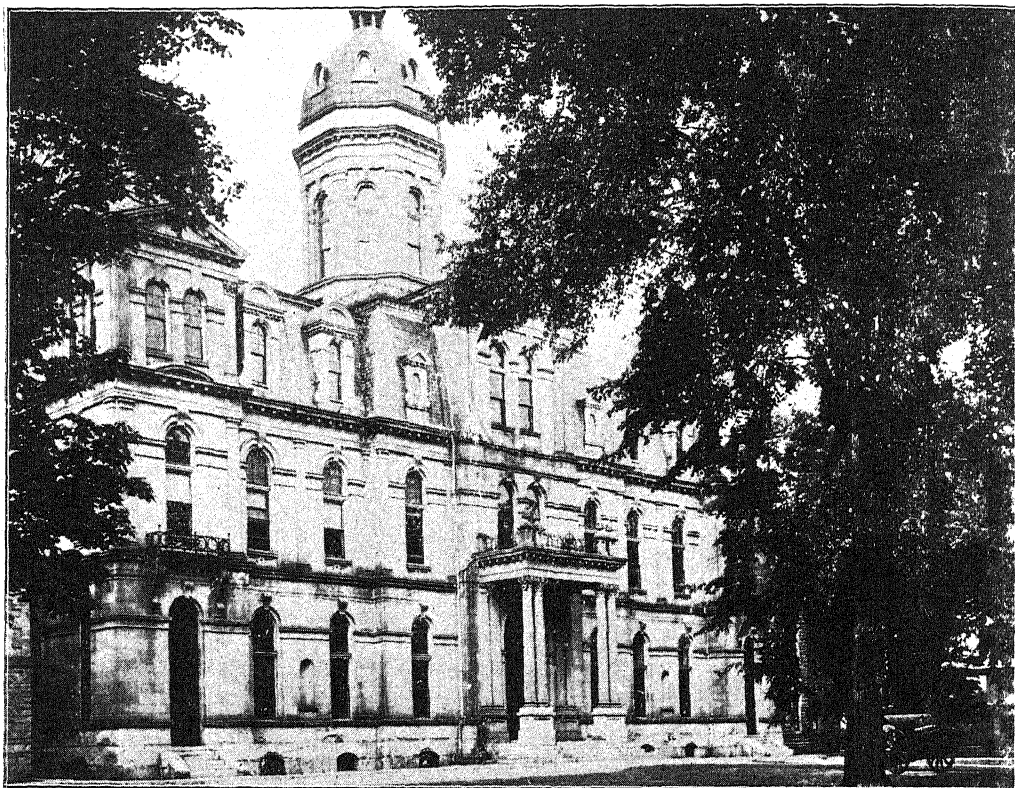
The fishing preserves of New Brunswick are important, and the average yearly catch is valued at £1,000,000 ; made up of herrings, £208,000 ; sardines, £158,000 ; lobsters, £69,000 ; salmon, £57,000 ; and bait, £36,000, while the industry employs about 20,000 people. The oyster beds are being improved, and fish hatcheries are expanding.

At the present time extensive development of the oil shales and natural gas areas of Albert County, of the iron mines in Gloucester County, and the coal mines in Queen's County is taking place, and a much greater use of these resources is planned. The province has rich stores of coal, bituminous shale, petroleum, natural gas, lime-stone, gypsum, building-stone, peat and clay, ample and productive forest areas,



FREDERICTON, CAPITAL OF THE PROVINCE OF NEW BRUNSWICK  
This City is famous for its avenues of fine old trees

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*



PROVINCIAL PARLIAMENT BUILDINGS, FREDERICTON, NEW BRUNSWICK

and extensive fisheries. The enormous water power at Grand Falls and in other parts of the province have already been developed, and this, together with the progressive railway policy, is likely to afford unexcelled opportunities for industrial development.

#### SCENERY.

The beauty and variety of the scenery of New Brunswick, the comfort and attractiveness of the many seashore and inland resorts, the ease with which these can be reached either by rail or water, the unrivalled facilities for boating and canoeing must continue to make this paradise of the pleasure lover more and more popular.

The St. John River is frequently called the Rhine of America, and is visited by thousands of tourists from the United States during the summer months, who come to reside in the farm houses and boarding establishments on its banks to escape the terrific heat of the larger cities of the States, especially New York and Boston.

There are several lines of steamers plying up the St. John River and its tributaries and also on the various lakes, which are largely patronised by visitors. Along the shores of the Kennebecasis, a tributary of the St. John, there are many summer residences, while a yacht club is also one of the attractions of this river.

The Tobique River, a famous salmon stream and a tributary of the St. John, conveys to the mind of the native and tourist a boundless vision of wild and primitive scenery, and is also noted for its game. Another equally famous region, remarkable for its beautiful scenery, for its hunting and fishing opportunities, and for the many pleasures it holds in store for the visitor, whether he be sportsman or nature lover, is the north shore, comprising the counties of Northumberland, Gloucester, and Restigouche. The Restigouche River, in the north of the province, is the world's most famous salmon river, and its other great rivals in New Brunswick are the Nepisiquit,

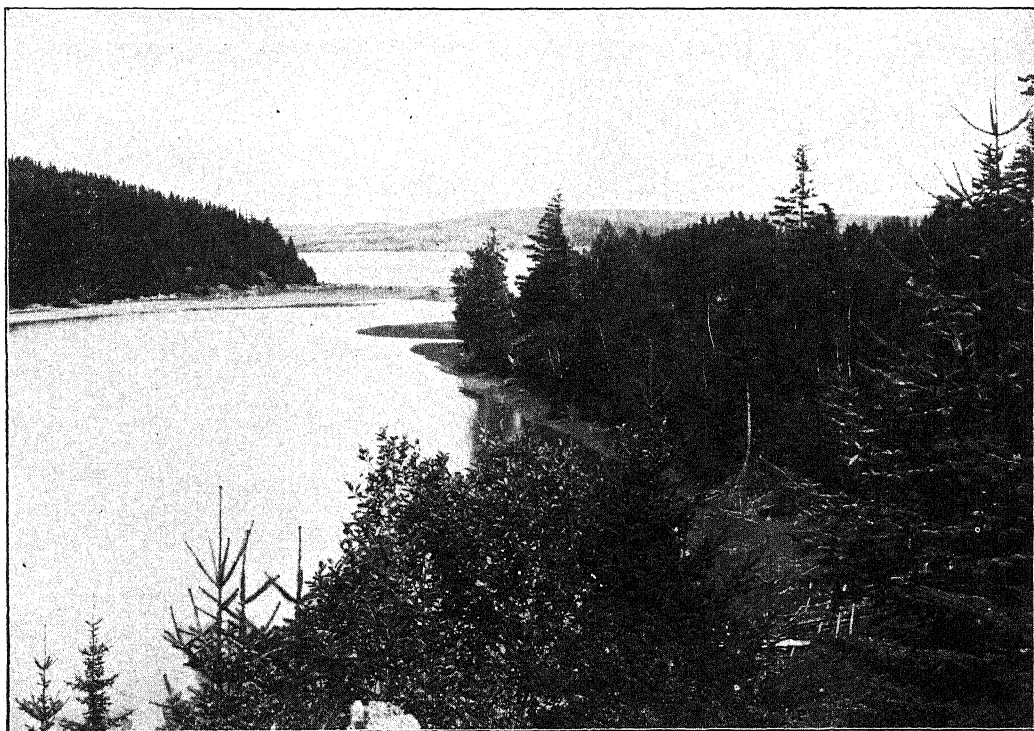
Miramichi, Upsalquitch, and Tobique. It is possible for the sportsman to take his canoe and make a circuit of the province, by doing a little portage from one river to the other in the north-west of the province, as was frequently done by the natives in the past.

One of the most interesting sights at St. John is the Reversing Falls which have no counterpart in the world. The average rise and fall of the tide ranges from 20 to 30 ft. At its mouth the river passes through a gorge, and at low tide has a rapid fall into the harbour of about 15 ft. With each change of the tide the cataract turns so that twice in twenty-four hours there is a fall up-river, and for a short period each day the waters are so smooth that canoes, boats, and craft of all kinds can pass through with safety. Ten miles from St. John is beautiful Loch Lomond, where there is good hotel accommodation and fair trout fishing, while nine miles in another direction is the village of Rothesay, and twelve miles up the St. John River is Westfield and its charming beach.

### FREDERICTON.

Fredericton, the capital of New Brunswick, reached either by rail or water, is a beautiful city. According to the records of the days of Villebon, the site of the present city was then occupied by a small Acadian settlement known as St. Anne's Point. It was a favourite Indian camping place as well. The Indians in those days held their house of Assembly about five miles above the town, at Auk-paque, near Currie's Mountain.

The city contains the Parliament Buildings, a handsome freestone structure with granite base; the University and Provincial Normal School; and the Church of England Cathedral, one of the purest specimens of Gothic architecture on the continent. It is a centre from which some of the finest fishing and hunting regions are reached. The level streets are all shaded with magnificent trees, principally elms. The literary visitor should not fail to inspect the Legislative Library which contains 16,000 volumes, many of them extremely rare and valuable.

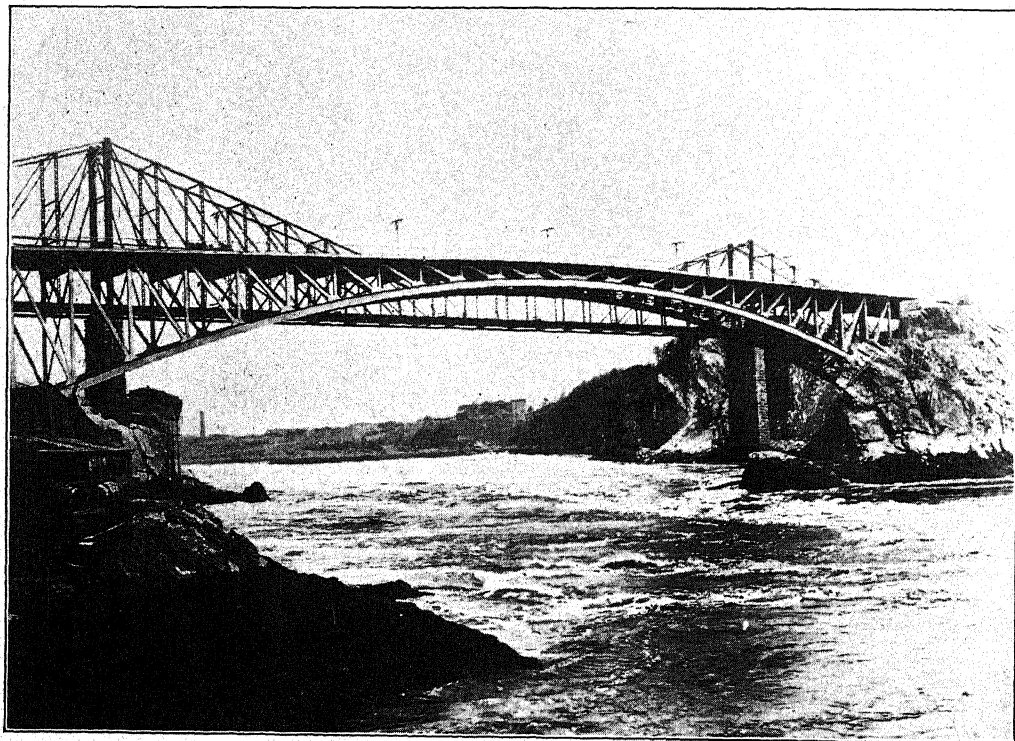


ON THE WAY FROM MONCTON TO HOPEWELL ROCKS





ST. JOHN, NEW BRUNSWICK



THE REVERSING FALLS, ST. JOHN, NEW BRUNSWICK

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

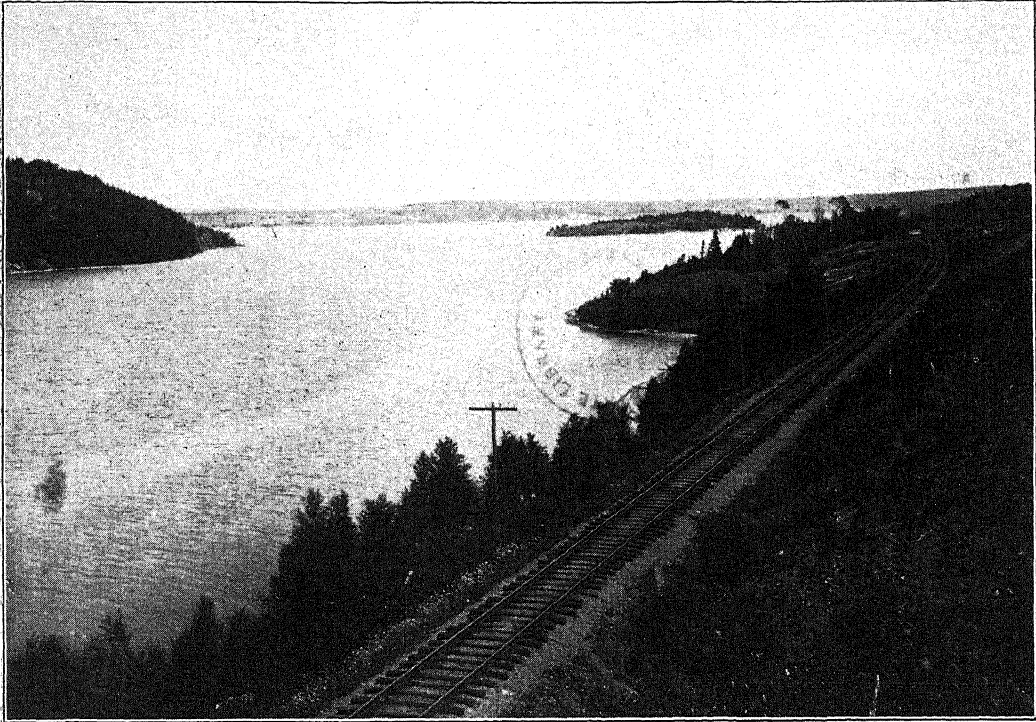
One of the original set of Audubon's Book of Birds is here, valued at 15,000 dollars.

Fredericton has good hotels. Across the river are the towns of Gibson and St. Mary's, and three miles up the Nashwaak stream from Gibson is Marysville, a hive of industry with its cotton and lumber mills. Above Fredericton, on the St. John River, are Woodstock, Florenceville, Hartland, Andover,

ination, several factories and mills, and the workshops of the St. John Valley Railway.

### Province of Nova Scotia

This, the most easterly Province of the Dominion, forms a peninsula, and lies between 43° and 47° N. lat., and 60° and 67° W. long. It is 350 miles in length, and varies



*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

#### THE BRAS D'OR LAKES, CAPE BRETON, NOVA SCOTIA

Perth, Grand Falls, Edmundston and other picturesque places, and a game and fishing country that is famous the whole world over.

The Grand Falls are second only to the great cataract at Niagara, while the wild and rugged gorge is unrivalled. The real beauty and grandeur of this section is not as well known as it deserves. The whole region round about is a sporting paradise, and there are opportunities for canoeing, camping, fishing and shooting that cannot be excelled anywhere. When the snows come winter sports are largely indulged in. The city contains churches of every denom-

in breadth from 30 to 120 miles, comprising an area of about 21,428 square miles. Connecting it with the mainland is an isthmus 13 miles wide. The population numbers over 550,400. This province is most favourably situated geographically; being bounded on the north by the Northumberland Straits, on the east by the Gulf of St. Lawrence, on the south-east and south by the Atlantic, and on the west by the Bay of Fundy and the Province of New Brunswick (*q.v.*). Elongated in form, it stretches out into the ocean and its innumerable harbours and bays afford convenient communication, both coastwise



BEAUTIFUL NOVA SCOTIA  
A stream through Antigonish Village

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

*and inland*, very few places being more than 20 miles from tidal waters. With so long a seaboard, the access of its ports to the principal markets is exceptionally easy, as is proved by the relative distances, which are as follows :—

Halifax is—

655	miles	nearer	Liverpool	than	New York.
1,050	"	"	Gibraltar	"	"
750	"	"	Cape Town	"	"
200	"	"	Cape Town	"	Liverpool.

### HISTORY.

Great Britain's claim to Nova Scotia was originally based upon the discoveries of the Cabots, but the first settlement was made by the French, in 1605, at Port Royal, now Annapolis Royal. Sir William Alexander, in 1621, received from the King a grant of the Acadian peninsula, with Cape Breton Island, a grant that included what is now New Brunswick (and Gaspé). Sir William, who was a patriotic Scotsman, gave to the land the name of Nova Scotia—

now comprising only the peninsula and Cape Breton Island.

From that time onward, for nearly a century, the nations of France and England disputed the ownership of this territory. Each secured possession in turn, through conquest or treaties, until, in 1713, the peninsula was finally ceded to Great Britain by the Treaty of Utrecht. The Island of Cape Breton, however, remained in the possession of France.

In 1745, a New England expedition captured the stronghold of Louisbourg (C.B.I.), which, in 1748, was restored to France. In 1749, an important step was taken by the British Government to strengthen their hold on Nova Scotia. Halifax was founded under Governor Cornwallis, and was made the capital in the place of Annapolis, founded by the French in 1605. Then, in 1745 and 1755, came the capture of Beau Sejour, at the head of Chignecto Bay, by the British, and the expulsion of the Acadians. The year 1758 saw the final fall

of Louisbourg (CAPE BRETON ISLAND), and in 1763, the Treaty of Paris confirmed the British in their possession of the whole of Nova Scotia.

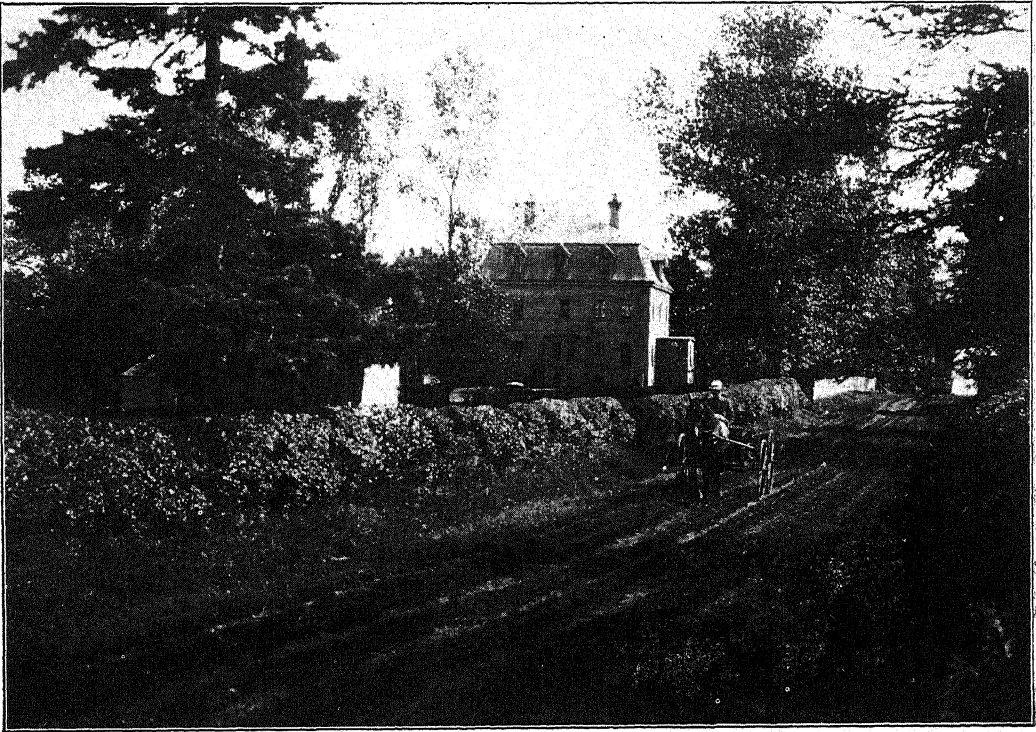
The first Representative Assembly in Nova Scotia, and in all Canada, was convened in Halifax in 1758. This formed the *inauguration of Colonial representative government*, and, in order to commemorate this event, a Memorial Tower was erected in Halifax to mark the 150th anniversary of the establishment of Colonial constitutional government.

After the Revolutionary War in the United States, about 20,000 loyalists settled in this region. In 1784 New Brunswick became a separate province. In the same year, Cape Breton Island also became a separate entity, a disunion which lasted until 1820. In 1848, responsible government was granted, and in 1867 the confederation of the four Provinces of Canada was brought about, and Nova Scotia became a part of the Dominion.

### SCENERY.

Although Nova Scotia does not possess any really mountainous land, there are two (principal) ranges of hills averaging from 800 to 1,100 ft. in height, known respectively as the Cobequid Mountains, and the North and South Mountains. The former run from west to east, from Chignecto to Cape St. George, through the counties of Cumberland, Colchester, Pictou and Antigonish. The latter have a north-easterly direction, from Digby Neck to Capes Split and Blomidon, through Annapolis and Kings Counties.

The east and south-east shores on the Atlantic coast are much indented with numerous bays and many excellent harbours, the most important being HALIFAX HARBOUR, which is noted as one of the finest in the world, being sufficiently extensive to accommodate the entire fleet of the principal navies of the world. SYDNEY HARBOUR, Cape Breton, is also one of the most completely land-locked harbours in America, in addition to which there are about forty others. Among



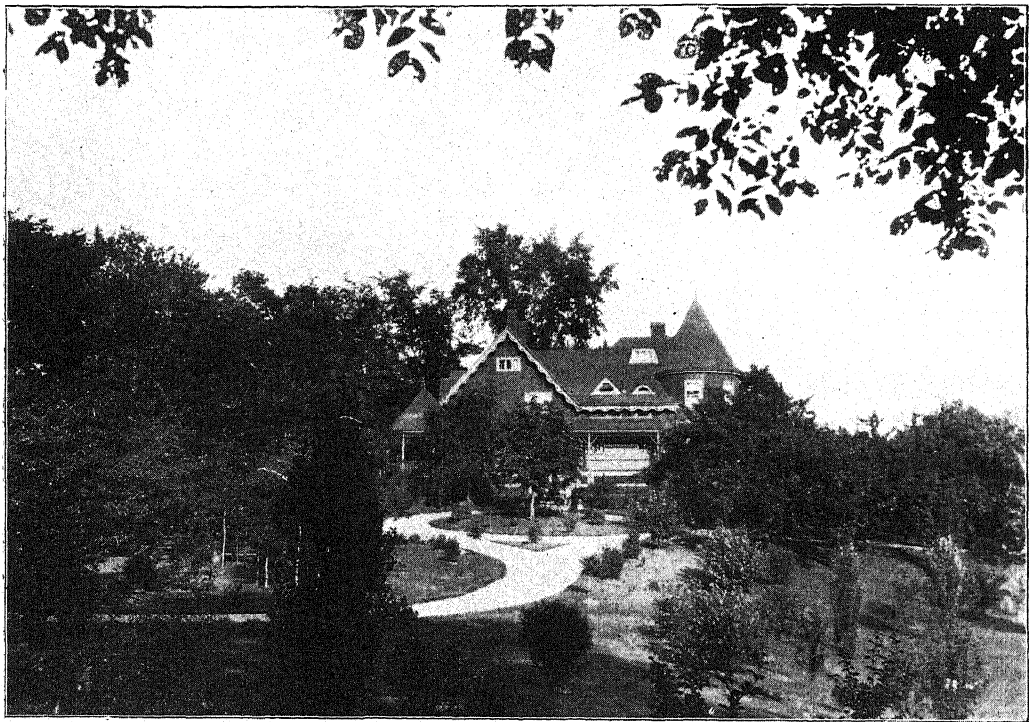
*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

RESIDENCE OF THE LATE LORD STRATHCONA, PICTOU, NOVA SCOTIA



the principal and more spacious bays are, on the east : St. Anne's Bay, Mira Bay, Gabarouse Bay, St. Peter's Bay, Chedabucto Bay, Tor Bay, St. Margaret's Bay, and Mahone Bay. On the west lies St. George's Bay, Cobequid Bay, Minas Basin, Annapolis Basin, and St. Mary's Bay ; Cobequid Bay extends inland for about sixty miles, and is affected by the tides of the Bay of Fundy, which rise to a height of 60 ft., as compared with 6 ft. on the Atlantic coast. St. George's

the eastern shore, have their outlet in the Atlantic. They are navigable for coasting vessels, and the Shubenacadie for craft of considerable size. There are numbers of small islands around the coast, especially in the south-east ; the most important being Cape Sable Island, Seal and Mud Islands, in the south ; and Long Island, to the west. In Northumberland Strait are the islands of Caribou and Pictou ; and Madame Island, Scatarie and St. Paul are situated off the



*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

**RESIDENCE OF SIR ROBERT BORDEN, LATE PRIME MINISTER OF CANADA,  
CANNING, NOVA SCOTIA**

Bay is in the Northumberland Strait and communicates with the Gut of Canso, which divides Cape Breton from the mainland, and has an outlet in Chedabucto Bay.

The principal rivers are the Shubenacadie, rising in the Grand Lake, draining Hants and Halifax counties, and flowing into the Minas Basin ; and the Annapolis, rising in Kings County, with its outlet in Annapolis Bay, draining the valley between the North and South Mountains. The La Have, Mersey, Medway, Shelbourne and Tusket, running to

coast of Cape Breton. Sable Island, 25 miles long, is 125 miles east of Halifax. The principal capes are, on the north, Cape North, and on the east, Cape Morien, Cape Breton, Cape Canso, Liscomb Point, Pennant Point, and Baccaro Point ; and the south, Cape St. Mary ; and on the west, Cape George, Cape John, Malagash Point, Cape Chignecto, Cape d'Or, Cape Split, and Cape Blomidon.

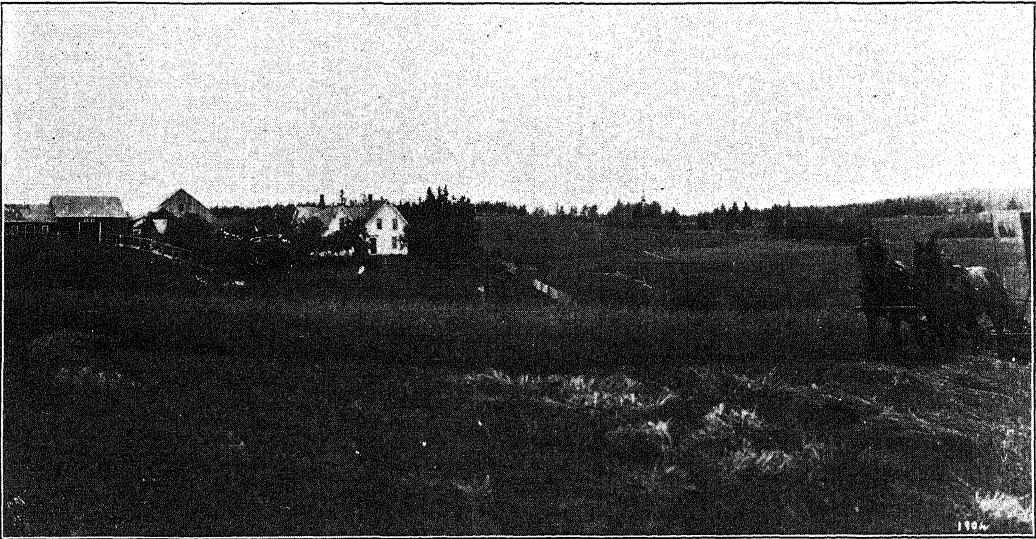
The great charm of the scenery of this province lies in the variety of its natural beauty—hills and dales alternating through-



out the country, intersected by streams and innumerable lakes, which form one of its outstanding attractions. The Bras d'Or salt-water lake in Cape Breton Island consists of a magnificent sheet of water, 50 miles in length, which, together with Little Bras d'Or, practically divides the island into two parts. The largest fresh-water lakes on the mainland are : Rossignol, over 20 miles in length, and Ponhook in Queens County, Ship Harbour Lake and Grand Lake in Halifax County, Fairy Lake in Annapolis, Gaspereau in Kings, and Lake St. Croix in Hants.

coal is estimated at 300 square miles. It contains ten coal seams, each of which is from 12 to 3 feet in thickness, besides numerous smaller beds. The coals are highly bituminous and coking ; many of the seams yield coal well adapted for gas making. Numerous certificates show a quality almost equal to the Welsh steam coal. Several of the seams enjoy an enviable reputation as good domestic coal for grate and range purposes.

THE INVERNESS COALFIELD is situated on the north-western shore of Nova Scotia,



A TYPICAL NOVA SCOTIAN FARM

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

### COAL.

Nova Scotia possesses the only coal deposits at tidal waters on the Atlantic coast of America ; and in this part of Canada only are coal, iron and fluxes found in juxtaposition. This province is most favourably situated geographically in regard to distribution to the world's markets ; it is 581 miles nearer Liverpool than New York ; has water navigation to Montreal, and is much better situated to supply the markets of New England than many of the States in the Union.

THE SYDNEY COALFIELD, on the north-eastern shore of Nova Scotia, and in the county of Cape Breton, is of considerable economic importance. Its area of available

in Inverness County. There are three collieries—at Inverness, Port Hood, and Mabou. Important deposits are known to exist, and have been worked on the surface in a desultory manner at Chimney Corner.

THE PICTOU COALFIELD covers an area of about 35 square miles, and is noted for the unusual thickness of some of the beds. There are sixteen known seams, from 42 to 3 ft. in thickness. The coal is not as bituminous as that from the Sydney district, but is still a good coking coal, except in the case of a few seams. The coal has its chief reputation as a good strong steam coal, adapted for use under all forms of boilers.

THE CUMBERLAND COALFIELD is not yet explored over its whole extent, but its area

has been estimated at 300 square miles. The known seams are from 10 to 3 feet in thickness. The coal is similar in character to that of the Pictou district, and is largely used for steam and domestic purposes.

**MISCELLANEOUS COALFIELDS.** In Richmond County extensive prospecting work has been carried out on the coal-basin at River Inhabitants. At Kemptown and Debert, in Colchester County, work of an exploratory nature has been carried on intermittently for a number of years. Coal

vein workings. The auriferous quartz veins occur in groups, running parallel to one another in a system of anticlinal domes. They have, in some cases, been traced superficially for a distance of over two miles, and pay-shoots in the veins have been followed to a vertical depth of 1,100 ft. The worked veins vary in thickness from 30 ft. to 1 in., and are found interbedded in quartzite and slate. The gold occurs in these veins (principally) in the shape known to miners as coarse gold, and in pockets and strings of



AN ORCHARD IN THE FAMOUS ANNAPOLIS VALLEY

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

has also been found at Big Marsh, Antigonish county, River John, Pictou county, and at various other places in the province.

### **GOLD.**

The Atlantic shore, from Canso to Yarmouth, is occupied by the auriferous strata. The width of the district varies from 10 to 40 miles, and the area of gold-bearing sedimentary rocks in this portion of the Province is estimated at 3,000 square miles. The Nova Scotia gold is derived entirely from

various shapes and sizes. It is usually associated with arsenopyrite, pyrite and galena.

The gold ores of Nova Scotia may be classed as free-milling, and most of the value may be extracted from the ore by the stamp-mill alone. The natural conditions for the legitimate prosecution of the gold mining industry are favourable. There is a very small amount of over-burden; timber for supporting excavations and for fuel is plentiful; the rocks in which the gold

veins occur are of a nature that require little artificial support; labour is efficient; there are abundant water-powers in the vicinity of many of the gold mines; and transportation facilities are good.

### IRON.

Iron ores occur in very many places throughout this Province. Beginning at the western end, we have, first, the red hematites and magnetites of Clementsport and Torbrook, Annapolis county; representing a range of ferriferous strata, extending from Digby to Windsor, with one interruption, in the shape of the Paradise granite.

Extensive mining operations are being carried on at the present time at Torbrook, in deposits of the interbedded type. Between Windsor and Truro there are numerous deposits of brown hematite, often highly manganiferous. Among the localities may be mentioned Selma, Clifton, and Brookfield. At Londonderry there is an immense vein of ankerite, 30 to 150 ft. wide, holding limonite and specular hematite, and extending for many miles, which has been worked for a number of years. In Pictou county workable deposits of hematite, limonite, specular hematite and spathic and clay iron-stone ores are found in the district extending from Glengarry, on the Intercolonial railway, to Arisaig, on the Gulf shore, where a most important deposit exists.

In Guysboro county several valuable deposits of specular ore have been opened and worked. The ore from one of these mines at Boylston has been satisfactorily used in the blast furnace at Londonderry. In Cape Breton valuable deposits of brown hematite and magnetite are found near Lake Ainslie and near Whycocomagh. Spathic ore occurs on Boularderie Island. Near East Bay a valuable bed of red hematite, 12 to 6 feet wide, has been traced for some distance.

Numerous other deposits of hematite are met at Boisdale, Big Pond, Loch Lomond, Grand Mira, and other points on the island. Deposits of bog iron are known to exist at various places throughout the province, but as yet have received little attention. There are many other localities yielding iron ores which, as yet, have not been thoroughly prospected. Limestone suitable for flux is everywhere met with in the vicinity of the coal and iron districts.

### COPPER.

Ores containing copper are found in the province, in rocks of every age. The trap associated with the Trias of the Bay of Fundy yields native copper at many points, among which may be mentioned Cape d'Or, Spencer, Briar, and Five Islands. Chalcocite and carbonate of copper are frequently met in the Upper and Lower Coal measures of Cumberland, Colchester, and Pictou counties. In the vicinity of Lochaber, in Antigonish county, some valuable deposits of chalcoppyrite have been proved. At Coxheath, in Cape Breton county, extensive development work has been carried out, on a chalcoppyrite deposit. There are other deposits of copper in the vicinity of Gabarus, Cape Breton county; St. Anne's, Victoria county; Cheticamp, Inverness county; and other points in the province.

### OTHER MINERALS.

The ore of lead most frequently met here is galena, generally carrying silver, and it occurs in the rocks of all ages, but most abundantly in the Lower Carboniferous limestone, which is met with in almost every county. Gypsum is found in Nova Scotia in immense quantities, associated with anhydrite. It occurs associated with Lower Carboniferous strata in beds frequently 100 ft. in thickness. There are many enormous deposits in various parts of Nova Scotia, which exist on tide water, among the most valuable of which are the ones near Windsor, Hants county; Amherst, Cumberland county; Antigonish, Antigonish county; McKinnon's Harbour, Baddeck, and St. Anne's, Victoria county; and Cheticamp, Inverness county. Gypsum occurs in large quantities along the shore line of Cape Breton Island; in the interior, and along the shores of the Bras d'Or Lakes. The conditions are most favourable for the development of an immense industry in the production of gypsum. A small amount of this mineral is locally manufactured into plaster-of-paris, wall plaster and fertiliser, but most of the gypsum mined in the Province at the present time is shipped to the United States in the crude form. Antimony is found at West Gore and Rawdon, in Hants county. The principal deposit is in a vein of the fissure type. This deposit has been extensively worked, and large shipments of ore have

been made, extending over a number of years, to Swansea, Wales; and New York, U.S.A. Tungsten minerals have been found at Moose River, Waverly, Halifax county and elsewhere.

The average annual value of the mineral production of Nova Scotia is about 30 millions of dollars.

### CLIMATE.

Situated in the temperate zone, from 3° to 6° nearer the Equator than the most southerly point in Great Britain, Nova Scotia, owing to its being practically surrounded by the sea, possesses a healthy, temperate climate, not subject to extremes of heat or cold. The following table shows the approximate average temperatures Fahrenheit for each month :—

Month	Highest	Highest Average	Lowest	Lowest Average	Average
Jan. -	47.7	26.74	6.7	10.48	18.61
Feb. -	43.8	30.23	11.6	15.52	22.88
Mar. -	50.3	37.68	0.0	22.21	29.94
April -	67.2	47.10	20.3	30.81	38.95
May -	80.4	60.80	29.3	40.70	50.75
June -	87.1	69.15	37.8	47.41	58.28
July -	98.7	76.78	40.4	55.40	66.09
Aug. -	81.7	69.97	43.8	53.81	61.89
Sept. -	75.1	66.91	33.4	45.40	56.15
Oct. -	76.6	58.27	28.3	39.69	48.98
Nov. -	58.8	45.20	19.3	30.25	37.72
Dec. -	56.6	36.71	11.2	25.19	30.95

### Recorded hours of sunshine :—

January -	-	-	-	113
February -	-	-	-	170
March -	-	-	-	201
April -	-	-	-	170
May -	-	-	-	193
June -	-	-	-	228
July -	-	-	-	323
August -	-	-	-	324
September -	-	-	-	222
October -	-	-	-	118
November -	-	-	-	85
December -	-	-	-	65
				2,212

The duration of winter is usually from December to March. The spring is shorter than in Great Britain. Summer and autumn are delightful periods, the latter season being succeeded by the Indian summer, which continues throughout November. The pre-

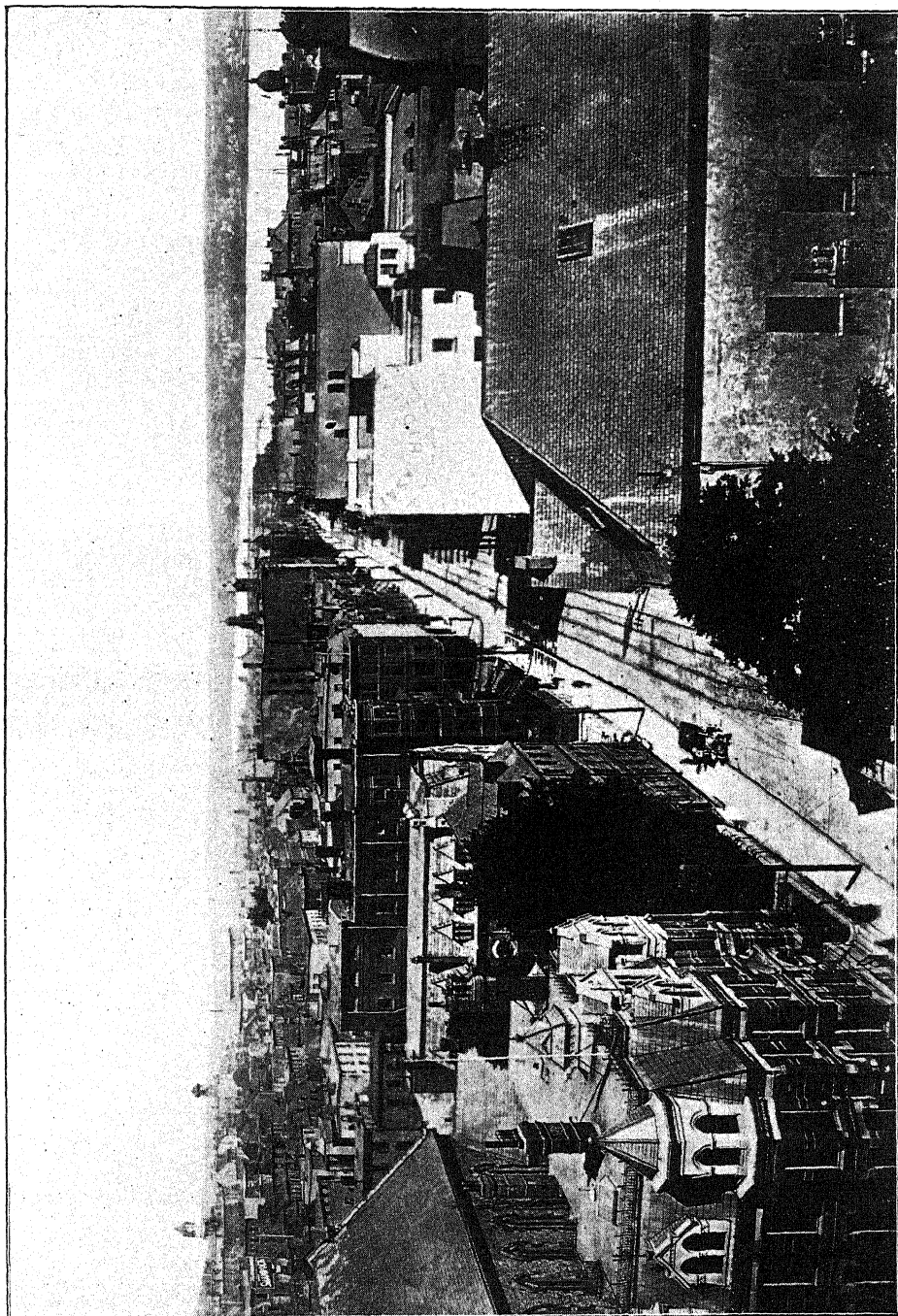
vailing winds are south-west and north-west. The climate varies in the different counties, the south-eastern ones being some 5° warmer than those in the north and east. At certain periods, fogs prevail on the coast, but they do not extend inland. The precipitation is sufficient for the needs of the country, without being excessive. The approximate rainfall is 37.38 in., snowfall 97.9 in., or rain and snow 47.17 in. The snowfall is an important asset, sheltering plant life from frost, while acting as a fertiliser, and also conserving the moisture in the land, so that no drought is experienced in the summer.

### AGRICULTURE.

By reason of its moderate climate and rainfall, all crops which are grown in the temperate zone can be successfully raised and ripened in Nova Scotia. Of the available land area of 13,483,681 acres, about 11,000,000 acres are fit for tillage, 5,200,000 are occupied and 2,000,000 are under crop. This land may be roughly divided into three classes: marsh, or dry, red, meadow land, intervale lands, and uplands. Although agriculture has made great strides of late years, yet, notwithstanding the increase in this direction, there is still a shortage of production, and heavy importations, amounting to 60 per cent., are made yearly to supply the local consumption.

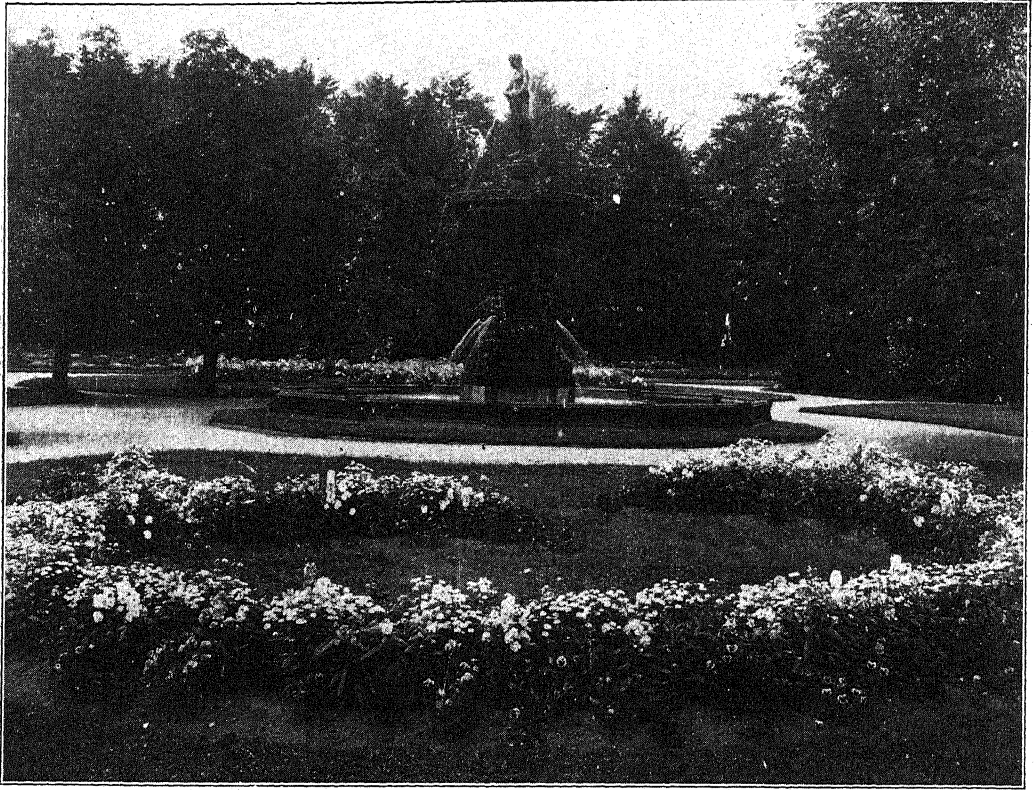
The extensive tracts of pasture land in Nova Scotia, and the favourable climatic conditions, are ideal for the prosecution of the dairying industry. The number of milch cows is returned as 143,362. The arable and pasture land available and suitable is about 3,500,000 acres, which shows that one cow is kept on every 24 acres. The production of butter and cheese is 354,785 lb. and 264,243 lb. respectively; made from milk sent to the sixteen creameries established in the province. As Nova Scotia imports 1,365,285 lb. of butter annually to supply the local markets, a large increase in the number of milch cows would be of material benefit to the community. The Province has been favourably compared by experts to *Denmark* as a dairying country, if full advantage was taken of its natural resources in this connection.

In the past, Nova Scotia has depended on the supply of beef from adjacent provinces, nearly 3,000,000 lb. being imported annually.



HALIFAX, NOVA SCOTIA





*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

#### **PUBLIC GARDENS, HALIFAX, NOVA SCOTIA**

The total number of cattle in the province is 305,000. Owing to the action of the Government in importing high-class stock for breeding purposes, more attention is now being given to this industry.

Nova Scotia has more than a million acres of rolling, well-watered and well-shaded pasture entirely suitable for sheep. A large percentage of this land is clothed with short, nutritious grass and white clover, on which sheep of the highest quality can be satisfactorily raised. The Scottish Agricultural Commission, after visiting the Province, were impressed with the belief that sheep were the ideal stocking for the farms. Up to the present, however, sheep farming has not been seriously undertaken in this province, the number aggregating but 290,000.

#### **FRUIT GROWING.**

Nova Scotia has long been renowned for the quality of its apples. While the principal

district for the cultivation of this fruit is the Annapolis Valley, extending for about 100 miles through the counties of Kings and Annapolis, it has been demonstrated by means of experimental orchards, established by the Nova Scotia Government, that apples can be successfully grown on a commercial basis in practically all parts of the province.

The suitability of the soil and climate of Nova Scotia are acknowledged to be ideal for the cultivation of this fruit, while her geographical position in connection with accessibility to the great markets of the world, affords a ready means of distributing her output by means of ocean transport. The varieties grown in this Province are well-known English and European kinds, such as Gravenstein, Ribston, Blenheim, Russets, Kings, Cox's Orange, Bishop Pippin, Baldwin, Mann, and Ben Davis. The approximate output is from 1,000,000 to 2,000,000 barrels, according to

the season, and nearly the whole of this quantity is exported to Great Britain and the Continent.

It is estimated that not more than 10 per cent. of the land in the Annapolis Valley which is suitable for fruit growing is yet planted with trees, which, however, already number about 2,000,000 on 70,000 acres. The fruit is gathered during the months of September and October, packed in barrels (120 lb.), stored in frost-proof warehouses and shipped to the various markets at intervals. By this means "glutting" is avoided, and the best prices obtained. There is *Government Inspection* under the Fruit Marks Act before shipment takes place. Strawberries, raspberries, gooseberries, currants, and plums are also largely grown. The local market absorbs practically the whole output, but in the south-west portion of the province, strawberry growers find an advantageous market in Boston, steamers running direct from Yarmouth to that port. Cranberries are cultivated on boggy land unsuitable for other purposes. The industry is an increasing one and shows satisfactory profits.

### INDUSTRIES.

The fisheries of Nova Scotia extend for a distance of 5,600 miles round the entire coast line of the Maritime Provinces. Over twenty varieties of fish are found, the principal being cod, lobster, mackerel, haddock, and herring. Salmon and trout also abound. Nearly 32,000 men are employed in this industry, and the approximate yearly value of the catch is £2,500,000; about one third of the total amount caught in the Dominion.

A valuable export trade is carried on in dried fish with the West Indies, South America, Spain and Portugal. Over 50 per cent. of the output of fresh and canned lobsters taken in Canada are caught in Nova Scotia. The inland fisheries yield principally smelts, salmon, trout, and large quantities of eels. Some of the finest natural oyster beds are also found on the Nova Scotia coast.

The forest areas extend to 12,000 square miles, or 7,750,000 acres. Taking an average of 3,000 ft. (B.M.) to the acre, the quantity of lumber available can be estimated at 23,250 million feet. The annual cut is 400 million feet; the principal trees being spruce, fir, hemlock, pine, birch, oak, and maple. The Nova Scotia Government takes effective

measures for the protection of the woods against fire. The smaller growths of spruce and fir are very suitable for pit props, as well as for pulp making, and mills have been established for the latter purpose in the western part of this province. Owing to the numerous sources of water-power available in the timber lands, conditions are favourable for the pulp industry.

The remarkable industrial development of the province has been of constant and increasing growth, especially during recent years. This is due to the utilisation of its natural resources, as well as to the ease with which they can be assembled for the purpose of manufacture. At one time principally devoted to farming and fishing, Nova Scotia has about 1,200 industrial establishments, employing 18,000 people, with an average annual output valued at £16,000,000. The chief industrial centres are the Sydneys in Cape Breton, New Glasgow in Pictou, Amherst in Cumberland, Truro in Colchester, and Halifax the Provincial capital. At Sydney is situated the largest steel works in Canada, which are in close proximity to the coal fields.

With the exception of the south-eastern shore, Nova Scotia is practically encircled by railways, with 1,329 miles in operation. There are also 18,000 miles of roads. The general coasting services and the numerous rivers are available for intercommunication between the various towns and villages situated at tidal waters. Telegraph stations are numerous, and few houses are without telephones.

### HALIFAX.

The capital of Nova Scotia has a population of over 59,000, and was founded on the 21st June, 1749, having since become one of the principal naval and military stations of Canada. The natural situation of Halifax has assisted in making it one of the most strongly fortified towns in America. It comprises a peninsula, formed by the harbour. Numerous fortifications at the entrances and along the slopes provide adequate protection. Its area is about eight square miles. The harbour frontage now in use extends over three miles, and has a depth of water at the wharves of from 18 to 38 ft. at low tide. The rise and fall of the tide is from 4 to 6 ft. Halifax forms the *winter terminus* of Atlantic steamship lines to

Canada, when all Canadian mails are landed there. There is a considerable trade between this port and the West Indies. It is also the seat of the Local Government, Dalhousie University, Anglican and Roman Catholic Cathedrals, and contains many other fine public buildings, including the Provincial Legislature, Government House, City Hall and Armouries. There is also a large shipyard for the building of ocean-going steamers.

The scenery in and around Halifax is unsurpassed in the Maritime Provinces, and the Public Gardens, containing fourteen acres, are admitted to be as fine as any in Canada. There are unlimited facilities for outdoor sports. An abundance of shooting and fishing can be had. Big game is represented by the moose (some 800 being killed each year), deer, caribou, and bear. Wild geese and ducks abound in the lakes and marshes, and partridges, woodcock, and plover are plentiful. Salmon and trout are numerous in the various rivers and lakes, and, if the right locality is selected, the fisherman is assured of a good bag. Tund, or horse mackerel, frequent the coast waters of Cape Breton, and furnish exciting sport when fished with rod and line—one recently captured weighed 680 lb. Licences for non-residents to hunt big game cost 30 dollars for the season, only one bull moose being allowed to each gun. The Game Laws are simple and afford due protection of game when out of season.

### SYDNEY.

The town of next importance is Sydney, which has a population of about 23,000. It is situated on the Intercolonial Railway, and on Sydney Harbour, which is one of the finest and most complete land-locked harbours of the world. The city is placed in the midst of a very large bituminous coal deposit, and mining experts maintain that there are at least 14 billion tons of workable coal available in the surrounding district. Large industries are carried on in the town, the chief being the iron and steel works. Manufactured products can be shipped 2,000 miles into Canada, while, geographically, this port is nearer Europe, Africa, and South America, than any other point on the North American seaboard. Excellent agricultural country surrounds the town.

## The Province of Prince Edward Island

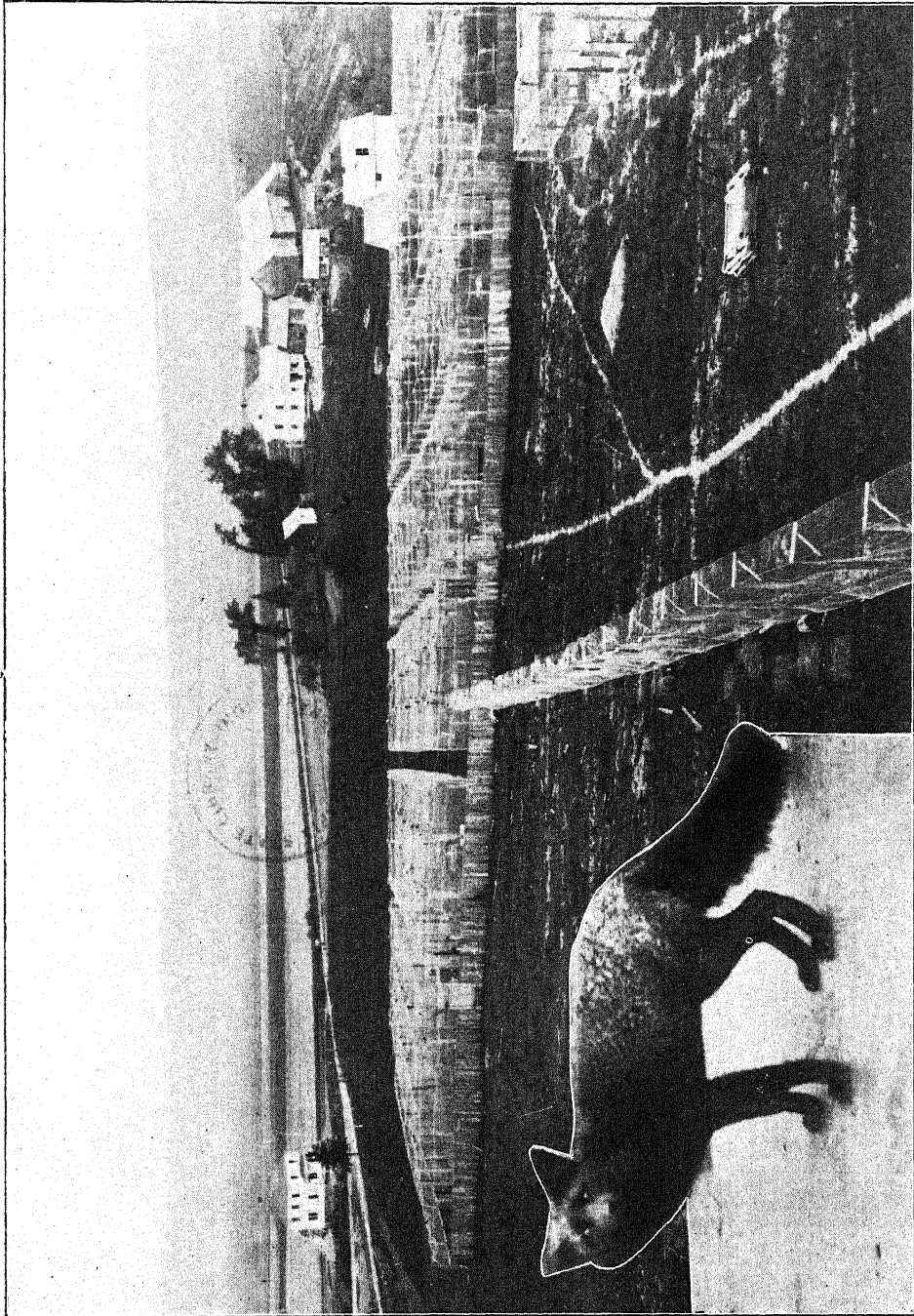
Forming a portion of what is known as Maritime Canada, this island is the smallest Province of the Dominion, and it is also the most densely populated, having about 86,000 people living on its 2,184 square miles of land. The total length of the island is 140 miles, and the breadth varies from 2 to 34 miles. Every part is near the sea, but the sand dunes which encircle the coast prevent the sea from encroaching. At the narrowest point of Northumberland Strait the island is only 9 miles distant from the mainland of New Brunswick; but it is usually approached by a pleasant steamboat journey of 50 miles from Pictou, in Nova Scotia, to Charlottetown, the island capital.

### HISTORY.

The French explorer, Jacques Cartier alighted on the shores of this island as far back as 1534, and was delighted with what he saw; but no attempt was made to colonise it for nearly 200 years. It became British territory in 1758, on the capture of the adjacent island of Cape Breton by General Wolfe. At that time it was known as the Isle de St. Jean, but in 1799 it received its present name as a compliment to Prince Edward, Duke of Kent, the father of Queen Victoria. Waves of emigration from the old country, reinforced by a certain number of the United Empire Loyalists, formed the ancestry of the present population, of whom about 36,000 are Scots, 22,000 are English and 19,100 Irish. The small number of original French settlers have increased to over 11,000.

The rank of self-governing colony was attained in 1851, and in 1873 the province joined the six-year-old confederation of Canada. It is now represented by four senators and four members in the Dominion Parliament, but all provincial affairs remain in the hands of the islanders, with their provincial legislature sitting at Charlottetown.

Half the members of the legislature are chosen by the electorate as a whole, which includes practically every man on the island; and the other half by the land owners. The landowners now include a large proportion of the people, but this was not always so. The



A FOX FARM IN EASTERN CANADA

(Inset, a Fox)

*Picto, Canadian National Klys.*

land question was a burning one in this Emerald Isle of the West, and the flames were extinguished by the same means as were once employed in Ireland—by a grant of £160,000 from the Dominion Authorities, the Provincial Government were able to buy out the absentee landlords and sell the land to their tenants on easy terms.

### SCENERY AND CLIMATE.

The island has a curious shape, as the map will show. It is about 140 miles long, but its greatest width is little more than 30 miles, and in two places the distance from south shore to north shore is only a couple of miles. The proximity of the sea to almost every section of the island not only enriches the air, but moderates the summer heat. The climate is extremely healthy for human beings, for their livestock, and for vegetation. The temperature is sometimes low in winter, owing to the ice coming down through the Gulf of St. Lawrence, but not so low as that of the central part of the Dominion. Spring comes late, but the summer is long, bright and genial.

The forest which covered the land in Cartier's time has disappeared, but pleasant groves and coppices of spruce and maple, birch, poplar, and many other trees diversify the landscape. The plentiful though not excessive moisture keeps the landscape green long after the western plains are dry and brown; the reddish hue of the soil forms a picturesque contrast with the general verdancy; and late in autumn the trees put on a gorgeous variety of colour—red, yellow, orange, and crimson—till the snow falls, covering the earth with dazzling white and protecting it from the severity of the frost.

Prince Edward Island—often designated "the Garden Province of Canada" owing to the fertility of its soil—also possesses important fisheries, for it lies on the Gulf of St. Lawrence in the midst of the most important deep sea fisheries of the North American continent. Although forming one of the Maritime Provinces of Canada the natural features and conditions differ in several respects from those of the other provinces which go to make up the Dominion, even in contrast with its neighbours, Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. In the first

place, Prince Edward Island is more thickly settled than any other province. As practically all the land is under occupation only limited openings exist for new settlers in comparison with the almost endless opportunities offering in most other portions of Canada. There is also an almost entire absence of the rugged stretches of forest and rock so characteristic of Canadian scenery generally, and, thanks to the natural fertility of the soil, this island is the most thoroughly cultivated territory upon the Northern American continent, no less than 85.44 per cent. of its area being occupied by farms and lots, and 80 per cent. of its total population being connected with agriculture in its various forms.

The country, gently undulating from its deeply-indented coast line to the chain of hills which form the highlands, is essentially pastoral in appearance, and the soil is mainly composed of a rich, light sandstone, with occasional clay areas. The redness of the soil at once recalls to the traveller a characteristic feature of Devonshire and other parts of Western England, and, indeed, a drive through the farming districts discloses many points of resemblance to some of the principal agricultural sections of the United Kingdom. In this connection a well-known English agricultural authority has reported: "In some respects this is one of the most beautiful provinces in the Dominion, and it has probably the largest proportion of cultivable land. . . . On the whole, the grassland of the island, and the character of the sward, consisting, as it does, of indigenous clover and a variety of the finer grasses, reminded me strongly of some portions of old England."

One great natural advantage offering to the tiller of the soil is the availability of several natural fertilisers, the more important of which is the "mussel mud" or "oyster mud" found in many bays and river mouths of the coast. The deposit is many feet thick and practically inexhaustible, and is considered by several well-known scientific authorities as a fertiliser of the highest practical value. This mud costs the farmer only about 5d. or 6d. a load, and is a source of great wealth to the island. Other fertilisers readily obtainable are furnished by the peat and marsh mud, seaweed, fish offal and limestone, which also exists in large quantities locally.



### AGRICULTURE.

Mixed farming is generally carried on, and of crops the chief grown are hay, oats, potatoes and wheat, but corn for fodder, numerous roots and a large variety of vegetables are also raised successfully. Years ago, when the efforts of the farmer were mainly directed to the growing of crops, or what is known as "extensive" farming, a large proportion, particularly of the potatoes and oats raised, was exported, but during the past decade a gradual and far-reaching transformation has taken place, and the greater attention given now to dairying and livestock raising has led to the almost general adoption of "intensive" methods. Considerable supplies of hay, potatoes and other crops, are still shipped away, and the development of the important mining district in Sydney, Nova Scotia, has provided an additional and profitable neighbouring market, but cheese, butter, beef, bacon and other finished products now form the leading articles sold, to the joint benefit of the farmer and also of the soil, which was being impoverished under the old system.

Possibly the chief factor in this progress has been the development of the dairy industry, which now forms a most important asset of wealth to the province, and in this, as in many other improvements, the farmers owe much to the assistance of both the Dominion and Provincial Departments of Agriculture. Co-operative dairying was first begun in 1891, when, under the supervision of the Dominion Dairy Commissioner, an experimental station was established for the manufacture of cheese. The success of this step resulted in the erection of a number of factories, all conducted upon co-operative principles, until at the present time there are cheese factories and also creameries in all the principal centres of the island, and the production of cheese of the highest quality has become one of its most important industries, while the manufacture of butter is also conducted upon a large scale. A number of factories make butter during the winter months and cheese in the summer.

Coincident with this movement, additional attention has been given to the question of stock-raising. Reference has already been made to the excellence of the natural pasturage available on the island, which has long been famous for its horses, the quality of

which is maintained by the constant importation of new blood. Good breeds of cattle, sheep and swine have also been introduced with favourable results; and cattle-raising and fattening is now carried on profitably by most of the farmers. Considerable supplies of dressed carcasses and also of beef, pork and bacon are shipped to neighbouring markets. Poultry-raising is also almost universal, and there is a very large production of eggs, many of which are exported.

Another branch which has recently shown great increases is fruit-growing, and although the industry is still largely in its infancy, conditions have been proved to be eminently suitable for the cultivation of a number of varieties of apples. Cherries and plums also flourish, and the province has long enjoyed a good reputation for strawberries, while large quantities of cranberries and blueberries grow wild and are a considerable source of profit. Indeed, for a self-contained and consequently conservative community there has been a welcome readiness to adopt modern scientific methods, in which connection the Experimental Farm at Charlottetown carries on invaluable work, and it has latterly become the custom for a considerable number of farmers' sons to follow a course at the Agricultural College at Truro, Nova Scotia, which is only a short distance away. All the same, it would be idle to deny that Prince Edward Island has stood still as regards population, while the epoch-making invasion of Western Canada by new settlers from all parts of the world has been going on. Indeed, the Province, in common with practically all Eastern Canada, has been considerably affected by the "lure of the West," and a number of its young men have migrated to the prairies to take up free Government land—often in preference to sharing farms in their own province—while others have been attracted by the more active conditions prevailing in the large cities and industrial centres on the continent, with the greater opportunities offering for personal advancement than are possible in a purely agricultural community.

For these natural reasons a certain number of improved farms come into the market from time to time, but, whereas the island could advantageously support a population twice as large as it now possesses, under existing conditions the only type of immigrants

which the Government makes special efforts to attract are persons owning sufficient capital to purchase and work improved farms, in which connection the possession of a minimum capital of from £500 to £1,000 is suggested. There are also favourable opportunities for experienced farm labourers, and, as elsewhere in Canada, an unfailing demand for female domestic servants.

For many years the provincial authorities took no special steps to attract immigrants, but a few years ago, in consequence of the circumstances alluded to, they despatched an expert delegate to the United Kingdom in order to place the advantages offering in Prince Edward Island before the class of settler desired. This delegate visited many of the principal agricultural districts of Great Britain, and, as a result of personal interviews with farmers, took out two parties consisting of farmers and farm labourers who, supplemented by others who went out independently, have settled in the island. Arrangements were in all cases made by the provincial authorities to receive the newcomers, and to afford them opportunities for inspecting such farms as were vacant. In most cases the farmers in due course took up farms, and, according to reports, were well pleased, and in some cases enthusiastic, over their new surroundings, and also their prospects. According to official returns compiled, the average size of the Prince Edward Island farm is about 90.74 acres, of which two-thirds consist of improved land. The total value of the field crops averages about £3,500,000 a year. Improved farms can be purchased for £5 to £10 an acre including house and buildings. There are about 32,000 horses, 120,000 cattle, 90,000 sheep, 49,000 pigs, and 800,000 poultry on the island.

What is comparatively a new industry in the whole of Canada has its centre in Prince Edward Island. This is fur farming. There are 3,300 fur farms in the Dominion, and of these over 400 are situated in this one island. On the majority of these curious little ranches foxes are the animals bred, but there are also mink, marten, skunk, racoon, beaver, muskrat, and karakul sheep being reared in captivity. The total number of animals on these farms is 63,000. The total value of the pelts and live animals sold averages about five million dollars a year.

## INDUSTRIES.

The second most important natural resource of the province is its rich fisheries, which find employment for the majority of labour not engaged in the pursuit of agriculture. The island, situated in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, lies in the midst of the most important deep sea fisheries of North America, and cod, haddock, ling, mackerel and herring are caught in large quantities off its shores. The fish, however, for which Prince Edward Island is most celebrated are its lobsters and oysters, the latter of which have for many years enjoyed an almost unique reputation, with the result that the demand has long outrun the available supply. Lobster-packing is carried on extensively also along the coast, and the gradual adoption of more scientific methods of culture and preservation, which are now receiving attention, will greatly add to the prosperity of the inhabitants. The yield of the provincial fisheries comes to more than £230,600 in the year, and lobsters provide nearly two-thirds of this total, while oysters come second. The Malpeque oyster of Prince Edward Island is famous for its delicacy. The salting and packing of fish, and still more the packing of lobsters in about 200 canneries, give employment to a large number of men on shore.

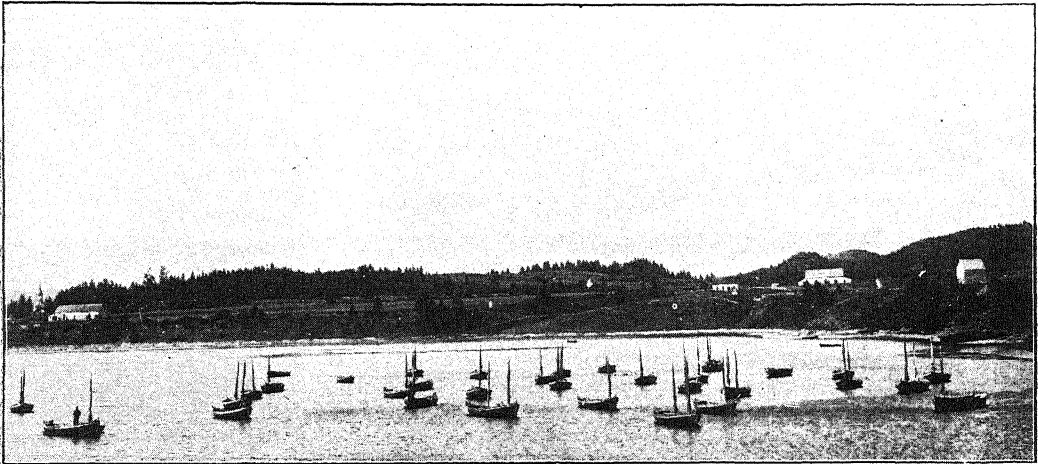
At present there are comparatively few important industrial establishments apart from those associated with dairying, and fish-curing and packing. Sawmills, furniture and carriage factories, and similar establishments devoted to the domestic requirements of the population, are found, however, in many places, and there is a large pork-packing plant at Charlottetown. A considerable amount of business, moreover, is carried out on the island, where there are several large merchant firms and a number of houses engaged in the export shipping trade. The total value of the manufactures averages about £900,000 a year.

## COMMUNICATIONS.

As regards means of transportation, the Prince Edward Island Railway, a branch of the Intercolonial line and operated by the Canadian Government, extends right across from east to west of the province, and also includes a number of branch lines which are being added to, and which bring various

points on the coast into connection with the main system. During the season of navigation, two regular lines of steamers maintain a daily connection with the mainland, one between Charlottetown and Pictou (Nova Scotia); the other between Summerside and Point du Chien (New Brunswick). Freight and passenger steamers also connect weekly with Montreal, Halifax, Newfoundland, Boston, and other points, and a number of small vessels carry on a coasting trade. In winter the situation is much less satisfactory, because, although special ice-breaking vessels maintain a fairly regular service, in certain seasons there are great natural difficulties to be contended with.

There is one other town of importance, Summerside, further west, with a population of about 3,000. Georgetown, on the east coast, is a quiet little town with about 800 inhabitants; and the numerous villages, though not large, are well supplied with stores. The island has become a favourite summer resort in recent years, as its splendid sand beaches and pretty scenery, combined with an equable climate, make it a most attractive spot for holiday-making. Nova Scotia and New Brunswick annually receive very large numbers of tourists and visitors from the United States, who come to obtain a welcome relief from the overpowering heat of many of their great cities, and also to



THE INSHORE FISHING FLEET OFF THE GASPÉ COAST, PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

### CHARLOTTETOWN.

There is just one *city* in the island—Charlottetown—named after George IV's daughter, whose early death left Princess Victoria heir to the throne. The city is well placed on a bay in the centre of the south shore, and combines the advantages of city life with the greater advantages of fresh air, fresh water, and general healthfulness. The old State Parliament House and other public buildings stand in a beautiful square; the streets of the city are wide. A considerable proportion of the 12,000 inhabitants are employed in industrial establishments, such as the gas and electric light works, boot, tobacco, and condensed milk factories, flour mills and machine shops.

participate in the excellent sport and amusements offered, and although some of these find their way to Prince Edward Island, the removal of past delays and inconveniences should result in a large increase in tourist traffic to the province.

### Province of Quebec

This is now the largest province in the Dominion of Canada, having a total area of 594,434 square miles, of which 571,004 are land and 23,430 water. It is bounded on the south by New Brunswick and the United States, on the west by Ontario, north by Hudson Straits, and on the east by Labrador and the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The province

includes the islands of Anticosti and Orleans, the Bird Islands, and the Magdalen Islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The boundary between Quebec and Ontario starts from Point au Baudet on the St. Lawrence, following the Ottawa River to Lake Temiscaming, and thereafter a due north line to Hudson Bay. From the Straits of Belle Isle (which separate Canada from Newfoundland), to Lake Temiscaming, is a distance of 1,350 miles. The River St. Lawrence flows towards the south of the province, there being only about 50,000 square miles of territory to the south of the river. Topographically there are three main divisions, namely (1) the Laurentian Plateau or Highlands, (2) the valley of the St. Lawrence, and (3) the mountainous Notre Dame country to the south.

(1) The Laurentian Highlands form a plateau elevated about 1,000 to 2,000 ft. above the sea, rising at the eastern extremity to altitudes approaching 6,000 ft. and falling towards the north to under 1,000 ft. above sea-level. This plateau is densely wooded, and contains numerous lakes of various sizes, from which issue the streams that in turn supply the giant rivers of the province.

(2) The valley of the St. Lawrence is that portion of the province lying to the west of the city of Quebec, and extending along the river. The land in this division is extremely fertile, and constitutes the portion first inhabited by settlers, being still the most thickly populated area in Canada.

(3) The Notre Dame Mountains form the northern extension of the Appalachian mountain system, which practically follows the course of the St. Lawrence River to the end of Gaspé peninsula. The major portion of this division is also densely wooded, but it contains the country known as the "Eastern Townships," which include excellent farming and pasture lands, and many beautiful lakes and rivers.

### HISTORY.

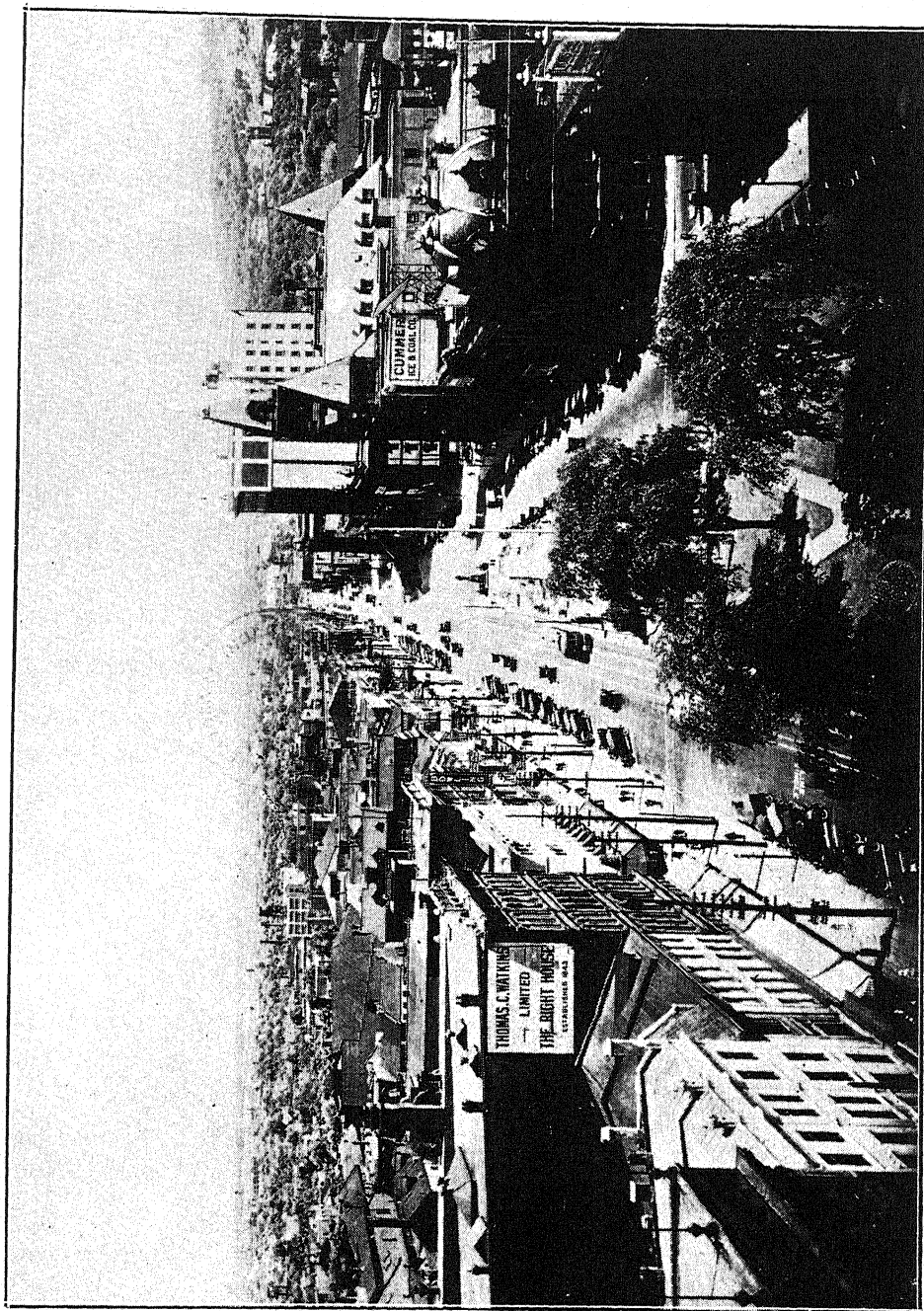
On 3rd July, 1608, Samuel de Champlain landed from his little ship, *The Gift of God*, and founded Quebec. The colony thus started was still very small when, in 1629, its garrison of ten men surrendered to an English fleet. King Charles I, having no notion of the value of the conquest, returned it to the

King of France, by whom it was held for another 130 years. The earliest colonists were principally farmers, who with great labour cleared the forests and made it an agricultural country; and the remainder were traders tempted to cross the Atlantic by the rich fur trade with the Indians. In 1642, about two hundred miles further up the river, was founded a second settlement, Ville Marie, which is now Montreal, the maritime and commercial metropolis of the Dominion.

The French Canadians had been so entirely deprived of their political rights, being ruled by officials sent out from France, and under a system of feudal seigneurs, that the subsequent change to British rule did not affect them much. Moreover, the British Government wisely guaranteed that their religious rights and civil laws should be preserved. Thus it came about that in the rebellion of the New England Colonies in 1775, the French Canadians joined hands with the British troops to repel the American invasion, while in 1812 the American army was again driven back by the efforts of British soldiers and French Canadians, who, also, supplied whole regiments of the Canadian army for service with the Allies in the Great War of 1914-18.

In 1840, a series of revolts ended in the granting of a form of self-government, and a Parliament was set up in Montreal to govern Upper and Lower Canada. Owing to certain difficulties between the English-speaking and French-speaking population, this one Parliament was not entirely a success, and in 1867 a division was made and separate Legislatures formed for Ontario and Quebec to deal with local matters, while a Federal Parliament was established to deal with affairs common to each, and also to Nova Scotia and New Brunswick; and so was born the great political federation known as the Dominion of Canada.

The government of the province is vested in a Lieutenant-Governor and a Legislative Council, consisting of twenty-four members appointed for life, and a Legislative Assembly of eighty-one members elected for five years to represent the same number of electoral districts in the Province, and sixty-five members in the House of Commons at Ottawa, and twenty-four members in the Senate. Either French or English may be used in addressing either "House" in the Provincial



HAMILTON, ONTARIO  
The Gore

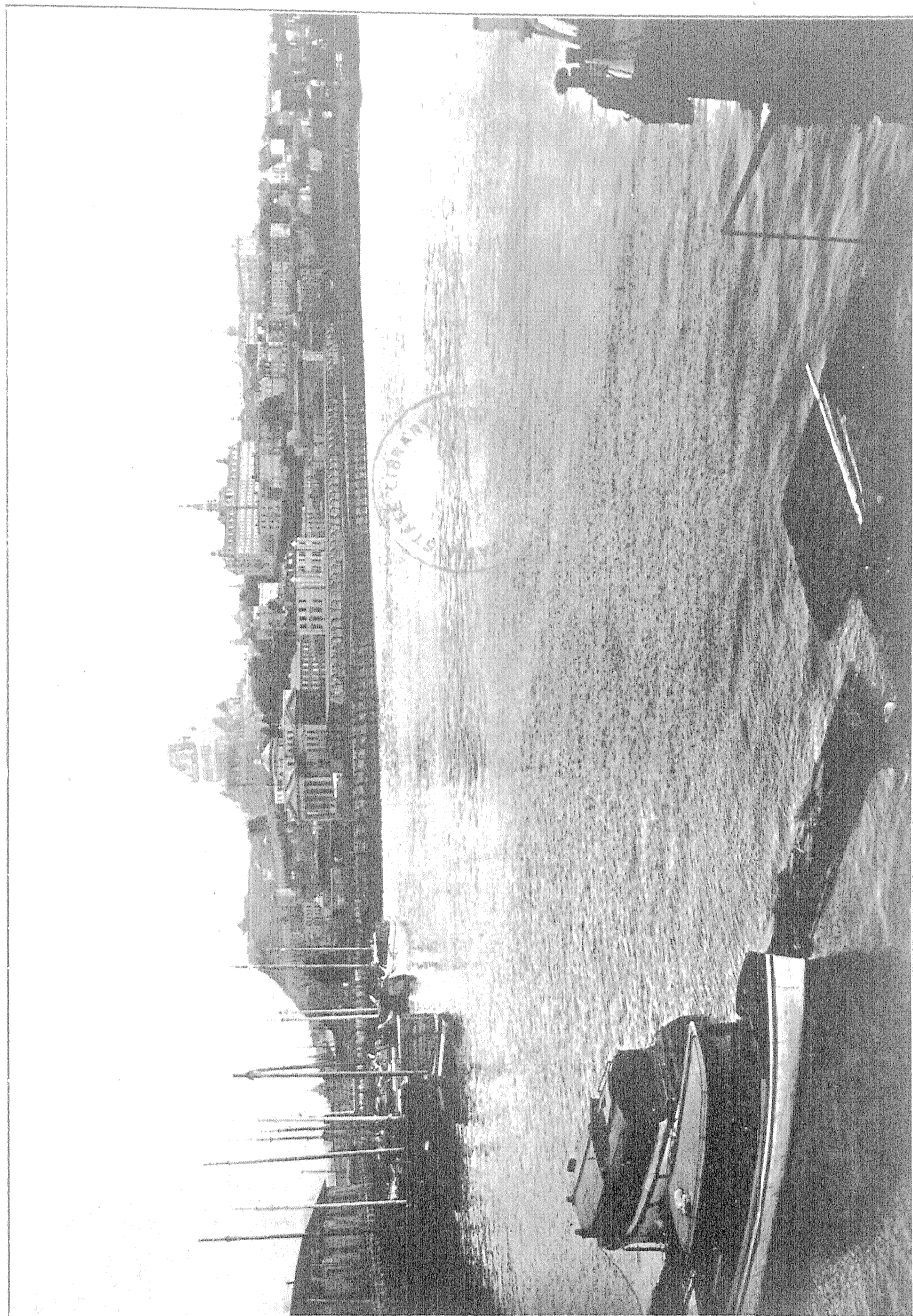
*Photo, Canadian Government*





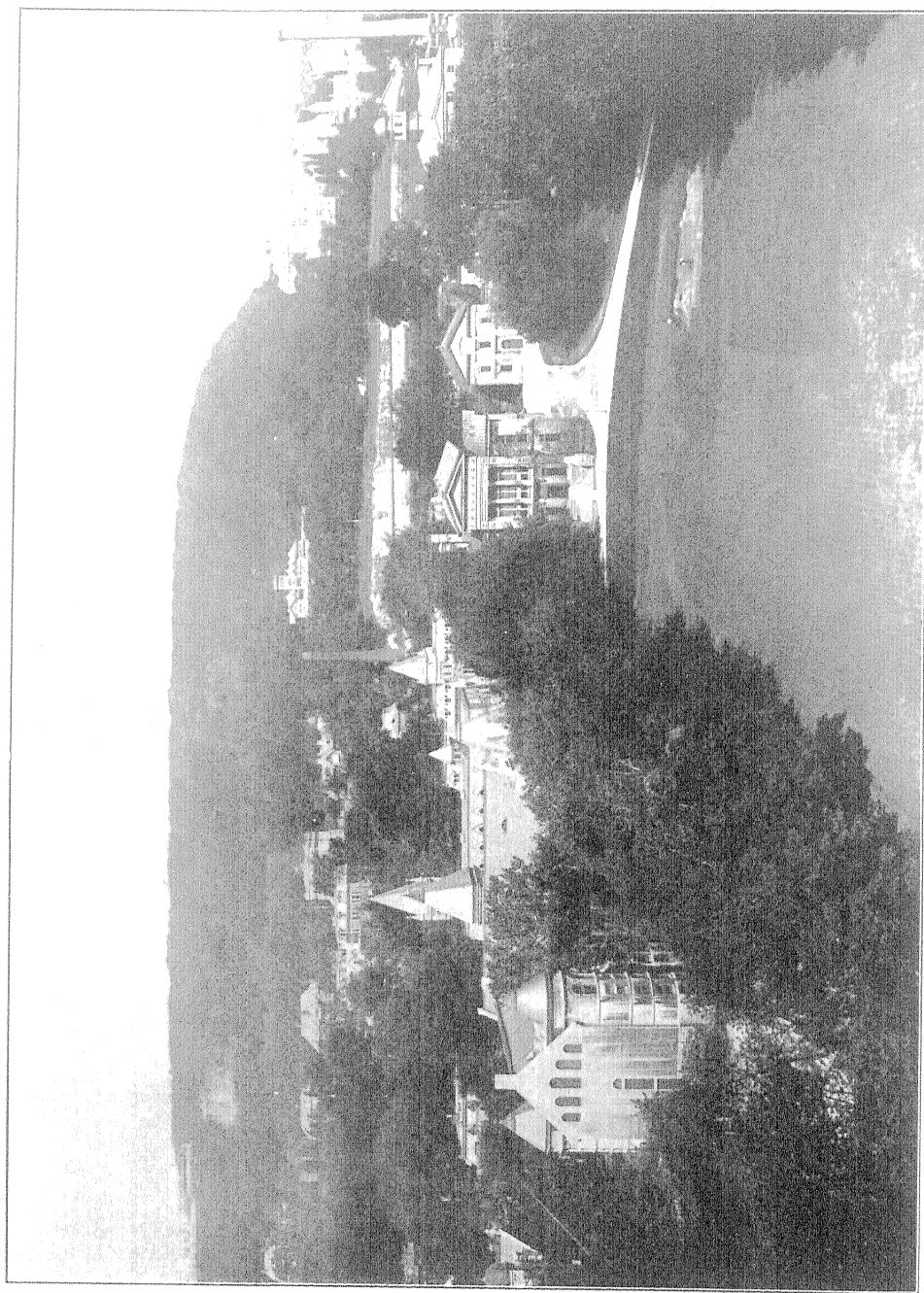
DOMINION HOUSE OF PARLIAMENT, OTTAWA

*Photo, C.P. Ry.*



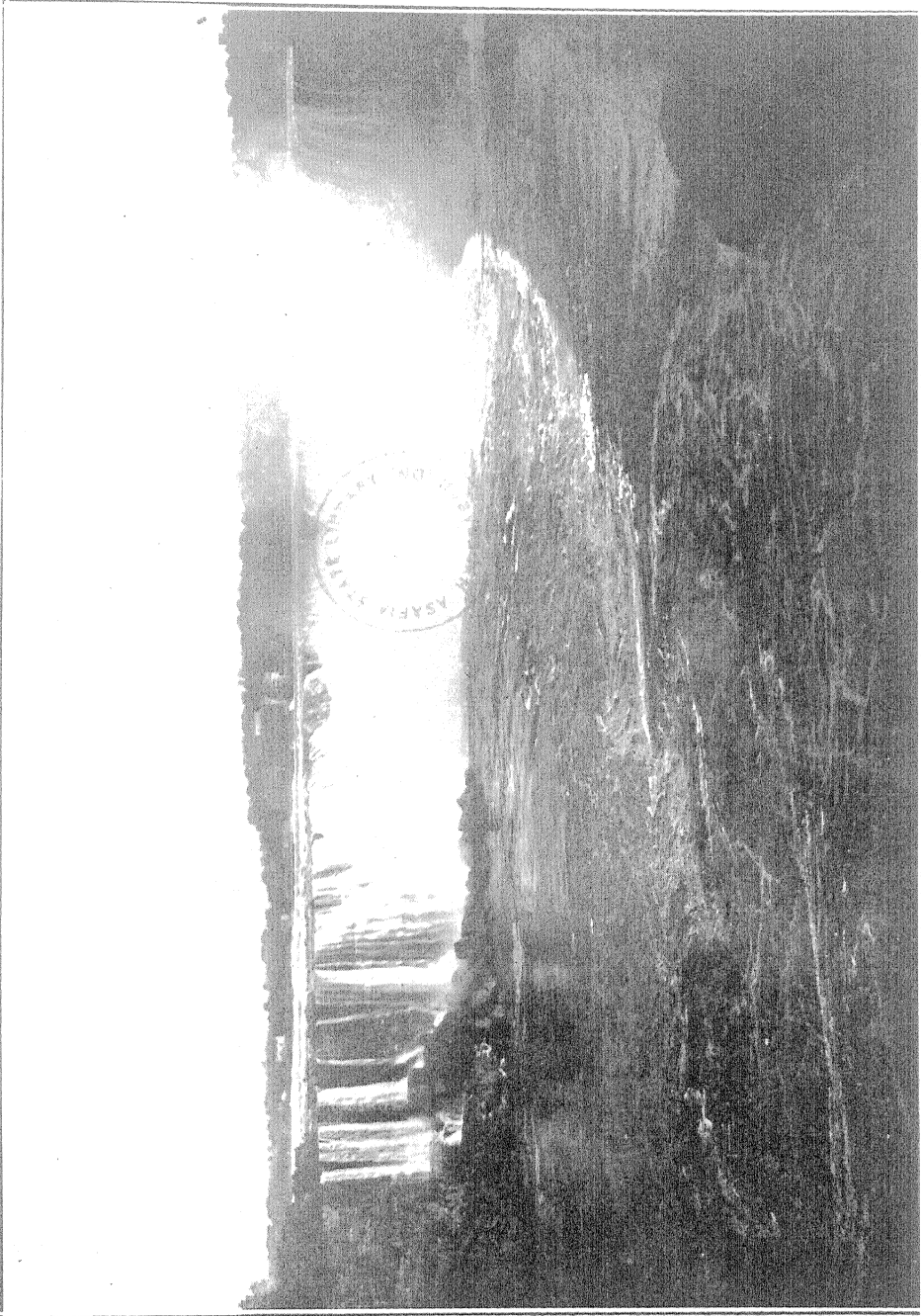
Photo, C. P. Riv.

THE HARBOUR, QUEBEC

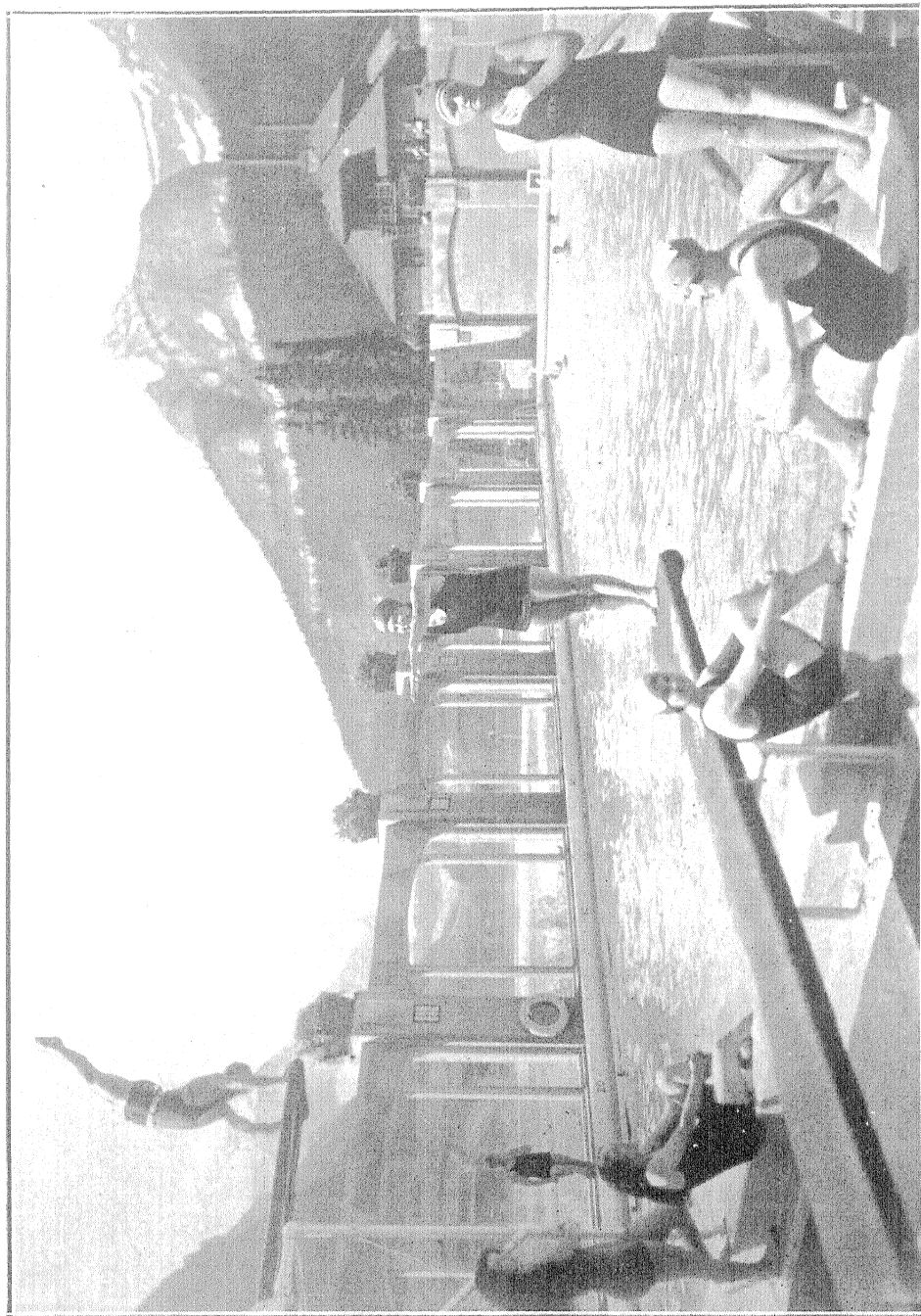


MCGILL UNIVERSITY MONTREAL

*Photo, C. P. Rely*



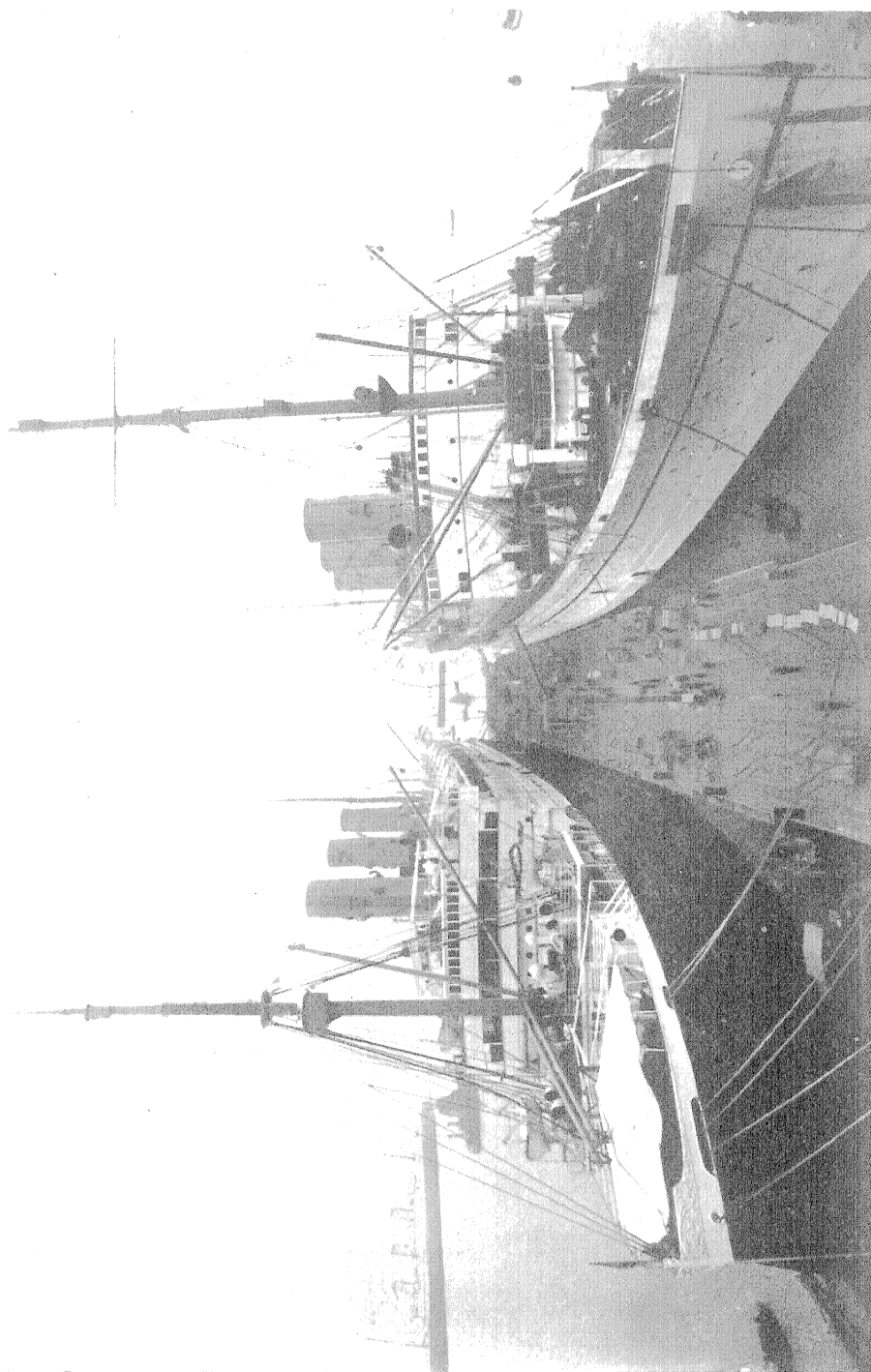
NIAGARA, ONTARIO  
A View of the World - famous Falls



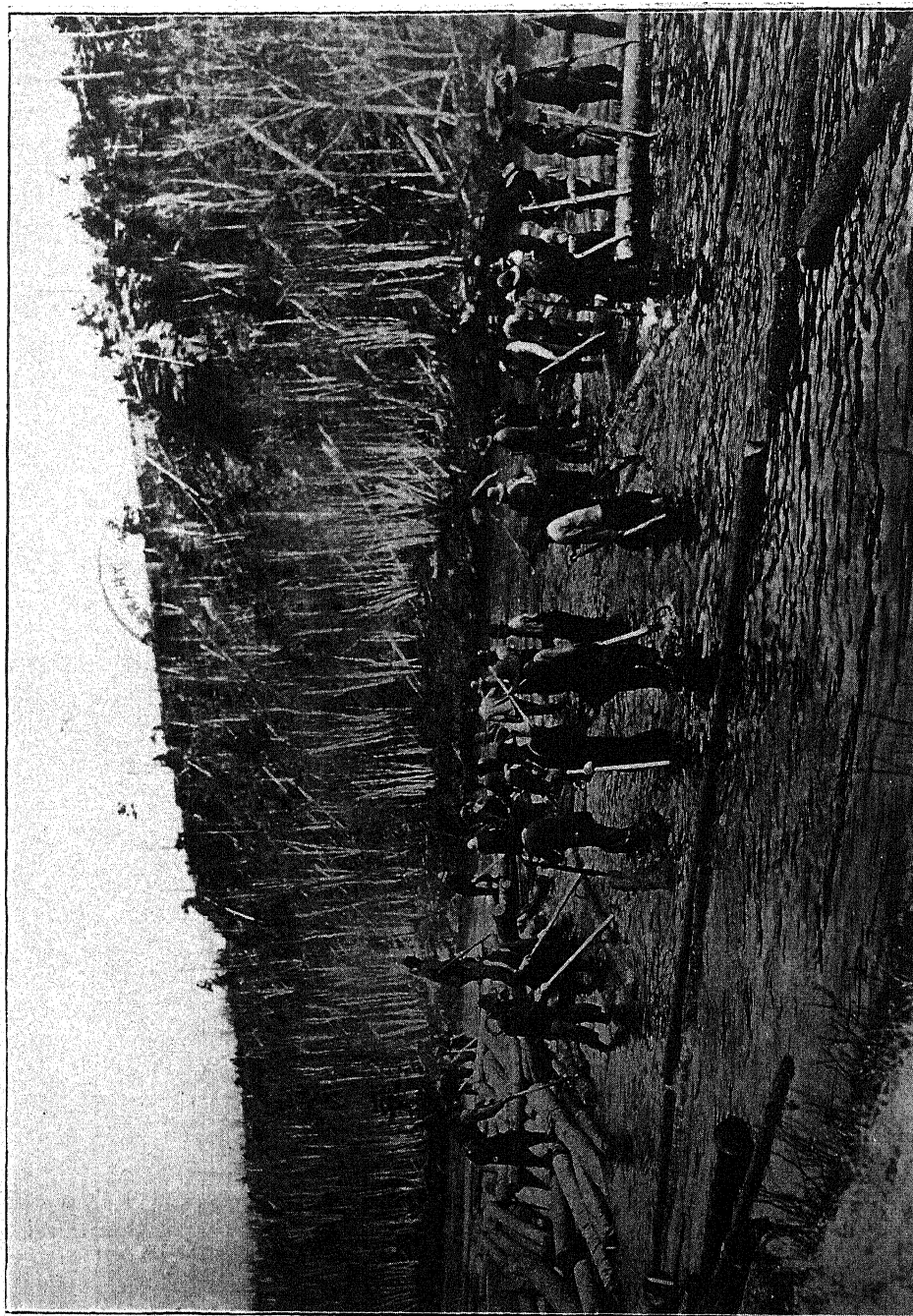
*Photo, Canadian Government*

SWIMMING POOL AND CHATEAU, LAKE LOUISE, ALBERTA  
(In Banff National Park)





Photo, courtesy Canadian Pacific Cruise Dept.  
CANADIAN PACIFIC LINERS "EMPRESS OF AUSTRALIA" AND "EMPRESS OF CANADA"  
AT VANCOUVER, B.C.



*Photo, C.P. Ry.*

LOGGING ON A CANADIAN RIVER

Parliament, and all Government reports are printed in both languages. The Municipalities have large powers of local government.

The population has been steadily increasing for many years. At the census of 1911 it stood at 2,003,232; by 1921 it had increased to 2,361,199, and in 1929 it reached about 2,690,400. The sexes are about equal in number, and there are over 2,000,000 of French nationality or descent compared with about 700,000 of English, Scottish or Irish parentage. The Roman Catholic religion has over 2,100,000 adherents, with the Church of England, Presbyterians, Methodists and Jews (37,000) in the order given. About 98 per cent. of the population are Canadian born, and over 80 per cent. of these are the French Canadians who, true to their ancestral instincts, remain close to the place of their birth. The census gives the number of persons per family throughout Quebec to be 5.5, the highest number in the Dominion, and while this is the average number the French-Canadians are so prolific that families of twelve and even eighteen are not uncommon. The English-speaking population is more or less confined to the towns, and of the original inhabitants ten thousand Indians remain, chiefly on the reserves.

### MINERALS.

The Laurentian plateau region covers a total area of about two million square miles surrounding the Hudson Bay in the shape of a horse shoe. Noted for timber, it is also important from a mineral standpoint, and contains the valuable deposits found towards the west in the vicinity of Lake Temiscaming.

No coal occurs in the Province of Quebec. The great intercalations of volcanic rocks, however, contain valuable mineral deposits, including gold, copper, asbestos, and chromic iron ore, together with serpentine marble, and roofing slates. The asbestos deposits are the most extensive and productive in the world. The "Potsdam" sandstone, occurring near the junction of the Ottawa and St. Lawrence Rivers, is largely used for building purposes. The average annual mineral production of this Province is valued at £7,500,000.

### INDUSTRIES.

One of the most important industries of this province is lumbering, and the forests

of Quebec form one of the most valuable assets of the Dominion. To the north are pine, spruce, and fir, while towards the south the maple, spruce, lime and poplar flourish, and are extensively used in the manufacture of wood pulp for paper. The Forestry Branch estimate that the area of commercial timber is over 130 million acres.

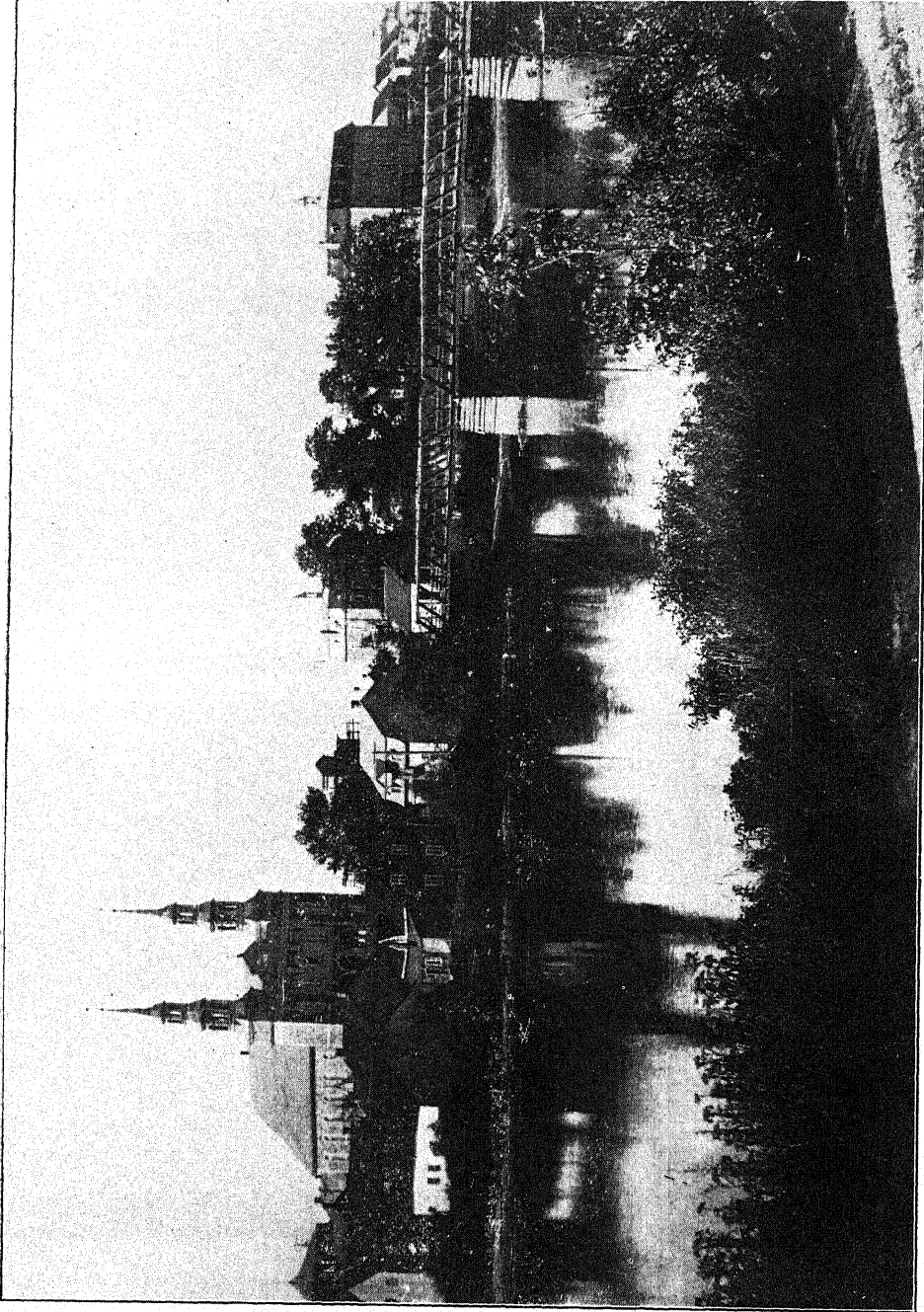
Out of the total forest reserves throughout the Dominion of 139,068,480 acres (already roughly surveyed) 111,400,320 are in Quebec. Licences to cut timber have already been issued covering an area of 45,000,000 acres. Great care is now taken to prevent forest fires owing to the rapidity with which the forests in the more accessible parts are being denuded. The wood pulp industry has assumed considerable importance. The value of the "newsprint" produced averages about £16,000,000 a year.

Agriculture is also an important industry of this province. Statistics show that from the three principal sources, hay, oats, and potato crops, there is an annual yield with a value of £45,000,000. Dairying is becoming increasingly important, the annual average value of the products being about £5,150,000. Cheese and butter from the Eastern Townships are renowned—and a typical farm is about 250 acres.

Tobacco is extensively grown by the French-Canadian farmer, and not only do cultivated fruits abound and prosper, but there is also an abundance of wild fruit of all descriptions. The district around Montreal is famed for its melons and "Fameuse" apples, and the Isle of Orleans, below Quebec, for its delicious plums.

The College of Agriculture, situated at Ste. Anne de Bellevue, and forming part of McGill University, was built by Sir William Macdonald at a cost of over £1,000,000, and presented by him to the University. It is supposed to be the finest agricultural college in the world.

There are about 10 million acres of arable land. The area subdivided for the purpose of settlement and remaining unsold is about 6,000,000 acres. Unimproved land can be purchased from the Government at from 20 to 60 cents. per acre, payable by five annual instalments. Improved land near the Eastern Townships sells at from £3 to £6 an acre, including house and farm buildings. Fur-farming is a developing



A TYPICAL FRENCH-CANADIAN TOWN  
St. Stanastas on the St. Lawrence River, Quebec

*Photo, Canadian National Rlys.*

industry, and by reason of the high price of fur the raising of mink, skunk, and muskrat are important, while the breeding of silver-black foxes has also been successful.

There are, approximately, 7,200 industrial establishments in the province, having a capital of £275,000,000, and employing 200,000 persons. The total annual average value of the manufactured products amounts to £198,000,000. The principal manufacturing centres are: Montreal (£100,000,000), Quebec, Three Rivers, Shawinigan, Sherbrook, Valleyfield and Hull. The total figures given above include the cut timber and the products of the pulp mills.

As far as can be ascertained from the data already collected, the water-powers of Quebec give an available minimum flow development of 13,673,120 horse-power, the development in operation being altogether about 300,153 horse-power, which is utilised in the production of electric energy, the working of pulp and paper mills, and for other industries. The chief falls where power is available are on the Rupert, Nottaway, and Eastmain Rivers, and those in the Abitibi and Lake St. John districts, together with the Shawinigan Falls in the vicinity of Three Rivers.

### TRANSPORTATION.

In the matter of transportation Quebec is very fortunate in having the benefit of the great River St. Lawrence. By this means ocean liners reach Quebec and Montreal, the

latter city being thus brought three hundred miles nearer to England than is New York. In 1923 there were completed and in operation 4,600 miles of steam and 250 miles of electric rail track, and express companies were operating over a mileage of 8,650. This has since been considerably increased, and the railway mileage of the Dominion in 1930 will be found elsewhere. Many of the tributaries of the St. Lawrence are navigable for many miles, affording the cheapest means of transportation for the produce of the land, facilitating easy logging and cheap carriage, and in many instances are potent power-producers.

Quebec and Montreal form the two provincial Canadian ports for Atlantic steamers in the summer months, and Quebec is the terminus of five main railway systems.

At Montreal a large percentage of the produce from the western and central provinces, as well as a quantity from the United States, is shipped to Europe and all parts of the earth. From Montreal the first series of canals commence, which connect the St. Lawrence with the Great Lakes in Central Canada, and which make a continual waterway from the head of the Lake Superior to the Atlantic Ocean.

### SCENERY AND SPORT.

The scenery all along the St. Lawrence River and its many tributaries is exceedingly fine. Thickly wooded on either side, with



ICE HOCKEY

*Photo, Canadian National Rlys.*



here and there a small fishing village or a Marconi station, it offers one of the most delightful sails imaginable. Nor are the beauties of nature confined to this waterway, for the inland lakes and streams, abounding with fish, have also much foliage and forests about them, wherein dwell the moose, caribou, grizzly bear and deer, which make the big game shooting among the best in the world.

The places where big game are usually plentiful are the districts surrounding Lake St. John, L'Islet, Rimouski, Bonaventure, Gaspé, Temmiscoata, and the St. Maurice district, as well as the north and west, near the lakes of Temiscaming and Abitibi. In the far north of the province the polar bear is to be met with, while at many places the interesting little beaver is to be found. Smaller game, such as duck and partridge are numerous, and the fishing waters are scattered throughout the province, favourite haunts being Lake St. John, Lake Edward, Lake Champlain, the Richelieu River, and Ste. Anne de Bellevue. The seasons are as follows :—

Salmon	-	2nd Feb. to 14th Aug.
Ouananiche	-	1st Dec. , 30th Sept.
Speckled Trout	-	1st May , 30th Sept.
Large Grey Trout	-	2nd Dec. , 14th Oct.
Pike and Perch	-	16th May , 14th April
Bass	-	16th June , 31st March
Maskinonge and Whitefish	-	15th June , 14th April

Among the valuable assets are the fisheries, giving an annual average yield equivalent to £600,000. The climate is variable. In winter it is generally cold with a clear bracing atmosphere, snow lying on the ground from the end of November to April, and affording good sleighing, tobogganing, ski-ing, skating and snow-shoeing. The summer is warm and pleasant, extreme heat reaching 90° Fahr. In winter the thermometer sometimes registers far below Zero, but the coldest days are usually the finest. The normal percentage of bright sunshine is 41 per cent. at Montreal and 39 per cent. at Quebec—a considerably higher average than that of Northern Europe.

### QUEBEC.

Quebec, the "Rock City," is the Gibraltar of North America. Situated on the north bank of the St. Lawrence River, at its

junction with the St. Charles, about 300 miles from the Gulf of St. Lawrence and 180 miles north-east of Montreal, in 71° 12' 19.5" W., and 46° 48' 17.3" N., it is the seat of the Provincial Government.

Founded by Samuel de Champlain in 1608, it has guarded the River St. Lawrence for over four centuries, and contains not only the manifold improvements of the present day, but also many of the aspects of a former age. Among the principal features forming the attractions of the city are the Citadel, the Dufferin Terrace, the Grand Battery, the Laval University, the Holy Trinity Cathedral, the Notre Dame des Victoires, the Hospital, the Basilica, and the Haute Ville.

On the spot where once stood the Old Fort St. Louis now stands the majestic "Château Frontenac" Hotel, replete in every modern requirement. The Parliament Buildings are most impressive, and contain the two Houses of the Provincial Legislature and all the different departments in connection with the Civil Service. The buildings are in the form of a complete square, having each side 300 feet long, and they were erected at a cost of £420,000. The bronzes of prominent soldiers and statesmen are particularly fine.

The origin of the name of "Quebec" is somewhat obscure, but apparently it is derived from the Algonquin word for "a strait or narrowing," which is found in the river at this point. The winding roads are cut out of the solid rock, with flights of steps, leading from the lower to the upper part of the town, and except for a few instances, follow the original plan. The highest point, Cape Diamond, rises to 350 ft. above the river, and is crowned with the "citadel," which, with the city walls, was erected in 1823-1832 under the direction of the "Iron Duke" of Wellington. Thus it claims the distinction of being the only walled city of North America.

The harbour is spacious, and capable of holding the largest ocean-going liners. Most of the better-class dwelling-houses, public buildings and churches are situated in the upper part of the city. To the west are the suburbs of St. John and St. Roch, while further to the south-west stretch the historic "Plains of Abraham." A monument marks the spot where General Wolfe fell on 13th

September, 1759, in his hour of victory. He lived to hear the cry, "They run, they run," and expired with the words, "Now God be praised; I will die in peace." The picturesque old gates have been replaced by arches in keeping with the walls, but the Martello towers still stand overlooking the Plains of Abraham.

Quebec has nine parish churches belonging to the Roman Catholics, four others in charge of chaplains, and thirteen chapels attached to religious communities. There is also an

It is of plain granite, and the only instance on the continent of a monument erected to the memory of rival generals—victor and vanquished.

Laval University, deriving its name from François de Montmorency Laval, first Bishop of Quebec and founder of the Seminary in 1663 for training priests, is under Roman Catholic control. It received a royal charter of institution from Queen Victoria in 1852, and a charter from Pope Pius IX in 1876. Some of the paintings in the University are

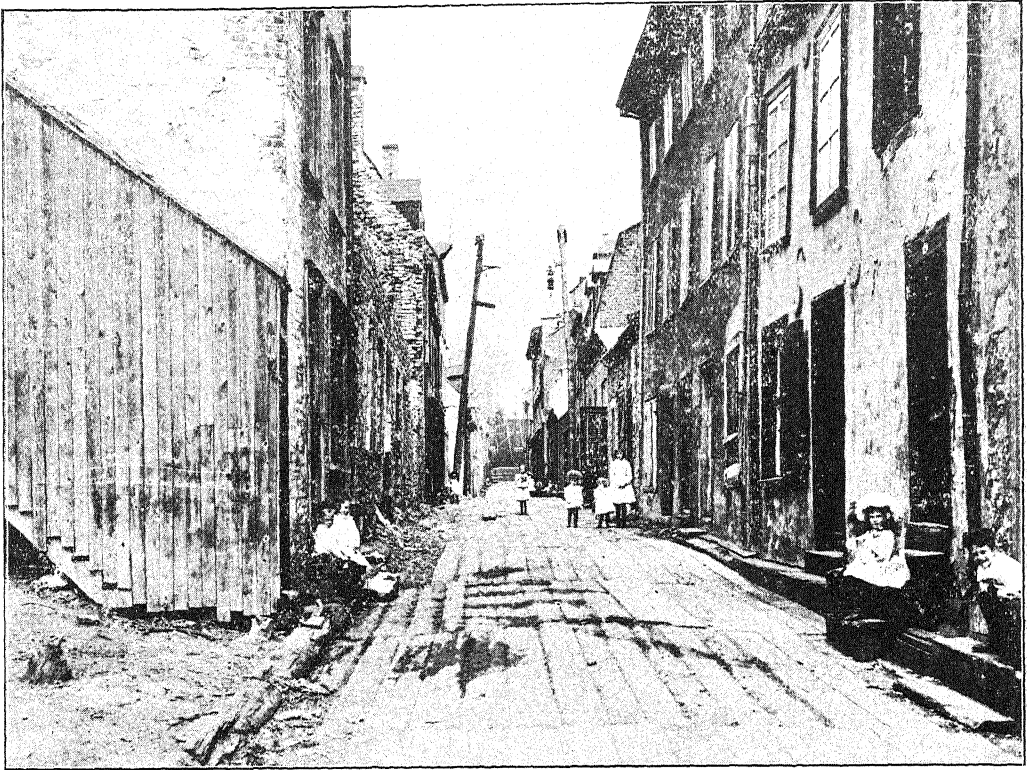


WINTER SPORT IN THE QUEBEC PROVINCE *Photo, Canadian Northern Rlys.*

English cathedral and six churches, and Presbyterians, Methodists, Baptists, and Jews have each their places of worship. The first parish church, Notre Dame de la Recouvrance, was erected in 1633, but destroyed by fire in 1640. In the Governor's garden, overlooking the river, stands the monument erected to the memory of Wolfe and Montcalm, and bearing on the base this inscription—

MORTEM VIRTUS COMMUNEM  
FAMAM HISTORIA  
MONUMENTUM POSTERITAS  
DEDIT.

among the most valuable in Canada, and there are faculties of theology, law, medicine, and arts; a library of 150,000 volumes, picture gallery and museum. There are monuments to the brave French who fell in trying to recapture Quebec in 1760, side by side with those in memory of the English, constituting probably the most eloquent testimony of the present harmony which exists between the two races, who, though they preserve their own laws, habits, religion and language, maintain the most cordial relations. The population is just over 100,000.



SOUS LE CAP STREET, LOWER TOWN, QUEBEC

*Photo, Grand Trunk Rly.*

### MONTREAL.

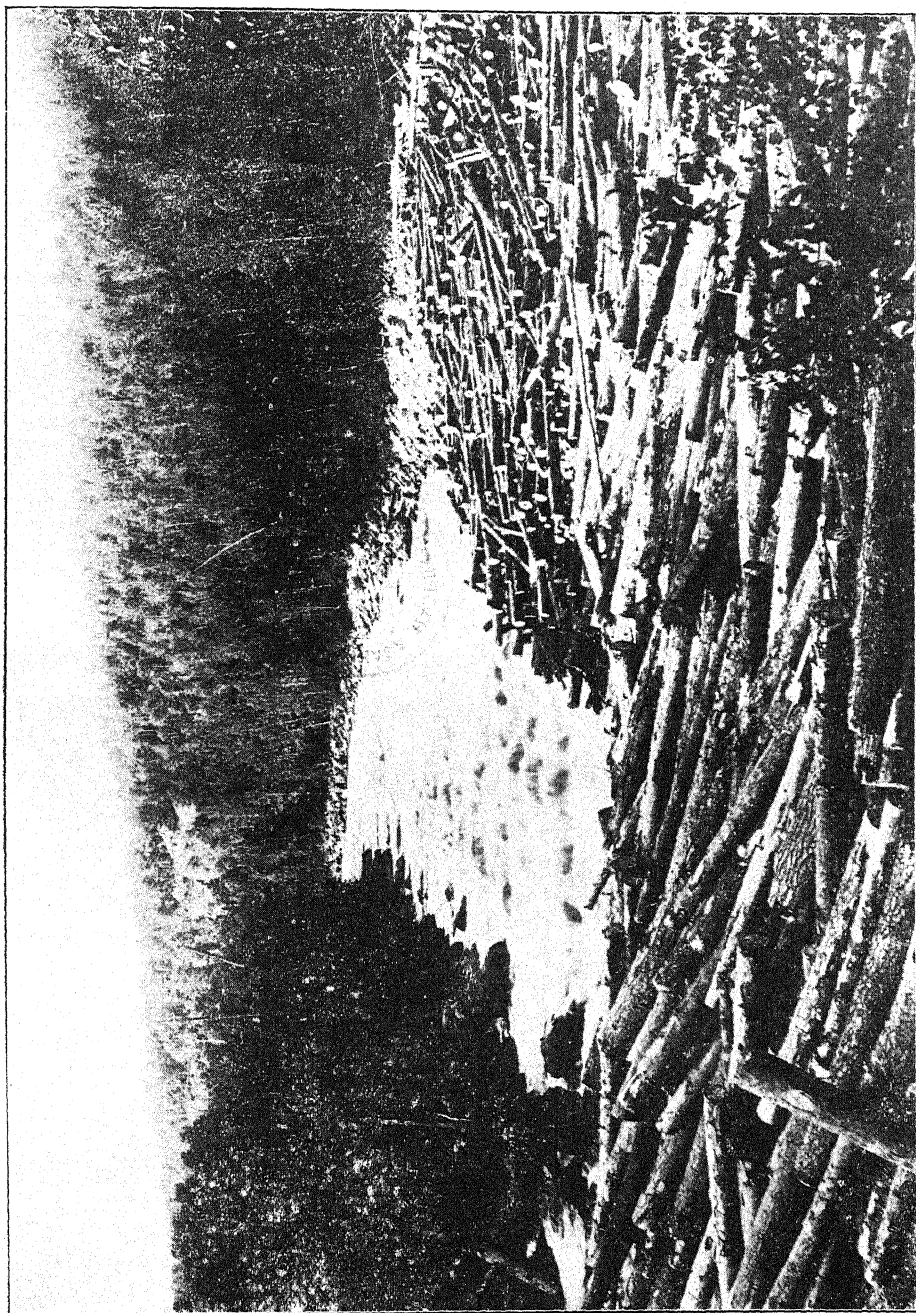
Although Montreal is the largest city in Canada, and the commercial metropolis of the country, it holds no special civic position, not even that of Provincial Capital. Its recompense, however, lies in its great maritime, industrial and commercial activity. It has a population, including suburbs, of about 700,000, and its property is assessed at just over 700,000,000 dollars.

Montreal is the summer terminus of nearly all the transatlantic liners, and is also connected with the wonderful system of inland waterways afforded by the St. Lawrence River, its many tributaries, and the Great Lakes. There are seven miles of deep-water quays and anchorages. The shipping using this great port each year has an average tonnage of 4,200,000 (entered and cleared). The volume of trade is valued at £150,000,000 per annum.

Montreal stands on the south side of an island at the head of ocean navigation and the beginning of inland water transport on the St. Lawrence River. In addition to being one of the largest and busiest cities on the American continent, it is also one of the oldest. When Jacques Cartier, one bright October morning in the year 1535, first visited the site on which the city stands, he found it occupied by an Indian encampment.

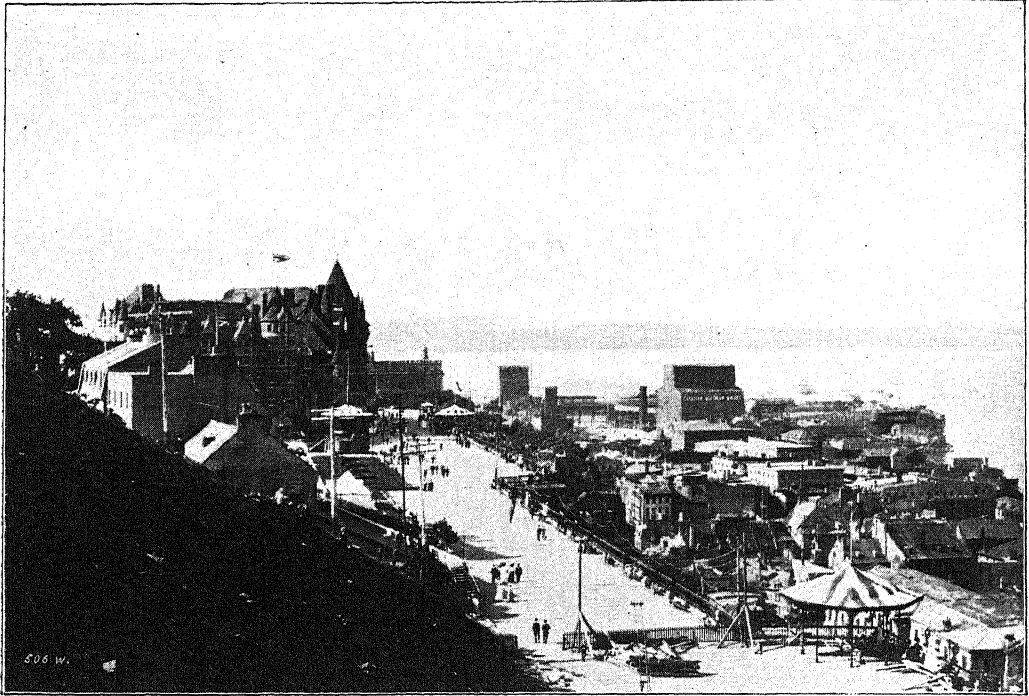
"It held some fifty lodges, three ringed with pointed palisades, its one port piked and guarded to shut out other savages." Five years later Cartier again visited the island, but it was the landing of Samuel de Champlain, in 1611, which marked the real beginning of Montreal.

The shrewd Champlain was quick to recognise in the Royal Island the gateway to the wilderness beyond. Travel in those



A LOG JAM ON A QUEBEC RIVER

Photo, C. P. Kelly



DUFFERIN TERRACE, QUEBEC, FROM THE CITADEL

*Photo, C. P. Rly.*

days was almost entirely by canoe, and here, at the confluence of the Ottawa with the St. Lawrence, he could intercept the trappers as they dropped down stream, and carry on a valuable trade with them.

An incident in the conquest of the Iroquois country which surrounded the early settlement will serve to show the difficulties and dangers which beset the pioneers.

"In 1661 Governor Maisonneuve, having learned that the Iroquois contemplated a concerted attack for the purpose of wiping out the white settlement, organised a military fraternity known as 'Soldiers of the Holy Family of Jesus, Mary and Joseph,' who were charged with the defence of the island. Adam Dollard, a young French officer, eager for an opportunity to distinguish himself and make his people forget a certain scandal he had left as a legacy, took sixteen equally adventurous companions and stationed his little company in an abandoned fort on the banks of the Ottawa, down which the enemy was expected to descend to the slaughter.

"The first canoe party was surprised and slain by the seventeen soldiers in the frail fort. Then came an avalanche of Indians, the whole fighting force of the Iroquois. Panting for revenge and thirsting for the blood of the pale-face foe, they fought furiously, but the besieged soldiers, seeing only death in the end, fought as doggedly, defending the fort against the entire army of Indians.

"Fighting, the loss of blood, the smell of powder, together with the consuming excitement of the slaughter, makes men thirsty, and soon the defenders found themselves face to face with famine.

"Now the Iroquois sent couriers to the Mohawks at the mouth of the Richelieu River, and these came down half a thousand strong. Some forty or fifty friendly Indians who had entered the palisades with Dollard deserted him now. And still the French fought on, singing and praying and crossing themselves, against odds of fifty to one.



"The end was hastened by the premature explosion of a bomb, built by the defenders to be hurled in the face of the foe who were now rushing the fort. The confusion that followed enabled the enemy to enter, when one after another the soldiers were silenced, only four or five being saved for the fiendish festivities that always followed a fight.

"And so they died, Dollard and his companions, but they saved the settlement, for the Iroquois were not over anxious to engage a colony, a handful of whom had slain hundreds of their best and bravest warriors."

Slowly the settlement grew until its capture by the British. Since that lucky day when the French Governor laid down his arms to an English Admiral, the small wooden hamlet has been converted into one of the world's greatest cities and ports. From an Indian encampment of fifty lodges, in 1535, it has grown, in the centuries which have elapsed, into a city of over 700,000 inhabitants.

Among the old houses of history, perhaps the most interesting is the famous Chateau de Ramezay, erected in 1705 by Claude de Ramezay, Governor of Montreal. It was afterwards known as Government House, and was occupied by the American general, Montgomery, during the time he held the city. Here, too, the American Congressional Commission composed of Franklin, Chase and Carroll, sat many days and nights trying to persuade the Canadians to join the thirteen States in the rebellion against King George. The ancient redoubts are there, and much of the old furnishings and many relics of other days.

The more modern buildings are far too numerous to give in detail here. There are in Montreal many fine business thoroughfares, residential boulevards, and picturesque, well-kept parks, chief among these being Mount Royal, which rises to a height of nearly a thousand feet, and affords magnificent views over the city and surrounding



DOMINION SQUARE, MONTREAL

*Photo. C. F. Riv.*

country. During the bright, frosty days of the Canadian winter, Mount Royal is the scene of winter sports. Here it should be stated that the advent of the snows and the clear, sharp days which follow, far from being dreaded, are eagerly awaited by all who are active in the Great Dominion.

### NEW QUEBEC.

New Quebec, or the peninsula of Ungava, extends, roughly, north of the 52nd degree of north latitude to Hudson Strait and Ungava Bay. It comprises an estimated area of about 290,000 square miles. The boundary between the territory under the jurisdiction of Newfoundland, called the "Coast of Labrador," and the province of Quebec was defined by decision of the judicial Committee of the Privy Council on March 1st, 1927.

The surface of New Quebec is rough and rocky in places. The highest portion is near the eastern part where hills rise to a height of 6,000 feet. In the interior, elevations are over 2,000 feet, but along the Hudson Bay coast the surface is only a few hundred feet above sea-level. Large rivers flow north and west, and the interior abounds with lakes which are connected by rivers and streams, so that it is possible to travel by canoe almost anywhere with a few portages. The size of the lakes varies from 50 to 500 square miles.

### AGRICULTURE.

It is thought that the only part of this territory having any agricultural value is the low-lying region to the east and south-east of James Bay. The temperate climate may be taken to extend to Cape Jones, and to be limited to the shores of James Bay.

The whole interior of Ungava is a high plateau rising, within a few miles of the Atlantic coast line, to heights between 1,500 and 2,500 feet. The general level of the interior plateau near the central watershed, varies from 1,600 to 1,800 feet. Even if the altitude and climate permitted agriculture, the soil on this plateau is thin and poor. The soil at Mistassini, which is 1,200 feet above sea level, and where there is a Hudson's Bay Company post, is reported to be boulder clay. A crop of potatoes is raised annually, but, owing to the shortness of the season

and the prevalence of summer frosts, they rarely mature without the tops being frozen.

Along James Bay, south of Cape Jones, the low land extends inland from 10 to 30 miles. The general level is not much over 100 feet above sea-level. Here the soil is of clay and sand with alluvium affording good land for cultivation. At Fort George, near the mouth of Fort George River, crops of potatoes and other roots are grown annually and cattle are kept. At the mouth of the Eastmain River the Hudson's Bay Company maintained a small trading post where abundant crops of wild hay were harvested yearly and sheep and cattle were kept. At Rupert House, on the southern shore of James Bay, root crops are grown annually, and oats have been successfully raised.

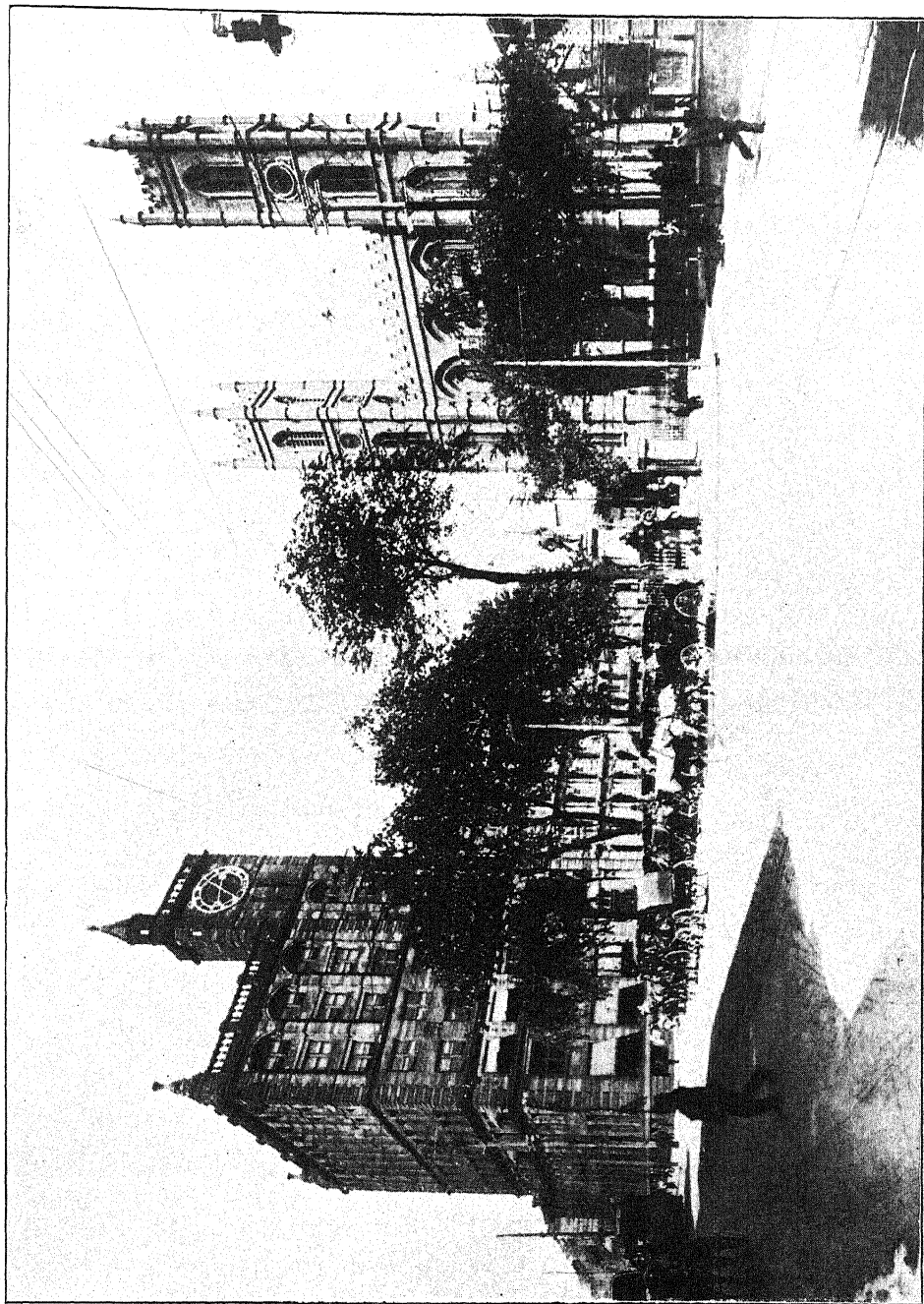
According to Dr. A. P. Low's report, the large area of country situated to the south and south-east of James Bay is covered by good clay soil capped with sandy loam. With proper drainage this portion of Ungava would make excellent farm land.

### CLIMATE.

The climate ranges from cold temperate, on the southern coasts, to arctic on Hudson Strait and the high lands of the northern interior, and is generally so rigorous that it is very doubtful if the country will ever be fit for agriculture north of latitude 51 degrees, except on the lowlands near the coast of James Bay. The highlands of the interior have only two seasons, winter and summer, the abrupt changes occurring during the first two weeks of June and September. The temperature during the winter season is often very low on the interior high lands. At the North-west River post on Lake Melville, where the temperature is moderated by the open sea, the average minimum winter temperature is 45 degrees below zero, Fah. In the interior the summer temperature rarely rises above 80 degrees.

### TIMBER.

The forests of Ungava are continuous in natural growth over the southern part to between latitudes 52 degrees and 54 degrees, the only exception being the summits of rocky hills. To the northward of latitude 53 degrees, the higher hills are treeless and the size and number of the barren areas rapidly increase. In latitude 55 degrees,



PLACE D'ARMES, MONTREAL.

*Photo, C. P. Ry.*

more than half the surface of the country is treeless, woods being found only about the margins of small lakes and the river valleys, and the trees also decrease in size.

Owing to the great destruction by forest fires, it is estimated that not more than one-sixth of this territory, known as the sub-arctic zone, has merchantable timber on it.

Along the Nottaway River region, where the rainfall is abundant, the forest fires have not been so destructive. White spruce is perhaps the most valuable tree of the district. It grows to large size along the rivers and lakes. A considerable portion of the trees growing inland also attain good size. The black spruce grows more plentifully and a large proportion is of sufficient size for various useful purposes, such as fuel, buildings, railway ties, and pulpwood. Balsam fir grows abundantly throughout the region. White or canoe birch is plentiful in places. These extensive forests if preserved from fire will constitute a valuable reserve for future needs.

### MINERALS.

Little prospecting has been done in New Quebec, and the mineral resources are scarcely known. Iron ore appears to be the commonest, and is distributed over large areas, being found along the east shore of Hudson Bay and on the banks of the Eastmain River. A band running parallel to the coast and 200 miles inland, along the Kaniapiskau River, is also known to contain large deposits of iron, but the intervening country has never been prospected.

Rocks resembling the Sudbury or Timiskaming series cover large areas. The lack of soil and forest cover in many places should make prospecting comparatively easy, but the difficulties of transportation and labour are too great for present development. So far as can be seen the rock conditions in Ungava are similar to those which have caused the economic deposits of the Grenville, Timiskaming, Huronian, Animikie, and Keweenaw series of Ontario and Southern Quebec, deposits which have placed these areas among the greatest mining regions of the world.

Analysis of a large number of surface samples of the hematite-magnetite ores of the Nastapoka Islands show an iron content, for the better grades, of 30 to 40 per cent.

All the beds may not be equally rich, but the greater part of them on all the islands appear to be sufficiently so to constitute a valuable ore for the manufacture of spiegeleisen. The great abundance of the ore is a prime feature, the ironstone beds being spread over the greater area of the islands. The islands being destitute of timber and the rocks much shattered by frost and weather, the ore may be gathered in inexhaustible quantities. The high percentage of manganese (3.5 per cent.) in these ores, renders them valuable for the manufacture of spiegeleisen.

Specimens of ore from the Koksoak River show from 19 to 54 per cent. of metallic iron and contain no titanitic acid. To the south of Swampy Bay River, exposures of iron-bearing rocks are almost continuous, and the amount of ore in sight must be reckoned by hundreds of millions of tons. The ore is not everywhere high grade, and probably a large proportion of it would be unprofitable to work, but there is certainly an almost inexhaustible supply of high-grade ores.

### FISHERIES OF HUDSON BAY.

In course of time it may be found that the fisheries of Hudson Bay will prove to be its greatest natural resource. There is every reason to hope that, with railway communication established to the shores of James Bay, a fishing industry may be developed equal to that of Labrador and the banks of Newfoundland.

Sea-run brook trout, whitefish superior in flavour to those taken in Lake Superior, weighing from 1 to 6 pounds, are found abundantly along the entire coast to Cape Wolstenholme.

Arctic trout or Hearne salmon are found along the northern coast as far south as Seal River. This is a beautiful fish with well-flavoured, dark pink flesh, and it varies in weight from 1 to 15 pounds, the average being about 5 pounds. These fish are salted at Chimo, on Ungava Bay, and fetch nearly the same price in London as salted salmon from the same locality. They are plentiful about the mouths of the northern rivers and along the coast, and the Eskimos report them abundant at the Belcher and other islands lying off the west coast.

It was not definitely known that cod existed in Hudson and James Bays, until Dr. Low reported in 1900 that cod were

taken at Cape Smith and near Fort George in James Bay by members of the expedition. The Eskimos catch them in Nastapoka Sound and at the Belcher Islands.

Fish of various kinds and of large size are caught in the lakes of New Quebec. The Great Lake trout is very plentiful in all the larger lakes, and weighs from 8 to 25 pounds. Brook trout are common in all the streams, and whitefish weighing 3 to 4 pounds, pike, pickerel, and chub are found in all the lakes. The Atlantic salmon is abundant in the rivers flowing into Ungava Bay.

### FURS.

Foxes are the most numerous of the furbearing animals in New Quebec. In order as to quantity they may be rated white, red, cross, black (silver) and blue. Next to foxes, marten are the most numerous. It is one of the most abundant and valuable furbearing animals in Ungava. Its northern range is practically limited to the southern boundary of the semi-barrens, and it is found only in the wooded stretches of the river valleys north of this line. The otter is common throughout the wooded region, and ranges northward into the barren grounds. Beaver is not found north of the thickly wooded area. On the Hudson Bay coast it is rare north of Fort George River. Beaver are plentiful on the lower Eastmain River. Mink are common in the Lake Mistassini region, and ermine are found everywhere throughout the wooded regions. Other furbearing animals include lynx, fisher, bear and wolverine.

### WATER-POWERS.

The interior of Ungava is a huge plateau which rises somewhat abruptly within a few miles of the coast line to heights of 500 to 6,000 feet. The various streams accordingly afford numerous water-powers. On Great Whale River, for instance, within twenty miles of the mouth, there are three falls 150 feet, 230 feet, and 65 feet respectively. The extensive water-powers of New Quebec constitute a great reserve for future development.

## The Province of Ontario

Ontario is the second largest province in Canada, having an area of 407,262 square

miles, of which 49,300 square miles is water. It is bounded on the north by the Hudson Bay, on the east by the Province of Quebec and the Ottawa River, on the south by the St. Lawrence River, the Great Lakes Ontario, Erie, Huron and Superior, and the Rainy River, and upon the west by the Province of Manitoba. The population numbers 3,271,300.

### HISTORY.

The settlement dates back to the year 1773, when hundreds of United Empire Loyalists, unwilling to live under any but British rule, left the New England States and migrated to the land lying to the north of the St. Lawrence River, after the close of the War of the Rebellion, when the New England Colonies seceded. Lakes Ontario and Nipissing were visited by Champlain, the French explorer, as early as 1615, while traders explored Lake Superior in 1660. In 1671 Perrot took possession of the district around Lake Huron, and eight years after La Salle founded Niagara and explored the waterways to Lake Michigan. Exactly 100 years later the fort at Toronto was built.

Once forming part of the Province of Quebec, it was ceded to the British with that region by the French, and was at that time, and until 1791, called "Upper Canada," when it was formed into a separate province. At Newark (now Niagara), the first Parliament was held, on the 17th November, 1792, but political dissensions were rife, and continuing with increased bitterness from 1820 to 1837, culminated in a rebellion. In 1867 it was made the chief Province of the Dominion under the name of Ontario. The Government is vested in a Lieutenant-Governor and a Legislative Assembly of 106 members, elected for four years (no property qualification being necessary), representing 102 electoral districts into which the Province is divided. The Executive Council consists of eleven members, eight of whom act as the Ministry of the Province, and three are without portfolio. The Legislature meets every year at Toronto. Ontario is represented in the Dominion Government by 82 members in the House of Commons and 24 in the Senate.

### MINING.

Geologically, Ontario may be said to come almost entirely within the great Laurentian

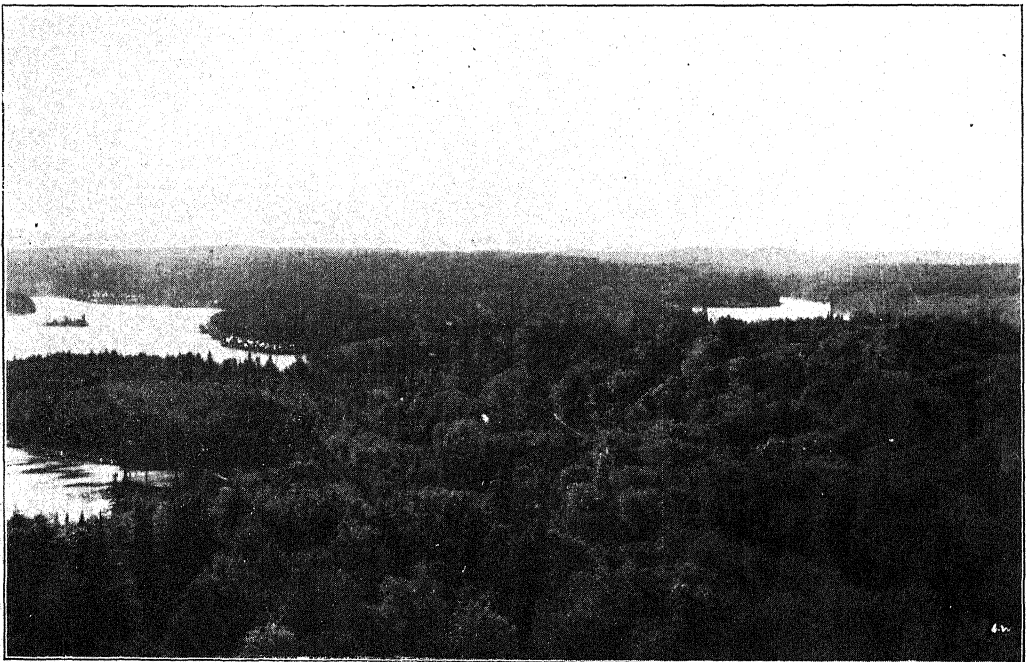


Plateau that covers all the eastern half of Canada and encloses the Hudson Bay like a huge "V." These rocks are of the pre-Cambrian formation, and remarkable for the variety of useful and valuable minerals they possess—iron, copper, nickel, cobalt, silver, gold, platinum, lead, zinc, arsenic, pyrite, mica, graphite, feldspar, quartz, corundum, talc, actinolite, the rare earths, ornamental stones, gems, and building materials, are all to be found therein, and many are being most profitably worked.

Towards the north-east are found the veins of valuable minerals which have made the Cobalt, Sudbury and Porcupine Districts famous throughout the world. The average annual value of the mineral production is, approximately, £20,000,000. The output of metallic minerals constitutes about two-thirds of the total production. Gold comes first with an average value of £6,000,000, then nickel, £3,000,000, silver, £1,000,000, and copper £980,000. Ontario is the principal mineral producing province of the Dominion.

### AGRICULTURE.

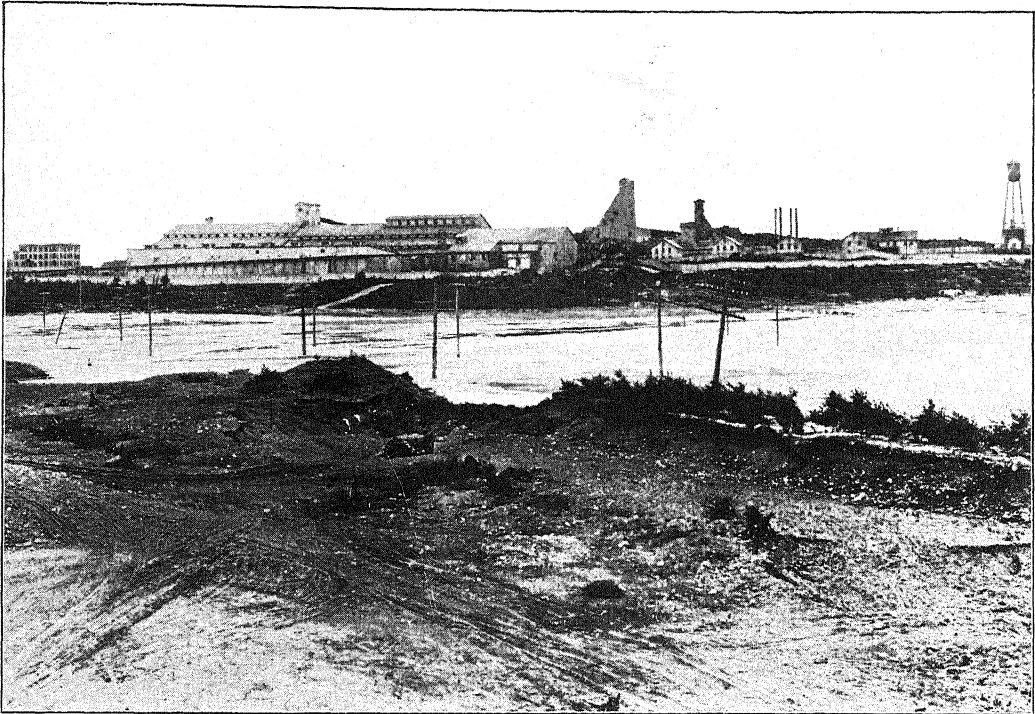
The total area of Ontario is 234,163,200 acres, of which about 16,000,000 acres have been cleared, and 12,000,000 acres brought under cultivation. The average annual value of the agricultural products amounts to just over £100,000,000. The Niagara district is famed for its luscious peaches and grapes, the good, sandy soil promoting the health and strength of the vines. Tomatoes, pears, plums, strawberries, and fruit of all descriptions flourish abundantly in these southern districts. There are also numerous canneries, where enormous quantities of fruit and vegetables are annually "canned" for shipment to all parts of the world. An increasingly large quantity of vegetables and fruits are being raised under glass, to provide for the demand of those desiring them out of season. The cheese factories produce an average of 120,000,000 pounds of cheese a year, which is valued at £4,000,000; and the output of the creameries is 62,000,000 pounds of butter, worth about £4,500,000.



ALGONQUIN PARK, ONTARIO

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

One of the great National Parks of the Dominion, which are really forest and game reserves



A GOLD MINE AT TIMMINS, ONTARIO

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

The number of livestock in the province is, approximately : horses, 630,000 ; cattle, 2,760,000 ; sheep, 900,000 ; pigs, 1,736,000 ; and poultry, 18,000,000. There are 122 Farmers' Institutes in this province, and about 1,520 students enrolled on the books of the Ontario Agricultural College, which is one of the finest educational institutions of its kind in the world.

### INDUSTRIES.

There are 9,512 manufacturing establishments, having a combined capital of £424,000,000, and employing 296,000 people. Among them are : iron and steel, munitions of war, lumber, machinery, engines and boilers, electrical and heating apparatus, vehicles (including motor cars), furniture, hardware, musical instruments, woollens and cottons, wood pulp and paper, cement, canning, milling and agricultural implements. The average annual production of manufactured goods amounts to £351,600,000.

The Great Lakes, as well as the rivers, abound with fish, and yield each year large

returns. The average annual value of the fishing industry is approximately £800,000. The principal fish caught are whitefish, trout, pickerel, pike, sturgeon and fresh-water herring.

The pine forests are the most valuable on the Continent of America. An estimated area of 102,000 square miles is covered by forests, and of this 18,410 square miles is under licence, while the total area of the National Park and Forest Reserves is 18,324 square miles, with an estimated value of £76,391,752. The quantity of timber standing on licensed lands is 7,000,000,000,000 feet, and on unlicensed territory 13,500,000,000,000 feet (B.M.). The pulpwood is estimated at 300,000,000 cords. The total value of the timber and pulp produced each year averages just under £20,000,000.

Immense water-power gives to Ontario excellent facilities for manufacturing. In addition to the power supplied from Niagara Falls by the Hydro-Electric Commission, it is estimated that within 100 miles of the

Grand Trunk Pacific Railway, which crosses the northern portion, there is sufficient latent energy to give 2,030,600 h.p. on the water shed towards Hudson Bay.

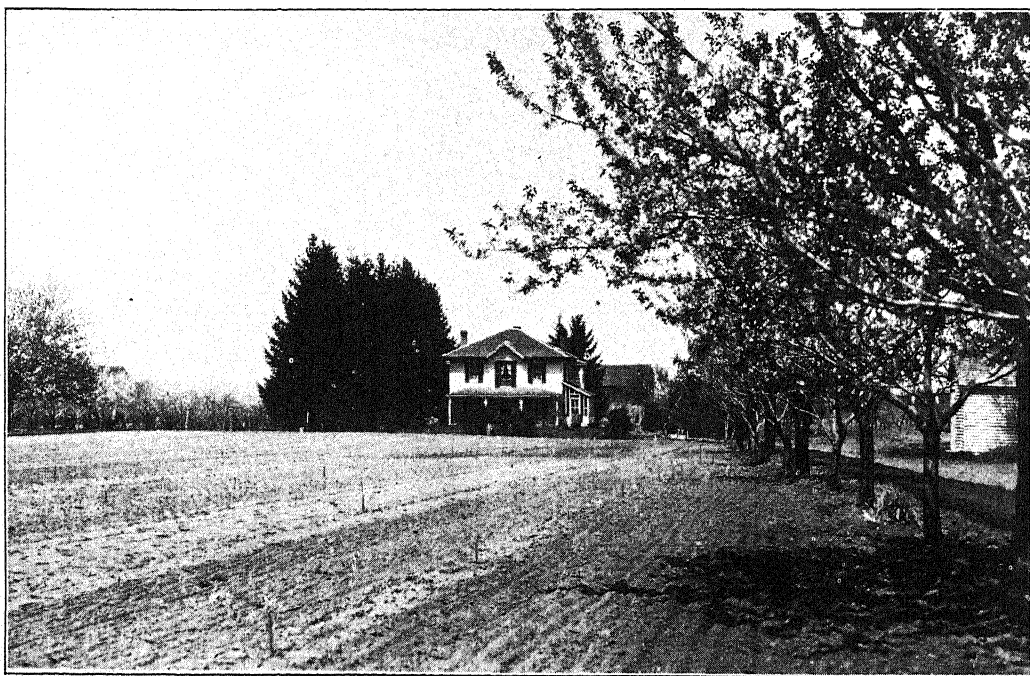
The hydro-electric power plant, set up by the Ontario Government, has proved of inestimable value to the manufacturers and farmers of the Province, serving as many as thirty-two municipalities. It is the largest transmission organisation in the world, having a 110,000 volt line 281 miles long. This is carried on 3,094 steel towers having a total weight of 7,200 tons, and the total length of cable used is 1,154 miles. The Commission cost £857,490. Niagara Falls low-water flow would yield 2,250,000 h.p., and franchises have already been granted for the development of 450,000 of Canada's share of 1,125,000 h.p.

There is a greater mileage of railways in this province than in any other in the Dominion. Over 10,000 miles of lines are in operation, and there are about 400 miles of track being worked electrically in the municipal areas. Express delivery com-

panies operate over 15,300 miles of road. A number of canals in connection with the St. Lawrence waterway and Great Lakes also afford an easy and cheap means of transportation, and connect the ports along this river with the Atlantic Ocean.

#### SCENERY AND CLIMATE.

Ontario is famed for beautiful scenery which is varied in character. The St. Lawrence River, with its "Thousand Islands," stretching for a distance of sixty miles, from the old military city of Kingston to Brockville, is unsurpassed in beauty. Many of these islands are well wooded and just as Nature left them, but a great number have been adorned with artistic summer residences, and their wild shrubbery replaced by exquisite flower gardens which add a lovely bit of brightness to the green of the trees and the deep blue of the water surrounding them. Passing from the foot of the islands through fifteen miles of straight river with well-kept farms on either side, the rapids are reached. These stretch for nearly 100 miles. There



A FRUIT FARM IN WESTERN ONTARIO

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

are seven in all, with a descent of 200 feet, commencing just below Prescott, with its quaint old fort, and extending to Lachine.

The Muskoka district abounds in beautiful lakes well stocked with fish, and possesses commodious hotels where the angler can enjoy every comfort. The islands in Georgian Bay, sometimes called the "Thirty Thousand Islands," by virtue of their great number, have a grandeur all their own. Niagara Falls which empty the waters of Lake Erie into Lake Ontario, is the most picturesque bit of scenery in the world.

These falls are divided by Goat Island into two parts, known as the "American Falls" and the "Horseshoe Falls," and have a drop of 220 feet. Little inferior in beauty and grandeur to the waterfall itself, is the great Gorge through which the waters, after their awful plunge over the cliff, rush onward to Lake Ontario.

For a short distance from the foot of the Falls the water is fairly smooth, with a swift current, but gathering momentum as its channel narrows, it fills the Gorge and rushes over the rocks in foaming torrents,

each season brings its tourists from warmer climates to enjoy the ice-boating, skating, snow-shoeing, ski-ing, and tobogganning. The northern part of the province abounds in game, such as partridge, various kinds of duck, deer, and bear, and the shooting is excellent.

The climate of Ontario varies exceedingly, as is only to be expected considering the wide ranges of latitude and the effects of the Great Lakes on the atmospheric conditions of the south. In the north the winters are long and cold, but bright, and the summers are beautiful, with almost continuous sunshine, and hot days with refreshingly cool nights. Centrally, the winters are less cold, but there is a plenteous snowfall, and the summers are from warm to hot. To the south the Lakes moderate the climate very much, and the winters are much warmer, and slightly more inclined to rain than in the north. In the summer, intense heat is again modified by the action of the Lakes. Normal temperatures in degrees Fahrenheit and precipitation in inches at various stations in Ontario are as follows :—

STATION.	DEGREE OF TEMPERATURE, F.						HOURS OF SUNSHINE	PRECIPITATION IN INCHES		
	Mean Annual	Mean Winter	Mean Summer	Lowest	Highest	Normal Annual	Normal Annual	Normal Annual Rain	Snow	Total
Port Arthur -	34.6	0.4	58.3	-36.0	96.0	35.7	—	19.01	44.5	23.46
Toronto -	44.8	16.5	65.2	-18.8	92.7	45.5	2,048	25.28	61.0	31.38
Stonecliffe -	36.8	1.6	61.4	-40.0	99.0	38.5	—	21.69	82.6	29.95
Ottawa -	40.1	7.0	63.6	-27.0	91.0	43.0	1,874	33.40	87.0	33.40

breaking into spray, and dashing high into the air as it surges against some rock in its mad race for the calmer stretches of the bed below.

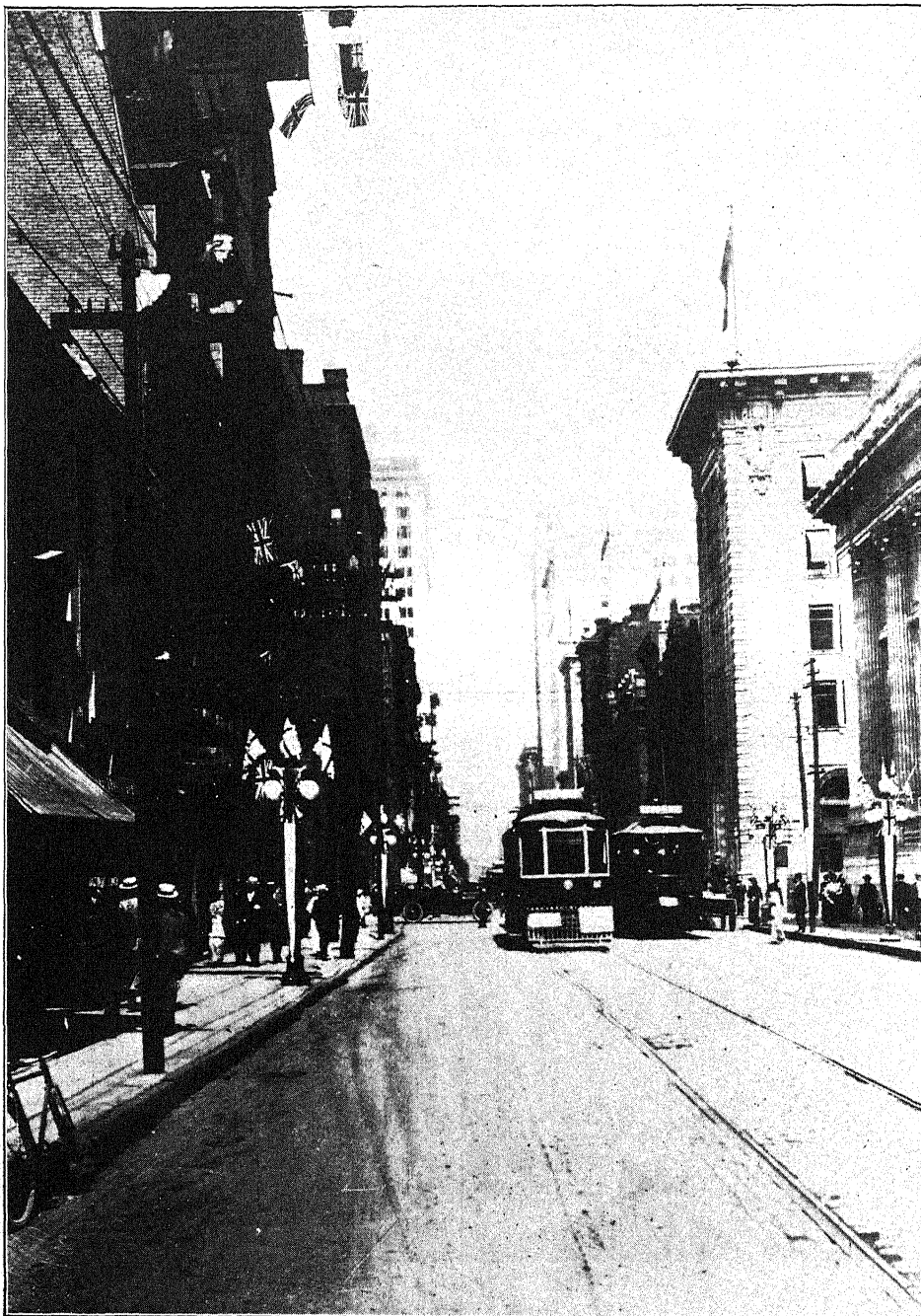
Queen Victoria Park, with its lovely timber, extends for two miles along the river, and it is from here that the best views are obtained of the American, Bridal Veil, Central, and Horseshoe Falls. The Falls are reached by a two-hour boat trip from Toronto.

With such enormous waterways, Ontario has naturally excellent boating and sailing, while the rolling country lends itself readily to golf and fox-hunting. Here, too, the winter sports are becoming popular, and

### TORONTO.

The capital of the Province is Toronto; and Ottawa, the Federal capital of the Dominion, is also in this province (*q.v.*). Toronto is the second largest city in the Dominion, having a population of about 700,000. On the Grand Trunk, Canadian Pacific, and Canadian Northern Railways, it is 334 miles south-west of Montreal, and steamers run to all the ports on the lakes and the St. Lawrence waterway.

The town was founded and named "York" by Governor J. G. Simcoe in 1794. The Legislature assembled here first in 1797. In 1813 it was captured and held by the Americans, who evacuated it, however, after



KING STREET, TORONTO

*Photo, C. P. Rly.*



occupying it only a few days. The name was changed to Toronto—a Huronic Indian word—when incorporated as a city in 1834.

Here are situated the Provincial Government and Parliament Buildings, a most imposing structure in Queens Park; and the University of Toronto with Theological, Medical, and other professional colleges (including a Roman Catholic College) and academies, with over 4,000 students. The beautiful public parks and gardens cover over 2,000 acres, and there are excellent art galleries, museums, libraries, hospitals, reformatories, asylums and orphanages, fitted upon the most modern lines. Toronto has been called the "City of Homes," so beautiful and costly are its private residences, while the less pretentious houses are new and well built, and the streets are tastefully arranged. The Canadian National Exhibition grounds are also within the city limits, and cover an area of 264 acres, having fine permanent buildings for exhibiting products from the various provinces of the Dominion. It resembles a large town.

Toronto has 115 banks, and 275 churches, including a Roman Catholic and an English Cathedral. There are 170 papers and periodicals published here. The electric supply comes from the Niagara Hydro-Electric power plant already referred to. The principal clubs are the Royal Canadian Yacht Club, Toronto Hunt Club, Lambton and Rosedale Golf Clubs, York, Toronto, National Albany, and American social clubs, and the Argonaut Boating Club as well as many small clubs. The largest hockey rink in Ontario is situated here, and is equipped with an artificial ice plant. The School of Infantry, adjoining the old wooden fort, has a garrison and is a training establishment as well. Toronto has a Military Institute and Club. The school buildings are handsome and commodious, and speak volumes for the free school system of which Toronto is the centre. The Lieutenant-Governor of Ontario resides in this city, and a beautiful Government House has been built which does credit to the "Banner Province." The city has a most extensive street railway system, and the industrial section comprises some 900 factories. So rapidly is this city growing that tube railways are being suggested as the only means of solving the traffic problems in the busy commercial areas. The assess-

able value of "Greater Toronto" reached one thousand one hundred million dollars in the year 1930.

Toronto is the proud possessor of the most beautiful recreation park on the continent, it is composed of three large islands, which have been joined together by made-land, forming a walk three miles long on the Lake Ontario side, and being formed into bays on the Toronto Bay side of the islands. Here are the headquarters of the Royal Canadian Yacht Club, and several Canoe Clubs, while there are hundreds of summer residences of the wealthy classes making it like a summer city. The "Sick Children's Hospital," a handsome and commodious building with lovely grounds, occupies the southern portion towards the lake. There are cricket and playgrounds, and a lagoon comprising a mile of water makes good canoeing. The western end of the park is the "White City" of amusements, and has a stadium, built of concrete and iron, which will accommodate 30,000 spectators. Here the famous baseball games are held every summer.

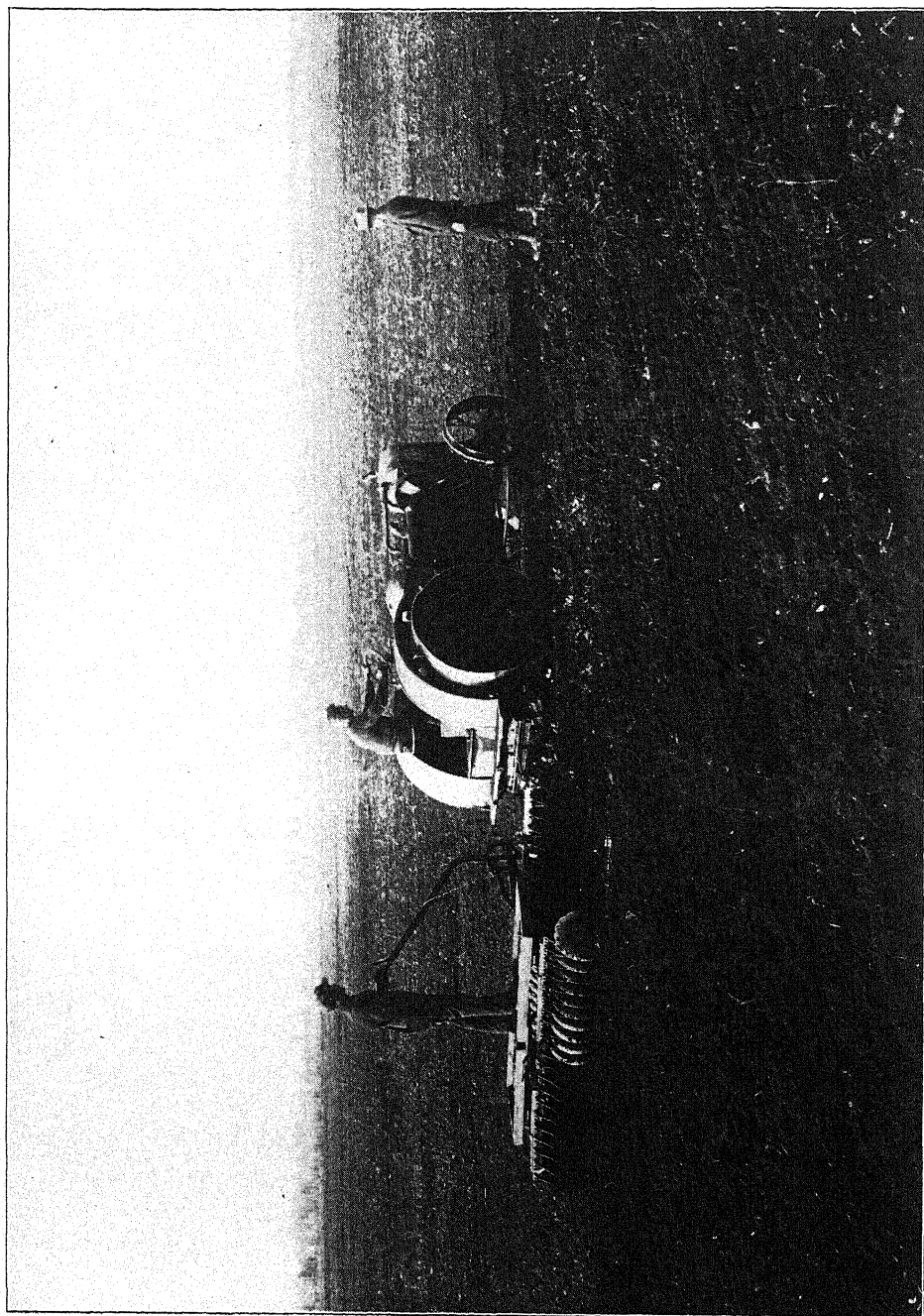
## Province of Manitoba

This, the most easterly of the three prairie provinces, was, until 1912, an almost square block of territory situated midway between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. One side of this square remains, but the other three boundaries have been extended until the province now reaches north to the 60th parallel, the shore of Hudson Bay, making it a maritime province. It comprises 251,832 square miles, or more than 148,432,640 acres; and has a population of over 663,200.

## HISTORY.

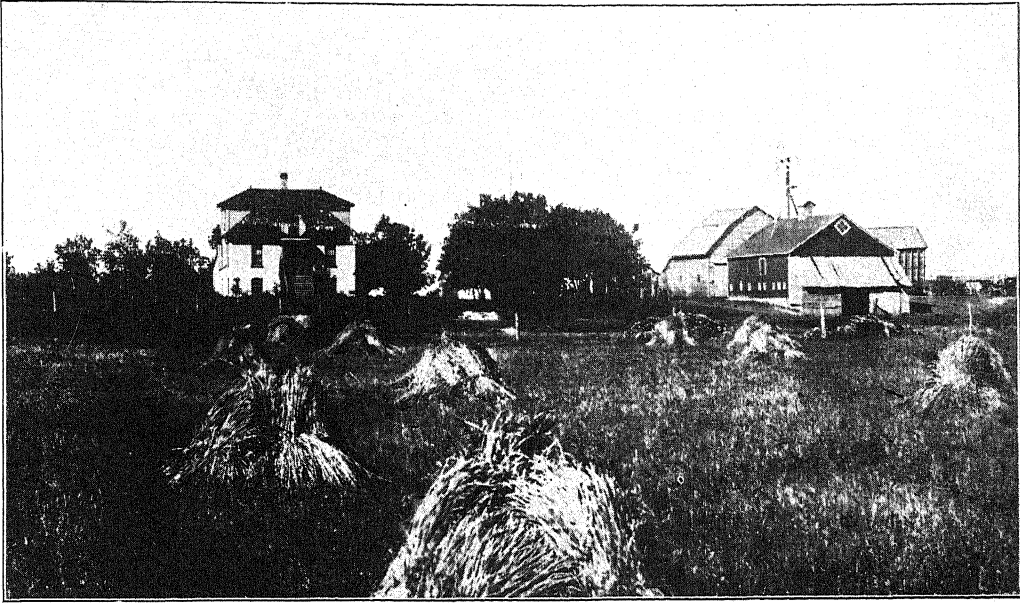
The first white settlement in the Province, and in all the prairie country (the Selkirk Colony), was made in 1812, on both sides of the Red River below Winnipeg, then called Fort Garry. The colonists were mostly from Scotland and many of their descendants still reside on the old homesteads in comfortable residences.

The colony remained under the Hudson Bay Company rule at Fort Garry until 1870, when the whole western country, excepting British Columbia, which was already an independent colony, passed under the control of the Dominion Government by purchase.



FARMING IN MANITOBA

*Photo, Grand Trunk Rly.*



A FARM AT PORTAGE LA PRAIRIE

*Photo, C. P. Rly.*

The colony was at that time known as Assiniboia. The price paid the Hudson Bay Company to transfer their title was £300,000, they were, however, allowed to retain two one-mile-square sections of land in each township of thirty-six sections (six miles square), and small areas around their trading posts—about one-twentieth of the land all told. From this time onward to the present day the political history of the Province became merged in that of the Dominion of Canada (*q.v.*).

The Local Government of the Province of Manitoba (old and new) is administered by a Legislative Assembly composed of forty members, together with a Lieutenant-Governor and an Executive Council of six members chosen from and responsible to the Legislature. In the Dominion Senate, Manitoba has four members, and ten in the House of Commons. The grant to the Province from the Dominion Government, which forms one of the principal sources of revenue increases according to the population. The census returns in 1921 showed the number to have increased by 148,724 in five years. In the next five years the increase was only 29,000. During more recent times the influx of immigrants has,

however, again increased. The income of the Provincial Government is derived from subsidies and interest payable annually by the Dominion Government on account of reserved taxation (customs, etc.), land sales and fees, licences and succession duties. The largest expenditure is for education, public works, and the administration of justice.

### NEW MANITOBA.

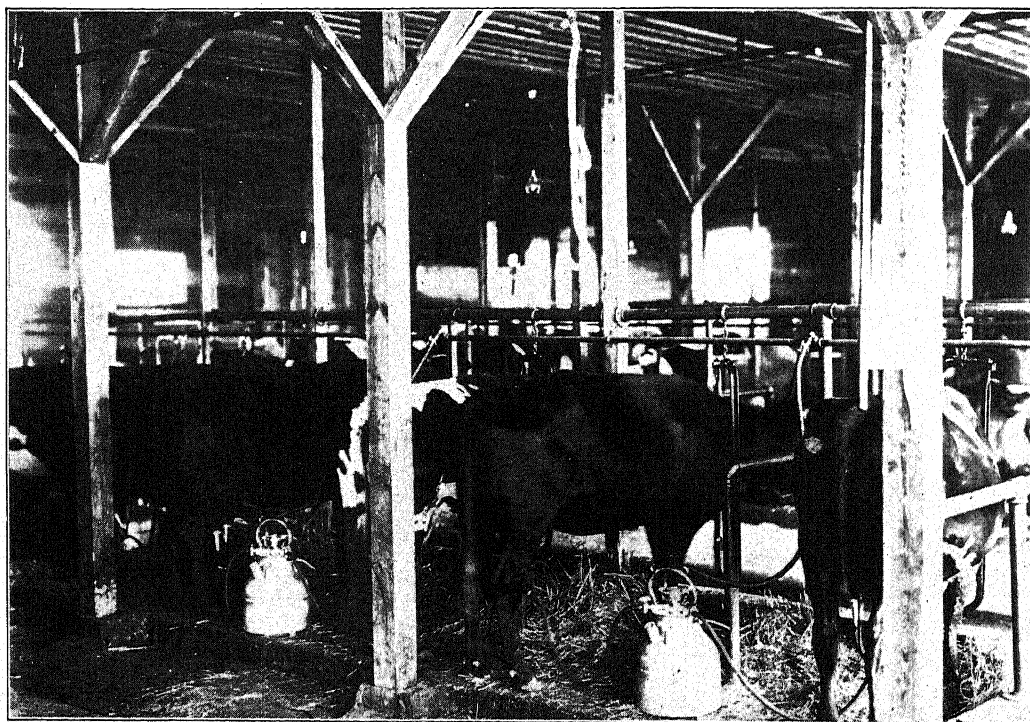
Manitoba holds a unique position as the only Prairie-Maritime Province in the Dominion of Canada. By the recent boundary extension northward and eastward to the shores of Hudson Bay, Manitoba gains not only a wonderful wealth of agricultural land, timber, fisheries, water-powers, and minerals, but also a maritime coast-line which includes the two finest harbours on Hudson Bay, namely, Churchill and Nelson. So that to the tremendous advantages of her vast prairies must now be added those of direct ocean routes to the world's markets. The Hudson Bay route for the shipment of grain and produce from the Canadian West and the North-western United States to European markets is between 700 and 800 miles shorter than other routes. The completion of the

Hudson Bay Railway will soon be followed by the establishment of regular summer sailings by fast steamships from Hudson Bay ports to Europe, the Atlantic sea-coast of America, and the British West Indies; so that a great volume of world-wide commerce will sweep throughout the length and breadth of Manitoba.

From the results already obtained here and there in the new territory, and from a study of climatic conditions and the soil generally, there is no doubt that mixed farming will prove a great success in many portions of New Manitoba. Large tracts of excellent land are to be found suitable to the cultivation of all manner of vegetables, wheat, barley and small fruits, while in some places the conditions for stock-raising are ideal. The nature of the new country varies greatly. An immense clay belt, 10,000 square miles in area, sweeps across the Province, north of Lake Winnipeg. In other places the soil is a light, sandy loam. There are evidences of good mineral country, and an unlimited supply of spruce, poplar,

jack pine, tamarack and pulpwood. A great stretch of fairly level country extends northward, sloping towards the sea at the rate of about two feet in a mile.

It is impossible adequately to measure the richness of New Manitoba's resources until the country has been opened up by the railroads; but it is known that fish-canning factories and many valuable industries will soon spring into existence, affording unlimited revenues. Needless to say, game of all kinds is very plentiful in the new territory, and the Manitoba game laws will protect it with the same care that has been exercised in preserving the game of the older portion of the province. It is interesting to note that in a report of the Conservation Commission at Ottawa the estimated available horse-power of Canada's rivers is 16,640,000, and that one-third of this (over 5,500,000) is credited to New Manitoba. The cheap power, heat and light, which this holds in store for Manitoba residents is but one of many rich heritages belonging to the province's development in the near future.



MILKING BY ELECTRICITY

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

### SCENERY AND CLIMATE.

Manitoba has the largest lakes in the prairie belt, and the largest mountains east of the Rockies. Its three great lakes are Winnipeg, Winnipegosis and Manitoba, all draining to the north-east, through the Nelson River, into Hudson Bay. Lake Winnipeg, with a length of 260 miles and an average width of 30 miles, is the largest of the three. Into it flow the Winnipeg, the Red and the Saskatchewan Rivers, with other smaller streams. The Assiniboine River, flowing eastward, joins the Red River, flowing north, and at their confluence is located Manitoba's capital and chief city—Winnipeg. The Saskatchewan River, which has its source in the Rocky Mountains, is a mighty stream flowing into Lake Winnipeg from the west, and by its means the city of Edmonton, the capital of Alberta Province, has direct water connection with Winnipeg. Southern Indian Lake, in Northern Manitoba, is a body of water of considerable extent, drained by the Churchill River into Hudson Bay. There is no lack of lakes and rivers in Manitoba, which accounts in no small measure for its extraordinary fertility. Timber tracts of considerable size edge the river banks, the trees being aspens, maples, oaks, elms and willows, and there is a genuine forest near the Lake of the Woods. In the western portion of the Province are found the Porcupine, the Duck and the Riding Mountains, while to the south rise the Turtle and the Tiger Ridges, but most of the land is flat, treeless prairie.

In the south-central portion of the province unmistakable evidence exists that at one time a lake—which has been called Lake Agassiz—was to be found there. It is surmised that glaciers blocked the outlet and forced the waters of this lake over a wide expanse of territory. When the ice disappeared there was no trace of Lake Agassiz, save deposits of clay and silt, now covered with from 2 to 4 ft. of black vegetable mould, which seems inexhaustible in its productiveness. It is this rich soil which yields the greatest wheat harvests of the world. In addition to wheat, this section raises bountifully all other field crops and garden products. Fertile soil, ample sunshine and rainfall, ensure the highest agricultural development.

Within Manitoba lies the first of the three Prairie Steppes, of which Central Canada

occupies a large portion. This steppe contains nearly 7,000 square miles, and has a width gradually enlarging from 50 miles at the international border to 250 miles, when it terminates at the ridge formed by the Riding and Duck Mountains and the Porcupine Hills. A large part of South-western and West-Central Manitoba is included in the Second Prairie Steppe, which extends north-west into the Province of Saskatchewan, and possesses a soil that vies in richness with that of the Red River Valley.

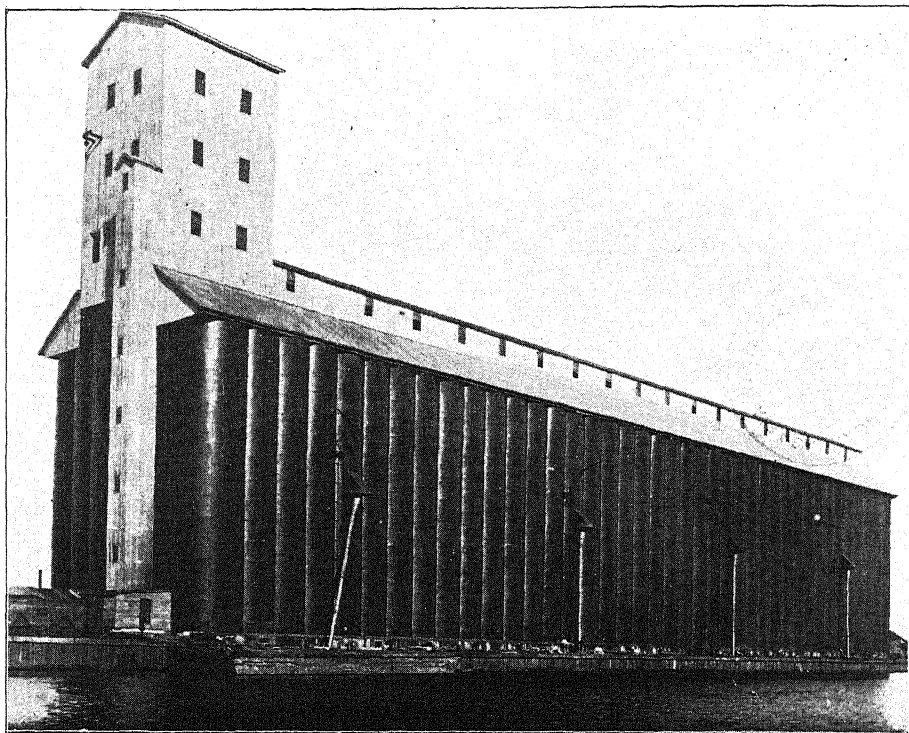
Unlike some of the other provinces, Manitoba possesses but little variety of climate. With it, climatic conditions are uniform throughout. One pleasant condition is much sunshine the entire year through. This makes the summer pleasant, warm, and very conducive to the rapid and successful growth of vegetation. The autumns are unusually long and agreeable, ploughing weather sometimes extending even to the end of November. The winters rarely last more than three or four months, and, on account of the dry atmosphere, the low temperature is not as much felt as in countries with more moisture. The snow is never deep, and travel in winter by team or rail is rarely impeded by drifts or blockades. The annual precipitation is 21.4 in.

The spring months are most invigorating. The deep frost escaping from the ground during that time assures sufficient moisture to give vegetation a good start until the June rains, which are invariably ample to guarantee successful crops in all branches of agriculture. The moderate rains of July continue the growing and ripening processes under a warm sun, and harvesting becomes general in August. The mean temperature of the country is 32.7; January 5.2; July 66.1. Seeding usually begins the first week in April, before the frost is fully out of the ground, and the summer is of ample length to bring the staple crops of the province to maturity.

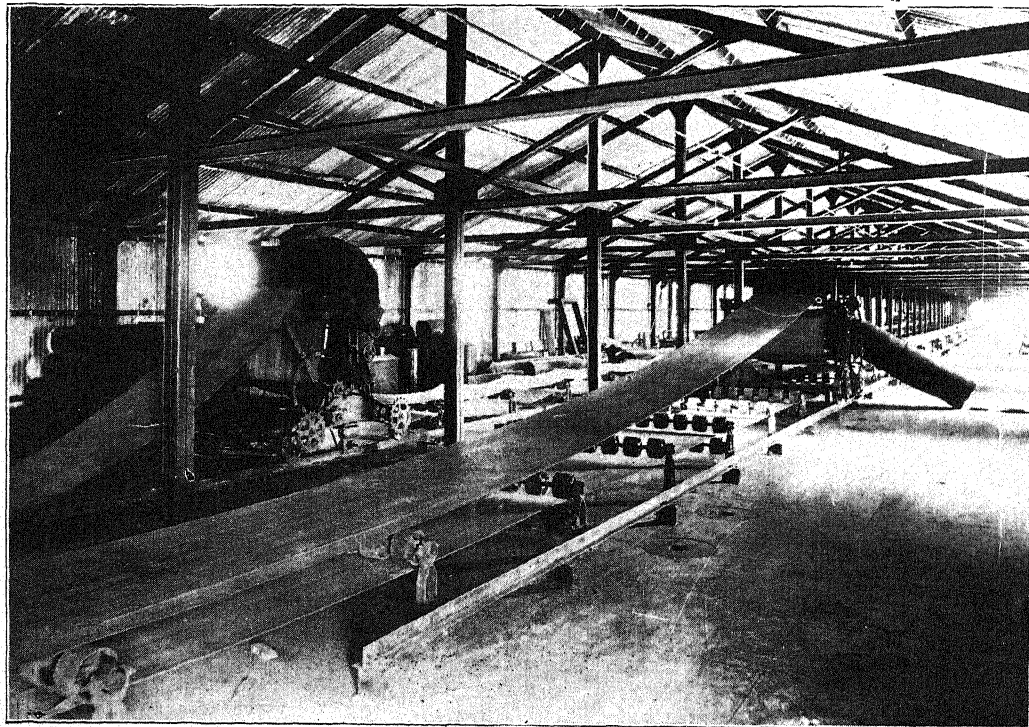
### AGRICULTURE.

The development of the wheat-growing industry has been exceedingly rapid. The total average annual yield for the whole of Canada now amounts to between 400,000,000 and 500,000,000 bushels, and is increasing at the rate of nearly 90,000,000 bushels per annum. If to this was added the wheat retained by





A GRAIN ELEVATOR



INTERIOR OF AN ELEVATOR

*Photos C.P. Rly.*

farmers for seed the total would be immensely increased. The milling industry is very important, for every place of any size has large mills for the grinding of wheat into flour; oatmeal mills also do a thriving business. Nearly all the wheat of Canada is produced in the Prairie Provinces. The area under field crops in Manitoba is about seven million acres.

In the last five years the production of flax has almost quadrupled, while the total increase in the yield of oats exceeds that of wheat. There are annually 82,000,000 bushels of oats to the credit of Manitoba. The gain in barley production is equally marked. Rye, peas, potatoes and turnips are among the other important crops, and a brave beginning has been made in tobacco culture. A Dominion Experimental Farm at Brandon is doing much to educate the farmers, as are also the agricultural and horticultural associations.

The profitableness of dairy-farming may be judged by the fact that the average annual value of the dairy products amounts to over £1,000,000 (exclusive of milk), and is constantly increasing. The cheese output averages 900,000 lb., and the butter 15 to 16 million pounds.

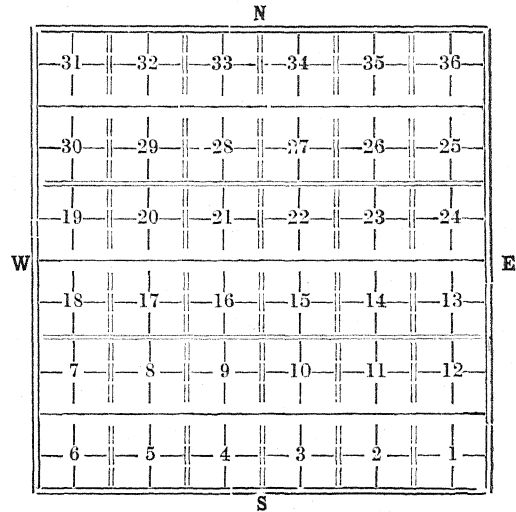
The total land area of Manitoba is 148,432,640 acres, of which only 7,421,786 acres are under cultivation; but this comparatively small area produces crops to the average annual value of £24,000,000. The future possibilities are therefore very great if the requisite supply of farmers and "hired men" is forthcoming. The live-stock include about 360,000 horses, 750,000 cattle, 130,000 sheep, 350,000 pigs, and 4,000,000 poultry. Nowhere in Canada is agricultural instruction more efficient than in Manitoba.

#### FORMATION OF NEW TOWNSHIPS.

So rapid is the rate of development on the prairies of Canada that it may not be out of place to give here the plan upon which townships, sections and quarter-sections are laid out. The same arrangement holds good in the other Prairie Provinces of the Dominion. Townships are numbered consecutively from south to north. Each row of townships thus formed is given a range number. The ranges start from a principal meridian and are numbered consecutively. The first meridian is a few miles west of Winnipeg. Ranges

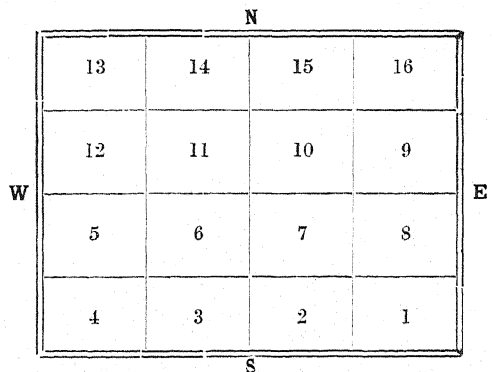
number from this meridian as a starting point, both eastward and westward. In regard to all other meridians, ranges number westward only.

PLAN OF A TOWNSHIP.



The double lines indicate the road allowance.

PLAN OF SECTION.



Each section is deemed to be divided into 40-acre areas, known as legal sub-divisions, and numbered and bounded as in diagram above.

It will be seen that the number, range, and meridian at once show the exact location of a township. Each section of a township is divided into four square blocks, called quarter-sections.

A quarter-section is half a mile square, and contains 160 acres. It is the unit on which these lands are dealt with.

As a section is a square whose sides run east and west and north and south, the four quarters which it contains are described, according to their location, as the north-east quarter, the north-west quarter, the south-east quarter, the south-west quarter.

Road allowances are provided, namely, running north and south, between each section; running east and west along the township lines and from thence, two miles apart.

### TRANSPORT AND INDUSTRIES.

For the extension of her chief industries—the growing and marketing of grain—Manitoba is largely dependent on railways, and the broad expanses of prairie land offer every facility for their expeditious and economical construction. From Winnipeg eight lines radiate to different parts of the Province, and to the far east and west of the Dominion. From Montreal across the Atlantic, and from Vancouver, Victoria, and Prince Rupert over the Pacific Ocean, her mighty harvests go to feed the nations of the earth. By connections at Brandon and Portage la Prairie with the Great Northern Road of the United States, there is a commercial interchange across the border, and another outlet is secured by transfer, from rail at Fort William and Port Arthur, to the Great Lakes.

The province has an ever increasing railway mileage (see *Railways*); its systems being the Canadian Pacific, Grand Trunk Pacific, Great Northern, Transcontinental, and Canadian Northern. Branch lines are being constructed in all directions to keep pace with the development of the agricultural areas, and to handle the manufactures which of late years have begun to be of some importance. One very necessary service performed by these lines is the carrying of timber and mails to the prairie farmer.

There is now the Canadian National line from Winnipeg to Churchill, Hudson Bay. From this port, during the ice-free season, Liverpool is distant only 2,936 geographical miles.

The manufacturing industries of Manitoba have been steadily increasing for many years. The capital invested amounts to about £30,000,000, which gives employment to 23,000 people, and yields an annual average

gross revenue from finished products of £29,000,000. The principal industrial centres are Winnipeg (£16,000,000), Brandon and St. Boniface. The lake fisheries are also of economic importance, and Northern Manitoba is already known to be rich in both minerals and timber.

### EDUCATION AND PRAIRIE SCHOOLS.

The high standard set by the Canadian system of education is known the world over. Manitoba's great school system has kept pace with the times, and the incoming settler need have no fear that in Manitoba his children will be deprived of educational advantages; on the contrary, he will find the schools of Manitoba thoroughly up-to-date in equipment, the teachers competent, and the courses carefully selected and supervised. Nor must it be imagined that this efficiency in education is confined to the cities and towns. The problem of the rural school has long been the subject of careful consideration by the authorities, and the practical result of these deliberations is proving highly satisfactory.

The old-time pioneer school has dropped out like the mud that chinked the crevices between its logs, and has been lost in the eddies of modern improvement like the straw that thatched its roof. In its stead has come a strong tendency towards consolidation. By this is meant the merging of several small, inefficient school districts into a large one—large enough in numbers to form a school full of energy and spirit, where the various forms of education may be dealt with, and large enough in area to provide sufficient funds to build, equip, and operate a big school at a moderate cost.

Pupils living over one mile from the school-house in consolidated school districts are conveyed to and from school each day at the public expense. This feature at once eliminates any element of unfairness in the matter of taxes to the parents of pupils living furthest away. The expense is "pooled." Consolidation of schools, as it is known in Manitoba, has done much to prevent any spirit of sectionalism by broadening the outlook of the respective communities. The vans used for transporting the children are all well covered and protected from the weather, so that only in a few cases has it

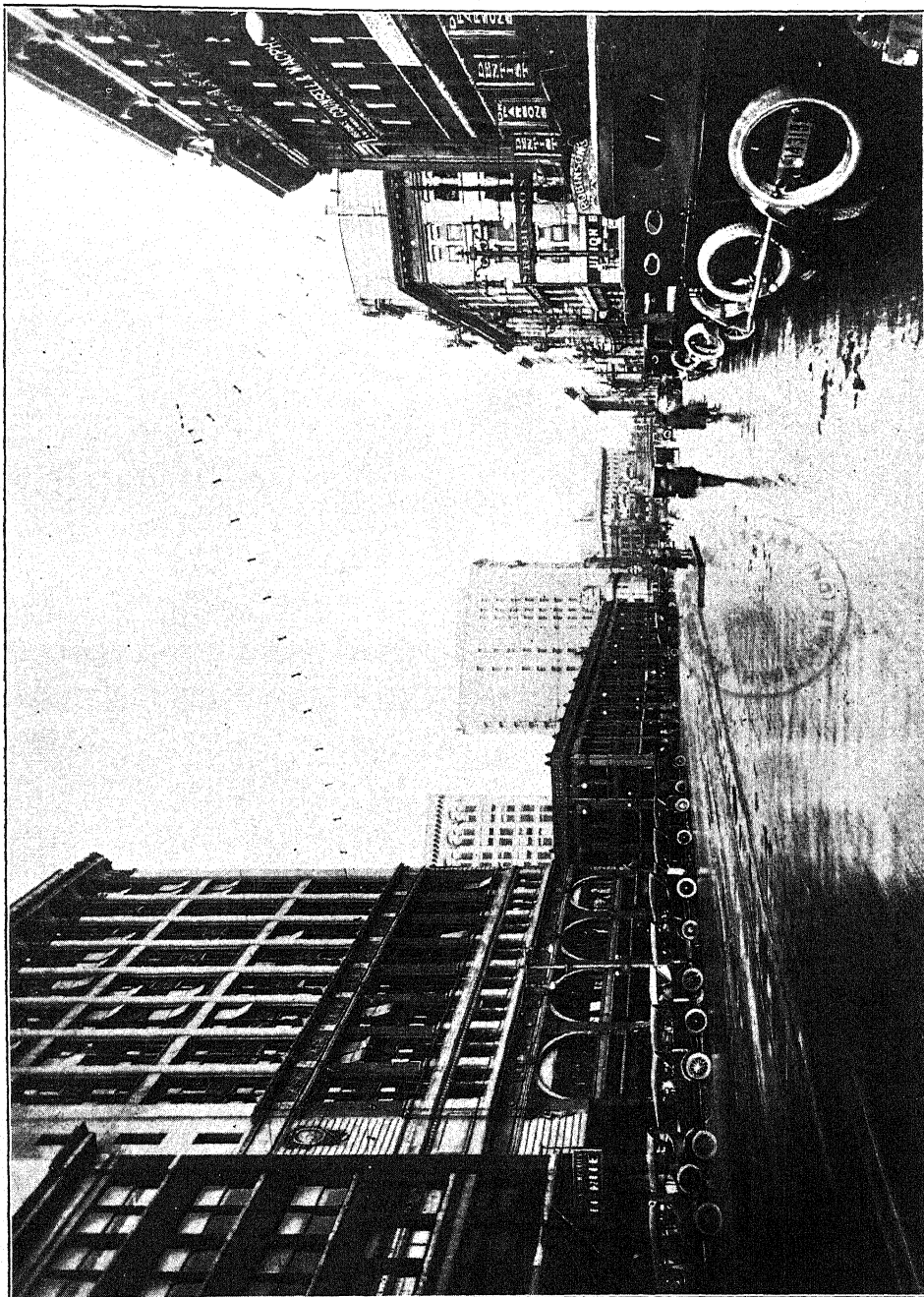


Photo C. P. Riv.

PORTAGE AVENUE, WINNIPEG, CAPITAL OF MANITOBA

been found necessary to use foot-warmers. So successful has the plan proved that the attendance has greatly increased because of it.

Aside from the advantage of having the children at home every night and of having them in good care coming and going, a high-school education is also afforded by these consolidated schools. The large schools broaden the character and prevent selfishness; a healthy, active school spirit is manifest and all kinds of sports are carried on with zest.

### WINNIPEG.

The capital of Manitoba is situated at the junction of the Assiniboine and Red Rivers, in the middle of a wide plain. The Red River Valley, being of exceptional richness, attracted the original traders. On that side of the junction of the two rivers where Verendrye—the first white explorer to visit the Red River—had, three-quarters of a century before this time, erected Fort Rouge, and where, a decade before that, the Nor'-Westers of Montreal had built Fort Gibraltar, the Hudson Bay Company added Fort Douglas, so called after the family name of Lord Selkirk.

After the rival fur companies' union in 1821, Fort Garry was built as a trading-post and settler's dépôt, with a more elaborate structure, stone walls, bastions and port-holes. A short distance north of this fort, about the year 1860, the first house on the plain was erected, and the hamlet that collected was named after the big lake, 45 miles to the north—Winnipeg (Cree: Win—murky; nipi—water).

The acquisition of Manitoba by the Dominion, and the influx of settlers from Eastern Canada, led to the greater importance of Winnipeg, as the new town was now generally called. In 1870, the first census was taken, and showed 213 persons in the village. Eleven years afterwards, in 1881, there were 7,985 people. Winnipeg has been an incorporated city since 1874. By leaps and bounds the city's growth has advanced. In 1891 the population was 27,068. In 1901 it had grown to 44,778, and during the five years from 1901 to 1906 the city more than doubled its population. This increase was chiefly due to immigration from Great Britain, other European countries

and the United States. More than 20,000 of the present population of approximately 200,000 have come from the United States.

Geographically, Winnipeg is situated almost half-way between the Atlantic and Pacific coasts of British North America, and 60 miles north of the boundary line between Canada and the United States. Politically, it is the capital of the Province of Manitoba, and commercially the leading city of Western Canada and the largest grain market in the world.

The government of the city is carried on under a charter from the Provincial Legislature. The council is composed of a mayor, four controllers forming the Board of Control, and fourteen aldermen. The mayor and controllers are elected annually by vote of the entire city. One alderman is elected annually from each of the seven wards into which the city is divided, and holds office for a term of two years. The mayor is chief magistrate of the city.

The city's public school system is well housed in buildings of the most modern and substantial construction. By an Act of 1890, and subsequent amending Acts, it is provided that all State-aided schools shall be non-sectarian. The school system is directed by a department of the Provincial Government, presided over by the Minister of Education. There are some thirty-seven schools, with an enrolment exceeding 22,000; also six parochial schools with 1,200 pupils, six colleges of the University of Manitoba, provincial agricultural college, academies, ladies' schools, free library, and other educational institutions.

The churches of Winnipeg have also kept pace with the city's growth, and there are now 123 churches of various denominations. All of these have been established since 1869. The bulk of Winnipeg's church-going population is divided between the Presbyterian, Anglican, Roman Catholic, and Methodist churches.

The city owns and operates its waterworks plant, street lighting system, stone quarry, fire alarm system, asphalt plant, and a high-pressure plant for the better protection of the city from fire. Winnipeg enjoys the distinction of being the first city in America to acquire a municipal asphalt plant. Winnipeg's municipally-owned hydro-electric light and power plant, completed at a cost of



4,000,000 dollars, is now firmly established on a paying basis. This plant has reduced the cost of domestic lighting by 70 per cent. of the price previously charged. Cheap power and light from an efficient plant, make Winnipeg a particularly attractive location for the setting up of shops and factories for making goods that have been—and still are to a very great extent—brought in from manufacturing points 1,000, or more, miles distant. Winnipeg has now several hundred factories, the annual output of which exceeds £16,000,000.

The chief streets of Winnipeg are splendidly wide and smoothly laid in asphalt pavement, with granolithic sidewalks proportionate to

Northern, the Grand Trunk Pacific, the Great Northern, and the Northern Pacific have made great progress in the work of affording adequate transportation to Western Canada. All of these roads centre at Winnipeg, and no railway company would think of trying to pass through any part of Western Canada from east to west, or from south to north (except in the far western part), without touching the prairie gateway city. No traveller thinks of visiting any part of the Canadian North-west without making Winnipeg one of his principal stopping places. Merchants, manufacturers, capitalists, mechanics and immigrants of all kinds—in short all sorts and conditions of men



MAIN STREET, WINNIPEG

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

the width of the carriage and traffic ways. Residential streets are "boulevarded," and have rows of trees on either side with asphalt pavement and granolithic walks, the whole giving a clean and pleasant appearance. Winnipeg's parks, natural and artificial, are true beauty spots, and cover 520 acres, carefully tended by competent men. There are eight theatres; three or four of the larger houses are sufficiently enterprising to secure some of the best touring companies on the American continent.

Winnipeg is very important as a railway centre. The Canadian Pacific, the Canadian

who decide to make their home in Western Canada come in the first place to Winnipeg and frequently make it their headquarters.\*

#### THE PRAIRIE AIR MAIL.

There is a daily trans-prairie air mail service between Winnipeg, Calgary, Edmonton and Regina. The 777 miles journey from Winnipeg to Calgary is performed during the night.

The other important cities and towns are Brandon, Dauphin, St. Boniface, Portage la Prairie, Gretna, Selkirk, Carberry, Morden,

\* From an official report by Charles F. Roland, Industrial Commissioner.

Neepawa, Manitou, Louris, Verden, and Minnedosa.

### Province of Saskatchewan

This province lies between the 49th and 60th parallels of north latitude, and between the meridians of 102° and 110° west from Greenwich; or, more familiarly, its southern border is the international boundary, the dividing line between Canada and the United States. South of Saskatchewan are the States of North Dakota and Montana; east of it is the Province of Manitoba; west of it is the Province of Alberta, and on the north and north-east it is bounded by the North-West

England trading into Hudson's Bay." This was the beginning of the famous Hudson Bay Company. Between 1733 and 1743 occurred the discovery and exploration of the western prairies by Pierre Gaultier de Varennes, Sieur de la Verendrye, and his three sons; and the construction of the following forts:—

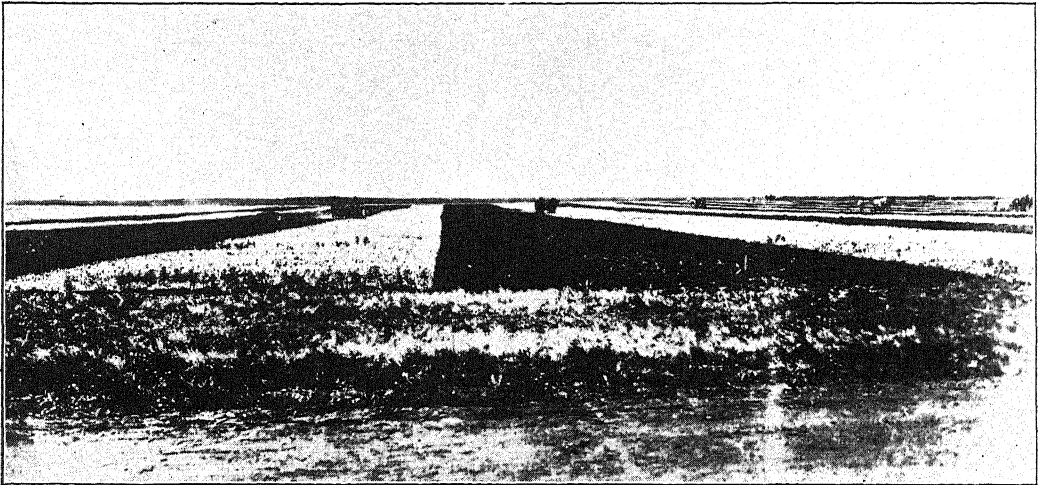
Fort St. Pierre, on Rainy Lake.

Fort St. Charles, on Lake of the Woods.

Fort Maurepas, near the mouth of Winnipeg River.

Fort Dauphin, north-west extremity of Lake Manitoba.

Fort Rouge, at the confluence of the Assiniboine and Red Rivers.



**MILE-LONG FURROWS**  
Ploughing on the Open Prairie

*Photo, C. P. Rly.*

Territories. Its greatest length is 760 miles; and its width in the south is 393 miles. At the middle it is 300 miles wide; and at the northern boundary it has a width of 277 miles. The area of this great quadrangle is 251,700 square miles, of which 13,725 square miles is water.

### HISTORY.

On 2nd May, 1670, Prince Rupert presented himself at Whitehall and received from the hands of King Charles II the Royal Charter incorporating himself and the seventeen nobles and gentlemen, with their heirs and successors, under the name of "The Governor and Company of Adventurers of

Fort La Reine, on the site of the present town of Portage la Prairie.

Fort Poskoyal, on the Saskatchewan River.

Fort Lacerne, at the fork of the Saskatchewan River.

By the Treaty of Utrecht, Hudson Bay and the adjacent territory, including Saskatchewan, Nova Scotia, and Newfoundland, were ceded by France to England; and on 10th February, 1763, the Treaty of Paris was signed, by which France ceded and guaranteed to His Britannic Majesty in full right "Canada with all its dependencies."

The first white men to behold the Rocky Mountains were the younger son of Pierre de la Verendrye, known as the Chevalier, and



THRESHING-TIME ON THE PRAIRIE

Photo, C.N. Rlys.

two companions, who, however, were forced to return owing to the desertion of their Indian guides.

The history of the extension of British influence, control, and industry from maritime Canada into the Central Provinces and the North-West Territories is as follows :—

1863 (July 31).—The Rupert's Land Act passed by the Imperial Parliament, providing for the acquisition by the Dominion of Canada of the North-West Territories.

1869 (June 22).—Act passed providing for the government of the North-West Territories.

1869 (Nov. 19).—Deed of Surrender of Territories signed by Hudson Bay Co. to Her Majesty.

1870 (July 15).—North-West Territories (including Saskatchewan) added to the Dominion of Canada.

1874.—North-West Mounted Police established with a strength of 300 at first ; increased to 500 in 1882, and to 1,000 men in 1885. Headquarters in 1875 were at Fort Walsh.

1875-77.—The North-West Territories Acts passed (8th April, 1875, and 28th April, 1877),

placing Rupert's Land and the North-West Territory (except such portion as was then forming the Province of Manitoba) under the jurisdiction of a Lieutenant-Governor, separate and distinct from Manitoba.

1876 (Oct. 7).—Hon. David Laird appointed as first Lieutenant-Governor of the North-West Territories. Prior to this appointment, the Lieutenant-Governors of Manitoba were *ex-officio* Lieutenant-Governors of the North-West Territories.

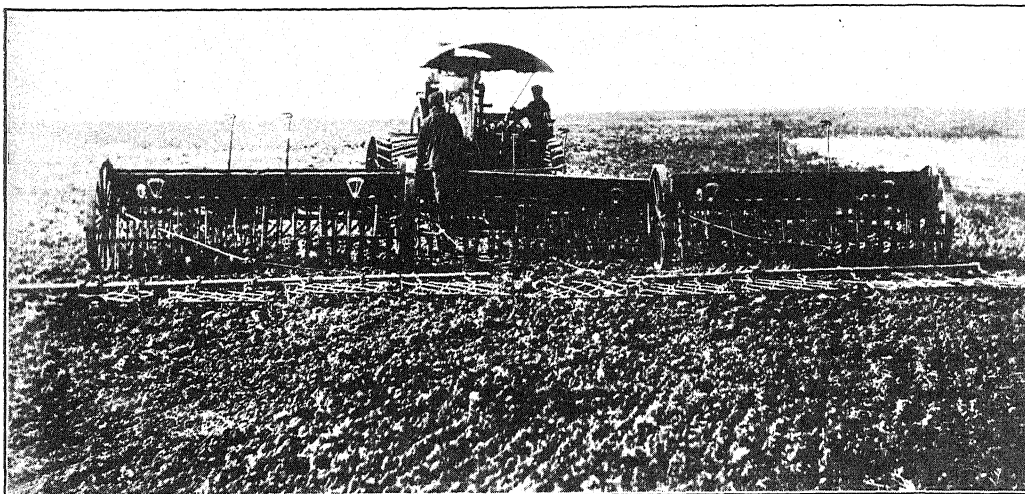
1880 (Oct 21).—Contract signed for the construction of the Canadian Pacific Railway.

1881 (May 2).—First sod turned for the Canadian Pacific Railway.

1882 (Aug. 23).—First train to reach Regina (now capital of Saskatchewan).

1885 (Nov. 7).—Driving the last spike of the Canadian Pacific Railway.

1876-87.—From the organisation of the Territories, under the Acts of 1875 and 1877, the country was administered by the Lieutenant-Governor, with the aid of a council composed of such persons appointed from time to time by the Governor-General, not exceeding in the whole five members, of which number the stipendiary magistrates



SEEDING IN SASKATCHEWAN

Photo, C.P. Rly.

appointed for the administration of justice were to be members *ex-officio*. The Acts further provided for the election of members by the people in districts not exceeding 1,000 square miles, having a population of 1,000 souls or more.

There were nine sessions of the council, the first being held at the residence of the Lieutenant-Governor at a point named Livingston, on Swan River, 10 miles north of Fort Pelly, being the temporary headquarters of the Government and of the North-West Mounted Police. The following members composed this council, and were all present: His Honour David Laird (Lieutenant-Governor); Matthew Ryan and Lieutenant Col. Hugh Richardson, stipendiary magistrates and *ex-officio* members of council; Lieut.-Col. Jas. F. McLeod, C.M.G., Commissioner of R.N.W.M. Police, and appointed a member of council.

The second, third, and fourth sessions of the council were held at Battleford. Mr. Lawrence Clarke (of Carlton) was the first popular representative in the council, and took his seat in this fourth and last session held at Battleford. The remaining sessions were held at Regina, with a largely increased number of elected members.

1878 (Aug. 25).—First number of *Saskatchewan Herald* issued at Battleford, being the first newspaper published in the North-West Territories.

1878 (Oct.).—Arrival of Lieutenant-Governor and other Government officials at Battleford.

1881 (Aug. and Sept.).—Visit of the Marquis of Lorne as Governor-General to Manitoba and the North-West Territories.

1882 (May 8).—Provisional districts of Assiniboia, Saskatchewan, Alberta, and Athabasca created.

1883 (May).—Removal of seat of Government from Battleford to Regina.

1885 (Mar. 22).—Outbreak of rebellion in the North-West. Commencement of hostilities at Duck Lake.

1885 (April 2).—Massacre of Frog Lake.

1885 (April 24).—Engagement at Fish Creek.

1885 (May 12).—Battle of Batoche and defeat of the rebels.

1885 (May 26).—Surrender of Poundmaker.

1885 (July 2).—Final suppression of rebellion by capture of Big Bear. Total loss of Militia and Volunteers killed, 38; wounded, 115.

1885 (July 20).—Trial of rebels commenced.

1885 (Nov. 16).—Execution of Riel.

1886.—Act passed giving the North-West Territories representation in the Senate and House of Commons.

1888.—Abolition of North-West Council and substitution for it of an assembly of twenty-two members.

1888 (Oct. 31-Dec. 11).—First session of first Legislative Assembly.

1891.—Responsible government granted to Territories.

1901 (Sept. 27).—Visit of their Royal Highnesses the Duke and Duchess of York to Regina.

1871.—Population of Manitoba and N.W. Territories (including Saskatchewan), 18,000.

1891.—Population of North-West Territories, 67,000.

1905. — Population of Saskatchewan, 257,763.

1911.—Population of Saskatchewan (according to census), 492,432.

1921.—Population of Saskatchewan (according to census), 757,510.

1929 — Population of Saskatchewan 866,700.

The latest of many important changes which have occurred in the composition of the Central Provinces of Canada was the incorporation of certain parts of the organised North-West Territories. This change

took place in 1905, when the districts of Assiniboia, Saskatchewan, Alberta, and Athabasca were constituted the provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan, and were given self-government similar to that enjoyed by the older Canadian Provinces.

The remarkable progress of these Provinces, which previously to September, 1905, had a common history, and the conditions that now obtain, might almost lead one to regard them as having been for a long time in the advanced state in which the traveller now finds them. The evolution of conditions has, however, been rapid. As recently as fifty years ago this vast prairie region was the home of innumerable wild animals and bands of untamed Indians. The lordly bison, the hungry wolf, the cunning fox, the skulking coyote, the treacherous lynx, the timid badger, the industrious beaver, and many other species of wild animals, were found in their native haunts and supplied the nomadic Indian tribes with a means of livelihood.



A RIDER OF THE PLAINS

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

One of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police, whose headquarters are at Regina, Saskatchewan



The scene is changed. No longer does the bison roam the prairie. The few survivors of the countless herds whose gallop sounded like distant reverberating thunder are confined to the national parks and forest reserves, where they are protected by the Government, and are objects of undisguised interest to the descendants of the white man by whom so many of them were ruthlessly destroyed. The red man, who regarded the broad expanse of plain and the endless winding river valleys as his by right of inheritance, has been retired to the Indian reserve, where the remnant of a once numerous race follows a more prosaic existence than did his native ancestor, and now endeavours, not unsuccessfully, to imitate the customs of his pale-faced brother. The plains on which the buffalo thrived before the advent of the white man and the fatal Winchester, now support herds of cattle and horses. The domains of the Sioux, the Cree, the Ojibwa, and the Chippewan, have become the home of farmers from all parts of the world; and the cosmopolitan population gathered here under the sheltering folds of the Union Jack has demonstrated the fertile broad acres to be the granary of the Empire.

### THE PROGRESS OF THE WEST.

Since the organisation of the province, in 1905, Saskatchewan has enjoyed unexampled prosperity, and has far outstripped its sister provinces in ratio of increase of settlement and general development.

The Province produces more foodstuffs of various kinds, *per capita*, than any other half million of people that can be named. Moreover, the fertile area from which the result is produced is only 11 per cent. of the arable land within the boundaries of the province. In grain alone, Saskatchewan produces about 220,000,000 bushels of wheat a year. The average annual value of the agricultural products amounts to £74,000,000. The game and furs produce £400,000, and the poultry £2,000,000 a year. The live stock in the province include 1,200,000 horses, 1,420,000 cattle, 140,000 sheep, and 600,000 pigs.

There are in this province three railroads competing for business, with a mileage of over 7,400. This is a long step in advance

from the time when the Canadian Pacific Railway wound its solitary way across the plains. There is no country where the farmers are better organised for the protection of their own interests than here. They have the Grain Growers' Association and the Saskatchewan Co-operative Elevator Company. Both of these look after the interest of the grain raiser in every way, and the latter Company, aided by the Provincial Government, have relieved the farmer from his former almost intolerable position, when he was at the mercy of the line elevator owners, both as to the grading and price of his grain, and also suffering from his inability to get cars from the railways in which to load his grain for transportation at the sidings and platforms. Then there are horse, cattle, sheep, swine, and poultry breeders' associations, and numerous agricultural societies, all of which are liberally aided by the Provincial Government in their work of improving the various breeds of animals and in inculcating the most scientific and modern methods of farming in the minds of both old and young agriculturists. Prior to the establishment of the Agricultural College at Saskatoon, many young men were sent to the colleges at Guelph and Winnipeg, earning scholarships paid by the Government. Farmers' daughters, too, were sent by the Government to be instructed in domestic science.

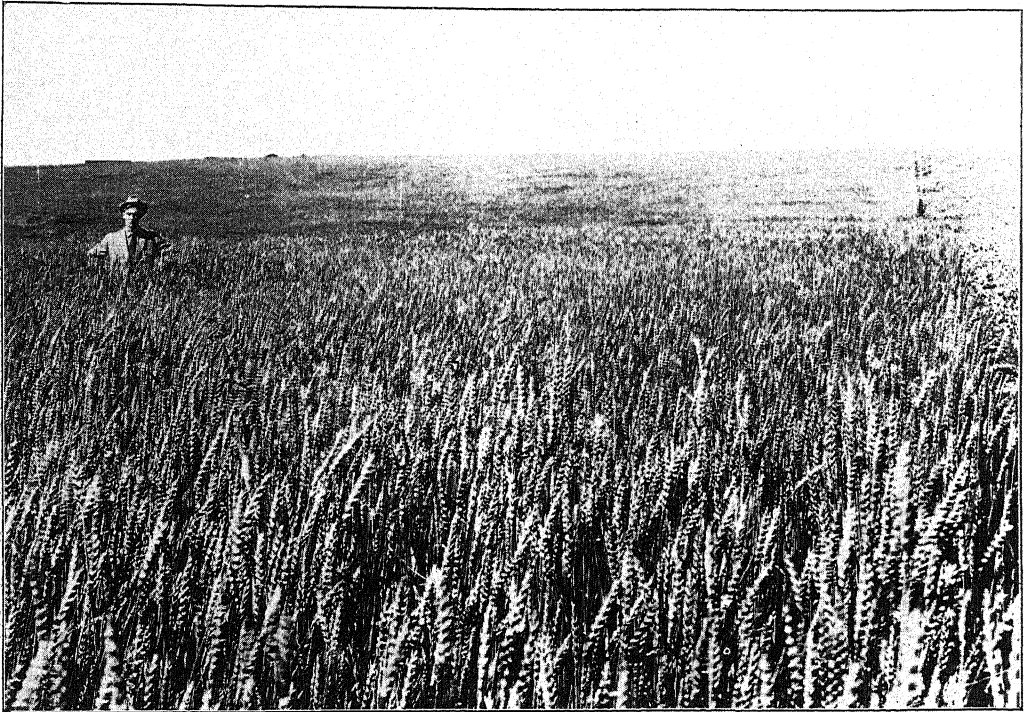
A great proportion of the country has now been formed into rural municipalities, who spend the money raised by taxation themselves, and, with the aid of Government grants, build roads and bridges. The capital invested in manufacturing undertakings amounts to about £8,000,000, and the value of the products to between £10,000,000 and £12,000,000 a year. With modern facilities and the best of machinery at his disposal, with 85 per cent. of the arable land still uncultivated, with the best blooded sires for his livestock, and all his interests well protected by the Government, the Saskatchewan farmer has reached a point where his position must be the envy of agriculturists the world over.

It has been said that the wealth of the farmer makes the wealth of the community, and this must be especially true as applied to this province, for there has been established such a foundation of agricultural resources

as must tend to enrich any and all of the population.

There are beds of valuable coal for the operation of any kind of industry requiring steam or electrical power. Water-power also is available in many places, particularly in the north, where the rapid-running Saskatchewan River and other streams are found. The finest kind of clay for brick or tile-making is quite abundant. Minerals of great value are not lacking, there being large iron ore deposits in many places as well as

there is a large variety of country; open plain, flat and undulating; park land, and valleys beautifully wooded, in the heart of which nestle lovely lakes, drained by winding creeks. Even in south-eastern Saskatchewan which, for the most part, is open plain, there are beautiful valleys, the most picturesque of which is the Qu'Appelle. Saskatchewan is really a country of open spaces which consist of either flat or undulating prairie intersected with stretches of brush and timber. It is impossible to go more than



THE SASKATCHEWAN PRAIRIE

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

aluminium. The more northerly portion of the country has not yet been at all well prospected, and it is expected that much mineral wealth will be revealed. The average annual output is about £350,000.

#### SCENERY.

The general impression that seems to prevail in the minds of those who have passed through the country on one of the trans-continental lines is that Saskatchewan is a flat, treeless expanse. As a matter of fact,

forty or fifty miles in any direction without striking timber of some kind, while a large portion of the northern settled section around Prince Albert and Battleford is park country; that is to say, open spaces dotted by bluffs or copses and giving to the country somewhat the appearance of an English park.

The western part of the second, and the eastern portion of the third Prairie Steppe, form the physical division of land in which Southern Saskatchewan is outlined. Above the rolling prairies are extensive forest tracts

thinning off as the northern boundary of the province is approached. The North and South Saskatchewan Rivers, both of which have their source in the Rocky Mountains, the Qu'Appelle and Carrot are the chief streams, intersecting the province from west to east. The Qu'Appelle runs its whole course through a rich agricultural country, and the scenery along the river is very beautiful. This stream and the South Saskatchewan River divide Central from Southern Saskatchewan, while the North Saskatchewan River is the separating line between Central and Northern Saskatchewan, and is the mighty current which, with Lake Winnipeg, connects the capital of Manitoba with Edmonton, the capital city of Alberta.

The southern strip of this great province is very like the adjoining section of Manitoba—a more or less gently rolling prairie, generally bare of trees. As you go west along this strip you find yourself at last in a district where the rainfall is uncertain, this being the only part of the American desert which is found outside the United States. Even here, however, many men who have had experience of dry lands further south are confidently making homes for themselves. The south-east of the province is a magnificent wheat region, and in the south-west, too, given sufficient rainfall, the grain-grower has nothing to complain of.

A little further north we come into the park lands; and well they deserve their name. Even here there is plenty of open prairie, where the new settler can put in his plough and run a long furrow without having to clear anything away first; but there are also innumerable little "bluffs" or coppices of birch and poplar, which are uncommonly useful, not only in providing the stock of fuel, but in sheltering the house and cattle, and to some extent the crops, from the wind. Here there is always plenty of rain, though not too much for pleasure. The country is dotted with lakes and creeks.

Saskatchewan's soils are among the richest in the world. Nature in her younger days was very kind to Western Canada, inasmuch as the lakes of the glacial age, which covered the plains, deposited the silts and sediments which now form the heavy rich loam on the clay sub-soils, which combination makes it the most fertile land in the world. The soil is exceedingly rich in nitrogen, potash, lime,

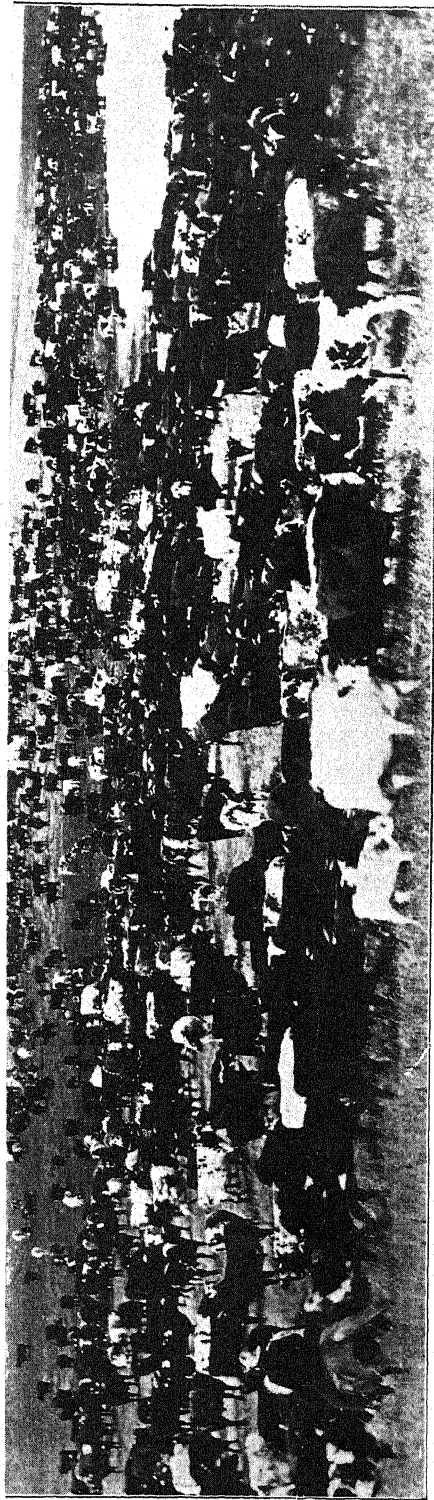
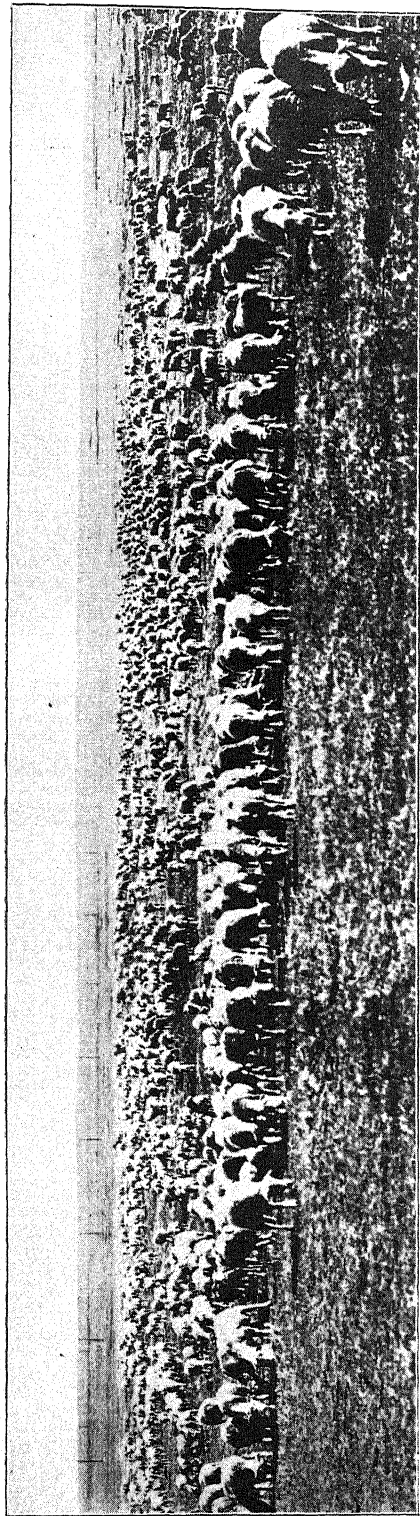
and phosphoric acid, the chemical properties most desirable in every way.

### CLIMATE.

The climate of Saskatchewan is marked by the striking contrast of two seasons only, winter and summer, bringing with them the alternation of fruitful labour and of an enforced repose that is divided between profitable industry and pleasure. Spring opens at nearly the same time all over the country. Early in April the alders and willows are in leaf, and the eastern anemone covers the southern expanse to the verge of the Arctic circle. There is more summer heat in May than in the eastern provinces. The nights, however, are cool, and throughout the period of greatest heat, in July, the cool night breezes beget a welcome and refreshing change, often accompanied by dews. This protects the cereals from the effects of drought even in dry seasons, and produces a rich growth of prairie grass. The winters are undoubtedly cold and long, but on the whole they are health-giving, agreeable, and singularly steady. The atmosphere and the snow are alike dry. The snowflake is hard and gritty and can be brushed off clothing like dust. No thaw, strictly speaking, takes places until spring except on the rare occasions of a chinook, that is, a south-west wind. Usually spring advances very rapidly, for though the mean temperature during April and May may be in the neighbourhood of 37°, the average daily maximum would be at least 30° to 40° higher. While the annual precipitation is comparatively light, the greater part of the rain falls during the growing season, and hence is particularly effective agriculturally. The distribution has been found one that is well adapted to the production of the highest quality of wheat.

### FARMING IN WESTERN CANADA.

The importance of this industry not only to the Prairie Provinces and the Dominion but also to the whole Empire is such as to warrant the inclusion here of a more detailed study of methods and conditions in the Canadian West. With a wheat crop greater than that produced by the remainder of Canada, and greater than the greatest crop of any small grain produced by any of the States of America, the Province of Saskatchewan would appear to have reached its



STOCK RAISING IN WESTERN CANADA

*Photo, C.P. Ry.*

climax in grain production, but when it is considered that only a small percentage of the arable land in the southern half, or settled portion, of the province is under cultivation, Saskatchewan can confidently look forward to making a record in grain production within the next decade. It is not in wheat alone that the increase in yield has been so great. The average value of the field crops increased from £25,000,800 to £50,193,076 in the ten years ending 1922, and had reached £74,000,000 by the year 1929. From these few facts the present position and future possibilities of agriculture in the West will be better understood.

There are a large number of flour mills, and, as a rule, prices for milling grain are better at these points than elsewhere, but the mills take only a small portion of the wheat, by far the largest part being exported to the United States and Great Britain. England being the world's greatest market, prices are to a large extent determined

by values on the Liverpool grain exchange. All Saskatchewan grain is sold according to the grades established by Dominion law. The inspectors, who are Government employees, decide the grade of all Canadian grain passing out of the country. The handling and marketing of grain is a subject which has received the special attention of both Federal and Provincial Governments during recent years. Under the Dominion Grain Act, a commission of three members was appointed to administer the Act. They have the same extensive jurisdiction over transportation, inspection, and interior and terminal storage of grain, that the railway commission has over railways. They may also, with the consent of the Government, and on an appropriation being made for the purpose, lease, purchase, or expropriate existing terminal elevators, or build new ones, should it be necessary to do so in order to protect the integrity of the grade certificate which has been placed upon the grain by the Inspection Department.



IN THE LAND OF THE BROAD HORIZON  
Cattle Ranching on the Western Prairie



A large portion of the grain grown in Saskatchewan is handled through the interior elevators, situated at country points, which are owned by grain dealers, milling companies, and farmers' societies. All grain dealers in the province must be licensed and bonded, thus securing the farmer against loss through either dishonest intention or financial embarrassment of the dealer.

There are few stations in Saskatchewan at which there are not one or more elevators. A farmer may deliver his wheat to the elevator and receive cash for it; or if he prefers to hold his wheat for a time with a prospect of obtaining a better price for it, he may store it in the elevator and secure a storage ticket setting forth that he is entitled to a stated number of bushels of wheat of a certain grade; or, if he prefers to load his grain into a car without dealing with the elevator he may do so. Loading platforms on which the farmer may drive with a cargo of wheat and load directly into the car, have been erected at nearly all shipping points in order to facilitate the handling of grain, and to give to any farmer having even a few hundred bushels of grain to sell, the privilege of an alternative method of shipping.

The conditions under which grain matures in Western Canada are different from those of the States to the south. Being much farther north, the season is shorter; but to make up for the short season the days are longer. In June one can read without artificial light from 9.30 a.m. until 9.30 p.m. The average precipitation in Saskatchewan is 17 in. per year, with 12½ in. during the growing season. Consequently a modification of the dry farming system is employed, and the most successful crops of wheat are grown on land ploughed in June or early in July, and disced, dragged, and rolled, thereby thoroughly eliminating weeds and conserving the moisture. Then for the next two or three years crops are grown. The second and third crops on this summer fallow are produced with large profit.

The breaking of the prairie and the planting of crops are done in various ways. The settler with limited means, farming a *quarter section*, often breaks with an ox team until he can better afford to invest in horses. Those who are farming on a big scale, and breaking large areas, use power. Very little of the land has to be cleared, as by

far the larger area is open prairie. Park land, so-called from the clumps of small poplars and willows growing in groups, are found in some localities, but this bush is small and easily cleared.

#### RANCHING IN WESTERN CANADA.

The native grass that sustained the millions of buffalo, antelope, elk, and moose that formerly roamed the prairies, still remains, and is available to-day for the stock of settlers. It is the richest native fodder known. In the opinion of experienced stockmen cattle can be developed earlier on the Western Canadian prairies than anywhere else. Each year thousands of two-year-old steers are imported into Saskatchewan from Texas and other western States of the Union and placed upon ranches in this province. When in prime condition they are shipped back to the Chicago stock market as beef cattle. While the live-stock industry has not kept pace with that of grain growing the farmers and stockmen are beginning to recognise their opportunities and are improving their beef and dairy herds. Stock breeders' associations have been organised. The Government maintains a livestock department, under the direction of a commissioner, and inspectors at the principal shipping points to guard the interests of the cattle men during the shipping season. Less than 16 per cent. of the arable land in the southern half, or settled portion of the province is under cultivation, and nearly all of that at present being alienated combines both grazing and farming land.

Whilst large areas, particularly in the south and south-western part of the province, are pre-eminently adapted to ranching, yet the day of the rancher in Saskatchewan is practically over. The large number of settlers and homesteaders that annually enter the province are gradually reducing the grazing lands until at the present time the industry is by no means extensive, and within a decade or so, at the present rate of settlement, will probably cease to exist entirely. This situation is not without its drawbacks as, whilst the large herds and flocks are being scattered, the average farmer has not yet begun to keep stock in quantity sufficient to make up the deficit, and consequently the numbers of livestock in the province are not, numerically, developing

proportionately with the grain growing section of the agricultural industry. A healthier state of affairs is, however, being established; larger numbers of the small farmers are going in for stock and the demand for pure-bred sires of every class and breed is greater than ever before. The dairy industry is also being firmly established in many sections, largely assisted by the Government creamery system, and the infusion of pure-bred dairy stock from Eastern Canada. Some parts of the province are especially adapted to dairy farming, which is becoming more and more popular, especially in the east, central and north-western portions. Owing to the large and steady increase in population the demand for all classes of livestock has increased tremendously. This has had the effect of giving a steadier market with a higher average price.

Saskatchewan has a total land area of 155,764,100 acres, of which about 75,216,863 acres have been surveyed. This latter area is divided as follows:—

	Acres.
Area under homesteads (including military headquarters) - - -	26,000,000
Area under pre-emptions and purchased homesteads - - -	5,400,000
Area under N.W. Half Breeds Scrip, sales, and special grants - - -	2,245,000
Area granted to railway companies - - -	15,177,063
Area granted to Hudson Bay Co. - - -	3,179,000
Area of School Land Endowment - - -	3,917,600
Area sold under irrigation system - - -	72,500
Area under timber licences - - -	385,000
Area under grazing leases - - -	1,700,000
Area reserved for forestry and other purposes - - -	2,000,000
Area available for entry - - -	9,100,000
Area of forest reserves and parks - - -	1,170,800
Area of road allowances - - -	1,451,100
Area of parish and river lots - - -	82,200
Area of Indian reserves - - -	1,171,900
Area of Indian reserves surrendered - - -	307,700
Area of water-covered lands (surveyed area) - - -	1,857,000
Total surveyed area - - -	75,216,863

### IMMIGRATION.

One of the most extraordinary things about the immigration which is pouring into Saskatchewan is the great mixture of nationalities of which the population is being made up. Every nation in Europe sends its representatives, many of them endowed with nothing but their brawny muscles, and a

strong determination to "make good" in the country of their adoption. The continental immigrant finds new habits, new customs, a new language and everything to handicap him heavily at the outset. The Galician, the Austrian and the Pole generally get work on some of the vast amount of railroad construction, and settles down into his place with a praiseworthy desire to give up his old customs and become a Canadian. They have, as a rule, no very definite destination, stopping wherever opportunities seem best. Large numbers of Americans have arrived of late years. Many of these, having sold their holdings in the States, arrive here well equipped for their new venture with money, stock and implements, and soon make their way, being already farmers. From the British Isles, but few of the immigrants are farmers, the majority being tradesmen or professional men of one sort or other—an army chiefly from the middle class, with an ambition of finding a home where their efforts will be justly rewarded. This miscellaneous collection of peoples is slowly being woven into the fibre of a nation, and must result in the formation of a strong industrious, and enterprising people.

The labour market, generally, is divided into three classes, viz., farm labour, artisan, and unskilled labour. In the past, farm labour, including both outside and domestic help was about the only class of labour in constant demand, but the great industrial and mechanical development of recent years has created a small but ever growing demand for labour in the various classes of the building trades, also unskilled labour in the cities, railway construction and logging camps.

Farm work, however, still furnishes the most important and regular market in Saskatchewan for labour. Men are employed in many cases for the whole year, but some farmers who have not work for men throughout the whole twelve months engage them only for the crop season, or from April to October. During these months the crops are grown, harvested and threshed, and many farmers are able before November to market the greater part of their grain.

In the seven cities and the larger towns there is, during the spring, summer, and fall months, a demand for artisans and mechanics of the building trades. This demand, however, is by no means steady or regular,

but fluctuates according to the general conditions controlling the building season, therefore, artisans and tradesmen contemplating coming to Saskatchewan would do well to first obtain reliable information as to the conditions then prevailing in their respective callings.

### NATION-MAKING.

The general conditions surrounding labour in Saskatchewan are very favourable. A Factories Act is in force which ensures the safety, comfort and health of all employees

province. This bureau will also supply any and all information to those who make inquiry regarding any phase of the labour question in Saskatchewan.

The securing and distribution of harvest labourers is an important branch of the activities of the Bureau of Labour. Acting in co-operation with the railways, each year thousands of harvesters are secured for Saskatchewan farmers, very many of whom afterwards become permanent settlers.

From the earliest days of the history of this province, legislation has kept pace with



WINTER SPORT ON THE PRAIRIE

*Photo, C.N. Rlys.*

in factories. Saskatchewan has also recognised the principal of compensation for workmen for injuries, and has recently placed upon her statute books an Act giving effect to this principle. A Bureau of Labour has been established. Its object is to collect information and statistics relating to employment, wages, and hours of labour, strikes, or other labour difficulties, co-operation, trade unions, labour organisations, the relations between capital and labour, and other subjects of interest alike to the employers and employees of the

the needs of the rapidly-growing community, and a brief sketch of the progress made in this direction is not without interest.

Immigration followed the lines of railway. Settlements grew into villages, and villages into towns and cities, so that the demand for suitable government soon asserted itself. This was met by proper legislation, and as those towns and villages increased in number and size they were gradually entrusted with greater powers, until now they have a measure of self-government equal to that of any country in the world.

Early in history we find the germs of a judicature ordinance, and a Supreme Court for the Territories was organised. The civil law is based upon the common law of England, with such slight modifications as would naturally suggest themselves owing to the different conditions. The legislative problems presenting themselves to the notice of the administration of a new country, a nation, as it were, in its embryo stage, were such as would naturally arise from the conditions in which the people found themselves, and the acts and ordinances which followed were often the result of suggestions made by the people.

The registration of deeds, the form of indentures, the administration of justice, including the appointment of justices of the peace in and for the Territories, the protection of the property of married women, the exemption of certain property from seizure, mortgages, workmen's liens, and many other kindred matters, were dealt with from time to time, including the regulation of the legal and medical professions. A Board of Education was organised consisting of the Lieutenant-Governor and four members.

Under the old North-West Council a statute labour ordinance was enforced, in order to provide for local improvements, and under this ordinance the cost of these improvements could be paid for in labour instead of money. It had been the custom to vote an equal sum of money to each electoral district for public improvements, which sum was expended under the supervision of the individual member for the district. Later, the various departments of the public service were organised, and through the Department of Public Works improvements were carried out where they were most needed.

One of the first matters dealt with by the North-West Assembly, which replaced the North-West Council in 1888, was the liquor traffic. At one time the prohibition of the manufacture, importation and sale of intoxicants was in existence, and liquor was only procurable by permits issued by the Lieutenant-Governor. Here, as elsewhere in the world, this did not work well, and later a licensing system was resorted to.

Other subjects for domestic legislation included ordinances dealing with marriage, ferries, bridges, infectious diseases, prairie

fires, noxious weeds, hotels and boarding houses, gambling, billiards licences, fences, agricultural societies, the holding of agricultural exhibitions, stock associations, the herding of cattle and the grazing of sheep. A system of brands and their registration was formulated by the Department of Agriculture, agricultural societies were organised, and steps taken to improve the breeds of stock and seeds of cereals.

The past has witnessed wonderful progress and development. Many measures of far-reaching importance have been moulded into law, Government machinery has been organised and perfected, and the foundations of provincial institutions have been laid.

During the first few years of the province's existence, a vast amount of necessary legislation was put through. A few of the more salient features of the legislation which have been enacted include the organisation of the provincial courts, supreme and surrogate; registration of real property; municipal legislation for the creation of cities, towns, villages, and rural municipalities; the establishment of high schools, collegiate institutes; the formation of public libraries; the creation of the University of Saskatchewan; free textbooks; the Supplementary Revenue Act; redistribution of provincial constituencies, election law, taxation of all corporations and railway companies; telephones, public health; mechanics', woodmen's, and threshers' liens; seed grain; wolf bounty; hail insurance, and co-operative associations.

There are four Acts now in force looking to the security of employees and the protection of their wages. The Masters' and Servants' Act not only practically guarantees the wages of the employee, but also gives him a means of redress in case he is ill-used or wrongfully dismissed. The Mechanics' Lien Act gives him a lien for his wages against any building on which he may have been employed, and also on the land on which the building is erected. The Woodmen's Lien Act gives the employee a lien on the logs or timber of the lumbering company. The Threshers' Employees Act gives him a claim on the money earned by the threshing machine, which takes priority over every other claim.

All the industrial legislation of Saskatchewan is modelled with the intention of surrounding the worker with all possible safeguards and privileges, and the Factories

Act is no exception to the rule. No child under fourteen years may be employed in a factory, no youth of less than sixteen, and no girl of less than eighteen years old may be employed in any dangerous or unwholesome factory, and no females or youths may work more than eight hours a day or forty-five hours a week.

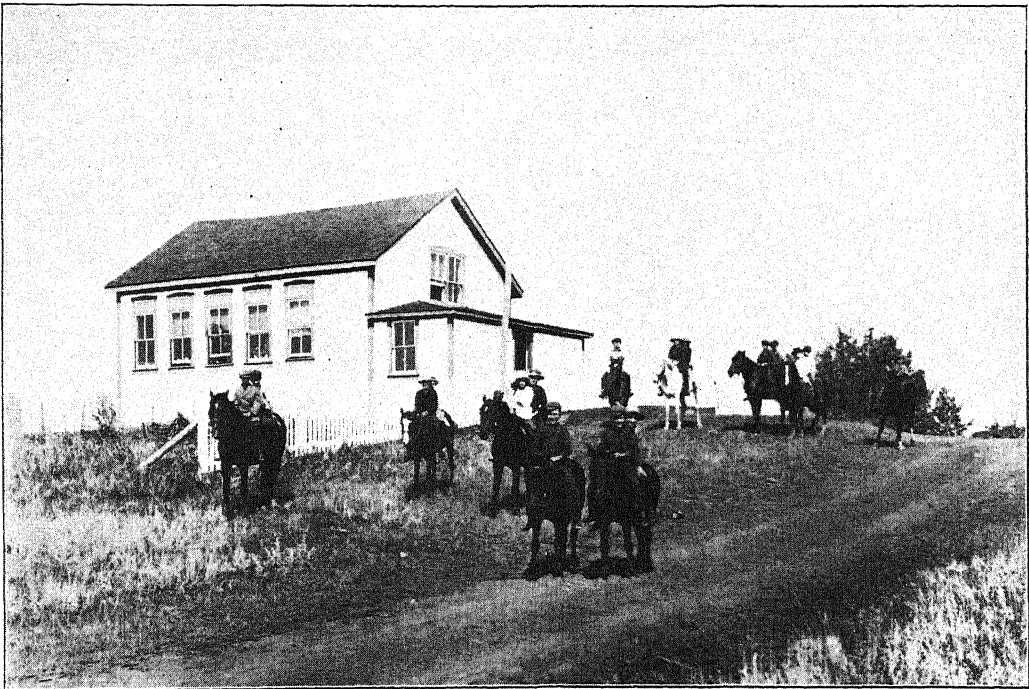
The Workmen's Compensation Act is a step in advance of acts of a similar nature in force in other parts of Canada. It secures the right to compensation from employers for injuries suffered through accidents and the compensation is payable whether the injury is caused through negligence or not.

#### EDUCATIONAL SYSTEM.

Newcomers to this province need have no fear that the educational requirements of their children will be overlooked. New school districts are being created at a very rapid rate. The maximum size of the districts is 25 square miles, but the majority have an area of from 16 to 20 miles. There must be at least four residents in a district who would

be liable to assessment, and at least twelve children between five and sixteen years of age. The schools are maintained by local rates and Government aid. The school work is divided into eight standards, of which the last three are mainly for preparing students for diplomas enabling them to take training at the normal school. After completing this normal school training, an interim certificate is given, which is made a professional teacher's certificate after one year's successful teaching. In 1907 the Secondary Education Act was passed, and as a result a number of high schools and colleges have been established, and each year sees the addition of several others to the number.

In the year 1909 the University of Saskatchewan was located at Saskatoon, and in the same year the College of Agriculture in connection was organised. In 1910 the educational work of the Department of Agriculture was transferred to the University. The chief aim of the college is to give students a practical training in all the various branches of agriculture, and also to give them such an



GOING TO SCHOOL ON THE PRAIRIE

Photo, C.P. Rly.



education in other ways as to make them good citizens of the province. The college with its staff investigates all questions pertaining to soils, crops, livestock, dairying, and other agricultural matters, and issues the information thus gained to farmers' societies and associations all over the province. By means of the lecturers in its extension department valuable information is carried to the farmers, thus giving those even in the most remote districts a chance to learn of the work that is being done at the University. In order that the students may learn the best ways of handling livestock, fine horses, cattle, sheep, swine and poultry are kept. The farm machinery building is well equipped so that students may familiarise themselves with the latest types of implements, including petrol and steam-engines, the farm being large enough to permit of the use of these tractors.

The extension department provides judges for stallion shows, ploughing matches, good farming, and standing grain competitions, and for the agricultural exhibitions, giving lectures and information on all kinds of agricultural problems. In short, this department endeavours in every possible way to convey to the farmers of Saskatchewan the best information regarding the agricultural practices found by experience to be best suited to the conditions now prevailing in the province.

#### **MINING AND TRANSPORT.**

It has been ascertained by geologists and explorers that the rock formations in the far north of the province are similar to those that occur in the northern parts of Ontario, and therefore it may be assumed that similar discoveries of minerals are likely to be made in this province. Even now samples of ore have been brought from a district about 200 miles north of Prince Albert showing the presence of copper, silver, and gold. A valuable vein of gold has been discovered in the Beaver Lake district and many claims have been registered at the Dominion Land Office, Prince Albert. There are valuable deposits of pigments near Duck Lake. Good samples of ochres have been discovered at Cold Lake and also at Howell.

Coal-mining has, however, attained the greatest development of all mining industries, and the importance of the deposits are well

recognised. A Government commission was appointed some few years ago to make thorough investigation, not only into the value and extent of the coal bearing fields, but also into the best means of rendering this resource commercially valuable.

For forty years the main line of the Canadian Pacific has crossed the Province of Saskatchewan from east to west, about 100 miles north of the border of the United States. Its most important branch is the "Soo" line from Moose Jaw to St. Paul, Minn., though its lines to Edmonton and Lacombe, Alberta—both progressive commercial points—are daily carrying more traffic and passengers. The main line of the Canadian Northern, from Winnipeg to Edmonton, crosses the entire province, the south-eastern portion being honey-combed by its many branches. The Grand Trunk Pacific line parallels that of the Canadian Northern at a distance of from fifteen to forty miles, and many additional offshoots from the main thoroughfare are contemplated.

The railroads are the pioneers in this vast area waiting to be awakened to productiveness, and settlement goes hand in hand with their extension into a new region. The province is so well served by the Canadian Pacific, Canadian Northern, and Grand Trunk Pacific that few of the established settlements are more than ten to twenty miles from transportation; new settlements do not have to wait long for railway advantages. The Hudson Bay Railway affords a short haul to ocean shipping from Saskatchewan grain fields.

#### **REGINA.**

The capital and seat of the Provincial Government of Saskatchewan is situated on the main line of the Canadian Pacific Railway, 357 miles west of Winnipeg (the capital of Manitoba). It is also a terminus of the Canadian Northern Railway's branch lines. The city, which is rapidly growing, has a population of about 40,000, and is situated in the centre of a fine agricultural district. The manufacturing industry is, however, not a very large one, but Regina is the commercial metropolis and distributing centre for the whole province. There are good educational facilities, including a collegiate institute and the Provincial Normal School. It is



REGINA, SASKATCHEWAN  
One of the grain centres of the Western Prairie

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

the headquarters of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police, a force justly celebrated throughout the Empire. The city itself is being rapidly laid out and improved on the most modern lines, and there are many fine buildings, including hotels, clubs and theatres.

Next in importance to the capital comes Saskatoon, which is often called the Kansas City of Canada. It has about 32,000 residents, and is commercially and educationally important. Saskatoon is the seat of the University of Saskatchewan, and a railway centre. Its importance as a distributing and wholesale depôt is demonstrated by the large number of warehouses that have been erected.

Moose Jaw, with about 20,000 inhabitants, is a railway junction, the connections made there influence to a considerable extent the trade of large sections of the province. It has extensive stockyards, a terminal elevator of about 40,000,000 bushels' capacity which greatly facilitates the storage and movement of the heavy grain crops of the surrounding

districts, and many good schools. It is a fine and rapidly growing city with all modern conveniences. The other important towns are Indian Head, North Battleford, Prince Albert, Swift Current, Weyburn, Estevan, and Yorkton.

### Province of Alberta

This province lies directly east of the Rocky Mountains, and has an area of 255,285 square miles, or about 160,000,000 acres. Of this, there are 100,000,000 acres of excellent agricultural land. The population of Alberta at the commencement of the century was 73,000, but it has increased since then nearly 900 per cent. The census of 1921 gave the number as 588,454. By 1929 it had increased to 646,000.

### HISTORY.

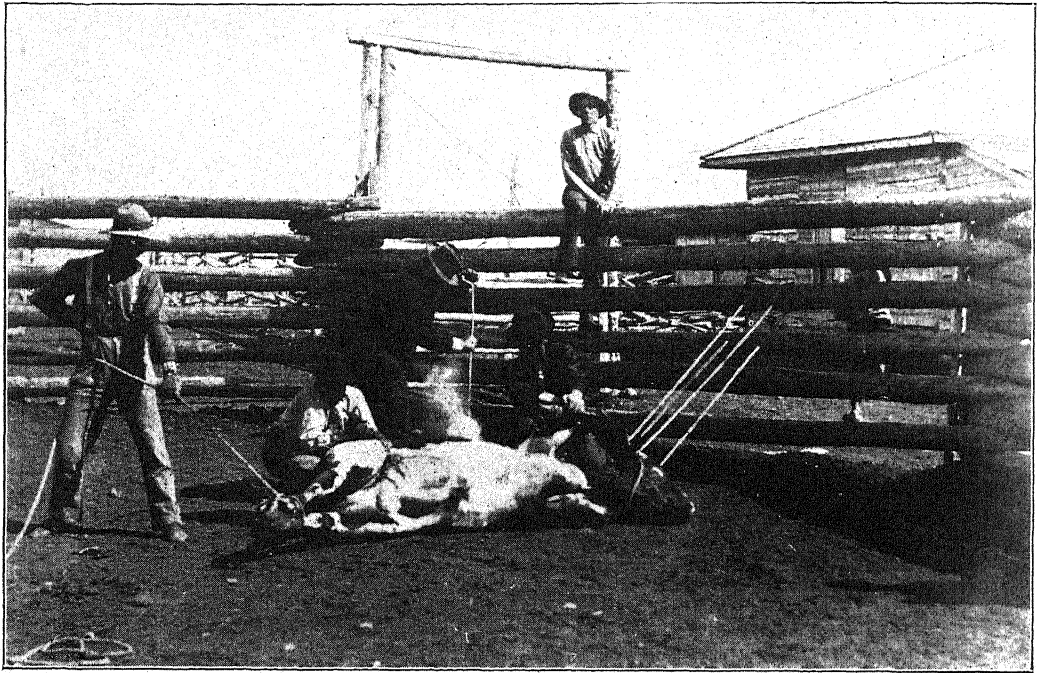
This province was created an autonomous political division of Canada in 1905, previous to which it was the "Far West" of the North-West Territories. In its earliest days

of occupation by white men it was a valuable field of operation for fur-trading companies among which the Hudson Bay Company was dominant.

It was then known only as a remote portion of Rupert's Land. In 1835 a system of local government was established in this Western territory by the Hudson Bay Company. In 1869, the Company relinquished its charter and exclusive rights in Rupert's Land. This portion of Canada was then designated the North-West Territories, and a system of

criminal statutes are enacted by the Dominion or Federal Parliament. The Provincial Legislature deals with all matters of a local nature, and the Government is responsible for the administration of criminal law.

Since autonomy, the Alberta Government has enacted up-to-date labour legislation, and has a vigorous and highly successful system of demonstration farms and agricultural training schools, not only for the farmers' children but, by means of travelling schools, for the farmer himself. The Province of Alberta



BRANDING CATTLE ON AN ALBERTA RANCH

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

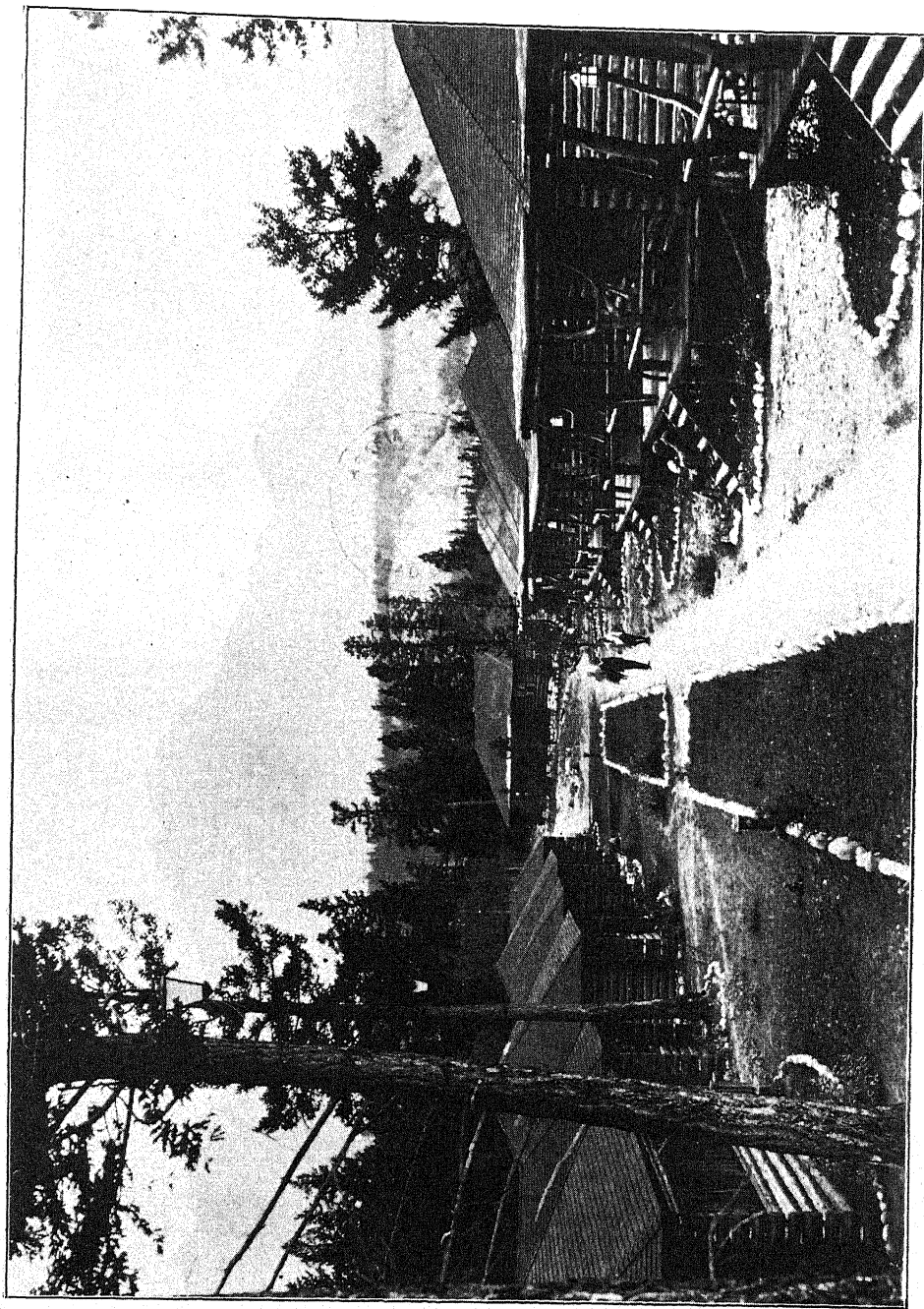
territorial government was organised, with a Lieutenant-Governor appointed from Ottawa. Later, the south-western portion of the Territories was named Alberta, one of the names of the Princess Louise, wife of the Marquis of Lorne, Governor-General of Canada at the time. In 1905, the name was continued when the present province was created out of the old provisional territorial districts of Alberta and Athabasca.

The Government is similar to that of other Canadian provinces. Laws governing trade and commerce, coinage, banking, military and naval defence, postal service, and the

is represented in the Federal Senate and House of Commons; its local legislature consisting of the Lieutenant-Governor with the Legislative Assembly.

#### SCENERY AND CLIMATE.

The province comprises an area greater than any country in Europe save Russia. It lies between the 49th and 60th parallels of latitude, wholly within the North Temperate Zone. It is a vast sloping plateau, from 2,000 to 4,000 ft. above sea-level. The Rocky Mountains form its western frontier, and the 110th meridian west of Greenwich, its eastern



THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS FROM THE ALBERTA FOOTHILLS

Pyramid Avenue, Jasper Park Lodge, one of the great natural parks in the Rocky Mountains (area 4,400 square miles)

*Photo, C.N. Rly.*

boundary. Its principal characteristics may be roughly classified as open, treeless prairie in the southern portion; park country diversified with trees and streams in the central districts, and, in the north, a country of wilder outline, varying from open prairie stretches to heavily timbered regions. Within this province lie the sources of two great river systems—the Saskatchewan, which waters the inland plains and unites with the Hudson Bay water system, and the Mackenzie, which empties into the Arctic Ocean and drains about 1,000,000 square miles of territory. Its two greatest arteries are, however, the Peace and Athabasca Rivers.

The distinctive physical feature of Alberta is the magnificent range of the Rocky Mountains, which forms more than half the dividing line between Alberta and British Columbia. This magnificent chain affords scenery unsurpassed even in the Alps, while from the eternal snows crowning its lofty peaks, flow great streams, providing water to the plains. The warm winds of the Pacific, sweeping through the many passes, moderate the climate in winter with the balmy “chinook.” There are four principal rivers in the province all rising in the Rocky Mountains and flowing easterly or north-easterly. These are the South Saskatchewan, the North Saskatchewan, the Athabasca and the Peace. The North and South Saskatchewan Rivers, after crossing Alberta, join in Central Saskatchewan, and form the real Saskatchewan River, from which that province derives its name. The Athabasca and the Peace flow in a more northerly direction and empty into Lake Athabasca in the north-eastern corner of Alberta. Each of these rivers has, of course, a great number of tributary streams of various sizes, while throughout the province are found a large number of lakes, ranging in size from Lake Athabasca, 120 miles long, and Lesser Slave Lake, 60 miles long, to tiny ponds.

The province may be divided into three great belts or districts. The southern, the central and the northern.

The southern, or true prairie section, extends from the international boundary to about 100 miles north of Calgary, including the basin of the South Saskatchewan. This district consists principally of rolling prairie land, little timber being found. The altitude

is high and the rainfall light. This is the great ranching country of Alberta, where herds of cattle and bands of horses feed the year round on the prairie. Of late years, however, farmers have commenced to settle in this district, large irrigation works have been constructed. On the land thus irrigated splendid crops of grain and vegetables of all kinds have been produced. Fall wheat has been found to thrive excellently in this section even without irrigation.

The central section extends from the Red Deer River, northward, including the basin of the North Saskatchewan, to the high of land between this river and the Athabasca. The country here has a park-like appearance, consisting of areas of open prairie broken by clumps or stretches of woodland. The timber consists chiefly of poplar and spruce. This portion of Alberta is particularly adapted for “mixed” or general farming. Grain crops of all kinds yield abundantly; spring and fall wheat, oats, barley, rye and flax being the most common. Besides the native grasses, themselves providing excellent fodder, timothy and clover are grown successfully. This makes the district especially favourable for stock of all kinds.

The northern district comprises the basins of the Athabasca and Peace Rivers. It is generally well wooded, though areas of park country, and even of open prairie, are found in several places.

The district contains an immense amount of valuable timber, the most common being the poplar and spruce. Owing to the lack of railroads this northern belt has not as yet been settled to any great extent, but the experience of the settlements which have been established is that the climate and quality of soil—vast tracts of it—are quite as favourable to successful and profitable farming, both grain growing and stock raising, as the central or southern districts.

Alberta's climate is one of the boasts of its residents. The altitude varying from 2,000 to 4,000 feet, ensures a dry, bracing quality of the air. The rainy months are June and July, very little rain falling at any other season. Winter sets in about the middle of November and breaks before the middle of March. Even in this season, the cold is not extreme for more than three weeks each winter. The snowfall is light, chinook winds coming through mountain



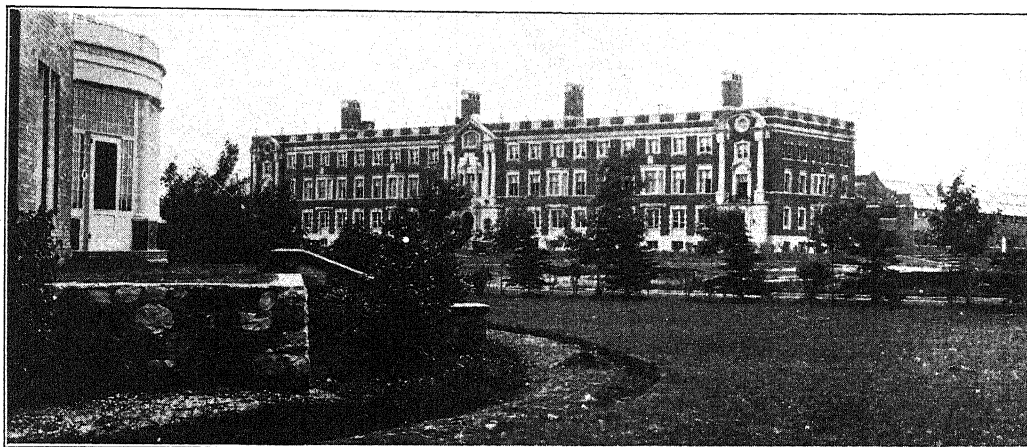
passes from the Pacific bring in several quite warm periods during the winter season. They melt the snow on the ranges, and cattle usually pasture on the open prairies the entire winter. Spring and autumn are beautiful seasons.

### AGRICULTURE.

The opening of the second decade of the present century saw less than 3 per cent. of Alberta's available agricultural land under cultivation. Each year, however, sees a growing number of settlers, and an increase of hundreds of thousands of acres in the area put under crop.

successfully grown in the south, in the vicinity of the Raymond sugar factory. Field roots and vegetables give excellent yields in Alberta soil. A large tract of land—over 1,900,000 acres—of Southern Alberta has been put under a satisfactory irrigation scheme by the Canadian Pacific Railway Company. Other smaller irrigation systems exist.

Building material and fuel in unlimited quantities are procurable in the forests of Northern Alberta, for the timber lands extend hundreds of miles on the north side of the Saskatchewan River. The poplar, birch, pine, white and black spruce, Douglas fir



THE UNIVERSITY, EDMONTON, ALBERTA

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

Wheat is more extensively grown in the southern districts than elsewhere. In central Alberta—the Park Country—mixed farming is the usual occupation of the agriculturist. Dairying and stock raising are carried out on more scientific principles yearly, and success in each is beyond question. Wheat, barley, oats, flax and rye are the principal cereals grown, the climate and soil of Alberta being particularly favourable for the production of spring wheat. The "Alberta Red" wheat of the southern section has carried off several international prizes, and has now a well-recognised standing in the world's markets as equal to the wheats grown in Hungary and Bohemia.

Alfalfa is produced in Southern Alberta to a large extent, two or three crops being taken from the land each season. Sugar beets (15 per cent. saccharine) are also suc-

cessfully grown in the south, in the vicinity of the Raymond sugar factory. Field roots and vegetables give excellent yields in Alberta soil. A large tract of land—over 1,900,000 acres—of Southern Alberta has been put under a satisfactory irrigation scheme by the Canadian Pacific Railway Company. Other smaller irrigation systems exist.

Building material and fuel in unlimited quantities are procurable in the forests of Northern Alberta, for the timber lands extend hundreds of miles on the north side of the Saskatchewan River. The poplar, birch, pine, white and black spruce, Douglas fir and larch are among the trees contained in these great forest belts, and in the smaller woodland areas of Central Alberta. The total area under crops is approximately 13,000,000 acres. The average annual value of the field crops is £40,000,000, of which wheat accounts for £23,600,000, and oats £4,400,000. The live stock in the province include 1,365,000 cattle, 830,000 horses, 800,000 pigs, 400,000 sheep, and 5,000,000 poultry. The dairy industry is considerable, the production of butter alone averaging 20,000,000 pounds. There are Government demonstration farms, including three free schools of agriculture.

Excellent sport is afforded by the quantities of game, especially in the north of the province. Ducks, partridges, snipe, plover, geese and prairie chicken are plentiful. Moose, deer and caribou abound in the

northern forests, and the fur-trader reaps a rich harvest from otter, mink, ermine, wolverine, marten, badger, squirrel, bear, fox, wolf, and lynx. Fishing for whitefish and pike is extremely remunerative in Alberta, though trout and pickerel are taken in considerable quantities. The annual value of the fisheries of the province is a little more than £175,000. The Dominion Government, in response to popular demand, has taken steps to prevent the total extinction of the buffalo, and has established parks, where there are in the neighbourhood of 1,200 of these former monarchs of the plains, living the life of their ancestors, secure from slaughter.

### MINING AND TRANSPORT.

Alberta is rich in minerals. Nearly the whole of the province appears to be underlain with coal. Geological reports presented at the Conference of International Geologists, in 1913, estimate that Alberta has 14½ per cent. of the known coal reserves of the world, 1,075,039,000,000 metric tons being the approximate official estimate of these reserves.

The coal varies in quality. Anthracite, bituminous and lignite coal are mined in different sections. In the Edmonton series of coal-bearing rocks the coal so far mined is lignite, but only the higher strata of coal have as yet been touched, because of the large quantities lying close to the surface. In many instances, large seams of coal laid bare by the eroding action of the rivers, are found exposed on their banks. Vast tracts of country in the Lethbridge and Medicine Hat districts contain deposits of lignite coal, harder and heavier than that of the Edmonton series. Closer to the Rocky Mountains in the north, as well as in the Bankhead district, are valuable deposits of anthracite. Coal-mining operations are growing steadily. The output of the various mines averages about 7,000,000 tons a year.

Coal is not the only mineral found in Alberta, although up to the present it is the main one. The rocks that underlie the whole province have as their basic member the Dakota sandstone, a porous rock and suitable reservoir for oil. The successful borings for oil in the Calgary district have recently demonstrated the

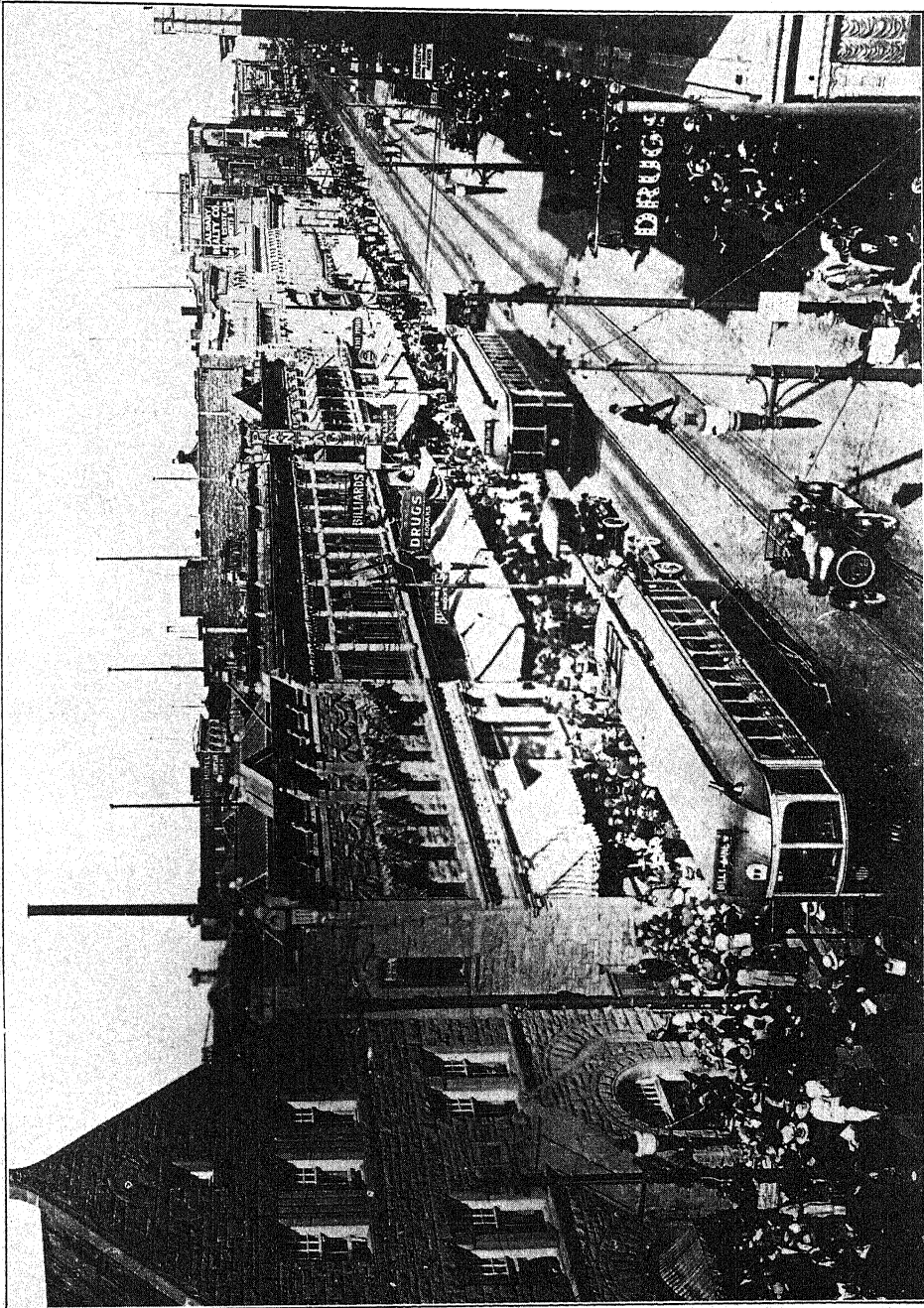
truth of the geologists' predictions for Alberta. It is fully expected that when Northern Alberta is more fully opened up for settlement and developed, that oil will be found there also.

Along the Athabasca River there are rich deposits of tar sands. Analysis of these shows 12.42 per cent. of pure bitumen or mineral tar. With little refining, they may be used for paving, roofing, and other purposes. The Athabasca beds of tar sands are estimated to cover 1,000 square miles, with an average thickness of 150 feet. The district also provides two of the essentials for glass-making—fuel and silica. Salt, gypsum, limestone rock, clay for brick-making and pottery, are found at various points in the province.

Natural gas exists in large quantities in Alberta. The city of Medicine Hat supplies this gas to the citizens for light, heat and manufacturing purposes at the lowest rates in North America. Calgary, Lethbridge, Castor, Tofield and other cities and towns are also lighted with this product. One gas well alone produces 3,000,000 cubic feet every day.

The pioneer transcontinental railway—the Canadian Pacific, which reached Alberta in 1883—played an important part in the opening up of the province. It has been followed by two other transcontinental railways, and the branches of these main lines, together with some minor roads, have gradually formed a network of communication over the southern and central portions. Three lines are at present pushing their way further each year into the great fertile hinterland of Northern Alberta.

The Canadian Pacific Railroad was the first to pierce the lofty Rockies, running from Medicine Hat through the Crow's Nest and Kicking Horse Passes. Two other great passes are the Yellow Head and Peace River, which, first traversed by daring explorers, have since been made highways of traffic. The main line of the Canadian Pacific runs east and west through Calgary, and from there sends a branch north to Edmonton, and another south to Macleod. From the Edmonton branch there are two offshoots starting at Lacombe and Wetaskiwin. Other branches diverge from the main line at different points, and extend into the newer districts.



#### CALGARY

One of the principal cities of Alberta. It has developed during quite recent years from a "cow-town" to a busy and up-to-date commercial centre, with a population of about 67,000

*Photo, C.P. Rev.*

The Canadian Northern connects Edmonton with Winnipeg and Port Arthur, and continuations bring the capital city of Alberta into direct communication with Vancouver to the west, and Calgary to the south. The same system has also a line to Calgary from the east, as well as extensions westward into the coalfields, and from Edmonton north toward the Peace River.

The Grand Trunk traverses the central portion of the province from east to west, passing through Edmonton, and has branch lines built and projected in a south-westerly direction. The last twenty years has seen Alberta's 600 miles of railway multiplied over twelve times, and construction continues at the rate of about one mile a day.

The building of roads and bridges for vehicular traffic, commenced under the former Territorial Government, has been most energetically continued by the Provincial Administration. The rapid influx of settlers caused a demand for highways on every side. Consequently, each year the provincial authorities, working in co-operation with the local boards, have employed numerous regiments of road and bridge builders in each portion of the province requiring such public work. A wide-reaching system of rural telephones exist in the province, owned and maintained by the Government.

### EDUCATION AND SPORT.

The province controls the educational system within its boundaries. As with other forms of development in Alberta, the growth in educational facilities is so rapid that for some years past a school district has been organised somewhere in the province nearly every day. Salaries to teachers are generous, and a high standard of ability is required of children up to the usual age, but in those rural districts which are still in a partially settled condition, it has not always been found practicable to rigidly enforce this clause of the School Act. Higher education is admirably provided in all the larger centres of population by means of high schools, colleges, and academies, working together with the University of Alberta. This vigorous young institution grew in the first six years of its existence so rapidly that 450 students were enrolled, and the teaching staff comprised

nearly fifty men from the older Universities of Europe and North America.

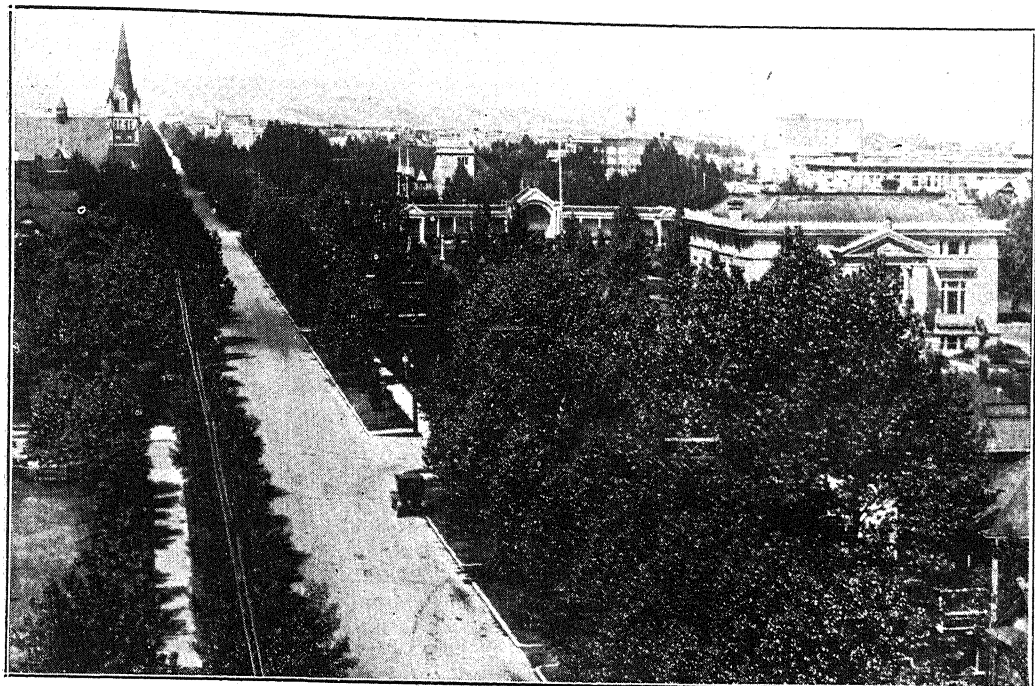
Alberta offers many attractions to the sportsman and lover of outdoor life. The Rocky Mountains are a paradise for mountain climbers, as well as for hunters of big game, while throughout the province, riding, canoeing, fishing, and duck shooting are general.

There are close seasons for game and various regulations for its protection, but, with the exception of the two great National Parks of the mountains, there are no game preserves. In these parks are to be found mountain sheep and goats, caribou, black and grizzly bear, fox, marten, ermine, mink, deer, as well as grouse, duck, snipe, and hare. Among outdoor sports largely entered into by Albertans in their appropriate seasons are baseball, lacrosse, football, hockey, curling, skating, and ski-ing.

### EDMONTON.

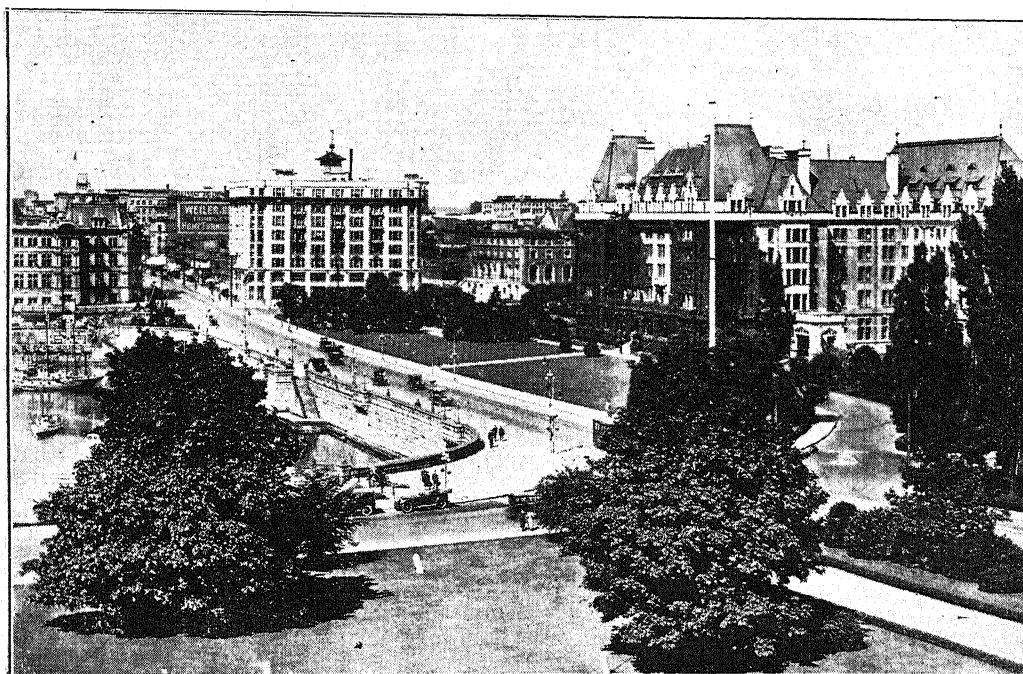
The capital of the province of Alberta is pleasantly situated on the banks of the Saskatchewan River. It has grown from 3,167 inhabitants in 1901 and 58,830 in 1921 to just under 69,000 in 1930. It owns and operates all civic utilities—street railway, light, water, and power. It has an admirably conceived group of Parliament buildings, a Provincial University, with a staff of professors and hundreds of students, twenty-nine churches, twenty-four schools, five colleges, a hotel costing £400,000, and two packing plants. This city is on the way to becoming a great Canadian centre. It is not only the metropolis of an immense district of fertile farms and valuable coalfields, but it is strategically situated as the gateway of the rich northern hinterland now on the eve of rapid development. Three great transcontinental railway systems centre here, and the city lies over coal-beds containing millions of tons of fuel.

The manufacturing industry of Alberta is, as yet, in its infancy. Nevertheless, it has increased during the past twenty years from £262,675 to £17,840,000. The principal centres are Calgary (£6,000,000) and Edmonton (£4,100,000). There is considerable scope for the establishment of industrial enterprises in this province, because of the close proximity of coal-fields, and the railway communications with both east and west.



CALGARY, ALBERTA, CANADA  
13th Avenue

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*



VICTORIA, BRITISH COLUMBIA  
Causeway and Empress Hotel

*Photo, Canadian Government*



If long apprenticeship or great skill were not required, labour would be fairly plentiful, especially during the winter months.

### CALGARY.

Although of recent development, Alberta has six cities and about fifty smaller towns. The largest city in the whole province is CALGARY, which has a population of nearly 70,000, and is a railway, commercial, agricultural, and live-stock centre. It has a University, several colleges, a Normal School, about forty public schools, and is the centre of an irrigation system upon which the Canadian Pacific Railway Company has expended over £3,000,000. Factories and wholesale houses are numerous. The city owns the public utilities of street railway, water, light, and power. There are extensive agricultural districts subsidiary to Calgary. The oil-fields south of the city, which are now being energetically developed, will also enhance its future development.

### OTHER TOWNS.

BANFF is a beautiful resort in the Rocky Mountains, 80 miles west of Calgary. It is thronged with tourists, especially during the summer months. Of its many hotels, one has accommodation for 100 guests. Here, and at Jasper Park in the Rockies, west of Edmonton, the scenery surpasses that of the Alps. These great natural parks in the mountains are rapidly becoming haunts of the world's pleasure seekers, as well as the playgrounds of Albertans. MACLEOD, at one time the centre of a noted ranching district, has become, through recent developments, the main point in a wheat country noted for its "No. 1 hard." It is a railway junction of importance, and is developing into a big distributing centre, not only for the farming regions hereabouts, but for the numerous mining towns springing up in the pass to the West. LETHBRIDGE owes its origin to the development of the immense coalfields in its neighbourhood. Coal-mining and ranching were the two earliest industries in the district. To-day the order is changed to coal-mining, wheat-raising, and lastly, ranching. Smaller industries are springing up here. This is an attractive city, which has obtained a large portion of its population from Great Britain.

MEDICINE HAT has developed in a few years from an old-time "cow-town" to an ambitious industrial centre. Natural gas supplies light, power, and fuel to the entire city. Because of this, power is supplied to industries at very cheap rates. RED DEER is ideally situated in a park country, both fertile and beautiful. It is the seat of an excellent ladies' college and other boarding schools, and is likely to attract other residential institutions. Mixed farming and dairying chiefly occupy farmers in this vicinity.

The north country, because of its longer sunshine and the influence of chinooks, is as mild in climate as Central Alberta, and already at Grouard and Grand Prairie are settlements of thousands of people who went into the country ahead of the railway, being eager to secure first choice of land.

### Province of British Columbia

British Columbia, the Pacific Maritime Province of the Dominion of Canada, has an estimated area of 355,855 square miles. It is bounded on the east by the Rocky Mountains, and on the west by the Pacific Ocean. The population at the census of 1921 numbered 524,582, and in 1929 was officially estimated at 591,000.

### HISTORY.

In 1537 Cortes discovered California, and for nearly half a century the Spaniards were the only navigators of the North Pacific. Sir Francis Drake was the first Englishman to visit the Pacific Coast, in 1578, when he raided the Spanish settlements and hoisted the British flag at Drake's Bay, near San Francisco. He took possession of the country in the name of Queen Elizabeth, calling it New Albion. In 1592 Juan de Fuca discovered the strait which bears his name, and Juan Perez, Quadra, Behring and others, visited the coast at intervals until 1778, when Captain James Cook cast anchor in Nootka Sound, while on a mission to discover a north-east passage to the Atlantic.

After sailing north to the Arctic Ocean, and naming many sounds, inlets and islands, Cook left for the Sandwich group, where he was killed in a fight with natives. His vessels, the *Resolution* and the *Discovery*, returned to England, however, and the

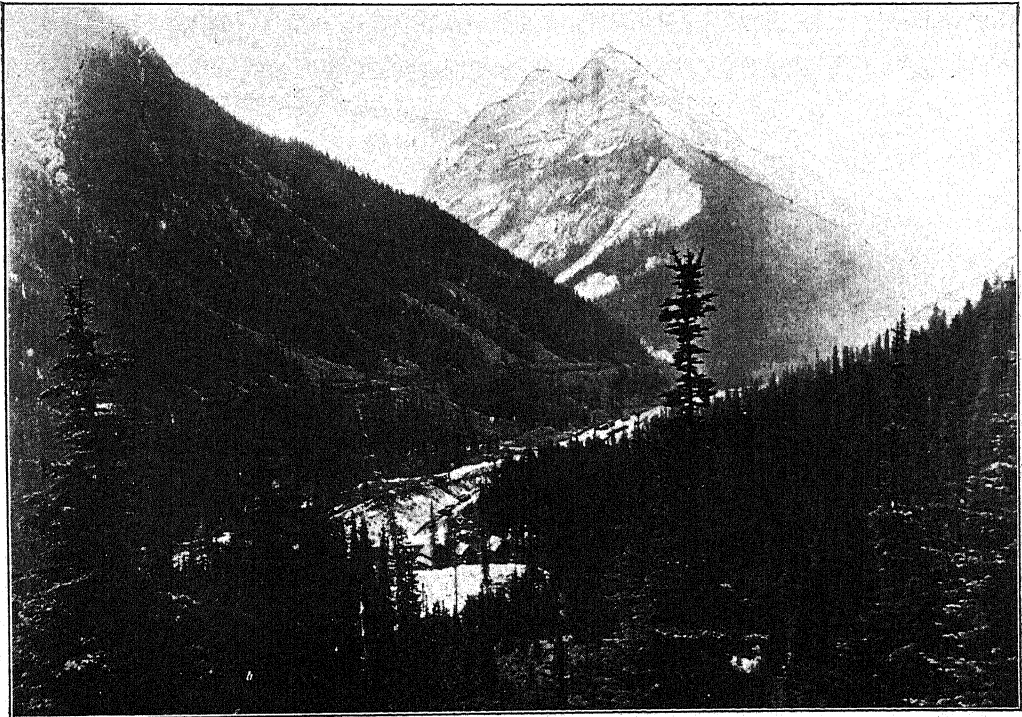
reports of their crews respecting the great opportunities for fur trading aroused so much attention, that several expeditions were fitted out in England, and in China and India, for the North Pacific trade. For several years merchant adventurers, British, Spanish and Dutch, visited the coast as rival fur traders, but it was only in 1788 that Captain Meares established a permanent settlement on Nootka Sound, where he built a ship called the *North-West America*.

The following year a Spanish force under Don Estavan Martinez seized the settlement in the name of his sovereign, confiscated the British ships and imprisoned the crews. These lawless acts nearly caused war between Britain and Spain, but the affair was finally settled by arbitration, Spain abandoning the territory and paying an indemnity of 210,000 dollars. Subsequently, in 1792 and following years, Captain George Vancouver made a survey of the coast, and established the existence of Vancouver Island, which had been a matter of dispute since the days of Juan de Fuca. The Mainland was for many

years "No Man's Land," and it is due to the North-West Fur Company and the Hudson Bay Company that this vast territory was brought to the notice of the world.

Alexander Mackenzie, who was the first man to cross the continent north of the Mississippi, reached the shore of the Pacific at the mouth of the Bella Coola River in July, 1793. In 1800, David Thompson, travelling overland from Red River, near the present site of Winnipeg, reached the Bow River, near the present site of Calgary, and subsequently crossed the mountains and discovered the river which bears his name. Sir Alexander Mackenzie, Simon Fraser and David Hearne, also made extensive explorations and added materially to the knowledge of the great North-West and the Pacific Coast.

In 1849 the Island of Vancouver was granted to the Hudson Bay Company for a period of ten years. A Government was established, and Richard Blanchard was sent from England as the first Governor. He resigned in 1850, and was succeeded by



IN THE HEART OF THE ROCKIES (British Columbia)

Photo, C.P. Rly.



MOOSE RIVER PASS, BRITISH COLUMBIA

*Photo, Canadian Nat. Rlys.*

James (afterwards Sir James) Douglas. An Assembly was called and held its first meeting at Victoria in August, 1856. While Vancouver Island was thus constituted a Crown Colony, the mainland, known as New Caledonia, remained practically unknown, and inhabited only by Indians and a few fur traders. Gold was discovered on the Fraser River in 1858, and miners began to crowd into the country, making the establishment of some form of government a necessity. Therefore, the whole of the mainland, west of the Rocky Mountains, was created a Crown Colony under the name of British Columbia.

In 1866 the two colonies were united by Act of the Imperial Parliament, and on the 20th July, 1871, British Columbia became a province of the Dominion of Canada. British Columbia entered the Confederation upon the condition that within two years the construction of a railway should be commenced which would connect it with the Eastern Provinces. This road is now the Canadian Pacific Railway. It was

completed in 1885, and gave Canada and the Empire a great highway from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

### SCENERY AND CLIMATE.

This province may be divided, roughly, into three areas, each having its special characteristics, viz. : (1) The islands adjacent to the coast ; (2) the great interior plateau, flanked by mountains on the east and west, and forming the southern half of the mainland ; and (3) the northern half, separated from the plateau by various cross mountain chains, from whence spring the head-waters of the Peace River.

The first area comprises Vancouver Island, the Queen Charlotte Group, and the innumerable islands of various sizes that dot the coast-line. Washed by the waters of the Japanese current, the climate is mild and moist, and the same may be said of the narrow strip of territory intervening between the Coast Range and the sea-shore. This influence also affects to some extent the

estuaries of the rivers flowing into the Pacific.

The great interior plateau, elevated some 3,500 feet above sea-level, has been so deeply eroded by lake and river streams, that in some parts it appears mountainous, but the absence of sharp edges to the hill-tops, and the innumerable rounded boulders, point conclusively to the fact that at some remote period this immense area was the bed of a vast inland sea.

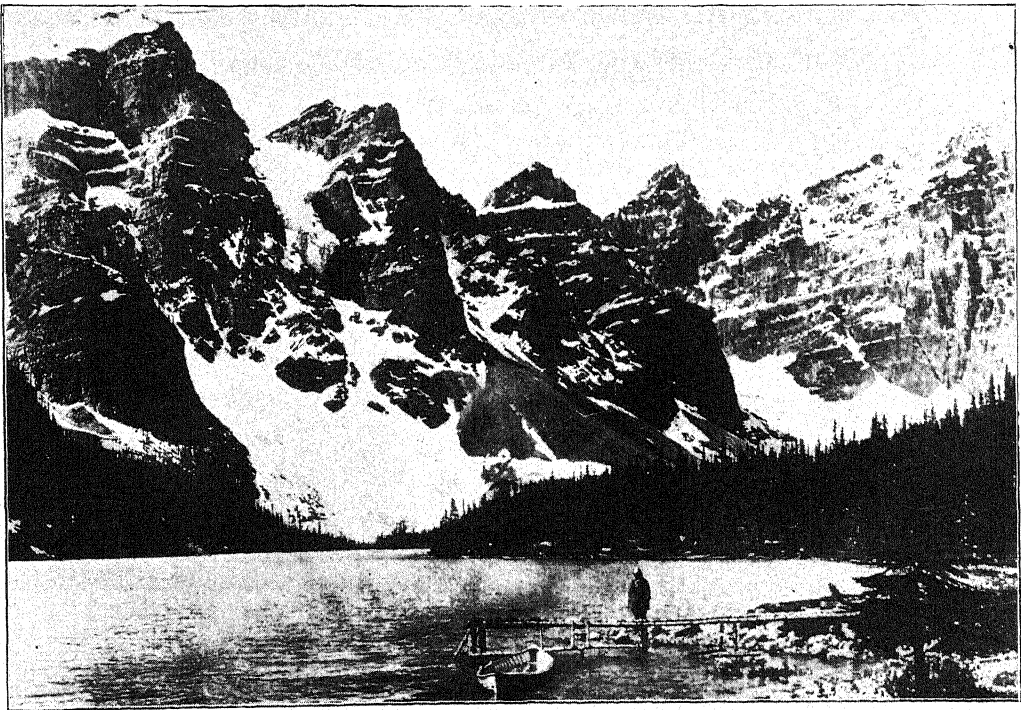
Of the third area, except in isolated patches, comparatively little is known. The Coast Range of mountains forms a rocky frontier on the west, while the eastern boundary, following the 120th meridian of longitude, cuts the Rocky Mountains at the Peace River Pass, and continues north through a rolling prairie region that has never been thoroughly explored. Many large arable areas are found, to which much attention has been turned of recent years, and the extreme northern portions, apart from agricultural possibilities, will be valuable for the precious metals, coal, and other

minerals which are found in large deposits throughout its length and breadth.

The area of British Columbia has been variously set down from 355,855 to 395,000 square miles. From careful surface measurements of the map, the following results have been obtained, according to the present main political divisions :—

	Sq. Miles.	Acres.
Kootenay - -	23,500	15,060,000
Yale - -	24,300	15,850,000
Lillooet - -	16,100	10,300,000
Westminster - -	7,660	4,900,000
Cariboo - -	150,500	96,350,000
Cassiar - -	150,000	96,000,000
Comox (mainland) -	7,100	4,550,000
Vancouver Island -	16,400	10,000,000
	395,560	253,010,000

The foregoing measurements are given approximately, to approach round figures as nearly as possible.



MORaine LAKE, BRITISH COLUMBIA

Photo, C.P. Rly.



THE GREAT GLACIER, BRITISH COLUMBIA

*Photo, C.P.Rly.*

Eight rivers form the natural avenues of transportation for British Columbia—the Fraser, Columbia, Thompson, Kootenay, Skeena, Stikeen, Liard and Peace.

The Fraser is a great water-course. Rising in the Rocky Mountains, about midway along the eastern boundary, it runs almost due west in two branches for some 200 miles. These streams then join, and flow south through the Cariboo, Lillooet and Yale districts, until, near Chilliwack, the combined stream abruptly turns to the west and finds an outlet to the Pacific through the Gulf of Georgia. Several tributaries of importance add to its volume, among them being the Thompson, draining the Kamloops and Shuswap Lake areas, the Chilcotin, Lillooet, Nicola, Harrison, and Pitt. From its last westerly turn it flows through a wide alluvial plain, mainly deposited from its own silt. It is navigable for vessels drawing 20 feet to New Westminster, about 15 miles from its mouth, and light draught boats can travel to the small town of Yale, 95 miles further inland. Another stretch of 100 miles

in the interior is also navigable for small craft, from Soda Creek to Fort George Canyon. The waters of the Fraser teem with salmon, and the canneries near its mouth give employment to many thousand men during the fishing season.

The Columbia rises almost in the south-east corner of the province and runs north about 150 miles to where the Canoe River runs into it, when, turning in an abrupt semi-ellipse, it takes a southerly course, and, draining the water-shed of the Arrow Lakes, leaves the province in the vicinity of Rossland. Though interrupted by a number of rapids, it is navigable to a very large extent, and steamers ply regularly between Windermere and Golden, and both north and south from Revelstoke.

The Peace River lies only partly within the province, but will in the future be of great importance. Mr. F. W. Valleau followed this river from its source to the eastern boundary of the province, and found many indications, in the surrounding country, of agricultural possibilities.



The Thompson, so-called, is practically two distinct streams flowing at right angles to each other into the eastern end of Kamloops Lake. The south Thompson connects that body of water with the Shuswap Lake to the east, while the North Thompson, having its source in the Clearwater Lakes, Cariboo, flows due south, through a wide valley, suitable, with irrigation, for agricultural purposes. For a considerable distance both rivers are navigable. The north branch of the North Thompson, which rises in the vicinity of Tete Jaune Cache, and empties into the main river at Victoria Point, is also an important stream, draining a large area of agricultural and grazing land.

The Skeena is second in importance among the rivers wholly within the province, and is navigable nearly 200 miles from its mouth. Hazelton, 150 miles inland, is at present the most easterly point having steamboat connection, which lasts about seven months each year, or during the season of high water. The total length of the Skeena is 300 miles, and its general direction south-west.

Although for the last few miles of its course the Stikine River runs through Alaska, it forms the main artery of communication for that portion of the province known as Cassiar district. It has been regularly navigated for many years for a distance of 130 miles, the eastern steamboat termini being Glenora and Telegraph Creek.

Many natural depressions are filled by lakes in British Columbia, the principal of which are tabulated below, the areas being transcribed from the reports of the last census of Canada :—

Lakes.	Area in Acres.
Adams - - - -	33,280
Atlin (part) - - - -	211,680
Babine - - - -	196,000
Chilo - - - -	109,760
Harrison - - - -	78,400
Kootenay - - - -	141,120
Lower Arrow - - - -	40,960
Okanagan - - - -	86,240
Owikano - - - -	62,720
Quesnel - - - -	94,080
Shuswap - - - -	74,150
Stuart - - - -	141,120
Tatla - - - -	86,240
Tagish (part) - - - -	58,180
Teslin (part) - - - -	78,400
Upper Arrow - - - -	64,500

It is only to be expected that in a province the size of British Columbia, there will be a wide variation in climatic conditions. The Japanese Gulf Stream makes its way across the broad Pacific, striking the coast of Alaska. From thence, it is diverted, and makes its way south, washing the shores of the west coast of the mainland, Vancouver Island, and other gulf islands. This current exercises a moderating influence along all the Pacific slope, also penetrating up the countless inlets and fiords with which the coast abounds, and thus giving the Pacific Littoral a mild, equable climate the year round, and a rainfall varying from 28 in. to 100 in.

There are four ranges of mountains which traverse the province in a north-easterly direction—the Coast Range, the Gold Range, the Selkirk Range and the Rocky Mountain Range. Between these ranges of mountains are many fertile valleys, bench lands and plateaux, where soil and climatic conditions are favourable for agricultural development.

### AGRICULTURE.

Whilst the larger part of this province is mountainous, therefore unfit for profitable cultivation, there is a considerable amount of plateau, bench and valley land, which is very well adapted to general farming purposes. The acreage of this land has been variously estimated. There are approximately 50,000,000 acres which may be placed in the category of agricultural lands.

The province is covered for the most part with a growth of timber varying in density, being heaviest on Vancouver Island and the Lower Mainland, and lightest in the Dry Belt Valleys of the interior and in the northern part of the province.

For the sake of convenience, British Columbia may be divided agriculturally into six different districts, as follows :—

1. VANCOUVER ISLAND AND GULF ISLANDS.—This district has a mild, equable climate the year round : average rainfall, 40 in. ; average summer temperature, 70 deg. ; winter, 40 deg. The district is pre-eminently adapted for mixed farming purposes. Dairying, poultry raising, hog raising, the growing of tree fruits and small fruits, and vegetables, are successfully undertaken.

2. LOWER MAINLAND, comprising the delta lands of the Fraser River. Average rainfall, 70 in. ; average summer temperature, 70 deg. ; winter, 40 deg. Essentially adapted for stock raising,

grain growing, dairying, poultry raising, hop raising, small fruits and vegetables. The soil is a very deep, rich, alluvial silt, which has been washed down for countless ages from the mountains. Phenomenal crops of grain, hay and roots are grown thereon. Clovers and other grasses grow luxuriantly, making this district especially well suited to stock raising and dairying.

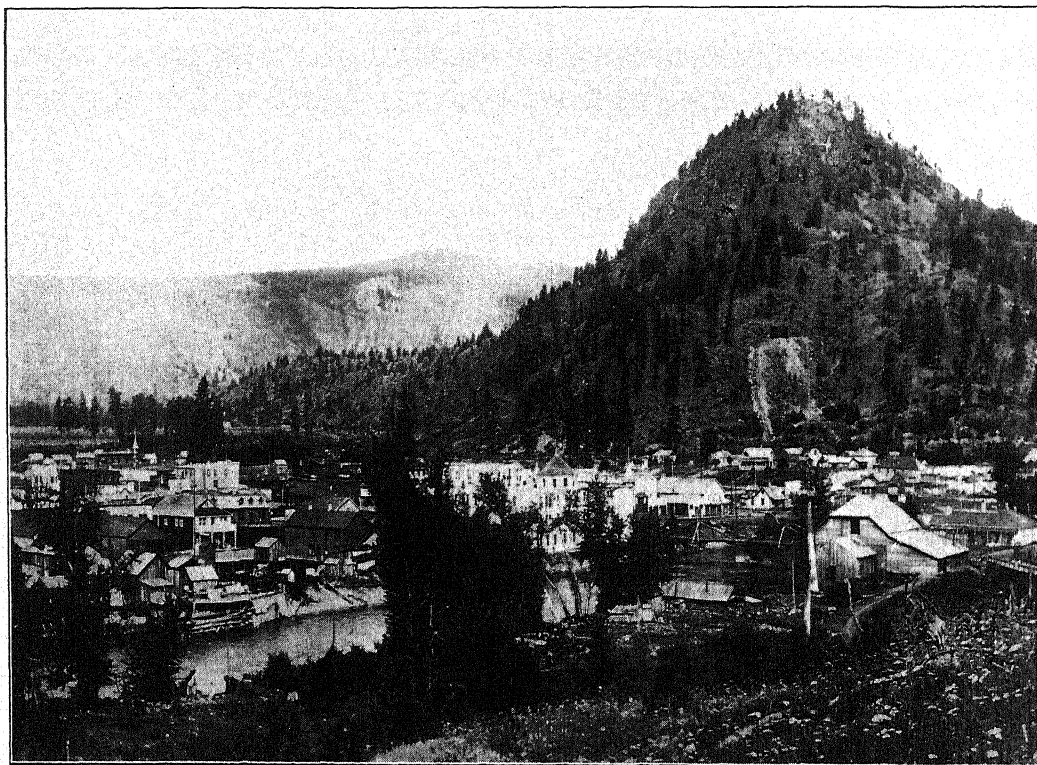
3. CENTRAL BRITISH COLUMBIA, comprising the districts of Lillooet, Chilcoten, and Cariboo. Average rainfall, 15 in.; average summer temperature, 75 deg.; winter, 5 deg. The winters are short, cold and bracing. There is a considerable fall of snow, necessitating the feeding of stock during the winter months. The country is well adapted for stock raising and grain growing. General mixed farming may also be profitably undertaken.

4. NORTHERN BRITISH COLUMBIA, comprising the territory between Fort George and the Naas River. The district has now been made available to the settler by the completion of the Grand Trunk Pacific Railway. It contains an immense tract of country suitable for general farming purposes. Average rainfall, 40 in.; average summer temperature, 75 deg.; winter, 5 deg. There is a considerable snowfall; the winters are cold, dry, and bracing. Stock has to be fed during the winter months. This district is best adapted for grain growing, stock raising, and general mixed farming. Small fruits and

vegetables also do well in many parts. Wild pea-vine grows luxuriantly all through this section.

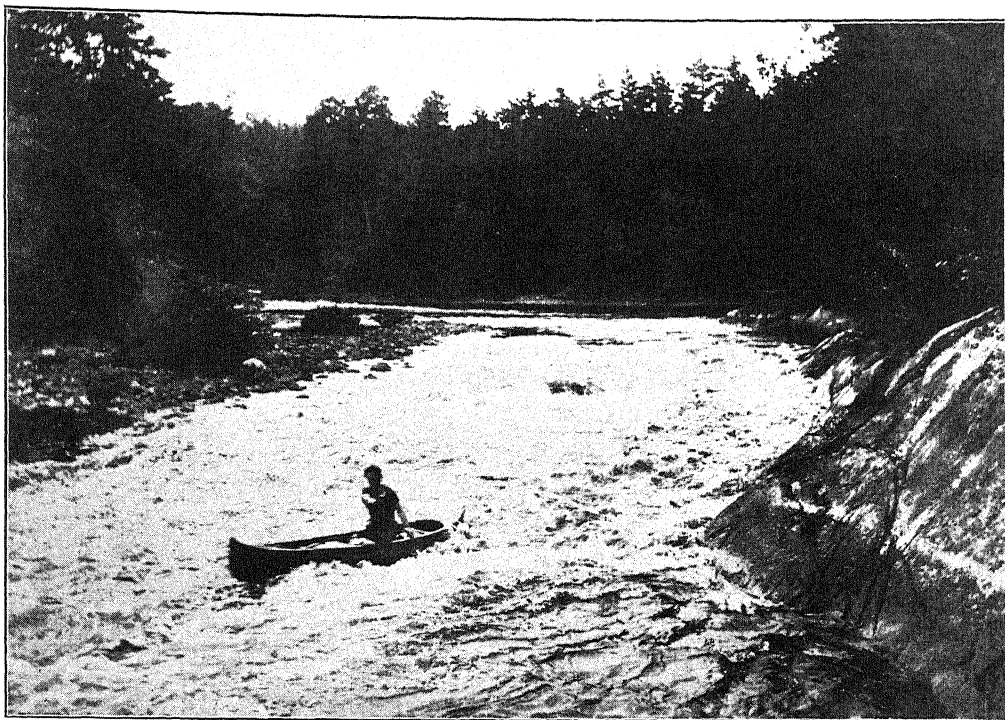
5. PEACE RIVER.—This territory lies to the north-east of the province, and embraces a very large area. There has as yet been very little agricultural settlement in this district, owing to lack of transportation facilities. This, however, will soon be obviated. The Pacific Great Eastern has built a line which runs from Vancouver to Fort George, and from thence into the heart of the Peace River country. There are millions of acres of rolling plateau lands in the Peace River country, which should be well suited for stock-raising and grain growing. There is a fairly heavy snowfall; the winters are about five months in duration. Wheat of the finest quality has been grown as far north as Fort Nelson.

6. INTERIOR VALLEYS OF SOUTHERN BRITISH COLUMBIA.—The principal valleys contained in this district are as follows: Nicola, Thompson River, Okanagan, Similkameen, Boundary, Kettle Valley, Creston, West Kootenay, East Kootenay, Columbia, Arrow Lakes and Slocan. In most of these valleys irrigation is practised. Rainfall, 10 in. to 30 in.; average summer temperature, 75 deg.; winter, 5 deg. Moderate snowfall; winters cold, dry, and bracing. The finest quality of fruit, which has secured the highest awards at leading exhibitions all over the world, is grown in many of these fertile



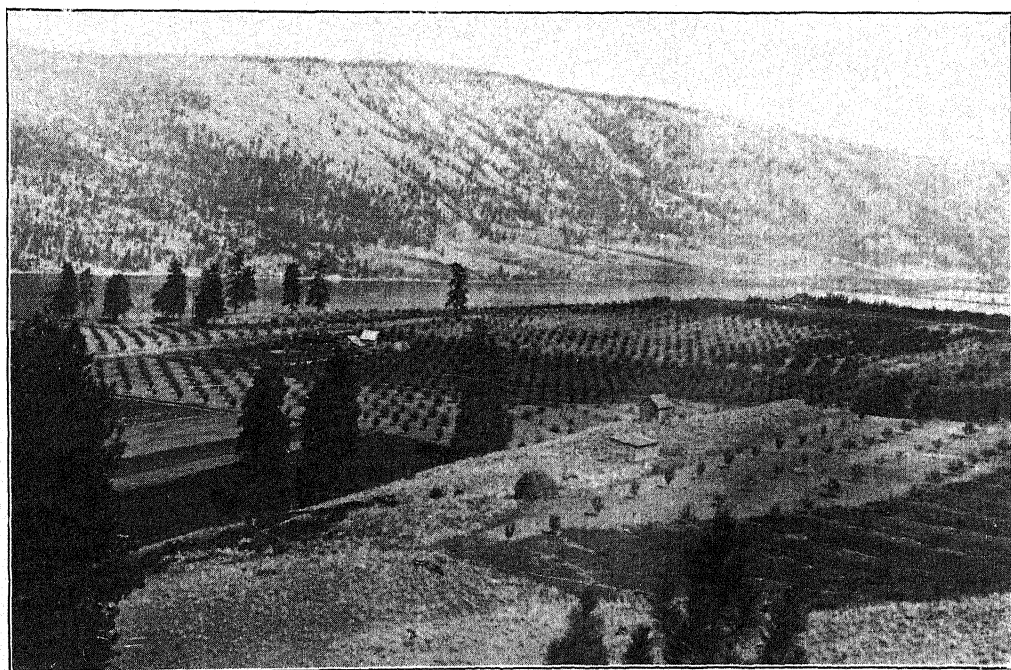
GRAND FORKS, BRITISH COLUMBIA

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*



SHOOTING THE RAPIDS ON A BRITISH COLUMBIAN RIVER

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*



A GROWING ORCHARD AND FARM IN THE OKANAGAN DISTRICT OF BRITISH COLUMBIA

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*



*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

#### IN THE FRASER RIVER CANYON, BRITISH COLUMBIA

valleys. Apples, pears, plums, cherries, apricots, peaches, and grapes are grown successfully. Small fruits and vegetables do very well. Mixed farming may be profitably followed in all these valleys.

The farmer in British Columbia is particularly fortunate in the markets which he possesses for all products of the farm. The rapidly-growing coast cities have to be supplied. In addition, there are mining and logging camps, railways and steamships, canneries and sawmills, which take a very large amount of agricultural and pastoral produce. The farmer also has rapidly extending markets in the north-west provinces of Alberta, Saskatchewan and Manitoba, for all fruits and vegetables. Produce is also shipped to Australia, New Zealand, China and Japan, and these markets can be extended when the produce is available. The completion of the Panama Canal has opened up the markets of Europe for many of the products of this province.

There are three transcontinental lines operating through the province. Branch lines are being built from these main arteries, opening up many good agricultural districts. The Provincial Government is spending a

very large amount annually on the construction of public roads, thus enabling the farmer to get his produce expeditiously to the market.

Stock raising is not practised as extensively as it should be in a province which is so admirably adapted for it. Farmers, however, are now beginning to realise the necessity for keeping more stock on their farms, and a rapid advance may be looked forward to with confidence in the near future. The completion of the Grand Trunk Pacific, the Canadian Northern, and the Pacific Great Eastern, have opened up many districts which are particularly well suited for stock raising.

Sheep are kept by many farmers in the province in small flocks. They are not ranged to any extent, however, owing to their natural enemies, such as coyotes, panthers and wolves, which necessitate flocks being herded and coralled at night.

British Columbia has made a name for herself in the growing of tree and small fruits. The colour, texture and quality of the fruit grown in suitable districts cannot be excelled anywhere in the world, and there



is a ready market for the products of the orchards. As evidencing the quality of British Columbia fruit, it may be stated that the Royal Horticultural Society's Gold Medal has been won eight times by British Columbia. Some districts of this province specialise in growing vegetables for the north-

Farming in the province is pursued under many advantages. The cost of land in some sections, and the high price of clearing land, may be mentioned as the two main obstacles. On the other hand, there are many thousands of acres in the province for pre-emption to British subjects or naturalised



BIG TREES IN THE COLUMBIAN FOREST *Photo, C. P. Rly.*

west market and very good returns are made by men who thoroughly understand this intensive cultivation.

It may safely be stated that the progress of agriculture in British Columbia has been marked by steady advance along all lines.

citizens. These are in tracts ranging from 160 to 80 and 40 acres. After a three years' residence on the land, improvements to the value of 5 dollars per acre, at least 5 acres cleared, and a payment made of 14 dollars, the pre-emptor receives a Crown grant of the

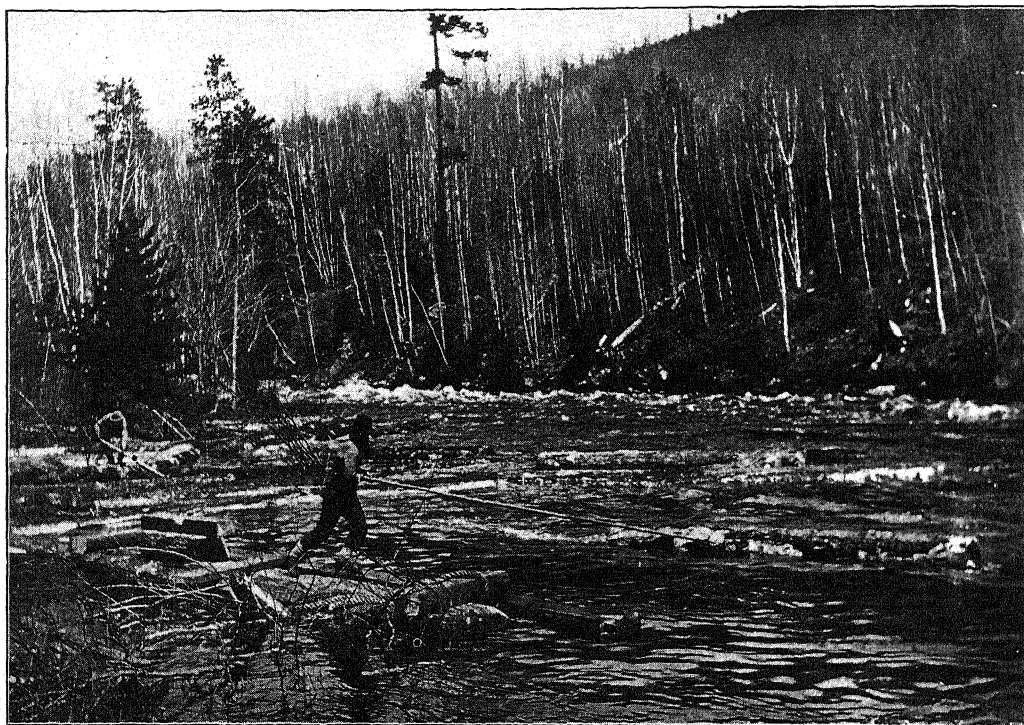


land from the Provincial Government. Mixed farming is to be advocated and is the general rule in most of the rural communities throughout the province.

The average annual value of the field crops is approximately £4,150,000, and of the fruit produced by the 4,126 growers £7,000,000 a year. The livestock includes 62,000 horses, 339,000 cattle, 100,000 sheep, 46,100 pigs and 2,900,000 poultry. The production of butter averages just over 6,000,000 lbs., valued at about £500,000.

which the land is situated; he must also have the land surveyed at his own expense. The time required for these preliminaries will not be less than ninety days, and under some circumstances may be more—possibly six to twelve months. When surveyed land is purchased, 25 per cent. of the purchase price is paid with the filing of the application to purchase, and the balance in three annual instalments, with interest at 6 per cent.

The great bulk of the land open to pre-emption is in undeveloped districts, about



LOGGING

Photo, C.P. Rly.

### LAND PURCHASE.

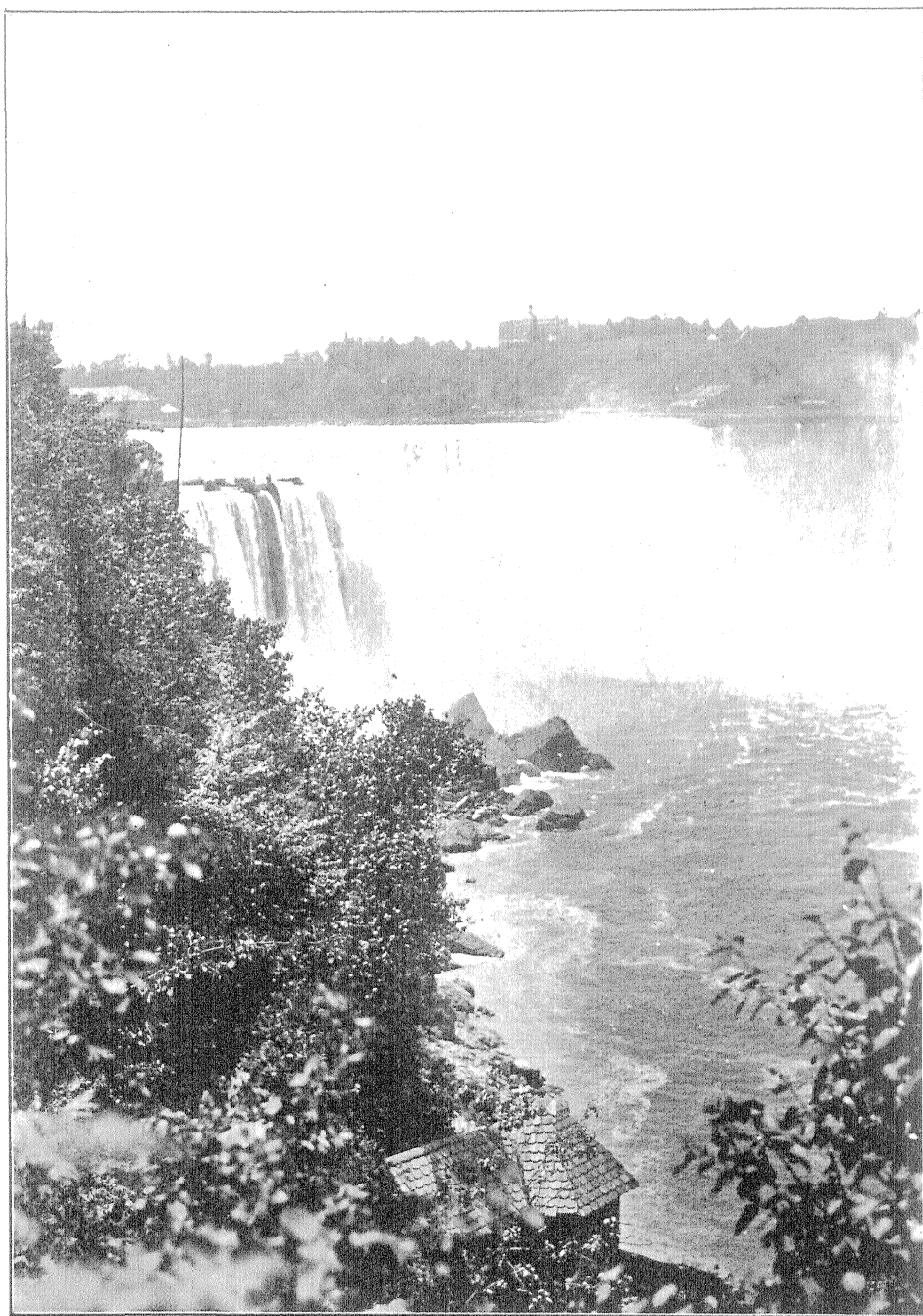
Payments for purchased lands are made as follows: When the land staked by the purchaser or his agent is unsurveyed a deposit equal to 50 cents per acre must accompany the application to purchase; the balance of the purchase money is payable six months after the application is approved. The purchaser has to advertise at his own expense his notice of application to purchase, in the *British Columbia Gazette* and a newspaper published or circulated in the district in

which little is definitely known, and where travelling is difficult owing to the absence of means of communication—although roads, trails and bridges are being made as fast as possible. From all reports there are large areas of fertile land in these districts well suited to mixed farming, dairying and cattle raising, but most of this land is far from markets, hard to get at, and so isolated that, until the coming of the railway, those who make homes there must be prepared to "rough it" and bear with all the



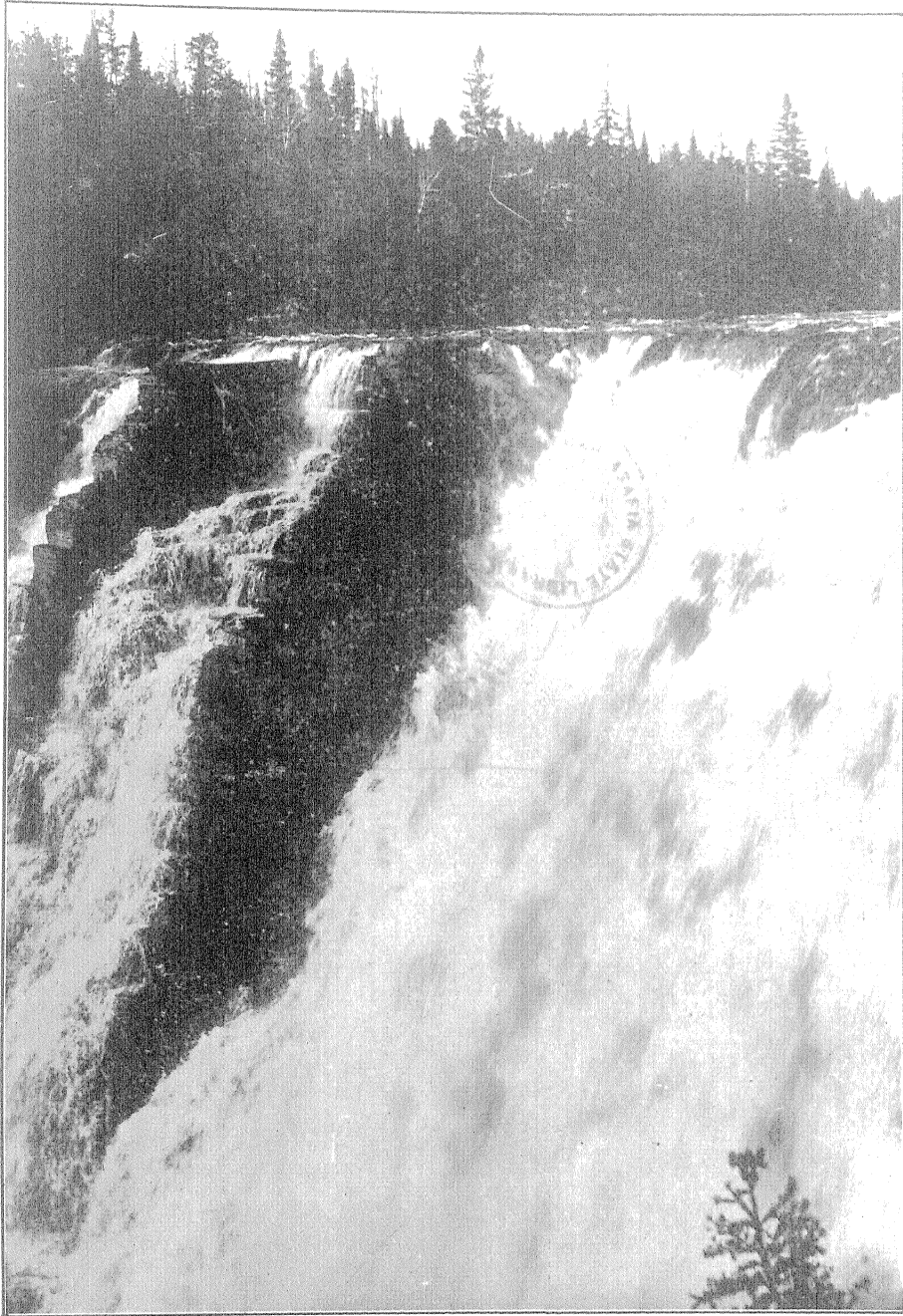
MONTREAL FROM MOUNT ROYAL

*Photo, C. P. Rly.*



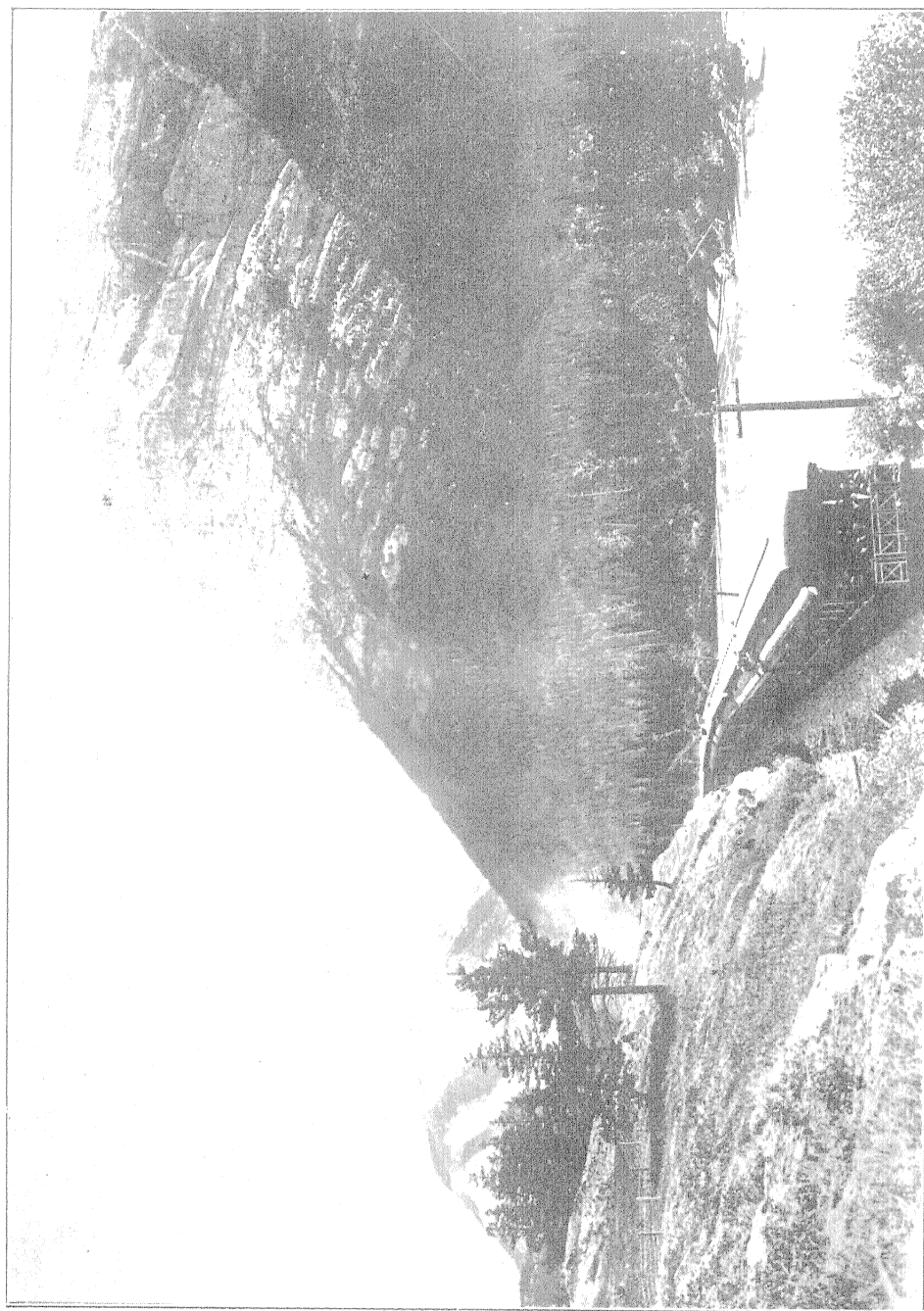
*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

THE HORSE-SHOE FALLS, NIAGARA



KAKEBEKA FALLS, NEAR FORT WILLIAM, ONTARIO

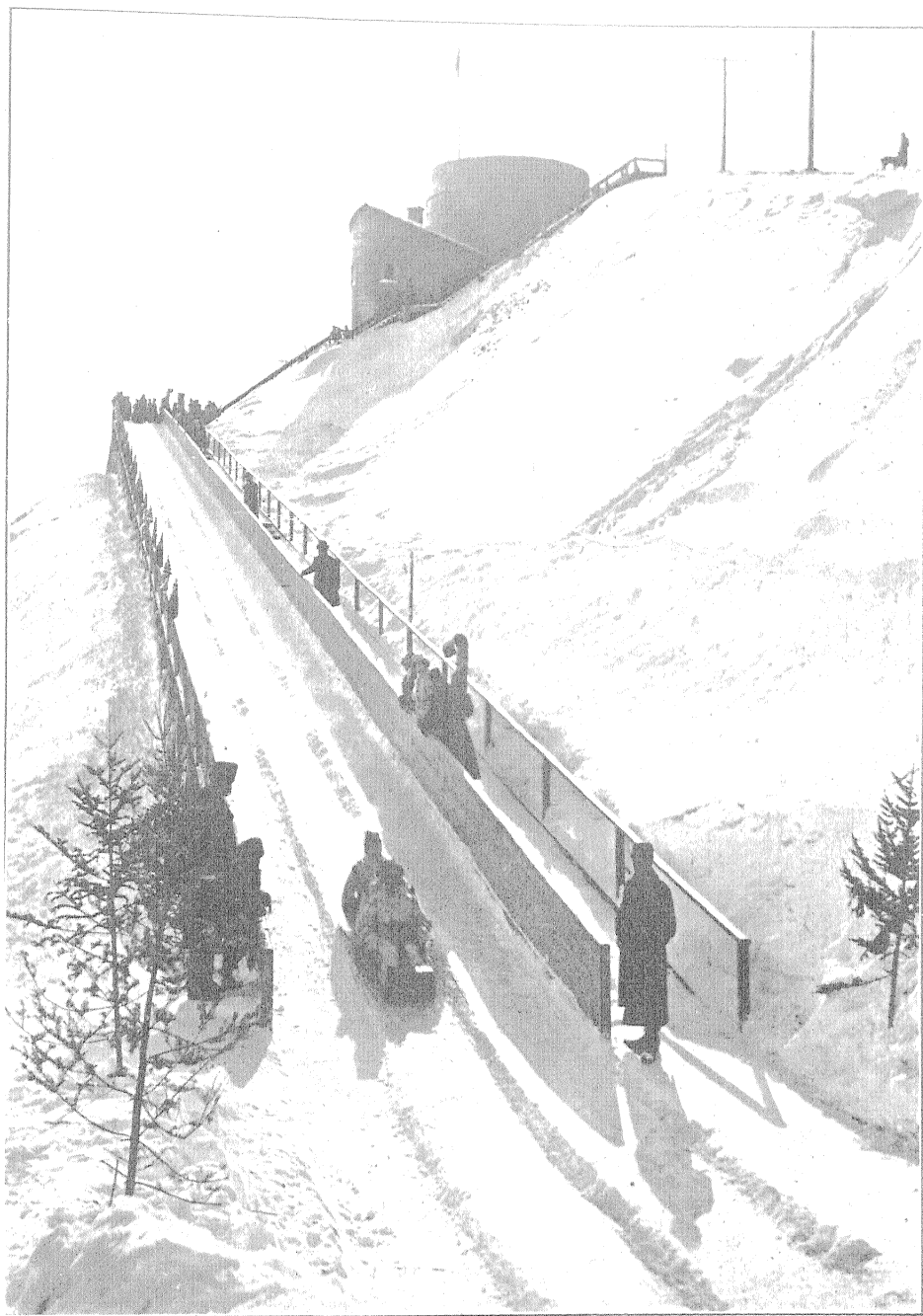
*Photo, C.P. Rly.*



OBSERVATION CAR IN "THE GAP," NEAR BANFF, IN THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

*Photo, C.P. Ry.*





"OUR LADY OF THE SNOWS"

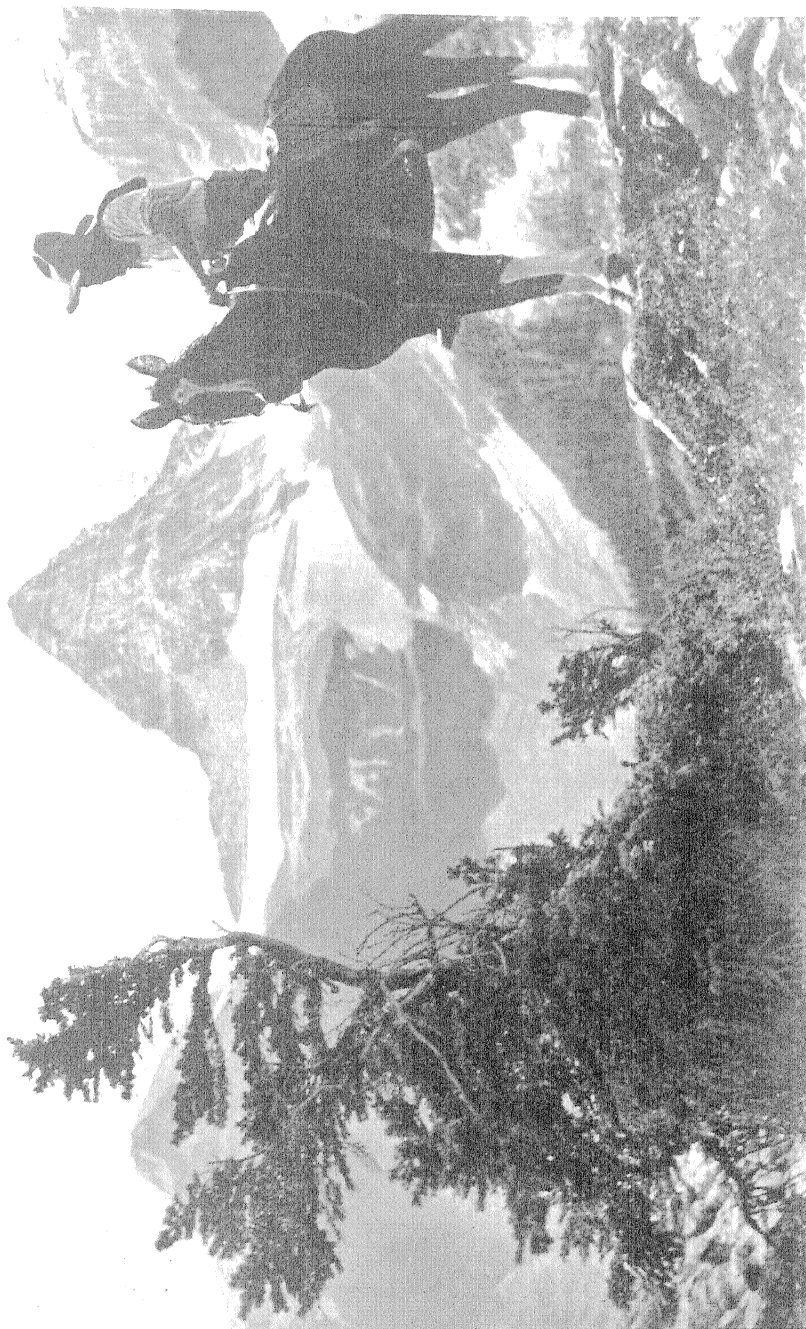
*Photo, C.P. Rly.*



### THE GIANT STEPS

A scene in Paradise Valley, Rocky Mountains

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*



*Photo, C. P. Railway*

**A PEAK IN THE ROCKIES. MOUNT ASSINIBOINE**

*British Empire Series*

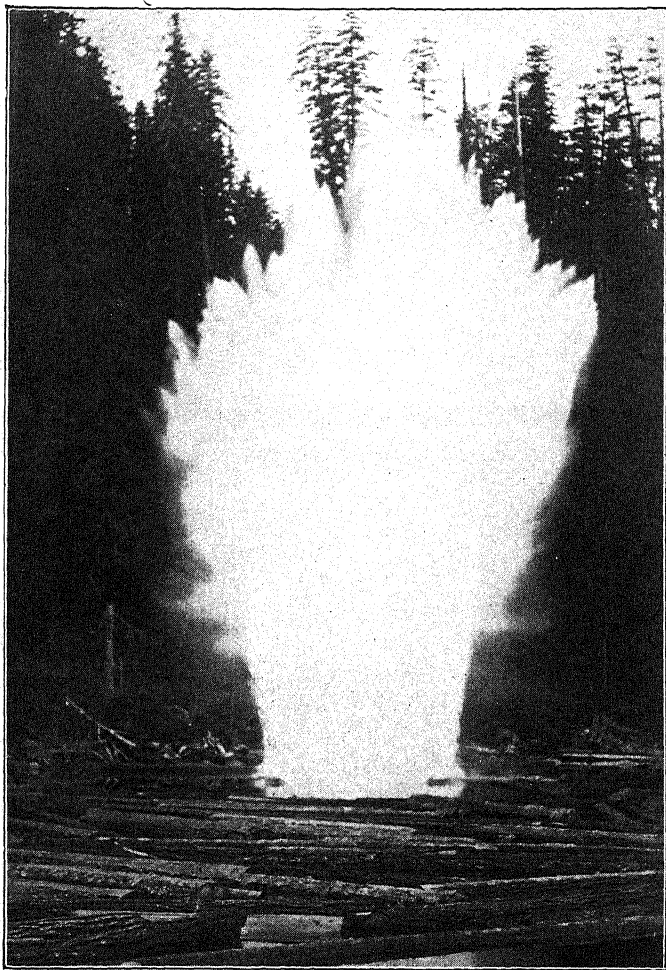
time, placer-gold mining was the leading feature of the industry, by reason of the great value of the metal, which enabled a man with only a horse to bring out the gold over the rough trails from districts otherwise inaccessible. Consequently, for many years, mining—other than placer-gold—was confined to the sea coast where water transportation was to be had. Lode-mining of importance did not begin until about 1895,

when the advent of railway transportation had rendered it possible.

To-day, the activity in railway construction in many portions of the province, stimulated and aided by the Provincial Government, promises to be of the greatest possible assistance to mining; not only by affording additional transportation facilities to established mines, but by opening up new tracts of mineral-bearing country, and affording channels for the output of mines yet to be developed.

The Hudson Bay Company was the first important pioneer in the mining industry in British Columbia, discovering coal at Fort Rupert as early as 1835, and opening up extensive coalfields in Nanaimo in 1851. In 1858 alluvial, or placer-gold, was discovered in the bars of the lower Fraser River; and in ten years the province produced in the neighbourhood of 33,000,000 dollars worth of this metal. Gold, coal, copper, silver, lead, zinc, and iron are the principal minerals found. The first five have been produced to a very considerable extent; iron, while existing in large bodies, has not yet been mined generally, nor extensively. Zinc-mining is in its primary stage.

Other important minerals, such as alluvial platinum and quicksilver, have been shown in perceptible quantities, but are not yet an important factor from a productive standpoint. Brick-clay and fire-clay are found in many portions of the province. Oil and natural gas have been indicated; but so far, not largely exploited. Gold, coal, copper, and silver, in the order mentioned, head the list in the figures for production. Gold is widely distributed; and by placer-hydraulic and lode mining, the industry is carried on in many districts of British Columbia.



A NOVEL GEYSER Photo, Harold J. Shepstone

This is not a picture of a hot spring, nor is it an explosion of dynamite in the water, but an imitation geyser caused by a huge log striking the water after descending several hundred feet down a log chute at a speed of from 80 to 90 miles an hour. The logs are cut high up on the mountain sides in British Columbia, rolled into a trough made of other logs which extends down the steep mountain side near to or at the water's edge. The force with which one of these descending logs strikes the water is tremendous and causes a geyser many times the size of the log. The geyser shown was caused by a log about four feet in diameter.

The promise of the future mineral development of the province is based upon what has already been accomplished in the short period during which mining has been in progress. In 1894, the value of the mineral output of the province was 4,225,717 dollars, while for the five years ending in 1929 it averaged well over 64,000,000 dollars.

### LUMBERING.

British Columbia is above all a forest province. There was standing, ready for the logger in 1929, about 30,000,000 acres of accessible, merchantable timber. A further 90,000,000 acres of forest land, fire swept in the past, is now growing up in young timber of valuable species, which will become available in from twenty to sixty years. The stand of merchantable timber is estimated to be 360,000,000,000 ft. board measure.

There are three main forest regions in this province, each of which merits brief description. The most important is that of the coast, which covers Vancouver Island and the Pacific Slope west of the Cascade Mountains, and extends from the International boundary north to the Alaskan frontier. This is the forest that has made famous the timber of Western America. Its principal species, in order of importance, are Douglas fir, red cedar, hemlock, spruce, balsam, white pine and yellow cedar. These species grow in forests extending from sea-level to an altitude of 2,500 ft., their maximum development being the valley bottoms of the larger rivers of Vancouver Island and the mainland, below the 51st parallel. Here acres have been cut which yielded 350,000 ft. of timber, board measure. The average yield per acre of merchantable timber of this type is, however, 25,000 ft. per acre.

North of the 51st parallel the coast forest consists chiefly of cedar, hemlock and spruce. South of the parallel Douglas fir is the dominant timber, comprising the greater part of the stand and being the most valuable for logging purposes.

The forest region second in importance is in that portion of the province lying to the south-east of a line drawn from the Yellow Head Pass to Vancouver. This broad zone is cut by many deep valleys all of which are separated by high mountain ranges; and from a timber point of view it is distinguished by the presence of white pine, Douglas fir,

tamarack, red cedar, hemlock, Engelmann spruce, and lodgepole pine. Within this region are two well-defined belts, the dry and the wet. The dry belt timber lies in the valleys of the Frazer, Thompson, Okanagan and Kootenay Rivers. Here, up to an elevation of 5,000 ft., the forest is composed of yellow pine, tamarack, Douglas fir and lodgepole pine. The average stand per acre is 4,000 to 8,000 ft. board measure. The wet type covers the valleys of the Columbia and its tributaries. The chief species are red cedar, hemlock, Engelmann spruce and white pine, forming a stand averaging 8,000 to 20,000 ft. per acre.

The remainder of the province, extending to what is at present considered the northern limit of merchantable timber, about the 57th parallel, constitutes a very important forest region, which has been until recent years unknown and unappreciated. The topography here is less mountainous, the valleys are broader and more rolling, features which simplify logging conditions and increase the value of the timber. The chief species are Engelmann spruce, white spruce, balsam, fir, lodgepole pine, Douglas fir, hemlock and cedar. Spruce is the most important tree in this list; the stand varies from 4,000 to 20,000 ft. per acre, averaging about 8,000 in mature forests. This zone compares favourably with the best pulp-producing regions of Ontario and Quebec. Throughout the timbered areas are splendid streams with good water powers. The spruce of this district equals Eastern spruce for pulp.

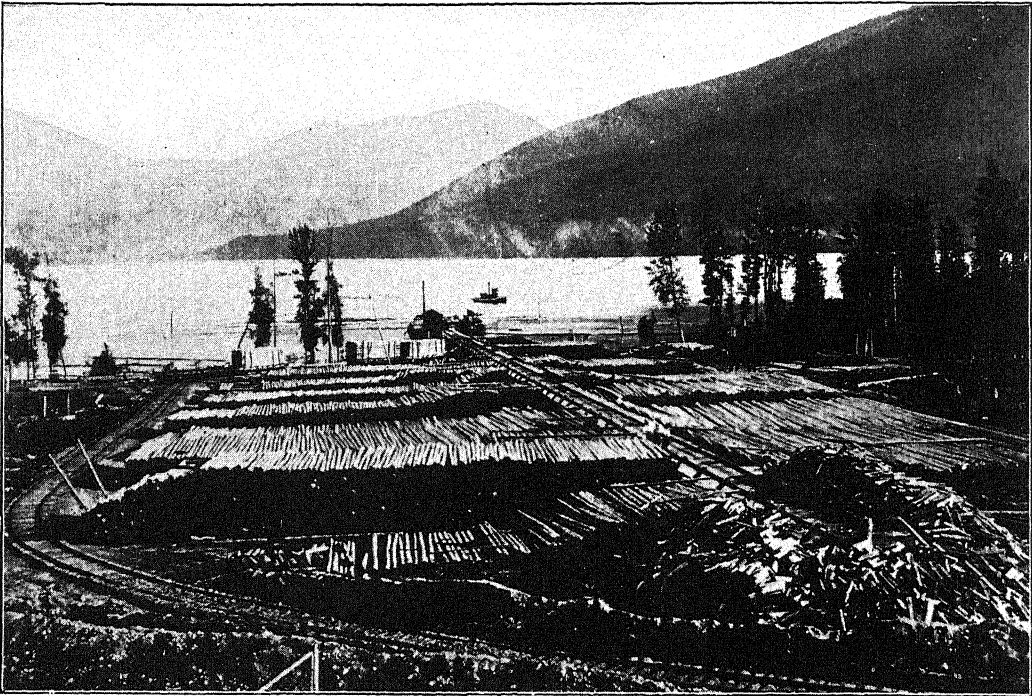
As might be expected in a province possessing so abundantly the raw material, the forest industry in British Columbia plays a great part in the economic life of the people. There are about 900 logging camps, 500 saw, shingle, pulp and paper mills, and the capital invested amounts to over £200,000,000. The yield per annum is valued at £11,600,000, exclusive of certain local manufacturing industries. As the markets develop the value of the output will be greatly increased. The present annual cut is just over 2,000,000,000 feet, board measure. The annual growth of timber is estimated to be over 6,000,000,000 feet, and the yearly cut may, therefore, be safely doubled or even trebled.

The chief market for British Columbia timber has been the Canadian Prairie. Three-fifths of the annual cut goes there; one-fifth



is used in British Columbia, the remainder is shipped abroad. The chief foreign markets in the order of importance have been the United States, Australia, New Zealand, Africa, South America, China and Japan, the United Kingdom, and Europe. British Columbia timbers, especially Douglas fir, spruce and red cedar, are excellently adapted for service in foreign countries. The chief impediment to their greater use is the present

modelled somewhat upon the lines of that built up by the British in India. The chief expenditures are for fire protection and supervision of cutting. There has been no need for planting, the natural reproduction in nearly all localities being sufficient, if fire is prevented. The policy of the Government is to maintain the forest in unimpaired condition as the support of the leading industry and the chief source of revenue.



A FINISHED PRODUCT OF THE TIMBER INDUSTRY  
Telegraph poles, ready for shipment

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*

lack of foreign selling and transportation facilities. A further difficulty is the competition of Scandinavian and United States timbers which are at present produced more cheaply. The efforts of Canadian lumbermen will remove or decrease the effect of these handicaps, and an increase in the exports may be expected.

The forests of British Columbia are, with few exceptions, State owned. The Government derives a rental from revenue on timber lands leased or licensed to operators, and in the form of a royalty on the timber cut. A Forest Service has been established and

### FISHERIES.

One of the most important and profitable industries in British Columbia is fishing. For many years this industry has been carried on all along the coastline of the mainland and of Vancouver Island. The aggregate returns have amounted to hundreds of millions of dollars.

The profits naturally vary in different years, according to the number of the catch and the price obtained. For the five years previous to 1930, the average annual value of the British Columbian fisheries amounted to over £5,000,000. The salmon fisheries

are the most important, with the halibut, whale, herring and codfisheries completing the list. The salmon canneries employ large numbers of men and operate with special machinery which disposes of the fish at the rate of 3,000 an hour. Every particle of the fish is utilised, the refuse being turned into fertilisers. It is fifty years since salmon canning was first begun on the Pacific coast, and canned salmon is now a staple article of food all over the world. The fishing is conducted by traps, nets and seines, and engages the services of thousands of fishermen.

The halibut fisheries come next in importance, and this industry is carried on with steam trawlers carrying dories or stout fishing boats, on the same system as is practised on the Atlantic coast. Halibut are a deep-sea fish, and baited hand-lines are used in their capture. The halibut banks are found off the central and northern coasts of British Columbia and Vancouver Island, notably to the north, and cover many miles in extent. Cold storage, warehouses and packing plants, with facilities for making immense quantities of artificial ice, are used in the halibut trade. The shipping of fresh halibut by means of cold-storage promises to become a prime factor in the British Columbian fisheries of the future. The canning of halibut is also expected to be developed on a large scale. Halibut range in size from 10 lb. to 100 lb., and are one of the most delicious varieties of fish for the table that the salt water affords. Herring are caught in seines and cured by the ton in British Columbia, being at present shipped mainly to the Orient. They are claimed to be equal to the European herring when properly cured, and are found all along the coast of the province, which has a very extensive littoral.

British Columbia's whale fisheries are important, and come under the term of "off-shore whaling"—where the fish are towed ashore, and the entire carcase utilised. Whale oil and fertilisers are the principal products, although portions of the flesh are salted for shipment, principally to China and Japan. The different species comprise the fin-back, hump-back and silver-bottom, with occasionally a sperm whale. The whale fishing is conducted with the most modern appliances—steam vessels, bomb lances fired

from short, breech-loading cannon, and, finally, the scientific disposal of the carcasses without waste. Fishing for cod, and several varieties of skil, commonly called cod fish, is still in its early stages; but these fish are very plentiful, and their catching and curing, or shipping by cold storage, will develop into an important branch of the British Columbian fishing industry. The work is carried on by steamers and schooners equipped with dories, the fisherman using hand-lines. Mechanical driers have been introduced in this department of the fisheries, and they are claimed to be far superior to the old style process—sun and wind drying.

From one end of British Columbia's coast to the other, there are many specimens of small fish, among which may be mentioned the oolachan, sardine, smelt, anchovy and pilchard; and the waters of the Pacific, which wash the shores of British Columbia, abound with bass, whiting and other fish. Clams, crabs, shrimps, cockles, prawns and mussels, are common, and a small native oyster is found in considerable quantities at some points along the coast. Clam canneries have been started in various places in the province, and the utilisation of these minor forms of sea-food will be carried on extensively in the future.

### EDUCATION AND SOCIAL CONDITIONS.

This province affords excellent educational opportunities. The school system is free and non-sectarian, and is equally as efficient as that of any other part of the Dominion. The Government builds a school-house, makes a grant for incidental expenses, and pays a teacher in every district where twenty children between the ages of six and sixteen can be brought together. For outlying farming districts and mining camps, this arrangement is very advantageous. High schools are also established in cities, where the classics and higher mathematics are taught. Several British Columbian cities now have charge of their own public and high schools, and these receive a very liberal *per capita* grant-in-aid from the Provincial Government.

The high schools are distributed as follows: Victoria (Victoria College), Vancouver (Vancouver College), New Westminster, Nanaimo, Duncan, Nelson, Rossland, Cumberland, Vernon, Kaslo, Chilliwack, Grand Forks,

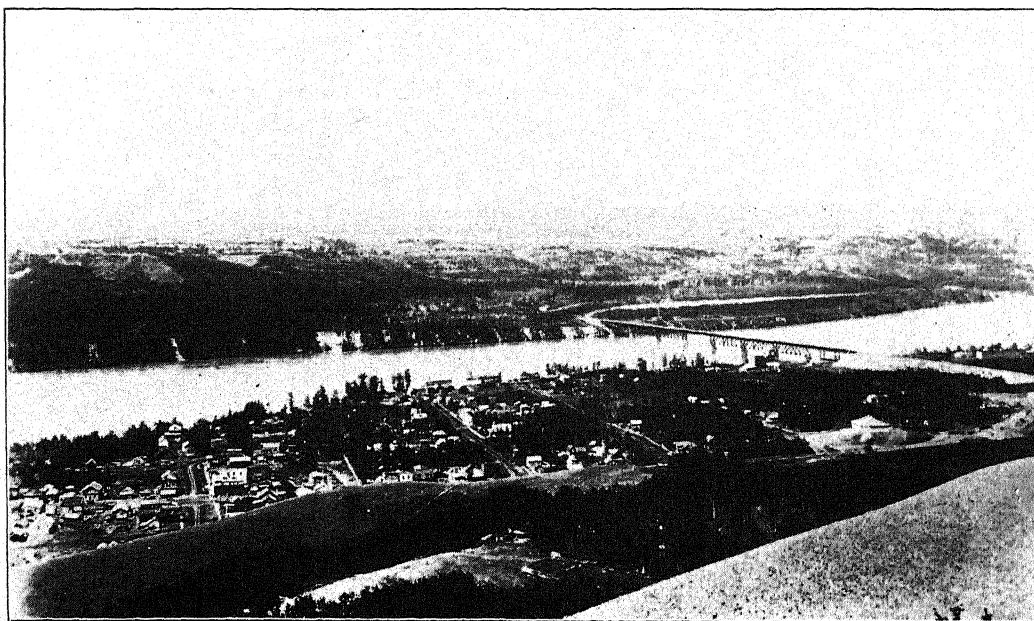
Kamloops, Armstrong, Golden, Kelowna, Enderby, Peachland, Penticton, Salmon Arm, Ladysmith, and Revelstoke. There is a Provincial Normal School at Vancouver, and many excellent private colleges and boarding schools. Victoria and Vancouver Colleges are affiliated to McGill University, Montreal, and have high school and university departments. The Legislature have passed an Act providing for the establishment of the University of British Columbia, for the endowment of which 2,000,000 acres of the public lands have been set apart.

The population of British Columbia, widely scattered and composed of many nationalities, is singularly peaceful and law-abiding. Life and property are better protected, and individual right more respected, even in the isolated mining communities, than in some of the great centres of civilisation in other lands. The province, though new as compared with other countries, enjoys all the necessities and many of the luxuries and conveniences of modern life. There are few towns which are not provided with waterworks, electric light, and telephones. The hotels are usually clean and comfortable, and the stores well stocked with every

possible requirement. There is little individual poverty. A general prosperity is the prevailing condition throughout the country, for no one need be idle or penniless who is able and willing to work. The larger towns are well supplied with libraries and reading rooms, and the Provincial Government has a system of travelling libraries, by which the rural districts are furnished free with literature of the best description. The spiritual welfare of the people is promoted by representatives of all the Christian denominations, and there are few communities, however small, which have not one or more churches with resident clergymen. All the cities and larger towns have well-equipped hospitals, supported by Government grants and private subscriptions, and few of the smaller towns are without cottage hospitals. Daily newspapers are published in the larger places, and every mining camp has its weekly or semi-weekly paper.

#### HUNTING.

The sportsman will find a greater variety of fish and game in British Columbia than in any other part of North America; there are, indeed, few regions than can boast of



PEACE RIVER TOWN, IN THE FAR NORTH-EAST OF BRITISH COLUMBIA

*Photo, C.P. Rly.*



THE PROVINCIAL PARLIAMENT BUILDINGS, VICTORIA, CAPITAL OF BRITISH COLUMBIA

*Photo, High Commissioner for Canada*

anything like the same variety of species. Whether with rifle or smooth-bore, or with rod, there is an almost bewildering choice. The three great parallel ranges of the mainland hold an immense amount of big game. In the Rockies there are big-horn sheep, goats, caribou and deer; in the Selkirks, goats and caribou; and in the Coast Range, goats and numbers of the true blacktailed deer. Grizzly bears are found in several districts, while black bears are to be found in numbers throughout the province. The mule deer, misnamed blacktail, is so abundant in East Kootenay, the Boundary country, Okanagan and Lillooet, as to be a certain source of supply for the ranchers and miners to draw upon. Elk (wapiti) shooting may be indulged in by those visiting the northern end of Vancouver Island. It is believed that the elk is extinct upon the Mainland, with the possible exception of the south-east corner of the province, but on Vancouver Island it is tolerably abundant, although it frequents a densely forested region, so that the hunting means hard work.

Although few persons, however keen, would visit British Columbia merely for the

sake of its wing shooting, yet it is undeniable that, with the exception of Manitoba, Alberta and Saskatchewan, a man may find as much work for his breach-loader in the province as he would abroad anywhere. Five species of grouse and vast quantities of wild fowl, from swans to teal, abound in suitable localities. The marshes of the Columbia swarm with mallard and other choice duck in the autumn; the Arrow Lakes and the upper valley of the Fraser form a trough much frequented by the wild geese during their migrations; and the fiords and sounds of the coast shelter great flocks of wild fowl throughout the winter—for it must not be forgotten that the winters of the Pacific are very much less rigorous than those of the Atlantic, and that a very large proportion of the birds do not go further south than Vancouver Island.

The fishing of British Columbia is so remarkably good that no one can realise the quantities of salmon and trout to be found in the streams of this province until he has visited it. The quinnat and coho salmon may be taken in salt water at certain seasons in large numbers by means of a spoon bait,

and a few crack fishermen have succeeded in taking the quinnat in fresh water, but as a rule British Columbia salmon, with the exception of the Spring, or Tyee, do not rise to the fly. However, the trout will more than make up for the salmon's lack of appreciation. The rainbow trout is, possibly, the finest fish for his inches of all the trout family, and, happily, he is extraordinarily numerous in many of the inland waters. Where he is not found, his place is taken by the black spotted trout, an excellent fish, though hardly the equal of the rainbow. Very heavy lake trout are found in all the larger sheets of water. Shuswap Lake may be mentioned as especially good, and easy of access. An excellent hotel has been built at Sicamous, on the very edge of the lake, at which many sportsmen reside each summer for weeks at a time, in order to enjoy the fishing and shooting of the neighbourhood.

#### VANCOUVER.

This, the commercial metropolis and mainland terminus of the Canadian Pacific Railway, incorporated in 1886, is the largest centre of population, estimated at over 130,000. The trade of the city is large and steadily increasing, as it is an important distributing point for the northern and interior districts, and the home port of the Canadian Pacific Empress liners and Canadian-Australian Transpacific mail steamships. Vancouver harbour is one of the finest in the world, land-locked and sheltered from all points, and roomy and deep enough for the largest vessels.

The city of Vancouver possesses many fine public buildings, business blocks and private residences, and new structures are being continually added. The churches, schools, libraries, hotels and clubs are quite equal to buildings of similar class in the older cities of the East, and give one the impression of solidity and permanency. The Hotel Vancouver, owned by the Canadian Pacific Railway Company, is one of the best equipped in Canada, and is well known to world travellers. One of Vancouver's great attractions is the magnificent Stanley Park, with its groves of great towering firs and cedars, a wonder and delight to visitors.

Vancouver has connections by land and sea with all important points on the coast and in the interior. The steamships of the

Canadian Pacific Railway and other lines ply between the city and places along the coast, as far north as Alaska and south to San Francisco. Steamers make daily trips in the summer between Vancouver, Victoria and Seattle (U.S.A.). Direct railway connection is made with every point on the continent, from Halifax to Mexico. The city has a very complete electric railway system, with extensions to New Westminster, Lulu Island and Chiliwack. The water supply is unlimited, and of superior quality, and the sewerage system is constructed on modern lines. Telephone connection is made by cable with Victoria and other cities and towns on Vancouver Island, as well as all points in the Fraser Valley, and the city of Seattle. A power tunnel provides a water head sufficient to develop 300,000 horsepower. There are four daily newspapers, and several weekly and monthly magazines which are really excellent productions.

#### VICTORIA.

Victoria is the seat of Government and the capital of British Columbia. It is charmingly situated on the south-east of Vancouver Island, and for climate and surroundings has no rival in Canada. Victoria is the oldest town in the province, dating back to 1846, when it was known as Camosun, a Hudson Bay Company's trading post. Victoria leaped into prominence during the gold excitement in 1858, and grew rapidly in trade and population. The city is substantially built, there being many fine stone and brick blocks in the business portion, while the private houses, surrounded by beautiful lawns, gardens and shrubberies, are picturesque and cosy. The Parliament Building, overlooking James Bay, is one of the finest examples of architecture in America. It contains fine collections of natural history, mineral, agricultural and horticultural specimens, and is a centre of great interest to travellers. Beacon Hill Park, a natural pleasure ground, facing the Strait of Juan de Fuca, affords one of the most magnificent views in the world, the snow-clad heights of the Olympian Range and the noble dome-like Mount Baker, forming the background of an enthralling picture. Victoria Arm forms one of the most beautiful stretches of inland water imaginable, and there are many other

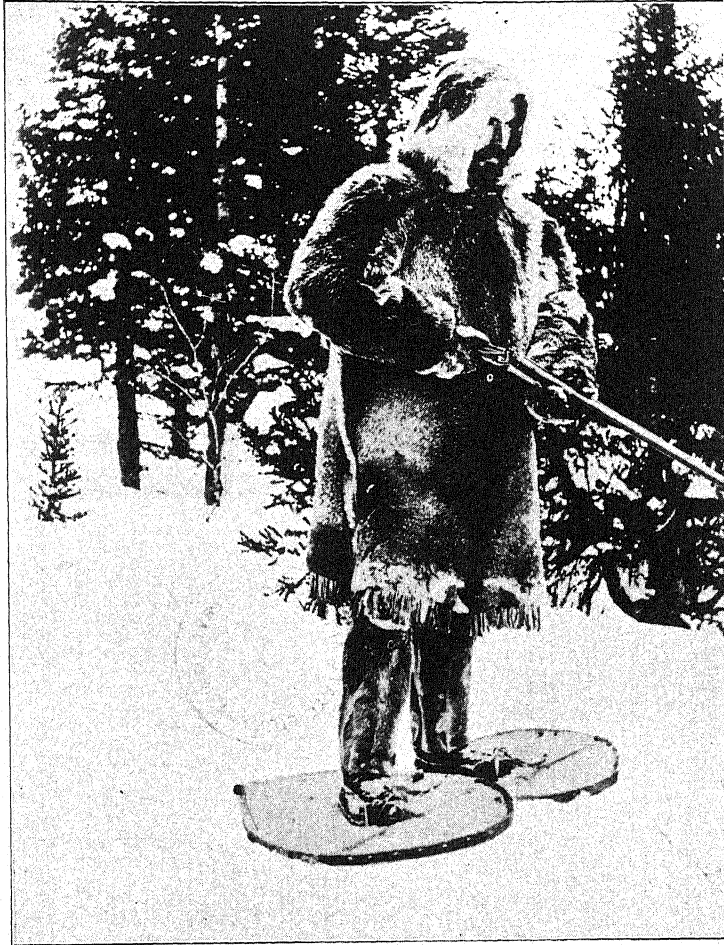


delightful bays and inlets which lend peculiar attraction and variety to the scene. With such a wealth of natural beauty, Victoria is fast becoming the Mecca of the tourist, many thousands from all parts of the world visiting the city every year.

In addition to its beauty and attractiveness, the city is an important business and

(estimated to be over 45,000 in 1929), many persons of independent means choosing it as a place of residence, while new enterprises are giving employment to more labourers and artisans.

Victoria is the first port of call for the Transpacific liners and northern steamers, as well as all the big freighters bound for



IN THE SILENT PLACES OF THE GREAT NORTH-WEST

industrial centre. It shares with Vancouver the northern trade and that of the interior, and its shipping, lumbering, mining, sealing and fishing interests are very considerable. The development of the resources of Vancouver Island must naturally benefit Victoria. The city is growing steadily in population

Puget Sound. It is the home port of the Victoria sealing fleet, the Canadian Pacific Coast Service, and of many coasting vessels. Daily communication is maintained with Vancouver, Seattle and other points, and there is a tri-weekly service to San Francisco. The distance between Victoria and Seattle

is 80 miles, and Victoria and Vancouver 84 miles. The Grand Trunk Pacific Railway Company runs its magnificent steamships between Victoria, Vancouver, Seattle, and Prince Rupert. The Company has also built extensive docks and warehouses on Victoria harbour.

The city has an electric street railway system, and gas and electric light services. The business streets are paved and well kept, and cement sidewalks have been laid on all the principal thoroughfares. There are about 90 miles of paved streets. The waterworks and sewerage system are being extended to meet the requirements. There is telephone connection with all the principal points on the island and lower mainland, and with Seattle. Victoria's western suburb, Esquimalt, was at one time the headquarters of His Majesty's Royal Navy's North Pacific Fleet, but the ships, with the exception of one or two, have been withdrawn, and Canada has undertaken the maintenance of the fortifications, which are among the strongest in the Empire. Esquimalt has a fine harbour, formerly used exclusively by the navy, which has been opened to merchant vessels. The manufacturing industry of British Columbia, which is largely centred in these two cities, is only in the early stages of development. The total output of finished products is, however, valued at £50,000,000 a year.

The other important towns are New Westminster, Nanaimo, Rossland, Nelson, Kaslo, Ladysmith, Port Alberni, Kamloops, Revelstoke, Fernie, Grand Forks, Greenwood, Trail, Cranbrook, Vernon, Armstrong, Enderby, Kelowna, Prince Rupert, Fort George, and Creston.

### NORTH-WEST TERRITORIES.

This vast and largely unexplored region forms a belt of territory across the extreme north of the American Continent, dividing the self-governing provinces of the Dominion from the Arctic Ocean. It has a total area of 1,309,682 square miles, of which about 51,465 square miles is believed to be composed of water. The population of this enormous territory is little more than 9,000.

The Canadian territory north of the provinces, exclusive of the Yukon, was divided into the districts of Keewatin, Ungava, Mackenzie and Franklin, which were administered as a whole. In 1912 Ungava was included in Quebec Province, Keewatin divided between Manitoba and Ontario, while Mackenzie and Franklin were merged to form the present North-West Territories. They include all the Western Continent north of the Canadian Provinces, except Alaska, Yukon, and Greenland. The greater portion of this territory is ice-bound, and has never been explored.

The single name, *North-West Territories*, which formerly included the whole of this northern region has now been superseded by the four names: District of Keewatin, District of Mackenzie, District of Franklin and Yukon Territory.

These territories have short, hot summers and correspondingly long, cold winters, the temperature sinking on occasions to 65 degrees below zero. Its animals are therefore chiefly fur-bearing, and since the days of the old Hudson Bay forts, the sale of furs has been practically the only trade of the region. Arctic exploration has lent fitful interest to certain portions of the islands and mainland, and the present problem, regarding the possibility of transferring wheat from the Central Provinces to England and the Continent by way of Hudson Bay and Strait, as an auxiliary to the route *via* the Great Lakes and the St. Lawrence River, is lending zest to exploration.

In the western portion of the North-West Territories the great water system of the Mackenzie, includes the Athabasca, Peace and Liard Rivers, with the Athabasca, Great Bear and Great Slave Lakes. Great Bear Lake is fourth, and Great Slave Lake eighth in point of size among the principal lakes of North America. The Mackenzie River and its lakes extend for a distance of 620 miles north and south; with the addition of its tributary, the Athabasca, its length is 1,000 miles. Along its banks many vegetables are grown, and every year, at Providence Mission, in latitude 62 deg. N., wheat is raised.

The population consists principally of a few thousand Indians in the more habitable parts, but in the north there are only Eskimos.

### YUKON TERRITORY.

The extreme north-west corner of the great Canadian Dominion is formed by the territory of the Yukon, which has a total area of 207,076 square miles, only 1,730 square miles of which is composed of water. The population of this vast ice-bound land is little more than 3,000, many of whom are Indians.

Less than forty years ago the Yukon territory was unknown to all save a few trappers and explorers. Rumours that the Russians before they sold the adjoining territory of Alaska to the United States had found considerable deposits of gold therein

In 1894 Robert Henderson, of Nova Scotia, and a small party arrived in the territory. They prospected along the bars of the upper Yukon and rocked out \$54 in fine gold at the mouth of the Pelly. When they reached the trading post at Ogilvie, Joe Ladue contributed the latest information respecting the strikes or discoveries which had been made. As a result of the information furnished by Ladue and after a short stay at Ogilvie, Henderson started for Indian River. He prospected along this stream to the mouth of what is now known as Quartz Creek, up which he proceeded to the divide



DAWSON CITY, THE CENTRE OF THE KLONDIKE GOLD REGION *Photo, C.P. Ry.*

were discredited by the commercial world. Yet the subsequent gold-boom attracted all sorts and conditions of men to the icy-north, and to-day the frozen wastes of Alaska and the Yukon, especially the former, are being conquered, the rivers navigated, and the snow-fields and rugged mountains crossed by that great harbinger of progress, the railway line.

### THE STORY OF THE KLONDIKE.

So much has been written about the historic Klondike Gold Rush of 1896-7 that it may be of interest to give here a brief account, taken from Government records, of this great adventure.

on Hunker. No large prospects were found, and Henderson prospected on various creeks in the watershed of Indian River. After cleaning up about \$600 for the season on Quartz Creek he crossed the divide to Gold Bottom where he found a two cent prospect. During the summer of 1896 Henderson made a trip to Ladue's post at Ogilvie for supplies. The water in Indian River was low and he knew that it would be almost impossible to proceed up that stream. He came to the conclusion that Gold Bottom flowed into a tributary of the Yukon some distance below Ogilvie, so proceeded down the Yukon to its confluence with the Tron Deg, now known to the world as the "Klondike," where he



CHILKOOT PASS, 1898

found George W. Carmack and two Indians named "Tagish (Skookum) Jim" and "Tagish Charlie," who were fishing for salmon. In accordance with the usual custom Henderson announced the discovery of Gold Bottom and invited Carmack to stake there. A short time afterwards Carmack and the two Indians proceeded to Gold Bottom and staked claims adjacent to Henderson's location. Henderson states that he advised Carmack and the Indians to cross the divide and prospect in the gravels of what is now known as Bonanza Creek and asked Carmack to advise him, by sending back an Indian, if good prospects were discovered.

"Tagish (Skookum) Jim," Carmack and Charlie found rich prospects on Bonanza and Carmack staked Discovery (which included No. 1 below), "Tagish (Skookum) Jim" No. 1 above and "Tagish Charlie"

staked No. 2 below. Carmack and the Indians, without notifying Henderson, at once proceeded to Fortymile and filed their applications with the recorder for the district. Up to this time the majority of the miners in the territory had been working the Fortymile, but as soon as the discovery on Bonanza became known many of the miners stampeded to the new strike and in a short time the creek was staked from end to end. Meantime Henderson was working on Gold Bottom and did not hear of the new strike until too late to secure a claim. Extensive prospecting at once commenced on Bonanza and in a few months the remarkable wealth contained in its gravels was revealed.

As soon as the news of the rich strike reached the outside world, thousands of gold seekers immediately started for the Klondike. Probably never before in the history of gold mining camps has there been

FORM A.

*for Placer*  
APPLICATION AND AFFIDAVIT OF ~~DISCOVERY OF QUARTZ~~ MINE.

I, G. W. Carmack  
of Forty-mile  
hereby apply, under the Dominion Lands Mining Regulations, for a mining loca-  
tion in

a creek known as Bonanza creek  
flowing into Klondike River

Discovery claim on Bonanza  
Creek

for the purpose of mining for Gold  
and I hereby solemnly swear:—

1. That I have discovered therein a deposit of Gold
2. That I am, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the first discoverer of the said deposit.
3. That I am unaware that the land is other than vacant Dominion land.
4. That I did, on the 14<sup>th</sup> day of August, 1896, mark out on the ground, in accordance in every particular with the provisions of ~~section 14 of the said Mining Regulations~~ of the said Mining Regulations, the location for which I make this application; and that in so doing I did not encroach on any mining location previously laid out by any other person.
5. That the said mining location contains, as nearly as I could measure or estimate, an area of \_\_\_\_\_ acres, and that the description and (sketch, if any) of this date hereto attached, signed by I, set forth in detail, to the best of my knowledge and ability, its position, form and dimensions.
6. That I make this application in good faith to acquire the land for the sole purpose of mining to be prosecuted by myself or by myself and associates, or by my assigns.

Sworn before me at St. Bonaventure  
this 24<sup>th</sup> day of September, 1896. G. W. Carmack  
acty locat

Note.—In case of abandoned grounds it may be necessary to omit No. 2.

Form No. 100.

FAC-SIMILE OF THE APPLICATION OF GEORGE WASHINGTON CARMACK FOR  
DISCOVERY OF GOLD ON BONANZA CREEK. THIS STARTED THE KLONDIKE  
GOLD RUSH



such a rush of people from almost every country in the world and of almost every vocation in life, as was seen in that irresistible stream of fortune-seekers, who, in the winter and spring of 1898, climbed the Chilkoot pass and pressed on to Lake Lindeman, where the most primitive boats and other flimsy craft were hastily constructed for the journey of 500 miles down the Yukon River to Dawson.

A sad event in the history of this great stampede occurred one morning on the trail between the summit of the Chilkoot Pass and Sheep Camp. For some distance between these two points the trail leads along the bottom of a steep mountain, and a long line of gold seekers were labouriously toiling along this stretch of the journey, some bearing their heavy burdens of supplies in packs and some on sleds, when suddenly a huge mass of snow came plunging down the mountain side, striking the line of travellers and burying between 50 and 60 men. Those who escaped the avalanche at once began digging for their comrades, very few of whom were rescued, some of the bodies not being discovered until the snow disappeared in the spring. Such is an instance of the dangers which confronted, in the early days, the thousands of adventurers who contracted the gold fever, and who were unaware of the innumerable hardships and dangers to be encountered and the obstacles to be overcome on the journey to the new diggings.

All through the summer of 1898 the gold-stakers continued to come in thousands, many of them inexperienced in mining of any kind or with knowledge gained in other placer fields that seemed to be of small service here. Against the advice and to the great amusement of the few Sourdoughs in the community the hills and benches on Bonanza and Eldorado were staked by the Cheechakos (newcomers) and proved to be immensely rich.

It was not unusual for claims, which a few days' work would have shown to be rich, to change hands for trifling sums often under amusing circumstances. Thus, a well known Swede, having made his winter's grub stake mining on the Fortymile bars in the summer of 1896, came down to Fortymile post at the end of the season to ease up for a few days

and to buy his winters' outfit. While there he met a miner just returned from the new camp, who had staked a claim on the creek subsequently called "Eldorado." Not thinking the claim of any real value he is alleged to have got the Swede drunk and then sold him the claim for all the money he had left, which was \$800. On sobering up the next morning the new owner endeavoured to get his money returned but without success. He thereupon secured a small amount on credit, and as soon as the ice formed on the river went to have a look at his new claim. The first hole proved it to be exceedingly rich and the claim subsequently produced well over a million dollars in gold.

On the 3rd of July, 1897, G. A. Lancaster located a Bench claim on the left limit of No. 2 Eldorado Creek. This claim included a portion of what subsequently became known as Gold Hill. Lancaster immediately started work on his claim by making an open cut. This was the first claim located and the first gold mined from the famous White Channel gravels.

Yukon's early history is prolific of incidents and adventures worthy of record in the history of that territory but, suffice it to say, that the pioneers of this great north land worthily upheld the best traditions of an admittedly great pioneering race.\*

The northern, or Arctic territory of the Yukon is almost exclusively devoted to gold mining in the famous Klondike region around Fort Reliance. The commercial centre of this desolate land, which stretches to the shore of the Arctic Ocean, is Dawson City. This collection of wooden shanties, some of which are of very large proportions for wooden structures, has a population of about 900; and despite its remoteness, there are telephones, a variety theatre, and electric light.

For over seven months in the year this region is in the icy grip of Arctic winter, daylight is of short duration, and the sky is often brilliant with the lights of the Polar night. It is no unusual thing for thermometers to record 65 degrees below zero. The proximity of the Pacific does not prevent the long, severe winters which mark the approach to the Arctic Circle. In the northern portion of the territory the ground below

\* *The Yukon Territory.* N.-W. Territories and Yukon Branch, Department of the Interior, Canada.

the surface remains frozen throughout the year. The short summer is often unbearably hot, and mosquitoes are very troublesome.

### CLIMATE.

"The climate of the Yukon Territory is characterized by extremes in temperature and a very moderate precipitation. There is no more delightful climate than prevails from May 1 to October 1. The continuous light for the whole twenty-four hours, during the period from the middle of May to the first week in August, although anticipated, is a source of delight and wonder to the visitor. While the winters are long and cold, on account of the absence of high winds and the dryness of the atmosphere the low temperatures are borne with less discomfort than in other parts of the north not so favoured.

"The climate is healthful at all seasons of the year as is well evidenced by the robust type of children seen in all parts of the territory. The extreme range of temperature is from 125 to 153 degrees or an average of about 142 degrees. The maximum recorded at the Dawson Meteorological Station is 92 degrees above and the minimum 68 degrees below zero. The average precipitation is 12.8 inches per year, the greatest precipitation on record being 17.9 and the least 9.3 inches. The accumulated measurements of each snowfall averages about 60 inches a year. The depth of snow remaining on the ground would be equal to the sum of the previous falls if no causes of diminution existed, but as the depth is reduced by compression and by waste attendant on evaporation and melting, particularly in the fall and spring months, the actual depth remaining at any time is usually about 30 inches.

"There are a large number of optical and atmospheric phenomena which here, more than in most arctic lands, arrest the attention of observers on account of their magnificence and beauty, such as the Aurora Borealis presenting itself in varied and magnificent forms, solar and lunar halos, parhelia and parselenae displaying brilliant and wonderful prismatic colours, solar and lunar coronae, rainbows and colourations of the sky.

"The Yukon is a land of flowers. Hundreds of types of flowers, plants and shrubs

grow wild on every hill and valley. Nature responds generously where flowers are cultivated and one of the lasting impressions left with the visitor is the variety and beauty of the blooms which decorate the homes and beautify the grounds of Dawson."

### TRANSPORT.

"The Yukon River is navigable from Behring Sea to Whitehorse, a distance of over 2,000 miles, and, during the season, from about the 10th of June until the 5th of October, this river and its tributaries is the great channel of transportation from the coast to the interior of the Yukon and Alaska. The railway of the White Pass and Yukon route extends from tidewater at Skagway, Alaska, where connection is made with ocean-going vessels, to Whitehorse, Yukon Territory, 110 miles distant and the head of steamboat navigation on the Yukon River. This railroad crosses the coast range of mountains and at 19.7 miles from Skagway attains an altitude on the White Pass summit of 2,887 feet. At this point the railroad crosses the boundary between Alaska and British Columbia. The scenery between Skagway and White Pass is of the most wild and rugged description. From White Pass summit to Lake Bennett, British Columbia, the railway passes through the foothills of the coast range and then follows the shore of Lake Bennett where it enters the Yukon Territory and reaches Carcross, which has an altitude of 2,171 feet and is 66.7 miles from Skagway.

"The splendidly equipped fleet of steamers of the British Yukon Navigation Company of the White Pass and Yukon system ply on regular schedules between Whitehorse and Dawson, giving a service from the terminals about each alternate day but depending to a considerable extent upon the volume of traffic to be handled. The trip between Whitehorse and Dawson is made in two days (down-stream) and from Dawson to Whitehorse (up-stream) in four days.

"During the period of closed navigation and for the primary purpose of carrying the mails, stages are operated on a weekly schedule between Whitehorse and Dawson, with a connecting service from Mayo to Crooked Creek. Trucks and caterpillars are used in this service between Whitehorse and

Yukon Crossing and stages, drawn by four horses, for the rest of the distance. A trip over this trail during February or March, when the trail is at its best, is a delightful experience. Every comfort is provided on the stages and at the various road houses en route.

"Dog teams are still used by the Indians and by prospectors, hunters and trappers, in sections of the territory remote from the larger centres. Caterpillars are gradually supplanting horses for heavy freighting."

#### **ADMINISTRATION AND INDUSTRY.**

The Yukon, which was instituted a separate political unit in the year 1898-9, is governed by a Gold Commissioner and an elected Yukon Council. There are also

judicial, medical and police officials, with headquarters at Dawson, Whitehorse and Mayo. There are wireless stations (communicating with Edmonton, Alberta) at Mayo, Dawson, Aklavik (Arctic Ocean) and Herschel (Arctic Ocean, operated only during season of open navigation).

Gold mining is one of the principal industries, and the value of the output, which has been declining for many years, averages about £120,000 a year. Wheat has been grown for twelve consecutive years at an experimental farm near Dawson and has matured quite well. Garden peas and beans do well, and cattle, sheep and poultry are being raised in small numbers. There are a number of fur farms near Whitehorse and about 36,000 pelts are annually exported.



CARIBOU

# AUSTRALIA

AND DEPENDENCIES OF PAPUA AND NEW GUINEA





# AUSTRALIA

## AND DEPENDENCIES OF PAPUA AND NEW GUINEA

**T**HE size and modern progress of the Australian Commonwealth, with its premier colony of Papua and the Mandatory ex-German sphere, both on the island of New Guinea, make it necessary—as in the case of the Indian Empire, the Dominions of Canada and New Zealand, United South Africa, Newfoundland and Rhodesia—to consider this country as a separate British nation in the making—an immense, closely affiliated empire in itself. Before plunging into historical, political, geographical and commercial details, it is well to pause for a moment to consider the potentialities of this island-continent, which has been aptly described as the first example in history of “a continent for a nation, and a nation for a continent,” the existence and prosperity of which adds enormously to the wealth and strength of the British Empire.

It is a fertile and healthy country, 2,974,581 square miles in extent, or twenty-five times the size of the United Kingdom, inhabited by 6,200,000 people, 95 per cent. of whom are of British origin; it is surrounded by the ocean, and protected from foreign aggression, not only by a growing home fleet, but also by the British Royal Navy; possesses a strong national army, to which a backbone of inestimable value is given by the veteran corps, which did such splendid service in the Great European War; has a revenue of between 78–85 millions sterling a year; a rapidly increasing foreign trade of over £310,000,000 per annum, the largest portion of which (130 millions) is happily with the United Kingdom; possesses mines of gold, silver and precious stones, as well as of coal, iron and tin; has forty large cities, and has nearly finished the construction of what should prove one of the most magnificent capitals in the world. It already possesses its own colonies in New Guinea and the Pacific Islands, which themselves have an area of about 190,000 square miles, and a native population of nearly 1,000,000. There

are on this island-continent over 763,000,000 acres of unsold State-land, and, although the National Debt is heavy (Federal Government £460,000,000 and States Administration £554,000,000), it must be remembered that the largest portion, viz., £289,000,000, is represented by national railways, and £26,000,000 by tramways, which yield a considerable annual profit, and that the cost to Australia of the war for civilisation was about £474,000,000.

It must be borne in mind that the Australians have determinedly refused imported coloured labour, even for work in the tropical regions, generously reserving the whole continent for the habitation of white men. Such, in brief outline, is the Australian Commonwealth of to-day; what will it become to-morrow, and what geographically, politically and commercially, is its present condition and future position likely to be in relation to the other portions of the world-wide British Empire?

### DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT.

In every country past traditions bear a strong relationship to present and future conditions, therefore the correct interpretation of history forms the best master, and the surest guide. This is, perhaps, more especially the case in countries like India and Egypt; but it must be remembered that many of the Dominions and colonies of Britain have but a comparatively recent history to work upon, the early native customs no longer counting as important factors, as, in cases like Canada, Australia and New Zealand, the aborigines are fast becoming extinct, and the few that are left are either civilised, or confined to native reserves. In Australia, perhaps more than in any other colony, history has but a small bearing on the future, for its early developments were confused, its aristocracy were the landed proprietors, and it has frontiers with no mixed races of past traditions. For these reasons, it is necessary



Photo, Australian Government

STATUE OF CAPTAIN COOK, HYDE PARK, SYDNEY

to give only a brief resumé of the early history of Australia, reserving the space for its present aspects and future possibilities.

Doubts exist as to who first sighted the Australian Continent, some historians giving the honour to a Frenchman, who they assert, was driven there from the Cape of Good Hope by contrary winds, others holding that the Dutch ship "Duyfhen" first reached these shores and anchored in Carpentaria Bay, which certainly seems most likely, as the Dutch East India Company sent many vessels of discovery into the "unknown seas of the south."

In 1642, Anthony Van Dieman, the Governor of Java, equipped and sent forth two vessels, under Abel Janz Tasman, who, after calling at Mauritius, then a Dutch Colony, sailed away into uncharted seas to discover a new land of promise, and after a stormy voyage, fraught with many dangers, landed at Marion Bay on the west coast of Tasmania. His stay on this island was,

\* Previously Cook had been exploring in Canada, and had surveyed and charted the shores of Newfoundland.

† The name "Botany Bay" was given on account of the magnificent collection of flora made later by Sir J. Banks in this portion of New South Wales.

however, very short. Again setting forth, he sailed about until chance carried him to the shores of New Zealand, thus making a second discovery, with which he rested content and returned to Batavia.

The Dutch sent several other expeditions to explore the coast of what they termed the "Great South Land," but the first Englishman to visit Australia was William Dampier, a captain of buccaneers, who, however, made no explorations owing to the mutiny of the crews of both his vessels.

For many years no further efforts were made to explore this new land, owing to the unfavourable reports given by Tasman and Dampier, until, in 1768, Captain James Cook sailed out of Plymouth Sound, in the barque *Endeavour*, on the first of his many famous voyages of discovery in the South Seas.\* After remaining some time at Tahiti for the purpose of taking astronomical observations, and calling at the Society Islands, the *Endeavour* sailed into Tawranga Bay, New Zealand, in October, 1769.

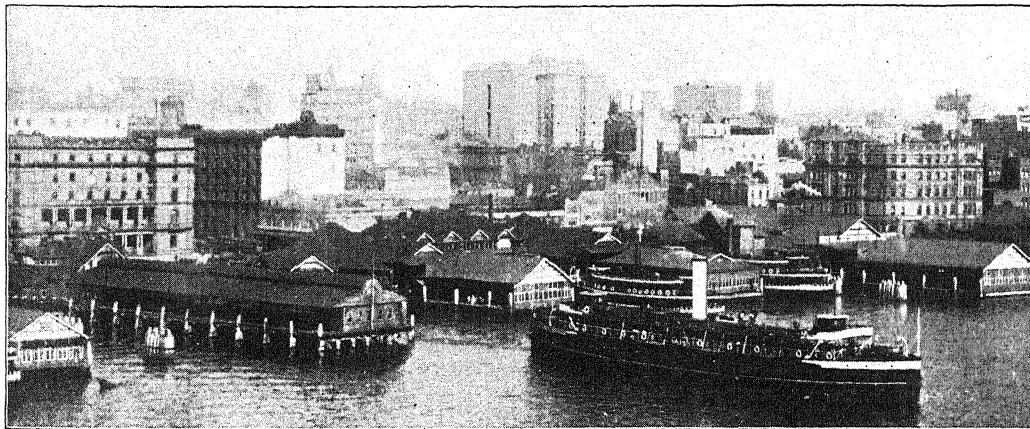
Cook explored the adjacent coast and hoisted the British Flag in Mercury Bay; then he headed for North Island, and took possession in the name of King George. After sailing completely round the three islands which now form the Dominion of New Zealand, the *Endeavour* left the land astern at Cape Farewell, and some weeks later dropped anchor in Botany Bay, Australia.†

"New South Wales" still bears the name given to the country by Captain Cook, who annexed it to the Crown of Britain. Many misfortunes attended this adventurous voyage; the *Endeavour* struck a rock, and several months were occupied in the work of stopping and repairing the leak, which was carried out in a small river near Cape Tribulation, with the surrounding country swarming with hostile natives. Eventually the vessel was sufficiently repaired to enable the sails to be set for England.

Captain Cook made many subsequent voyages in the sloops, *Resolution*, *Discovery* and *Adventure*, accompanied by parties of scientists, and an exploration was made of the coast-line and littoral of Australia, Tasmania and New Zealand. For many years, however, nothing was done by the



DISCOVERY OF SITE OF SYDNEY



CIRCULAR QUAY, SYDNEY, NEW SOUTH WALES *Photo, Australian Government*

Sailing through Sydney Heads, Captain Phillip established, on the site where now stands the great City and Port of Sydney, the first convict settlement in Australia, over a century ago

Government to occupy these lands, or bring them under administrative control.

#### CONVICT SETTLEMENTS.

About this time great necessity arose in England for clearing the over-crowded convict establishments by deportation, and at the same time the Governments of Lord North and Lord Sydney were, by duty bound, compelled to assist the loyal settlers who had remained true to the King in the American War of Independence of 1776. A suggestion was put forward for the establishment of a loyalist colony in New South Wales, but owing to the regrettable apathy of the Government nothing was accomplished in this direction for many years. Without entering into details of the founding of the first convict settlement in Australia, it may be said that several excellent memorandums were drawn up as how best this could be accomplished, and many well thought out schemes proposed. In 1786, Lord Sydney's Government forwarded instructions to the Admiralty to carry out this expedition, and Captain Arthur Phillip was appointed the first Captain-General and Commander-in-Chief of New South Wales.

The first fleet, composed of nine ships with 443 officers, crew and marines, and 720 convicts (men, women and children), left English shores on the 13th May, 1788, under the command of Captain Phillip.\* After

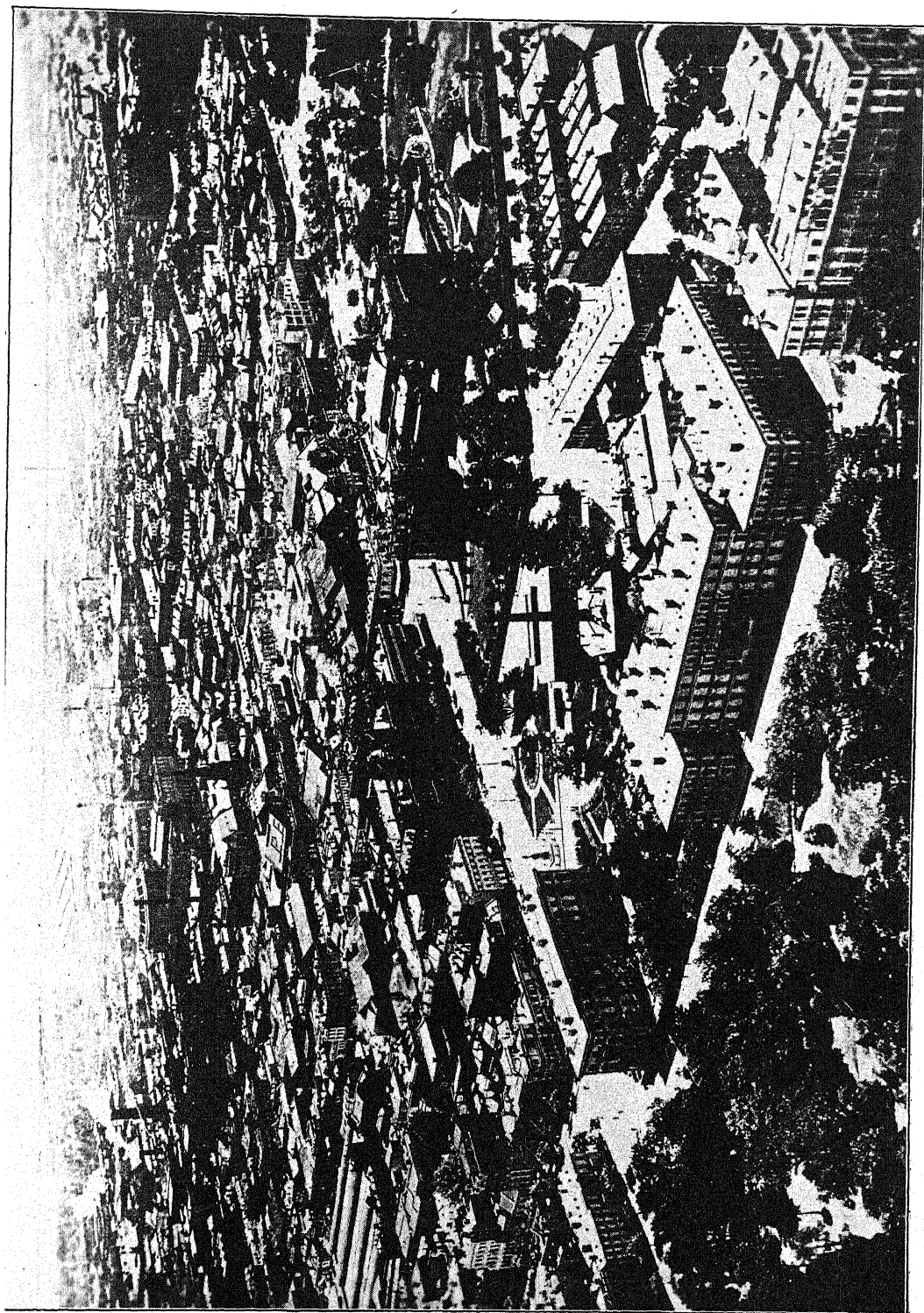
some delay at the Cape and Rio de Janeiro, where supplies had to be taken on board, Botany Bay was reached in January of the following year. The surrounding country was explored with the object of finding a suitable place for the establishment of the settlement, and sailing through Sydney Heads, Phillip discovered the magnificent harbour of Port Jackson, on the shores of which the convicts were landed, with stores and a guard of marines, and the first colony in New South Wales was founded.

The subsequent trials and troubles of this young colony need not be followed here, nor the founding of similar settlements on Norfolk Island, and in Van Dieman's Land (Tasmania); sufficient to say that the abolition of the transportation of convicts to Australia took place in 1851-3, when responsible government was granted, and to Van Dieman's Land in 1853-4, the name of which, with all its odious associations, was altered in the following year to "Tasmania."

A brief enumeration of some of the most important events in the early progress of this colony may prove of interest to those who have not the time to study the detailed, though interesting, history of Australia, which is so full of unique situations and intricate problems as to make it without parallel in the histories of the nations. First came trouble with the natives; then an insurrection of the convicts which was quickly

\* An excellent first Governor, and a thoroughly humane man.





MELBOURNE FROM THE AIR

*Photo, Australian Government*



suppressed; the alarming growth of the liquor traffic, during which period many labourers received their wages in rum; the difficulties of settling the time-expired convicts as free colonists, and their social status and relation to convicts still in bondage; the construction of public works, which was greatly retarded by want of capital and labour; the first gold rush to Summerhill Creek during 1851-5, when nuggets were found by the score, which after milling exceeded £1,000 in value, and the price of food went up to an enormously high figure (wheat 16s. per bushel, potatoes 21s. per cwt., beer 5s. per gallon); then came the political struggles relative to the passing of the Constitution Bill, and the refusal of the hereditary principle in the formation of the Senate; the question of the land settlement, which gave rise to a difficulty between the Governor and the Ministry, the former granting a land concession which was endorsed by the Secretary of State, and the Cabinet refusing to acknowledge the right of the Governor, using the Royal Prerogative, to make such a grant. Sir William Denison solved the difficulty by obtaining the seal of the Cabinet and refusing the resignation of his ministers.\*

### RAPID DEVELOPMENT.

From 1880 onward, may be reckoned the period of expansion. Queensland was formed from New South Wales in 1859, Victoria in 1857, South and West Australia received a great impetus from the founding of the Squatting Districts; and the influx of capital from the United Kingdom was followed by a great increase in the export of wool.

The construction of the first railway was commenced in 1850, the line running from Sydney to Paramatta (an early settlement), Liverpool, Bathurst and Goulburn; these and other partly constructed lines were afterwards purchased by the State, and rapid railway construction became the chief practical policy of the government. The suppression of bushranging next became the problem of the day; many daring robberies under arms

were perpetrated, small towns were held up, and life and property became unsafe. In one instance, the gold train from Lachlan was successfully raided, and specie to the value of £14,000 was stolen. This state of affairs, which lasted from 1858-64 brought about the increase in the mounted police forces, and the strengthening of the law against robbery and violence.†

In 1861, the miners at Lambring Flats attacked the Chinese, who were then working on the gold diggings at various occupations, and committed barbarities which were disgracefully accentuated by the refusal of the juries to convict the ringleaders. This was followed in 1868 by the attempted assassination of the Duke of Edinburgh, who was visiting the colony. So infuriated were the people at this unwarrantable attack that they nearly lynched O'Farrell the assassin, and a law was passed sternly suppressing treason.‡

From 1870 to the present day, the whole working population of Australia has been busily engaged in the extension of industrial enterprise, the peopling of the soil, and the general commercial development of the country. The body politic has been wrestling with problems of the union of the several States and Tasmania. With the successful formation of the Commonwealth, the rise of Australia, as a great British nation, may be said to have commenced, therefore it is advisable to deal more fully with this phase of modern colonial history.

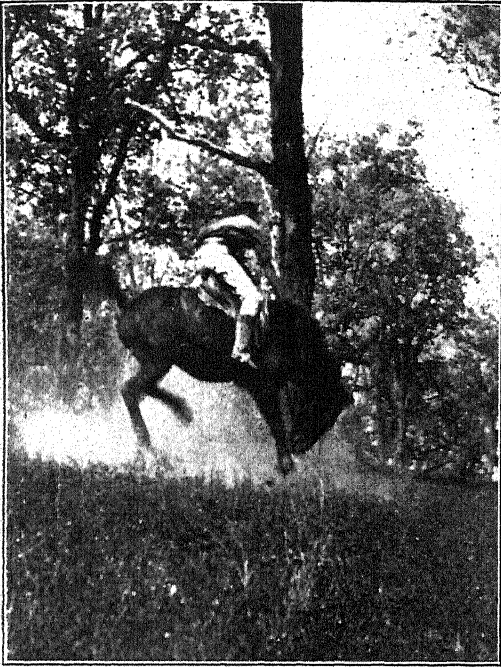
### FEDERATION OF THE AUSTRALIAN STATES.

The achievement of federation offers the most striking example of Australian constructive policy, and has, without doubt, greatly strengthened the Empire's position in the Pacific. By uniting the five States of the Continent and Tasmania, not only has an era of more sound statesmanship been inaugurated, and inter-colonial commerce stimulated by the abolition of the States customs, but the heterogeneous systems of defence have been welded into a united army under the

\* Several successive ministries had refused their sanction.

† Trouble with the 40,000 miners on the Bendigo diggings arose owing to the Government raising the mining licence fees. Riots occurred, but were, however, easily quelled by the military, after a sharp skirmish at Eureka Hill; but the miners obtained their demands, which were a reduction in the price of licences and Parliamentary representation.

‡ It is thought that O'Farrell was connected with some Fenian Society; and this law, although showing in a conclusive manner the loyalty of the Colonies, was disallowed by the Imperial Parliament, as it was of such a drastic character.



STATION LIFE IN AUSTRALIA (1)

compulsory service law ; birth has been given to a growing navy, and thus the true imperial policy of " creating new centres of strength " has been successfully commenced.

A brief examination of the various causes which brought about the federation of New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland, South Australia, West Australia and Tasmania may serve to show that no sentiment of wishing to stand aloof from the family circle of Empire influenced the unification of these colonies under a Commonwealth. Previously to the London Conference of 1887, Australian defence rested solely upon the volunteer organisations in the separate States, and no provision whatsoever was made for naval defence, distinct from that naturally afforded by the Royal Navy. At this conference between the Imperial and Colonial Ministers an agreement was made for the formation of an auxiliary Australian Squadron, under the control of the British Admiralty, to be maintained in Australian waters, half the cost being defrayed by these colonies.

Military necessities and home affairs brought about a conference in Adelaide in 1897, to which each of the States, as well

as New Zealand and Tasmania, sent a representative, the outcome of which was a strong resolve to pave the way for the federation of all the Australian colonies.

New Zealand gradually withdrew from this union. Being a strong and separate colony she rightly preferred to stand alone, as a separate link in the chain of Empire. Before the federation could be carried out, which took longer than would have been the case owing to the strong and natural opposition of many of the States to give up, not only a portion of their autonomy, but also a considerable portion of their revenue, as the abolition of the States Customs was a primary factor in the policy of the Unionists, the Boer War broke out in Africa, and a wave of patriotism spread over these colonies as quickly and as strongly as it did over India, Canada and the other portions of the great Empire. Australia (including Tasmania) sent to the seat of war, 16,175 horse and foot, and the New Zealand contingent numbered 6,171.

Notwithstanding these events the Commonwealth became an accomplished fact in 1900-1 ; and the Federal Parliament, like the States Legislatures, is composed of the House of Representatives and the Senate,



STATION LIFE IN AUSTRALIA (2)



*Photo, Australian Government*

**SETTLER'S SHACK IN THE MURRUMBIDGEE IRRIGATION AREA, NEW SOUTH WALES**

which is presided over by the Governor-General acting in the name of the King-Emperor. Both Houses are elected by the people, the members of the Lower House for three years and of the Upper Chamber for six years, appeal is allowed to the Privy Council of the Governor-General.

The principal original laws provided for the sole employment of white men on all mail contract work (the result of the cry raised by Sir H. Parkes "Australia for the Australians") the illegality of strikes; the prevention of indentured labour, unless the contract be approved by the Government (Labour Party's policy to prevent the reduction of current wages, by the introduction of indentured immigrant labour); the exclusion of Pacific Islanders and all coloured labourers with the exception of Maories (supported by the Labour Party for the same reasons).

The laws passed by the first few parliaments (Sir Edmund Barton, Mr. Deakin, Mr. Watson and Mr. Reid) related principally to the uniformity of the customs duties, systems of defence, postal and telegraph arrangements, the abolition of the inter-colonial duties, and the extension of the suffrage to every citizen irrespective of sex.

Just as, before Federation, full powers of self-government in local matters had been

enjoyed by each separate colony, so now each State retains its former powers of legislation and administration, except in certain matters, over which exclusive control has been surrendered by all the States. The legislative powers of the Federal Parliament embrace among other matter, trade and commerce, navigation and shipping, railways, taxation, naval and military defence, quarantine, light-houses, and fisheries; finance and insurance; postal, telegraph and like services; census and statistics; emigration, immigration and naturalisation; currency, banking, weights and measures; and conciliation and arbitration in industrial disputes.

Various departments and sub-departments have been transferred from time to time from the States to the Commonwealth, while other departments necessary for the due performance of the Commonwealth functions have been created. The Ministerial departments are as follows: Prime Minister, External Affairs, Home Affairs, Treasury, Trade and Customs, Defence, Attorney-General, and Postmaster-General.

Since the advent of systems of responsible government, steady and strenuous efforts have been made by all the States to develop the resources of the country, and to improve the condition of the people. To this end commerce and settlement have been assisted

by the construction of railways throughout the States ; by the extension of highways wherever settlement has gone ; by the construction of irrigation works, not only for domestic and stock purposes, but also for the irrigation of the land ; by subsidising steamship services, and by the construction of extensive docks, wharves, and jetties at the coastal towns. The "bush" has in a large part been explored, surveyed and thrown open to settlement. Facilities have been granted both to *bona fide* settlers on the land, and to the working classes in the centres of more dense population, to acquire possession of the soil, and special inducements have been offered to immigrants by the introduction of new forms of tenure on easy terms and conditions. Postal services have been extended throughout the settled portions of the land. Free schools have been established and are maintained in all the States. Thoroughbred livestock has been imported for the purpose of improving the Australian breeds. Agricultural colleges, experimental farms, and technical schools have been established. Money is advanced to settlers by the various governments to assist them in the construction of improvements and in developing their selections. Instruction and advice is given to farmers, dairymen, fruit-growers, and stock breeders in the best methods of conducting their several businesses. It is recognised that the present population of 6,200,000 is inadequate, hence the desire on the part of the government to secure desirable immigrants, who, while assisting in the development of the Commonwealth, may participate in its benefits.

### THE FEDERAL CAPITAL.

By the Commonwealth Constitution Act, 1900, provision was made for the establishment of a Federal Capital in New South Wales, and it was also provided that the Commonwealth Parliament should sit at Melbourne until it met at the new seat of Government. In 1910 the Commonwealth Government acquired from the State of New South Wales, an area of approximately 940 square miles in the district of Yass-Canberra, about 200 miles to the south-west of Sydney, and proceeded to take the preliminary steps towards the establishment of a capital city in that district. A large number of survey

operations were carried out ; these included the demarcation of the boundaries of the territory, the determination of the boundaries of privately-owned properties, surveys for engineering works and proposals, and for other necessary purposes. In 1911 competitive designs were invited from architects throughout the world for laying out the city, with the object of embodying in the construction of the Federal Capital the most desirable features from the standpoint of general efficiency for its purposes, of engineering and hygiene. The city, which has been named "Canberra," is the permanent seat of Government of the Commonwealth. A temporary observatory has been established, roads and bridges made and improved, gauge-weirs constructed on the rivers, reafforestation operations commenced.

Adjacent to the city site, and within the Federal territory, an up-to-date Military College has been opened, and at the port which has been established on Commonwealth territory, at Jervis Bay, a Naval College has been erected. A railway line to connect the city with the railway system of New South Wales was constructed, and also a line between the city and Jervis Bay. An appropriation is made in the Budget each year towards the cost of completing the new capital.

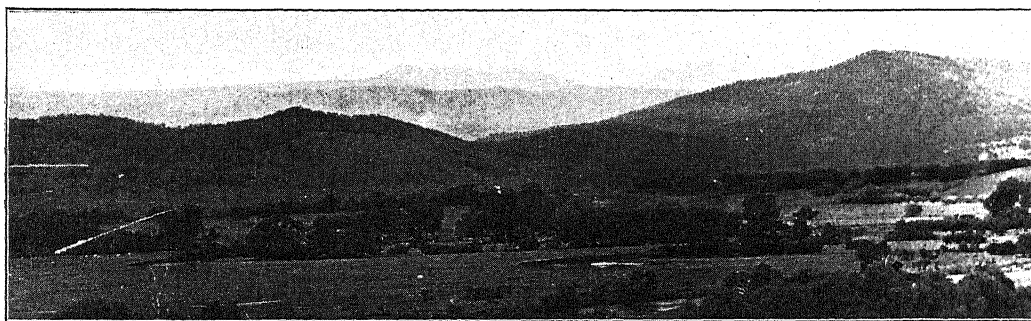
### NATION MAKING.

Among the important events which followed the formation of the Commonwealth must be mentioned the unification of the administrative system, and the formation of an up-to-date Bureau of Census and Statistics ; the taking over by the Federal Government of the Administration of Papua (British New Guinea) in 1906 ; participation in the Imperial Conference in London in 1907 ; the choice of the Yass-Canberra site for the Federal Capital in 1908 ; the Imperial Defence Conference of 1909 in London, at which the Commonwealth was represented by three delegates, and which was followed by the first step (an order for two Destroyers and one 1st class Cruiser) in the formation of the Royal Australian Navy ; next came the visit of Field-Marshal Lord Kitchener to advise on a system of Military Defence. Queensland opened its State University in 1909 ; and the penny postage was introduced in the following year. Admiral Sir R. Henderson visited

Australia to advise on Naval Defence ; and the first issue was made of Commonwealth notes. Compulsory military training in Australia, and the establishment of penny postage to all parts of the Empire, were the events of 1911. These were followed by the opening of the Commonwealth Bank, the beginning of the Trans-Australian Railway (Port Augusta to Kalgoorlie), and the inauguration of the University of Western Australia. These internal events were followed by the outbreak of the Great European War, the Allied Victory, the signing of the Peace Treaty, and the Covenant of the League of Nations (by Australia), and the mandate to administer a large section of the ex-German sphere in the Pacific. Then came the post-war visit of Admiral Lord Jellicoe

## Australia To-day

The Australian Commonwealth includes the island continent of Australia proper and the island of Tasmania, and has a total area of about 2,974,581 square miles, with a population of about 6,200,000. It is situated in the Southern Hemisphere, between longitudes  $113^{\circ} 9'$  and  $153^{\circ} 39'$  E., and between the parallels of latitude  $10^{\circ} 41'$  and (including Tasmania)  $43^{\circ} 39'$  S. It is bounded on the north by the Timor and Arafura Seas and the Torres Strait, on the south by the Bass Strait and Southern Ocean, on the east by the Pacific, and on the west by the Indian Ocean. In its vast area, which is about twenty-five times the size of the United



"THE DIVIDING RANGE"

Photo, Australian Government

to advise on naval defence in the light of modern conditions. This was followed by the Imperial Conferences of 1921 and 1923. In 1927 that vast and but little developed area, known as "The Northern Territory," was divided for administrative purposes into two sections: *North Australia* and *Central Australia*. The headquarters of the Government are at Darwin and Alice Springs respectively (see *North and Central Australia*).

In 1927 also occurred the visit of T.R.H. the Duke and Duchess of York and the institution of the Commonwealth Parliament at Canberra; the transfer of the Government departments to the new capital and the establishment of Beam Wireless. In 1928 the British Economic Mission visited Australia and the Empire Forestry Conference was held there. In 1929-30 the Commonwealth proposed to take over the state debts and H.M.S. *Canberra* was added to the growing Australian Navy.

Kingdom, it contains nearly every description of soil and every variety of climate, from temperate to sub-tropical. Of the total area of Australia the lesser portion (1,149,320 square miles) lies within the tropics. The States of the Commonwealth having portions of their territory in the tropical zone are: Queensland (339,000 square miles in tropical zone, and 311,500 square miles in temperate zone), Western Australia (364,000 square miles and 611,920 square miles), and North and Central Australia (426,320 square miles and 97,300 square miles). The States of New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia and Tasmania are all within the temperate zone.

From north to south the Australian Continent extends for nearly 2,000 miles, while its greatest breadth from east to west is about 2,400 miles. The coast-line of the Commonwealth, exclusive of minor indentations, measures 12,210 miles.



### MOUNTAINS.

The "Dividing Range," a series of ridges of varying elevation, broken by broad valleys, runs from north to south of the continent, forming the principal watershed, which starts eastwards and gives rise to the Murray River and its many tributaries. The extensive valleys of this system of waterways form the most fertile portions of Australia. The main mountain feature of the country is the great Dividing Range, which, starting in the Cape York Peninsula in Queensland, runs parallel with and close to the eastern shore of the continent through the states of New South Wales and Victoria. In the south, one branch of the range sweeps westwards toward the boundary of Victoria and South Australia, and the other—the main

laide and terminates in the Flinders Range, near Lake Torrens, while the plateau in Western Australia is traversed by ranges in various localities.

### RIVERS.

The Burdekin and the Fitzroy are the two largest rivers in north-eastern Queensland. Other important Queensland rivers are the Burnett, the Mary, and the Brisbane. Of New South Wales rivers, the Hunter, which drains about 11,000 square miles, and empties itself at Newcastle, is the most important, while other large rivers are the Clarence, the Hawkesbury and the Shoalhaven. The largest Victorian rivers, apart from tributaries of the Murray, are the Latrobe, the Hopkins and the Glenelg. The River Murray,



"ON THE SLOPES OF MT. KOSCIUSKO, 7,300 ft." *Photo, Australian Government*

branch—ends in Tasmania, which is to a large extent covered by ramifications of the range. The greatest height attained is in New South Wales near the Victorian boundary, where Mount Kosciusko reaches an altitude of 7,300 ft. The Dividing Range, with its lateral spurs, receives various sectional names in the states through which it passes. The seaward slope of the range is generally sharp and precipitous, and in places marked by extensive chasms and lofty precipices. On the continental side the descent is more gradual, the mountains merging into great plains stretching towards the middle of the continent. In South Australia a chain of mountains runs northward from the neighbourhood of Ade-

which drains a considerable part of Queensland, the major part of New South Wales, and a large part of Victoria, is one of the longest rivers in the world. It forms for a considerable distance the boundary between New South Wales and Victoria, and subsequently entering South Australia flows into the ocean on the southern coast of that State. In good seasons, with its tributary the Darling, it is navigable for a considerable distance from its mouth, the total length, including the Darling, being 2,310 miles. The chief tributaries, besides the Darling, are the Murrumbidgee and Lachlan. Some of the rivers flowing into the sea on the north-west coast of Australia—*e.g.*, the Murchison, Gascoyne, Ashburton, Fortesque,

DeGrey and Fitzroy—are of considerable size, as also are those of the northern coast—*e.g.*, the Victoria, Daly, Gregory, Leichhardt, Cloncurry, Gilbert and Mitchell Rivers. The Victoria River, estimated to drain 90,000 square miles, is said to be navigable for the largest vessels for 50 miles.

### PLAINS.

Much of the Australian interior is occupied by vast waterless plains, such as the Great Sandy Desert in Western Australia ; Old Man Plain, situated north of the Murray, which divides the States of Victoria and New South Wales ; the Stuart Plains, near Mount Stuart, which is considered the exact middle of the continent ; the Victoria Desert, and the Mullaber Plains. These vast stretches of arid waste are almost entirely devoid of grass and trees ; for leagues nothing can be seen except a monotonous succession of sandy hillocks covered with salt-bush—a growth which prevails throughout the whole interior of Australia.

There are many kinds of salt-bush, but the predominant one is much like English spinach, and affords excellent food for cattle and sheep during the droughts which are the curse of the plains of Western Australia.

On the Victoria Desert and the Great Sandy Plain, nothing grows except the coarse quilt-like grass known as spinifex, and a few gum or eucalyptus trees, which afford but little shade. On these great stretches of sand the sun beats down with tropical heat, not even night-dews moisten the ground, and rain is unknown. The only oases are salt-lakes, which exist in many parts of Australia, and afford no relief to the parched ground or the thirst of man and beast. Sandstorms are the scourge of these regions.

The less barren plains are covered with coarse grass, salt-bush, scrub and clumps of eucalyptus trees, which are characteristically Australian. These giants are often over 300 ft. high, and, although evergreen, afford but little shade from the blazing sun, which gives the earth and grass a parched appearance and casts a hot golden glare all around. A haze overhangs the distance and the intervening plains flicker in the hot dry air ; gaunt blue gums rear their heads towards the colourless sky, and the river-beds are as parched as the sand of the Sahara. Nature stands still in the sweltering heat ; occasion-

ally a shrill “Coe-ee” will sound from some far off sheep-run or cattle station, and huge white or black patches on the sun-lit plains denote the gigantic herds and flocks grazing on the coarse dry grass.

The upland plains, which occupy by far the largest portion of the Australian interior, are sprinkled with dwarf-gums, callia mallee, tea-trees and acacia, which provides not only drink for travellers and food for beasts, but also wattle for fences. Kangaroos, opossums and rabbits form the principal denizens of these regions.

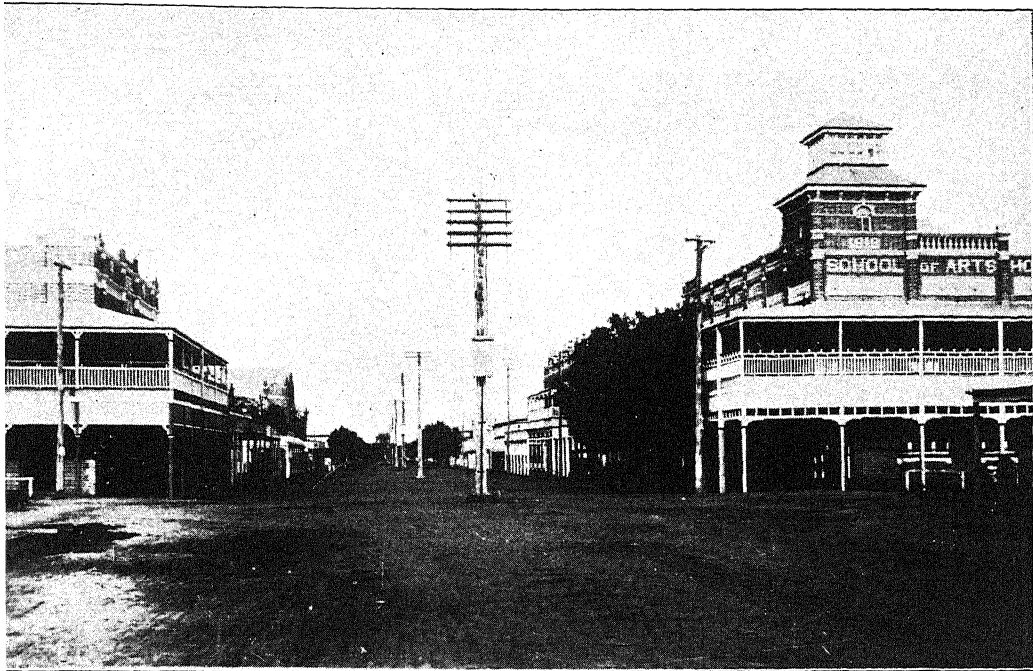
### THE FORESTS.

In Australia the forests are composed of giant trees, but the undergrowth is not nearly as thick as in West or Central Africa, and the atmosphere, being both hot and dry, is consequently much more healthy. The rainfall rarely exceeds 10 in. in the year, except on the coast. In the south-west there are forests of Jarrah, which forms one of the finest kinds of timber in the world, and is much used for wood-paving ; and in the Backwood Country there are enormous numbers of Karri trees, which are among the tallest in the world.

### IRRIGATION.

Although even in the arid belts of the interior, which have been termed the “Dead Heart of Australia,” the cultivation of certain commodities is by no means impossible, and it is a lucrative business to rear large herds of cattle and flocks of sheep, which do not suffer much from the drought if the locality is carefully chosen, and adequate provision made to tide over this period ; at present, population and industry only fringe the enormous coast-line, which is swept by cool breezes and blessed with a fair rainfall.

The condition of the interior is, however, being rapidly changed by the introduction all over the country, of artificial methods of irrigation. In Queensland, alone, considerably over 600,000,000 gallons of water are daily obtained from artesian wells, and in West and South Australia fresh borings are constantly being made. There are also big schemes in varying stages of maturity for the employment of reservoirs, canals, barrages and other extensive irrigation works, which are all that is needed (except population) to make what is now fallow land highly productive and revenue-producing territory.



ROMA  
A Ranching Centre in the far West of Queensland



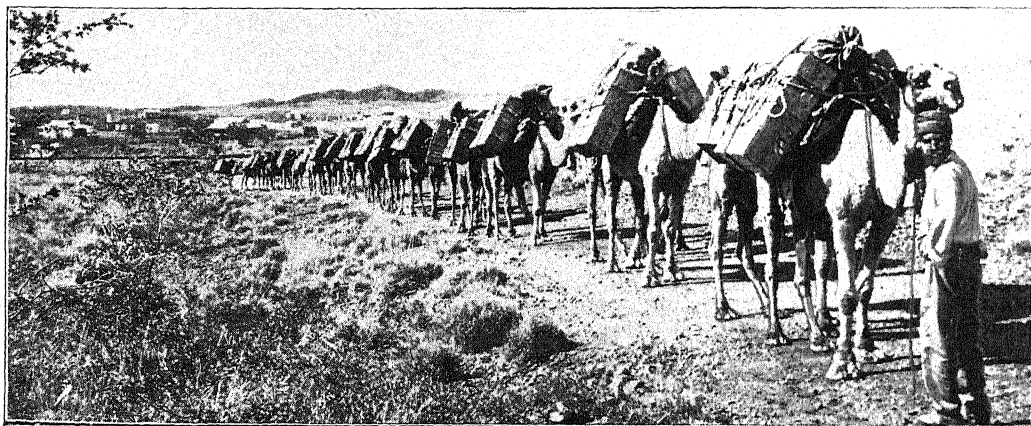
BUNBURY, WEST AUSTRALIA

*Photo, Australian Government*

Though much of the rainfall received over the vast area of the Australian continent passes off by evaporation or finds its way to the sea, a large volume sinks into the earth and helps to swell the store of artesian water contained in subterranean channels and reservoirs. The most important artesian basins are (a) the Great Australian Basin, about 570,000 square miles in area, extending over parts of Queensland, New South Wales, South Australia, Central Australia and North Australia, and (b) the Western Australian Basins. Numbers of bores have been sunk by the Governments as well as private individuals, the water obtained proving invaluable for watering of stock and irrigation purposes. The discovery of artesian water has completely changed the outlook over

however, both the extremes of the tropical and the frigid zones.

Australia may generally be divided roughly into three belts or zones marked by broad climatic differences, which are, perhaps, more noticeable in the productions of the orchards than in any other of the fruits of the soil. In the southern belt—comprising Tasmania, the greater part of Victoria, and considerable parts of New South Wales, South Australia, and Western Australia—the climate is similar in many respects to that of the south of France or the north of Italy. In these lands are the farms and the wheatfields, and the apple, pear, plum and cherry grow to perfection. In the south of Victoria the thermometer rises about 100 deg. in the shade on the average on five days during the year,



CROSSING A WEST AUSTRALIAN DESERT

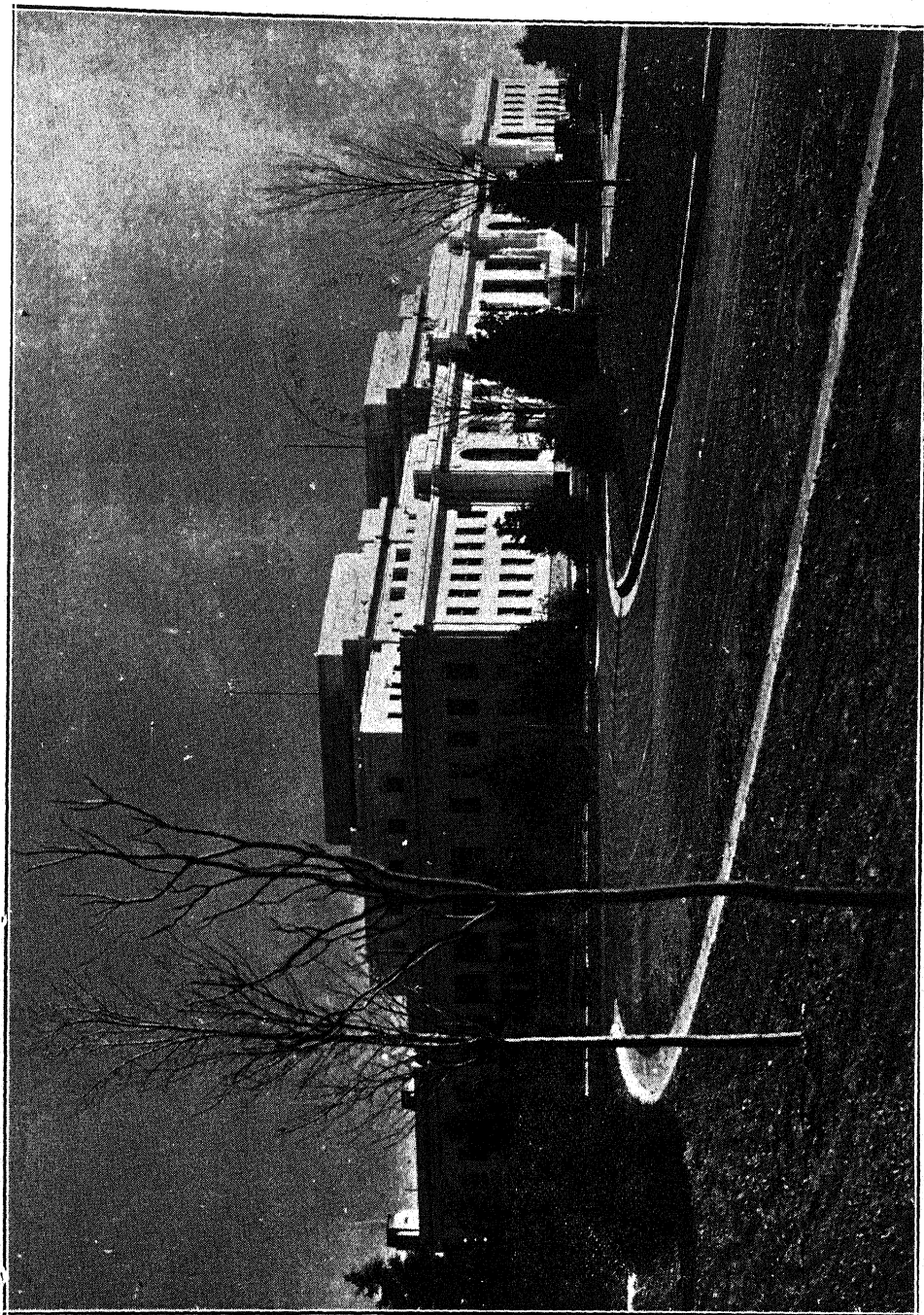
*Photo, Australian Government*

thousands of square miles of country where surface water was the only want, and has opened the way for the development of areas as yet barely touched. It has also enabled stock to be travelled where formerly such a thing was difficult or impossible.

### CLIMATE.

As the south of Tasmania is in a latitude corresponding roughly to that of the south of France, or of New York, in the northern hemisphere, while the northern extremity of the Australian continent corresponds to the south of India or Ceylon, it is obvious that the Commonwealth must have a great variety of climatic conditions. Its climates, in fact, range from tropical to temperate, missing

and generally on about three nights during the year it falls to some two or three degrees below freezing point. The middle belt—comprising parts of all the continental States—was, in the early days, with the exception of the coastal districts, devoted almost entirely to sheep stations, and is the natural home of the peach, grape, fig and olive; while in the northern belt—comprising North and Central Australia and the northern parts of Queensland and Western Australia—the mango, pineapple, coco-nut and banana flourish, the inland districts being mainly occupied by cattle runs. Even to these broad climatic zones there are numerous exceptions. The farms and wheatfields of the southern belt stretch north through New



THE FEDERAL PARLIAMENT, CANBERRA  
Capital of the Commonwealth of Australia

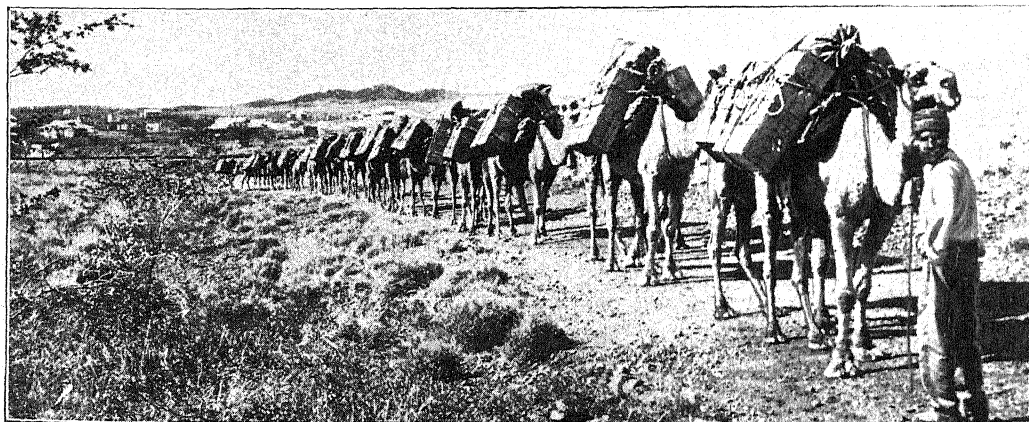
*Photo, Australian Government*



Though much of the rainfall received over the vast area of the Australian continent passes off by evaporation or finds its way to the sea, a large volume sinks into the earth and helps to swell the store of artesian water contained in subterranean channels and reservoirs. The most important artesian basins are (a) the Great Australian Basin, about 570,000 square miles in area, extending over parts of Queensland, New South Wales, South Australia, Central Australia and North Australia, and (b) the Western Australian Basins. Numbers of bores have been sunk by the Governments as well as private individuals, the water obtained proving invaluable for watering of stock and irrigation purposes. The discovery of artesian water has completely changed the outlook over

however, both the extremes of the tropical and the frigid zones.

Australia may generally be divided roughly into three belts or zones marked by broad climatic differences, which are, perhaps, more noticeable in the productions of the orchards than in any other of the fruits of the soil. In the southern belt—comprising Tasmania, the greater part of Victoria, and considerable parts of New South Wales, South Australia, and Western Australia—the climate is similar in many respects to that of the south of France or the north of Italy. In these lands are the farms and the wheatfields, and the apple, pear, plum and cherry grow to perfection. In the south of Victoria the thermometer rises about 100 deg. in the shade on the average on five days during the year,



CROSSING A WEST AUSTRALIAN DESERT

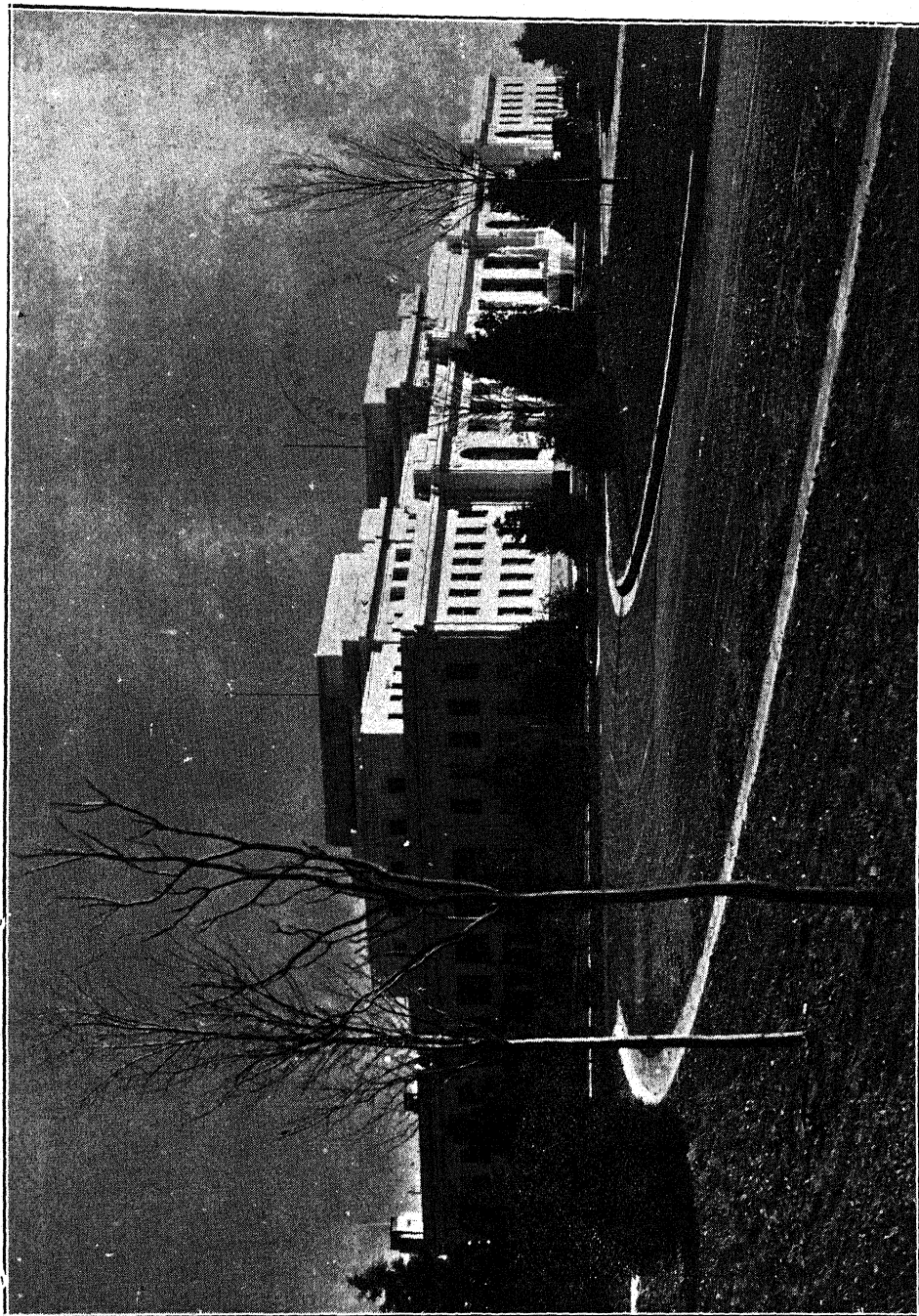
*Photo, Australian Government*

thousands of square miles of country where surface water was the only want, and has opened the way for the development of areas as yet barely touched. It has also enabled stock to be travelled where formerly such a thing was difficult or impossible.

### CLIMATE.

As the south of Tasmania is in a latitude corresponding roughly to that of the south of France, or of New York, in the northern hemisphere, while the northern extremity of the Australian continent corresponds to the south of India or Ceylon, it is obvious that the Commonwealth must have a great variety of climatic conditions. Its climates, in fact, range from tropical to temperate, missing

and generally on about three nights during the year it falls to some two or three degrees below freezing point. The middle belt—comprising parts of all the continental States—was, in the early days, with the exception of the coastal districts, devoted almost entirely to sheep stations, and is the natural home of the peach, grape, fig and olive; while in the northern belt—comprising North and Central Australia and the northern parts of Queensland and Western Australia—the mango, pineapple, coco-nut and banana flourish, the inland districts being mainly occupied by cattle runs. Even to these broad climatic zones there are numerous exceptions. The farms and wheatfields of the southern belt stretch north through New



THE FEDERAL PARLIAMENT, CANBERRA  
Capital of the Commonwealth of Australia

*Photo, Australian Government*



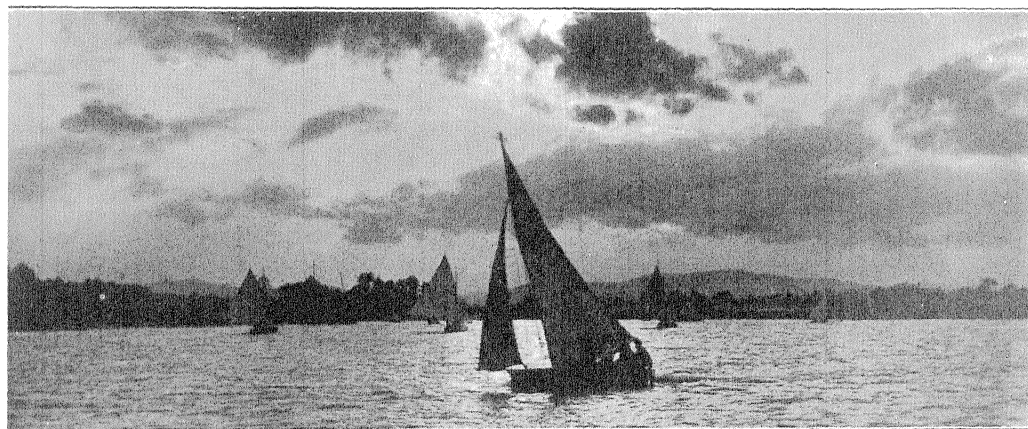
ABORIGINES OF AUSTRALIA



CROSSING A RIVER IN QUEENSLAND



A RIVER IN THE TROPICAL NORTH



" SUNSET ON THE BRISBANE RIVER "

*Photos, Australian Government*





TWO MASTERPIECES OF BRITISH ENGINEERING. R.M.S. "STRATHNAVER" AND SYDNEY HARBOUR BRIDGE



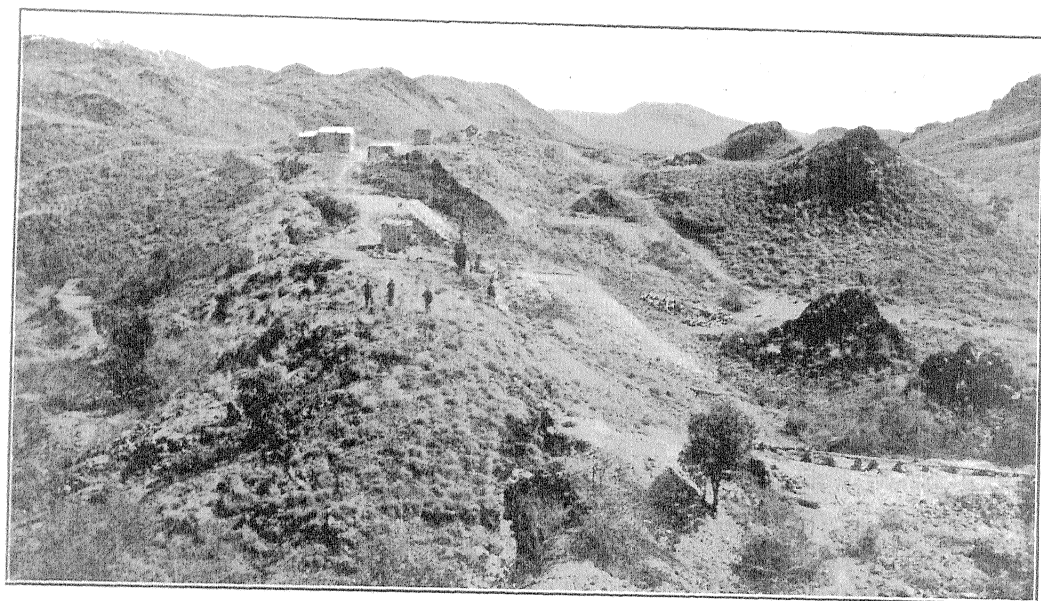


MARTIN PLACE, SYDNEY, NEW SOUTH WALES *Photo, Australian Government*  
389



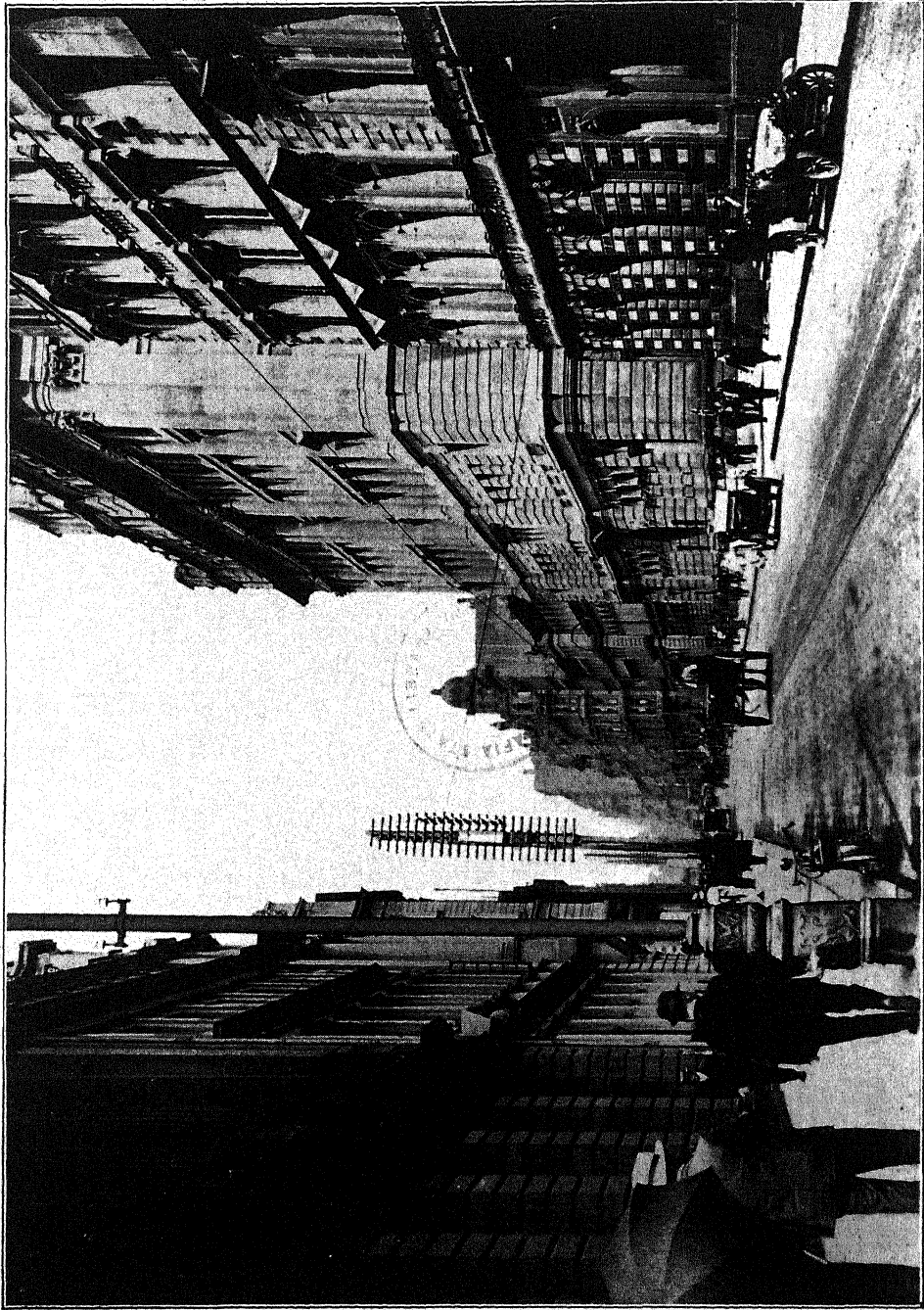


LOADING CAMELS FOR THE WEST AUSTRALIAN DESERT



BAMBOO CREEK, MARELE BAR, WEST AUSTRALIA

*Photos, Australian Government*



PITT STREET, SYDNEY, CAPITAL OF NEW SOUTH WALES

*Photo, Australian Government*



South Wales to the plateaux and coastal districts of Queensland, and even in the far north dairying is a profitable industry. Again, the sugar plantations and other sub-tropical vegetation come down from the northern belt and blend with the vegetation of the middle belt.

The following table shows the variations of temperature in the capitals of the various States :—

THE STATE CAPITALS.

Place.	Mean Summer.	Mean Winter.	Highest on Record.	Lowest on Record.	Average Hottest Month.	Average Coldest Month.
	Fahr.	Fahr.	Fahr.	Fahr.	Fahr.	Fahr.
SYDNEY - -	70.9	53.9	108.5	35.9	71.6	52.3
MELBOURNE - -	66.4	49.9	111.2	27.0	67.5	48.5
BRISBANE - -	76.6	59.5	108.9	36.1	77.1	58.0
ADELAIDE - -	73.1	52.9	116.3	32.0	74.2	51.5
PERTH - -	72.8	55.8	107.9	35.3	74.1	55.0
HOBART - -	61.3	47.0	105.2	27.7	62.2	45.7

The range of summer and winter temperatures in Australia, as in other countries, increases with the distance from the coast, but even in the interior, where the heat is greatest, the nights are cool, and the extreme dryness of the air renders the heat easily bearable and very healthy.

The average annual rainfall varies from about 5 in. in the Lake Eyre District to about 166 in. on the north-east coast of Queensland. The following table shows the rainfall in the districts around the State capitals:—

THE STATE CAPITALS.

Place.	Average.	Highest.	Lowest.	Place.	Average.	Highest.	Lowest.
	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.		Inches.	Inches.	Inches.
SYDNEY -	47.97	82.81	23.01	ADELAIDE -	21.06	30.87	13.43
MELBOURNE -	25.60	36.51	15.61	PERTH -	33.26	46.73	20.48
BRISBANE -	47.05	88.26	16.17	HOBART -	23.57	40.67	13.43

Though droughts have occurred in past years, and agriculturists have suffered considerable loss, the fact that £90,000,000 worth of crops of all kinds on the 17,000,000 acres of the farming belt at present under cultivation, exclusive of over £50,000,000 worth of dairy products and a vast amount

of wool and meat, are annually produced, affords positive proof of the suitability of climate and soil for farming purposes.

### New South Wales

This, the parent State of the whole of Australia, has an area of 310,372 square miles, being nearly three times the size of the United Kingdom, and the population is

about 2,400,000, of whom considerably over a third reside in Sydney and its suburbs.\*

The great variety of climate and soil found in this State enables both semi-tropical and temperate agricultural products to be grown within its borders. On the coast plain, which has an area of 50,000 square miles, wheat and maize grow in abundance, and sheep and cattle are reared in thousands. The production of wool in New South Wales alone averages over 400 million pounds a year. In the North, on the Queensland frontier, sugar-canes, grapes, tobacco and tropica

fruits are largely cultivated, and the manufacture of wine is a growing industry; on the lofty plateaux of the "Dividing Range," which crosses the western portion of this State and follows a northerly course through Queensland, the vegetation of temperate climes flourishes.

\* The overcrowding of the cities to the detriment of the vast areas of agricultural land in Australia, as well as in Africa, Canada, and New Zealand, has assumed such proportions as to call for special measures to induce the agricultural population to remain in the country districts.



A large portion of the interior is covered with mallee scrub, and is subject to long periods of heavy rainfall followed by a drought of equal duration, but the numerous rivers make up for the scarcity of water during certain seasons. The principal rivers are the Lachlan, the Darling, the Murrumbidgee, the Hawkesbury, the Hunter, and the Macintyre, several of which are tributaries of the first two mentioned.

The Blue Mountains and the Liverpool Range cross New South Wales almost parallel to the coast, at a distance inland varying from 25 to 150 miles. In the south many peaks rise above the snow-line.

That portion of the interior which lies between the Rivers Murray and Lachlan is

the homestead ascends like a scaffold pole in the hot, still air, and blurred by the blue haze of distance are gigantic patches of wool, for sheep are so plentiful in Australia that their principal value lies in the wool obtained from shearing.

The climate of New South Wales is so equable that stock may be left in the open even during the winter months, always providing that the surrounding country is not sufficiently low to cause it to be subject to the floods which are prevalent in certain parts during the wet season. The Valley of the Darling, which may be considered one of the most fertile portions of the western plain, has on several occasions been flooded over an area 20 miles broad and



ON THE CATTLE PLAINS OF QUEENSLAND.

*Photo, Australian Government*

known as "Riverina," and being well-watered, as its name implies, is a fine agricultural district and well timbered. The far west is occupied by the "Great Plain," which presents a characteristically Australian contrast to the eastern slopes of the Dividing Range. The grass seas are dry and burnt, and scarcely a single clump of trees breaks the succession of parched coarse grass and mallee scrub. Nevertheless, this huge portion of New South Wales is rich in flocks and herds; on the seemingly endless plains millions of sheep find sustenance. Spread far out over the rolling prairies the tiny houses, or out-stations, of the sheep-runs may be seen surrounded with pens, corrals, and all the appliances of the pastoral industry. A thin column of blue smoke from

300 miles long; but this calamity seldom happens, and when it does the enormous size of this State and its still comparatively unexploited condition make it no difficult matter for the farmers to drive their flocks to a higher region, and there wait for the waters to subside. One great advantage here derived from floods and rains is that in less than a month after the disappearance of the water the country is covered with rich grass, and turned into a veritable garden.

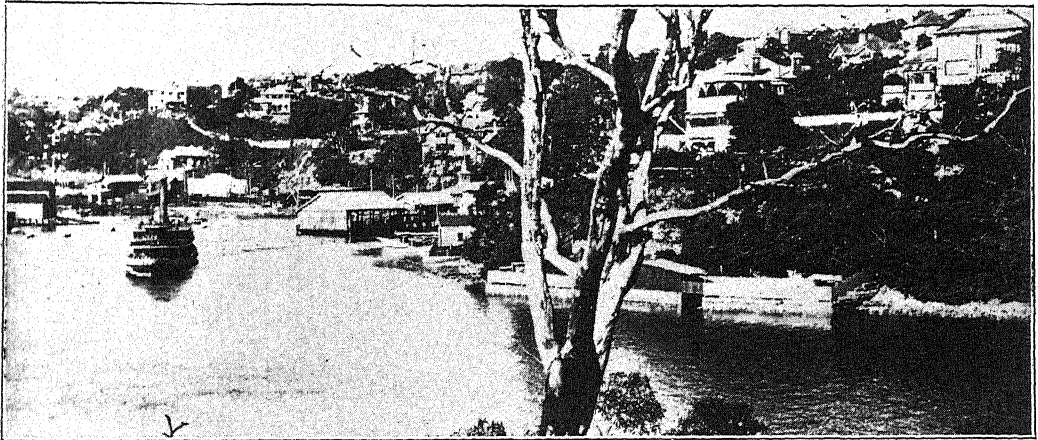
It must not be supposed that the whole of New South Wales is liable to inundation and drought, for, although much of the western plain suffers from the rigour of the seasons, the eastern slopes of the Blue Mountains, and the great coast plain, are exceptionally fertile and enjoy a fairly regular rainfall.

The area of this state, and its diversified surface and climate, enable the settler to choose an almost ideal locality for either pastoral, agricultural, or horticultural industry.

West of the Darling River, on the frontier of South Australia, lies the Barrier Range, which contains the Broken Hill Mines, the richest silver-lead region in Australasia. The deposits extend over an area of about 2,000 square miles.

The largest portion of the trade with these mines, and also with the towns of Broken Hill and Silverton, two of the most important centres in the interior, is carried on with Adelaide, the capital of South Australia, for,

Sydney, the capital of New South Wales, is one of the finest cities on the continent, and occupies the site of the original settlement established by Governor Phillip in 1789. British cities all the world over are much alike, and Sydney is no exception to the rule. It is the third white city of the Empire, having a population of 1,100,000. Only London and Glasgow give a bigger count of heads if the Indian centres of Calcutta, with 1,300,000 people, and Bombay, with 1,200,000 are left out of the reckoning as belonging to the coloured Empire. It possesses magnificent parks, squares, hotels, clubs, public buildings and shops, which display in profusion all the latest feminine



MOSMAN BAY, SYDNEY, NEW SOUTH WALES. A favourite suburb of the Capital

although these places are really within the New South Wales border, they are situated much nearer to Adelaide than they are to Sydney. (See *Map.*) Gold mining is carried on in the Grey Range, which lies across the frontiers of three adjoining States.

To describe all the pastoral and agricultural towns which are dotted over the enormous area of the sheep-lands of New South Wales and the other even larger States would occupy undue space, and is quite unnecessary, for they closely resemble small country towns in the United Kingdom. It must be remembered that the composition of the population of Australia is more truly British than the inhabitants of London; over 90 per cent. being of British origin, of which a considerable portion were born in the "Old Country."

lingerie and creations of the world of art, science and industry. It has been termed by many the "Queen City of the South."

The harbour, known as Port Jackson, is the finest natural anchorage on the coast of New South Wales, and could accommodate without let or hindrance the combined fleets of the world. It was this fine, well-sheltered bay which induced Governor Phillip to establish the first settlement on its shores; and Sydney owes its present prosperity not only to the fertility of the surrounding country, and the extensive system of railway lines which link this city to the great commercial centres of Victoria and Queensland, but more than anything else to the square miles of placid water composing the harbour of Port Jackson, wherein tramp and liner may ride in peace and safety.

Newcastle, in the Hunter Valley, is not the only coal-field in New South Wales. Mines, which produce a quantity of iron, are now being worked at Lithgow, Katoomba, and Wallerang, all of which are within easy reach of Sydney, and use that port as their emporium. There are many good-sized towns in this State; the most important of which, other than those already mentioned, are Maitland, an agriculture centre in the "Black Country," near Newcastle; Liverpool, Paramatta, and Morpeth, on the coast, which are small ports for inter-colonial trade; Bathurst, Liverpool, Goulburn, Orange and Wellington, all railway centres, and important towns on the fertile slopes of the Dividing Range.

On the coast, in the north of the State, lies the large district known as "New England," which is composed of fertile lands encircled by the Hastings, New England and Macpherson Ranges. Here horticulture has assumed considerable proportions, and wheat

and cereals grow in abundance. The chief towns of this well-watered region are Port Macquarie, Kempsey, Gladstone, Grafton, Maclean and Richmond, on the coast; and Lismore, Tenterfield, Armidale, in the interior.

The country surrounding Sydney is not rich in gold, there are no fields like those of Bendigo and Ballarat, near Melbourne, but it possesses some of the most valuable coal, copper and tin mines in Australia. At Cobar, which is connected by railway with Sydney, the copper deposits almost equal in value those of Mount Lyell in Tasmania. The country around Glen Innes, which is about 300 miles north-west of the capital, is famous for its tin mines; and the coal-fields of Newcastle, one of the most important towns in New South Wales, are of the greatest possible value to Sydney and the whole State.

Although the manufacturing industry is rapidly increasing in many of the towns,



A SYDNEY SURF CARNIVAL  
The Volunteer Life Saving Brigade on Manly Beach, Sydney, New South Wales

*Photo, Australian Government.*

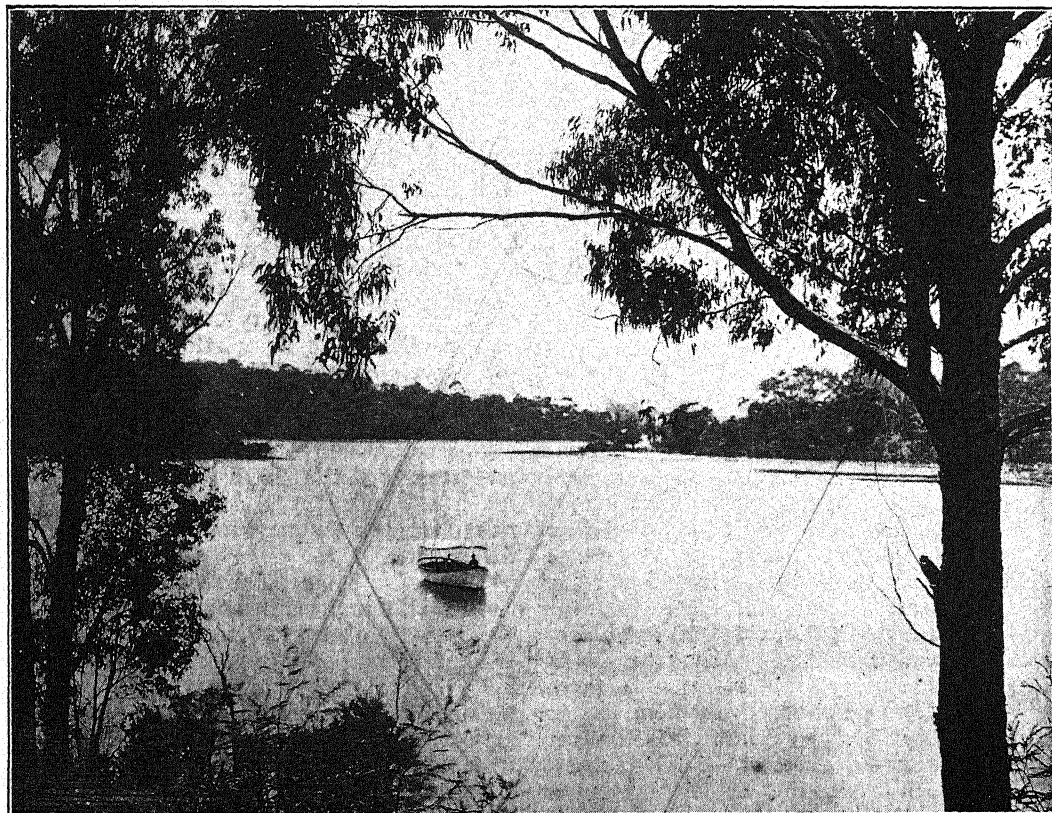
and a large number of "juice-shanties," or spirit saloons. The diggings extended for nearly 50 miles, but as the extremities of the field were worked out the miners concentrated on the town which had rapidly sprung up, and in its transformed condition now forms one of the chief towns of Victoria. There is little in the modern streets and buildings to denote that this was once the scene of a typical mining camp in the wilderness, but the surrounding country is still the richest gold region in the State and reefs are being actively worked. During quite recent years the output of gold has, however, suffered a severe decline and averages only £200,000 in annual value.

At Ballarat, which is on the western gold-field of Victoria, a modern metropolis has long since taken the place of the town of shanties and mining camps, although work on deep reefs is still being carried on. Gold mining

also forms an industry in the country surrounding the towns of Ararat, Stawell, Beechworth, Raywood, Rutherglen, Creswick, Maryborough, Avoca, Heathcote, Tarmagulla and Daylisford.

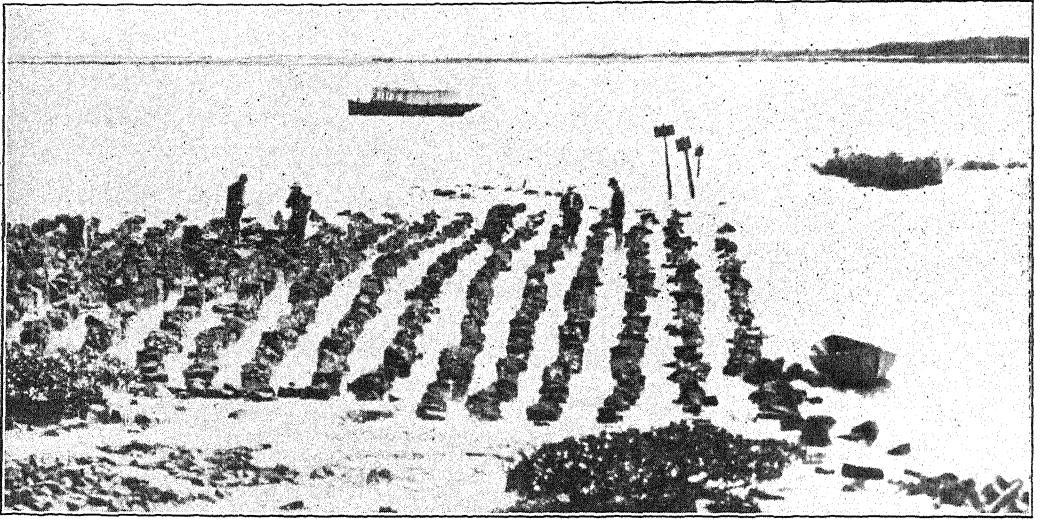
Melbourne proper, the capital of Victoria, is situated a few miles up the Yarra Yarra River, but this city, which is one of the finest in the Commonwealth, includes the suburbs of Williamstown and Port Melbourne, on Hobson's Bay. Ocean liners mostly land passengers at these places instead of proceeding up the river to the heart of the capital, and they bear the same relation to Melbourne as greater London does to the City.

About 950,000 people reside within the Melbourne area, which, with its many suburbs possesses all modern conveniences, including electric light, tramways, theatres, libraries, clubs and a good University.



A LAKE IN GIPPSLAND, VICTORIA

*Photo, Australian Government*



*Photo, Australian Government*

OYSTER BEDS ON THE GEORGE'S RIVER, NEW SOUTH WALES

(output between 100–200 millions sterling) and there has long been considerable activity in mining undertakings, New South Wales relies principally upon the pastoral and agricultural industries which flourish all over the State. The slightest fall in the price of wool has its reflex in Sydney and many other towns in Australia; but the steady increase of the cultivated area on the coast plain and the development of semi-tropical plantations in the north are rapidly giving a greater economic stability to this portion of Australia.

### Victoria

This State, which has an area of 87,884 square miles, is a little smaller than Great Britain, and has an approximate population of 1,750,000, of which over one half reside in Melbourne and district; the remainder are scattered over the whole fertile area, or collected in large inland towns, like Bendigo, Geelong and Ballarat. Nevertheless in Victoria, as in every State in Australia, there are vast plains on which every man has at least three square miles to himself, and some, like the Ninety-Mile Desert—which is not a desert as such is generally understood, but is a broad plain covered with mallee scrub and dwarf gums—where the population averages

only about one person to every ten square miles.

Victoria is the most fertile State in Australia. It produces more wheat than is required for home consumption, and a considerable amount is exported. Tobacco, fruit and hops are grown in large quantities, as well as barley, oats and hay. The dairy industry is a growing and highly profitable one, and viticulture flourishes; but the staple products are gold and wool. The latter is the chief export from every State in Australia, and in Victoria all the north and north-west territory is occupied by rich pasture lands. The scourge of these plains are rabbits and rats, which breed so rapidly that it is difficult to prevent them overrunning the country and clearing the herbage necessary for grazing. In many cases the government has offered a bounty for their wholesale destruction.

Victoria is divided into two distinct portions by the mountain ranges which traverse the country in several directions. The western half is composed of plains with a few low hills, and the eastern portion, known as "Gippsland," is mountainous and contains many forests which yield an abundance of timber. Nowhere do the mountains attain a higher altitude than 6,000 ft.

Bendigo in the days of the gold rush was composed of mining camps, piles of tailings,



